



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

3. c. 31.

A
THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL
GRAMMAR
OF THE
FRENCH LANGUAGE.

BY
M. DE LEVIZAC.

TWENTY-NINTH EDITION,

REVISED, CORRECTED, AND IMPROVED,

BY J. C. TARVER,
LATE FRENCH MASTER OF ETON SCHOOL.

3 . c . 31

LONDON:
DULAU AND CO., 37, SOHO SQUARE.
1858.



LONDON: PRINTED BY W. CLOWES AND SONS, STAMFORD STREET.

P R E F A C E.

THE distinguished success, which (as it has been justly affirmed in former editions) has attended the Grammar of M. de Levisac, adopted in the most celebrated schools in England, cannot be a matter of surprise to those who are acquainted with the high reputation of its learned author in this country. Nor indeed is that reputation confined to England alone; for M. de Levisac has been ranked in France among her ablest grammarians, and his works, considered as standard, are frequently quoted when a good authority is required.* Under such circumstances, the rules, definitions and explanations which he has given in the elementary part of the present work, as well as on the most difficult points of French grammar and construction, could not be any thing but correct and good; whilst the judicious choice of the French sentences of which he has given the translation for the subject of his exercises, is all that one could wish for the application of the rules laid down. It must also be added that those sentences (being selected from pure and unexceptionable writers) must necessarily leave moral impressions of a beneficial nature on the mind of the young learner, improve his taste, and enlighten his mind.

* See *La Grammaire* les *Grammaires*, &c.

These are the real advantages to be derived from M. de Levizac's Grammar, such as he left it to us. His views, his arrangement of the exercises, his constant assistance in the course of the latter, by pointing out the order in which the words are to stand, have been scrupulously adhered to in the present edition, with which great pains have been taken to restore that which in the last, had been considerably altered and disfigured. Some transpositions have, however, been thought advisable, and it is necessary here to explain the reason. M. de Levizac had divided the Syntax into two parts under the denominations of "*Syntax of the Article, the Adjective, the Pronoun, etc. etc.*" And "*Particular rules of the Substantive, of the Article, of the Adjective, etc. etc.*" It is reasonable to suppose that in adopting this division, the Author had in view to introduce the Learner to the difficulties of the Language by degrees. This notion no doubt was also entertained by those to whom the revising of his work has been intrusted since his death, as they have made no alterations in this respect; for, on examining the rules in both parts, one is certainly surprised to find some in the latter, which, from the great simplicity or familiarity of their subject, unquestionably belong to the former, and *vice versa*; as well as with the unnecessary repetition of the same rules in each part. These considerations have appeared a sufficient inducement to give up that division, and throw the two parts into one, which has accordingly been done.*

But whilst M. de Levizac's Grammar was every thing one could wish, as far as regards the laying down of the rules, and giving appropriate exercises for their application, still in another point of view, the grammar was incomplete, in-

* This will account for the difference in the setting of the Exercises, observable in pages 294, 292.

much as it was confined to definitions of *what the French Language is, without any reference to the English Language*, through which French is learned, and in which people must necessarily (in the beginning, and for a long time at least) conceive their thoughts, and from which they must translate them into French. M. de Levizac has given proofs of his knowledge of the English Language in his excellent English and French Pocket Dictionary, and yet, strange to say, he has almost entirely lost sight of that Language in his Grammar, and forgotten that the English who attempt to speak in French must unavoidably be led by the force of habit to give the construction and idiom of their own language to the foreign one. He consequently neglected a very important thing in his practical grammar of a language so much spoken as French; he did not foresee those innumerable cases in which the learner would fall into error. In not comparing the two languages wherever they happen to differ, and pointing out the difference, he lost the opportunity which would thus have been afforded, of checking habit and preventing mistakes attendant on literal translation. Whenever the two languages clash in their construction, as, for instance, in the subjunctive mood and government of verbs, the difference has been noticed, and wherever the case has suggested some English idioms of a particular construction, directions have been given on the manner of rendering it into French. To say, however, that the present edition gives everything that can be wished for in this respect, would be an absurd and foolish assertion; but that a great effort has been made to supply the deficiency just noticed is sufficiently proved from the fact that this Grammar, which in former editions contained 422 pages,* now contains 508.

* M. Pasquier's.

The same considerations have rendered some alterations, or rather additions necessary in the Exercises, in which some English sentences of a more conversational and idiomatical nature have been thrown.

The French Academy has lately fixed the disputed orthography with regard to the *ais*, instead of *ois*, in those words in which the latter combination is to be sounded *è*, especially in verbs; and with regard also to the plural of words ending in *ant*, *ent*, to which they add an *s* without dropping the *t*, this has appeared sufficient authority to deviate from the orthography adopted by M. de Levizac in those cases. Besides that it seemed reasonable to abide by the decision of the learned Academy, there was another motive equally important, namely, to facilitate pronunciation by adopting that spelling, which represents the two distinct and different sounds *ois*, *ais*, in *Anglais*, *Danois*, *paraître*, *croître*, and others formerly spelled alike.

This also appeared an excellent opportunity to render references easier. For this purpose, the rules have been numbered, one series running from the beginning to the end of the book. Occasional references to various parts of the book, by means of these numbers, will enable the learner to find those rules which are connected with that which is under consideration. With the same view, the *Table of Contents* has been altered and enlarged. The number of the rules as well as of the page, wherein they are to be found, have both been given. A learner cannot be too well acquainted with the elementary book placed in his hands; it is of great moment that he should not only know what the book contains, but where it is to be found. The new table of contents, may, therefore, be considered as a *Résumé détaillé* of the whole matter.

CONTENTS.

N.B.—The Figures on the left show the number of the Rule, or of the Subject; the Figures on the right show the number of the Page.

	Page		Page
1 Definition of Grammar . . .	1	15 Of GENDER . . .	39
2, 3, 4, 5. French Alphabet; Of Letters in general; Of Accentuation; Of the Sound of the Vowels . . .	2	16, 17, 18 General rules to ascertain the gender of nouns substantives . .	40
6 Table of the Seventeen simple Sounds of the French Tongue . . .	5	19 A Table of Nouns Substantives, having two genders and two significations . . .	46
7 Table of Combinations of Letters representing several of the Simple Sounds . . .	6	20, 21. Vocabularies: 1. Of the Universe. 2. Of Man. 3. Of the Mind and its faculties. 4. Of Meats and Drinks. 5. Of the Dressing Apparel. 6. Of a House and Furniture. 7. Of the City. 8. Of Trades, Arts, and Professions. 9. Of the Country. 10. Of Flowers. 11. Of Fruits. 12. Of Herbs	
8 Table of Diphthongs . . .	7		
9 Observations on M, N, and various Nasal Sounds . .	9		
10 Of the letter Y . . .	10		
11 Of Consonants . . .	11		
12, 13, 14, Practical Exercises on the Pronunciation of Monosyllables and Polysyllables . .	32		

	Page		Page
and Plants. 13. Of Trees and Shrubs. 14. Promiscuous Words. 15. Of Quadrupeds. 16. Of Birds. 17. Of Fishes. 18. Of Reptiles and Insects. 19. Of Metals. 20. Of Colours. 21. Of Precious Stones. 22. Of the Principal Countries. 23. Of common National Names.		fore Vowels, and Contraction with Consonants	89
INTRODUCTION TO THE EXERCISES.		38 Concord of the Article with the Noun	93
22, 23, 24. Of the Prepositions <i>of, from, to;</i> and of the Article <i>the, a.</i>	75	39, 40 PARTITIVE ARTICLE <i>du, de la, des, de.</i>	93
25 Of Elisions	78	CHAPTER III.	
26 Of Negations	80	41 ADJECTIVE, its nature and concord with the Noun.	95
27, 28 Of Words alike in both Languages, etc. .	81	42 Formation of the Feminine of French Adjectives	96
OF GRAMMAR.		43 Of Irregular Adjectives; Singularity of <i>demi, seu, un.</i>	99
Of Words considered in their nature and inflections.	83	44 Remarks on <i>Tout, Quelque</i>	101
CHAPTER I.		45 Formation of the Plural of Adjectives	102
29, 30, 31, Of the Substantive; of Genders; of Numbers	83	46, 47, 48 Degrees of Comparison; irregularity of <i>bon, mauvais, petit.</i>	104
32 Of the Formation of the Plural of Simple Substantives.	85	49, 50, 51 Of the Superlative relative and absolute.	108
33 Of the Formation of the Plural of Compound Substantives.	87	52, 53, 54 Concord of the Adjective with one, or with several Nouns. .	110
CHAPTER II.		55 Of Numbers.	112
34, 35, 36, 37, Of the ARTICLE, its Elision before Vowels, and Contraction with Consonants		CHAPTER IV.	
		56 PRONOUN, its Nature and different classes	115
		57 to 61 Of Personal Pronouns; Pronouns of the first, second and third person.	115
		62 The Pronoun after the Verb, in Interrogative Phrases, and <i>do not</i> expressed.	118

	Page		Page
53 Reflected and Reciprocal Pronouns.	119	des before Nouns, and of <i>de</i> before Adjectives.	148
64 Of the Personal and Relative <i>en</i>	120	105 <i>De</i> after <i>beaucoup</i> , <i>combien</i> , <i>peu</i> , <i>trop</i> , etc.	152
65 Of the Personal and Relative <i>Y</i>	122	106 Repetition of the Article and Preposition before each Noun of a sentence	153
66, 67, 68 Possessive Pronouns CONJUNCTIVE, <i>mon</i> , <i>ma</i> , <i>vies</i> , etc. their Concord.	123	107 <i>Ne</i> , used after negative sentences	156
69 Possessive Pronouns RELATIVE <i>le mien</i> , <i>la mienne</i> , etc.	125	108 Of the <i>-t-</i> used in questions before <i>il</i> , <i>elle</i>	158
70, to 74 Demonstrative Pronouns, RELATIVE and CONJUNCTIVE, etc.	127	109 Of the Verb Interrogative and Negative.	159
75 <i>Ce</i> , in explanatory sentences, used instead of <i>il</i> , <i>ils</i> , <i>elle</i> , <i>elles</i>	127	110 Conjugation of <i>ÊTRE</i>	ib.
76 to 80 Relative Pronouns, <i>Qui</i> , <i>Dont</i> , <i>à Qui</i> , <i>Que</i>	131	111 General Rule on the place of the Adverb.	162
81 82 <i>Où</i> , for <i>Duquel</i> , <i>Auquel</i> , etc.	135	112 Form of the <i>Imperative</i> , in the third person.	161
83 Quot after Prepositions.	137	113 General Observation on the Use of the <i>Subjunctive Mood</i> in French.	ib.
84 <i>Qui</i> , <i>Que</i> , <i>Quoi</i> , <i>Quel</i> , used in Interrogative Sentences	ib.	114 Remarks on the Orthography of the Verbs of the First Conjugation	171
85 to 89 Indefinite Pronouns. <i>On</i>	139	115 Model of the First Conjugation, <i>PARLER</i>	175
CHAPTER V.		116 SECOND CONJUGATION, its division into five branches.	181
VERB.		117 Models of the Second Conjugation, <i>PUNIR</i> , <i>SENTIR</i> , <i>OUVRIR</i> , <i>TENIR</i> , <i>COURIR</i>	183
90, etc. <i>VERB</i> , its Definition, Persons, Numbers, Tenses.	142	118 Model of the Third Conjugation, <i>RECEVOIR</i>	190
94 to 98 What are Verbs <i>Active</i> , <i>Passive</i> , <i>Neuter</i> , <i>Reflective</i> and <i>Impersonal</i>	146	119 Fourth Conjugation divided into five branches	194
99 Of the different Conjugations and Auxiliaries	ib.	120 Models of the Fourth Conjugation, <i>RENDRE</i> , <i>PLAIRE</i> , <i>PARAITRE</i> , <i>RÉDUIRE</i> , <i>JOINDRE</i>	195
101 Conjugation of <i>AVOIR</i> , and Exercise.	148	121, 2 <i>Pronominals</i> or <i>Reflected Verbs</i> , and list of those which are most commonly used	201
102, etc. Use of <i>du</i> , <i>de la</i> ,			

	Page		Page
123 Model of a Reflective Verb. <i>SE REPENTIR</i> .	203	148 Table of the Primitive Tenses of the Irregular Verbs.	257
124 Interrogative and Negative forms of the Reflective Verb.	204		
125 Conjugation of <i>Passive Verbs</i>	212		
126, etc. <i>Neuter Verbs</i> , their Government and Auxiliaries.	214		
129 <i>Impersonal Verbs</i> , list of the most common.	216		
130, etc. Conjugation of <i>FALLOIR</i> ; comparison between <i>MUST</i> and <i>FALLOIR</i> ; <i>Falloir</i> joined to a Verb when implying duty or necessity; and joined to a Substantive, when implying want.	218		
134 Conjugation of <i>VAVOIR</i>	134		
136 Irregular Verbs of the First Conjugation <i>ALLER</i> , <i>ENVOYER</i>	223		
137 Conjugation of <i>s'EN ALLER</i> , to go away.	ib.		
138, etc. Irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation, 1st Branch, <i>Puisir</i>	226		
2nd Branch, <i>Sentir</i>	227		
3rd Branch, <i>Ouvrir</i>	231		
141 Irregular Verbs of the Third Conjugation.	233		
142, etc. Irregular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation, 1st Branch, <i>Rendre</i>	240		
2nd Branch, <i>Plaire</i>	246		
3rd Branch, <i>Paraître</i>	248		
4th Branch, <i>Réduire</i>	249		
5th Branch, <i>Joindre</i>	254		
147 Table of the Primitive Tenses of the Four Regular Conjugations.	255		
		CHAPTER VI.	
		149, etc. Prepositions.	250
		Denoting Place.	ib.
		Order.	251
		Union.	252
		Opposition.	263
		Separation	264
		ib.	ib.
		Cause and Means	265
		156 Of the Prepositions <i>A</i> , <i>DE</i> , <i>EN</i>	ib.
		CHAPTER VII.	
		157, etc. Of the Adverbs, their Nature, Formation, etc.	268
		CHAPTER VIII.	
		166, etc. Of Conjunctions.	275
		168 Conjunction <i>QUE</i> never omitted after the Verb.	279
		CHAPTER IX.	
		169 Interjections.	280
		PART II.	
		CHAPTER I.	
		SUBSTANTIVE.	
		170 Explanation of the terms <i>Regimen direct</i> , <i>Regimen indirect</i> , or Cases	282

	Page
171 Order, place of the subject of the Verb, in the four forms . . .	283
172 Of Government or cases.	ib.
173 Difference between the two Languages, as to the Government of Verbs	284
174 Necessity of attending to the Government of Verbs, with regard to the Relative Pronouns.	285
175 How to render the <i>King's Palace</i> , and such like sentences. . . .	ib.
176 Compound Words, such as, <i>Silk Stockings, Dining Rooms</i> ; how to render them in French. .	286

CHAPTER II.

177 Of the indefinite A, AN; when rendered, when not.	288
178-9 A, an, rendered by <i>le, la, par</i>	290
180, etc. Of the definite Article <i>le, la, les</i> , when to use it	290
183 Article definite omitted.	293
184, etc. <i>The</i> not rendered in French in <i>Louis the XIVth, Book the Tenth</i> , and such like. . .	294
<i>Le</i> used after <i>dans</i> , never after <i>en</i> ; several cases when it is omitted	ib.
187 Proper names do not take the definite Article. Exceptions	297
188 Of the Partitive Article <i>du, de la, des</i>	298
191 Phrases in which the Article is omitted. . .	299

CHAPTER III.

ADJECTIVE.

192 Concord of the Adjective with the Noun. . . .	301
193 Adjectives of Dimensions	303
194. Adjectives used Substantively, require the Article Definite . . .	304
196 The superlative takes the Article	306
197 How to render <i>Equally with, as well as, nothing so pleasant as</i> , etc. .	307
198, etc. Place of Adjectives	ib.
204, etc. Government of Adjectives; of those which require <i>de</i>	311
Of those which require <i>a</i>	312
Of those which require <i>entre</i>	ib.
208 Necessity of attending to the Government of Adjectives, when there are two joined to one Substantive.	313
209 <i>ETRE</i> , with Adjectives expressing <i>gladness, regret</i> , requires the infinitive or the Subjunctive.	ib.
210 Government of <i>IL EST</i> , joined to an Adjective.	314
211 <i>NE</i> used before the Verbs in comparisons	314
212 The Subjunctive and the Genitive used after an Adjective in the Superlative	315
213 <i>By</i> rendered by <i>de</i> , in comparisons.	316
215 Cardinal Numbers used in <i>dates</i> and other cases	318

	Page		Page
CHAPTER IV.			
PRONOUNS.			
217 PERSONAL PRONOUNS ; Distinction between the Object and the Subject.	319	253 How to render a friend of yours, a horse of mine, etc.	348
218, etc. <i>Moi, toi, lui, eux,</i> used instead of <i>je, tu,</i> <i>il, ils.</i>	320	254 <i>Monsieur, madame,</i> etc. used before titles of re- lationship	ib.
221 <i>Il, elle, ils, elles,</i> used in speaking of inani- mate things.	322	255 Possessive Pronouns used before <i>mère, père,</i> <i>frère, sœur,</i> etc.	ib.
222 <i>Aussi, peut-être, encore,</i> etc. require the interro- gative form.	323	256, etc. Repetition of the Possessive Pronoun.	349
223 Of Pronouns, being Di- rect and Indirect Regi- men	ib.	258, etc. PARTICULAR CON- STRUCTION relating to parts of the Body, such as, <i>j'ai mal à la tête, je</i> <i>me lave les mains, vous me</i> <i>blessez la main,</i> etc. etc.	350
224, etc. Place of the Per- sonal Pronouns	324	263, etc. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS. Remark about <i>c'est, ce sont.</i>	353
230, etc. Directions on the Use of the proper Per- sonal Pronouns	329	266 <i>CE</i> in Descriptive Sen- tences	354
235, etc. Particular use of <i>Y, EN</i>	333	267 How to render <i>this is,</i> <i>these are.</i>	355
237 <i>CE</i> instead of <i>il, elle,</i> <i>ils, elles,</i> in descrip- tions	334	268 WHAT rendered by <i>ce</i> <i>qui, ce que, ce dont, ce</i> <i>à quoi.</i>	356
238, etc. Cases in which <i>lui,</i> <i>eux, elle, elles,</i> may ap- ply to things	335	269 <i>He who, she who, they</i> <i>who,</i> rendered by <i>celui</i> <i>qui, celle qui,</i> etc.	357
241, etc. Difficulty respect- ing the supplying Pro- noun <i>LE,</i> explained.	337	271 WHICH relative, stand- ing for <i>that which.</i>	358
243, etc. Repetition of the Personal Pronouns.	339	272, etc. How to render <i>this</i> <i>day week, this day month,</i> etc.	ib.
247 On the Pronoun <i>soi</i>	344	274 <i>Ceci, cela,</i> neuter, fa- miliar use of <i>cela.</i>	ib.
248 POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS, their Concord.	345	275 <i>It</i> rendered by <i>cela.</i>	359
249 <i>EN</i> used to render <i>ITS,</i> <i>THEIR,</i> instead of <i>son,</i> <i>sa, ses, leur.</i>	346	276 RELATIVE PRONOUNS, <i>qui</i> common in speak- ing of Persons and Things, when restricted to Persons	360
250, etc. <i>Aime, thine, his,</i> with <i>to be,</i> rendered by <i>à moi, à toi, à lui,</i> etc.	347	278, etc. WHAT, beginning questions, rendered by <i>que.</i>	ib.

	Page		Page
noun; relative must be close to its antecedent.	361	329 Place of the subject with regard of the Verb.	395
283 <i>Qui</i> governs the subjunctive mood after a negative or an interrogative phrase.	363	331 <i>Il, elle, ils, elles</i> suppressed in questions beginning with <i>que, où, combien, à quel</i>	395
284 <i>Que</i> , accusative case, is never omitted.	365	332 Subject placed after the Verb in sentences beginning with <i>ainsi, tel</i>	397
287 <i>Lequel, duquel</i> , principally used to mark distinction.	ib.	333 The Verb in the interrogative form after <i>aussi, peut-être</i> , etc. See No. 222.	398
290 <i>Quoi</i> used after prepositions in speaking of things indeterminately.	367	334 Imperative of <i>Pouvoir, Devoir, Faire</i> , in imprecations	399
291 How to render <i>whose is, whose are?</i>	368	338 Of a Noun governed by two Verbs	401
292 How to render <i>in which case, on which account</i> .	ib.	339 <i>Passive Verbs</i> require the prepositions <i>de, par</i>	402
293 <i>Où, d'où, par où</i> , standing for <i>auquel, duquel</i> , etc.	369	340, etc. <i>Neuter Verbs</i> , their different government.	403
294 ABSOLUTE PRONOUNS.	370	342, etc. <i>Neuter Verbs</i> do not all and always require the same auxiliary; examples of those which require <i>ÊTRE</i> ; examples of those with which both are used.	405
297, etc. Pronouns indefinite. <i>On</i> , its meaning and peculiar use; the active voice substituted to the passive, with <i>on</i> for subject	373	349 A Verb following another must be either in the infinitive, the indicative, or the subjunctive mood.	409
300, etc. <i>Quelqu'un, quiconque, chacun, autrui, tout, l'un l'autre</i> , etc. etc.	380	350 IMPORTANT REMARK on the prepositions <i>de, à, pour</i> , used before the infinitive, governed by another verb.	350
CHAPTER V.		351, etc. Rules on the Prepositions to be used before the infinitive.	410
THE VERB		356, etc. Rules as to when the second Verb must be in the indicative, and	
321, etc. Concord between the Verb and its subject	388		
327 Nouns of Multitude and Nouns Collective Partitive, require the Verb to be in the Singular.	393		
328 The Verb in the plural after <i>la plupart, infinité</i> .	394		

	Page		Page
when is the <i>subjunctive</i> mood.	412	used instead of another Conjunction.	450
360 NATURE AND USE OF MOODS AND TENSES.	414	381 An <i>adjective</i> in the <i>superlative</i> and <i>le premier</i> , <i>le seul</i> , <i>personne</i> , etc. require the <i>subjunctive</i>	431
Of the Present Tense.	ib.	382 The relative <i>qui</i> , <i>que</i> , require the <i>subjunctive</i> after a negative phrase.	431
362 Use of the <i>Imperfect</i> (JE PARLAIS)	415	384 Nature of the <i>Verbs</i> which require the <i>Subjunctive Mood</i>	432
363 Use of the <i>Definite</i> , (JE PARLAI).	416	385 ETRE RAVI, RIEN AISE, etc. have also the <i>Subjunctive Mood</i>	433
364, etc. Use of the <i>Preterit Indefinite</i> , (J'AI PARLÉ) and other tenses.	417	386 Remarks on the way of rendering <i>do</i> , <i>did</i> , <i>will</i> , <i>would</i> , <i>should</i> , <i>can</i> , <i>could</i> , <i>may</i> , <i>might</i>	434
367 Use of the <i>Future Absolute</i> (JE PARLERAI)	420	387 Concord between the tenses of the <i>Indicative</i>	436
368 The <i>Future</i> is used after QUAND, in speaking of things to come	ib.	388, etc. Concord between the tenses of the <i>Subjunctive</i> , and those of the <i>Indicative</i>	439
369 The <i>Future</i> is not used after SI meaning IF, but after SI, meaning WHETHER. How to render <i>as you please</i> , <i>as you like</i>	421	393 Of the INFINITIVE. Its use after <i>prepositions</i> , instead of the <i>Participle Present</i> , used in English.	446
370 Illustrative examples of the use of the tenses, JE PARLAIS, JE PARLAI, J'AI PARLÉ	422	396 Of the PARTICIPLE PRESENT, when declined, when not.	448
371, etc. Of the <i>Conditional</i> , (JE PARLERAIS)	424	399 How to render the <i>English Participle present</i> , used <i>Substantively</i>	450
374 How to render THOUGH EVEN, WERE I TO, etc. and peculiar use of the <i>Conditional</i>	425	400 The <i>Participle present</i> is used after EN	ib.
375 Of the <i>Imperative</i>	427	402 PARTICIPLE PAST. Sometimes declined, Sometimes not. Example.	452
377 Of the SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD; the two Languages do not coincide with regard to this tense; illustrative Examples.	428	403 <i>Participle Past</i> , with ETRE, agrees with the subject.	ib.
378 List of <i>Conjunctions</i> , which require the <i>Subjunctive Mood</i>	429		
379 QUE may require the <i>Subjunctive Mood</i> , when			

	Page		Page
404, etc. <i>Participle Past</i> , with <i>AVOIR</i>	454	435 Of Grammatical Dis- cordance	501
408 Difficulty on the <i>Parti- ciple Past</i>	457	436 Of Amphibologies.	503
410 <i>Participle Past</i> with REFLECTIVE VERBS.	459	Gallicisms, example of <i>IL S'EN FAUT</i>	506
CHAPTER VI.		MISCELLANY.	
PREPOSITIONS.		437 Free Exercises	590
411, etc. Rules on the <i>Pre- positions</i>	460	EXAMPLES OF PHRASES ON THE PRINCIPAL DIFFICULTIES OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.	
417 Government of <i>PREPO- SITIONS</i>	465	1. Collective Partitive.	521
CHAPTER VII.		2. Verbs which cannot be conjugated with <i>AVOIR</i>	522
ADVERBS.		3. On Words of Quan- tity.	ib
418 Of the different sorts of Adverbs	468	4. On Personal Pro- nouns	523
419, etc. Of the Negations <i>ne, pas, point</i> , where are the latter to be used	469	5. On <i>soi, lui, soi-même</i>	524
421 <i>De</i> must be used before the nouns after a nega- tive sentence.	474	6. On the Relative Pro- nouns.	525
423 <i>Je ne saurais</i> used in- stead of <i>Je ne puis</i>	478	7. On the Relative Pro- nouns.	526
CHAPTER VIII.		8. On <i>il y a</i>	257
CONJUNCTIONS.		9. Phrases diverses.	529
425 Great use of <i>QUE</i>	480	10. Continuation	530
426 Particular use of <i>que</i> after <i>c'est</i>	481	11. Idem.	531
427, etc. Government of Conjunctions.	483	12. On the Article.	532
CHAPTER IX.		13. Article omitted.	534
430 Grammatical construc- tion	491	14. Continuation	535
431 Of Inversion.	497	15. Continuation	ib.
432 Of Ellipsis	498	16. On the Pronoun <i>le</i>	536
433 Of Pleonasm	499	17. On the Participle <i>Past</i>	537
434 Of the Syllepsis	500	18. Relations of Tenses.	538
		19. On <i>Devoir, Pouvoir, Aller, Venir de</i>	539
		20. On <i>Should, Would, Could, Will, Shall</i>	540
		21. Continuation	541
		22. On the Negative <i>Ne</i>	542
		23. Continuation	543
		24. Niceties of the French Language.	544

EXPLANATION

OF THE

ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE EXERCISES.

m.	stands for	masculine.
f.	_____	feminine.
pl.	_____	plural.
s. or sing.	_____	singular.
h m.	_____	h mute.
h asp.	_____	h aspirated.
pr. *	_____	preposition.
art. *	_____	article.
pr-art.	_____	article and preposition contracted.
pron.	_____	pronoun.
inf-1	_____	present of the infinitive.
inf-2	_____	the past of the infinitive.
p. pr.	_____	participle present.
p. p-4	_____	participle past.
ind-1	_____	present of the indicative, <i>je parle</i> .
ind-2	_____	imperfect. <i>Je parlais</i> .
ind-3	_____	preterit definite. <i>Je parlai</i> .
ind-4	_____	preterit indefinite. <i>J'ai parlé</i> .
ind-5	_____	preterit anterior. <i>J'eus parlé</i> .
ind-6	_____	pluperfect. <i>J'avais parlé</i> .
ind-7	_____	future absolute. <i>Je parlerai</i> .
ind-8	_____	future anterior. <i>J'aurai parlé</i> .
cond-1.	_____	present of the conditional. <i>Je parlerais</i> .
cond-2.	_____	first conditional past. <i>J'aurais parlé</i> .
cond-3	_____	second conditional past. <i>J'aurais eu parlé</i> .
imp.	_____	imperative. <i>Aie</i> .
subj-1	_____	present of the subjunctive. <i>Que je parle</i> .
subj-2	_____	imperfect. <i>Que je parlasse</i> .
subj-3	_____	preterit. <i>Que j'aie parlé</i> .
subj-4	_____	pluperfect. <i>Que j'eusse parlé</i> .

* In the Exercises, denotes that the word under which it is placed, is not expressed in French.

— Denotes that the English word is spelt alike in French, or at least the part under which this sign is placed.

* Art. in the Exercises, before a word, shows that the definite article is used.

† Prep. shows the preposition is to be used.

= Denotes that the French word differs from the English only by its termination. See 27.

In filling the Exercises, the order of the figures placed sometimes in the phrases after the French words, is to be observed.

In the exercises, when several English words are included between a parenthesis, they must be translated by the only words placed

below.

FRENCH GRAMMAR

1. GRAMMAR, in general, is the art of *speaking* and *writing* correctly.

To SPEAK—is to convey our thoughts by means of articulated sounds.

To WRITE—is to render those thoughts permanently visible by means of certain signs or characters, called *Letters*, and the latter, disposed in proper order, constitute what is called the ALPHABET.

2. OF THE FRENCH ALPHABET.

Roman Letters.		Italic Letters.		Old Appellation.	New Appellation.
A	a	A	a	ah—	ah
B	b	B	b	bay*	bay*
C	c	C	c	say	ke
D	d	D	d	day	de
E	e	E	e	a—	a
F	f	F	f	ff	f
G	g	G	g	gay†	gho
H	h	H	h	ash	he
I	i	I	i	o—	e
J	j	J	j	jeet	jum
K	k	K	k	kak	ko
L	l	L	l	all	la
M	m	M	m	amm	ma
N	n	N	n	enn	no
O	o	O	o	o—	o
P	p	P	p	pay	po
Q	q	Q	q	kut	ka
R	r	R	r	heir	re
S	s	S	s	ess	so
T	t	T	t	tay	te
U	u	U	u	ut	ut
V	v	V	v	vay	vo
X	x	X	x	echs	ken
Y	y	Y	y	a gree	e gree
Z	z	Z	z	zed	se

* Here both the old pronunciation and the new are expressed by sounds, and, in the new, the letter *e* after each consonant is sounded as in the English word *battery*.

† When *g* is soft, it is sounded like *s* in *pleasure*, or *s* in *azure*. Such is also the sound of *j*, which is always soft.

‡ See the second note, page 5.

PRONUNCIATION,

OR SOUNDS OF THE FRENCH TONGUE.

3. OF LETTERS IN GENERAL,

The French ALPHABET contains, it is seen, *twenty-five letters*, which are divided into *Vowels* and *Consonants*.

A *vowel* is the simple emission of the *voice* forming an articulate sound by itself.

A *consonant*, on the contrary, cannot be articulated without the assistance of a *vowel*.

The *vowels* are *a, e, i, o, u*, and *y*, which sometimes has the sound of *one i*, and sometimes of *two*.

The nineteen remaining letters, *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z*, are consonants.

4. OF ACCENTUATION.

In reading and writing, great attention must be paid to the accents; for they not only change the sound of the vowels, but also the meaning of words. Ex. *pêche*, a peach; *péché*, a sin; *la*, the; *là*, there; *ou*, or; *où*, where.

Three accents are used on the vowels; they are the *acute* (´) placed on *e* alone, as in *bonté*.* The *grave* (`) used solely on the letter *e*, as in *procès*, *prêt*, and on the three following words, *à*, to; *là*, there; *où*, where. The *circumflex* (^) used on every

* The acute accent is used on the final *e* of the part. past of the first conjugation, *aimé*, *estimé*, and of all nouns derived from those Latin words of the third declension, ending in *as*, *vérité*, *veritas*; *cité*, *civitas*; *écité*, *cecitas*; *générosité*, *generositas*, etc. etc.

one of the five vowels, which it makes long, *plâtre*, *rêve*, *épître*, *apôtre*, *vous fûtes* *.

The *cedilla*, (ç) *cédille*, placed under *c*, gives it the sound of *s* before *a*, *o*, *u*, as in *façade*, *façon*, *reçu*.

The *diæresis* or *tréma* (¨) is placed over the vowels *e*, *i*, *u*, whenever they form one distinct syllable, as *haïr*, *naïf*, *Esau*, *ciguë*, *Raphaël*, which are pronounced *ha-ïr*, *na-ïf*, *E-sa-u*, *ci-gu-ë*, *Ra-pha-ël*.

The *hyphen* or *tiret*, (-) is used in connecting compound words, as in *Belles-lettres*, *tout-puissant*, *arc-en-ciel*, &c.

5. OF THE SOUNDS OF THE VOWELS,

AND OF THEIR COMBINATIONS.

Independently of the radical sounds of the five vowels, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, there are others which are formed by means of the accents which are placed upon them, according as the case requires, so that the number of *simple sounds* is altogether ten, *a*, *á*, *e*, *é*, *è*, *ê*, *i*, *ó*, *o*, *u*.

The sound of *i*, and of *u* is not affected by the ap-
position of the circumflex accent.

There are besides *three* other *simple sounds*, each represented by the following combinations of vowels, *eu*, *eú*, *ou*.

There are also *four nasal simple sounds*, † which, for want of more appropriate signs, are represented

* The *ˆ* accent takes the place of the *s* or of the double vowel which were used in old orthography, *age*, *Auste*, now *âge*, *stâte*; it is also used in words derived from the Latin language, especially verbs, from which a syllable is cut off, *âme*, *anima*; *vous aimez*, *amavistis*.

† Seventeen simple sounds. See TABLE I.

by the combinations of *m* or *n* with each of the vowels, *an*, *em*, *an*, *en*—*im*, *in*—*om*, *on*—*um*, *un*.

All vowels are long which have the ^ˆ accent upon them, as *pâte*; others may be long by position, as *rose*.

Besides the *simple*, there are also the *compound* sounds, in which two vowels are distinctly heard by a single emission of the voice; these are the *diphthongs*.—See Table III.

The sound of one or more letters, pronounced with a single emission of the voice, is called a syllable; one or more syllables make a word.

TABLE I.

6. THE SEVENTEEN SIMPLE SOUNDS OF THE FRENCH TONGUE.

<i>Sounds.</i>	<i>Examples.</i>	<i>Sounded as</i>
1. a short	ami, friend	a in amateur
2. â long	pâte, paste	a — bark
3. e	tenir, to hold	e — battery
4. é	été, summer	e — paper
5. è	modèle, model	e — met
6. ê (*)	tête, head	e — there
7. i.	imiter, to imitate	i — timid
8. o. short	école, school	o — scholar
9. ô long	côte, rib	o — note
10. u	vertu, virtue	(†)
11. eu short	jeune, young	u — shun
12. êu long	jeûne, fast	(†)
13. ou	soupe, soup	ou — soup
14. an	ange, angel	en — encore
15. in	lin, flax	en — length
16. on	long, long	on — long
17. un	brun, brown	un — —

* Besides these four sorts of e, there is one entirely mute at the end of many words, as in the above *modèle, tête, école, côte*; and sometimes in the beginning and middle, as in *cependant, javeline, Roquefort, Souquenille, l'empereur, &c.*

† The sound of the French u, to which there is no similar, nor even approximate, sound in English, must be heard from the master; and it may be well to add, that, although we have attempted to give an idea of the French sounds by means of English ones, yet they can be correctly learnt only by hearing them from the lips of a native. The nasal sounds cannot be conveyed by any combination of English letters, but a correct notion of the way in which they are pronounced may be had by observation and comparison. In uttering *attention*, as it is pronounced in both languages, it will be seen that the lips do not move when spoken in French, whereas they do, when spoken in English. To stop the moving of the lips, is, therefore the only way of arriving at the right utterance of French nasals.

TABLE II.

7. COMBINATIONS OF LETTERS REPRESENTING SEVERAL OF THE SEVENTEEN SIMPLE SOUNDS.

The Figures refer to Table I.

1	e	en	il gagea	he betted
2	a	acs, as, eat, ata*	appata	charms
4	é	ai	aign	sharp
		eai	geai	jay
		ée	année	year
		æ	œsophage	œsophagus
5	è	ai	aide	aide
		aie	bate	bay
		ei	baleine	whale
		eoi, eai	je nageois, geais.	I did swim
		oi, ai	faible, faible	weak
		oie, aio	monnaie, nait	money
6	ê	ai	ainé	eldest
		oi	boire	to drink
7	i	ie	paraître, vaitre	to appear
8	o	au	folie	folly
		eo	aurore	dawn
		au	flageolet	flageolet
9	ô	eu	auteur	author
		eo	marteau	hammer
		eu	geole	goal
10	u	eue	gageure	wager
		uo	eue f.	had
11	eu	œu	laitue	lettuce
12	êu	œu	sœur	sister
		eue	noeud	knot
13	ou	oue	queue	tail
		oût	il joue	he plays
		an	Août	August
14	an	can	jambe	leg
		em	affligent	afflicting
		en	membre	member
		ain	entendre	to hear
		ain	essaim	swarm
15	in	cin	crainte	fear
		im	peinture	picture
		ym	impoli	impolite
		yn	symbole	symbol
		yn	syntaxe	syntax
16	on	eon	pigeon	pigeon
		om	ombre	shade
17	un	eun	à jeun	fasting
		um	Parfum	perfume

TABLE III.

DIPHTHONGS.

B. Compound Sounds represented by Examples.

7 th	i	ia	fiacre	hackney-coach
1 or 2	a	iai	galimatias	nonsense
7	i	ie	je défiai	I challenged
4	e	iez	amitié	friendship
7	e	iai	vous riez	you laugh
	i	ie	biais	bias
5	e	ie	bière	beer
	e	ioi, iai	ciel	heaven
7	i	io	je purifiois, fiais	I purified
8 or 9	e	iau	violon	violin
7	i	iu	miauler	to mew
10	a	iu	reliure	binding
7	i	ieu	relieur	bookbinder
11 or 12	eu	ieu	mieux	better
7	i	ion	chœurme	{ crew of a galley
13	ou	ion		ley
7	i	ian	viande	meat
14	a	ien	audience	audience
7	i	ien	chrétien	christian
15	ia	ion	passion	passion
16	on	oi	bois	wood
8	o	oi	boîte	box
2	a	oia	foie	liver
3	e	oe	moelle	marrow
6	e	oi	voisin	neighbour
8	o	eo	nageoire	fin
15	ia	oin	besoin	want
10	a	ua	nuage	cloud
1	e	uai	je remuai	I moved
10	a	ue	éternuer	to sneeze
6	e	ué	dénudé	stript
	e	uée	née	cloud

* These figures refer to the numbers of the sounds in the preceding page.

TABLE III.

DIPHTHONGS CONTINUED.

Compound Sounds represented by Examples.

10	.	.	u	.	ue	.	menwet .	.	minuet
5	.	.	u	.	uoi, uai	.	il suait, uait	.	he perspired
10	.	.	u	.	ui	.	buisson	.	bush
7	.	.	i	.	uie	.	parapluie	.	umbrella
10	.	.	u	.	uo	.	impétuosité	.	impetuosity
8	.	.	o	.		.		.	
10	.	.	u	.	neu	.	lueur	.	glimmering
11	.	.	eu	.		.		.	
10	.	.	u	.	uen	.	majestueux	.	majestic
12	.	.	eu	.		.		.	
10	.	.	u	.	uan	.	nuance	.	shade
14	.	.	an	.	uen	.	influence	.	influence
10	.	.	u	.	uin	.	June	.	June
15	.	.	in	.		.		.	
10	.	.	u	.	non	.	tuons	.	let us kill
16	.	.	on	.		.		.	
13	.	.	on	.	oua	.	rouage	.	wheel-work
1	.	.	a	.		.		.	
	.	.		.	oue	.	dénouer	.	to untie
13	.	.	ou	.	oné	.	déjoué	.	frustrated
4	.	.	é	.	oués	.	filie enjouée	.	cheerful girl
	.	.		.	ouai	.	je jouai	.	I played
13	.	.	ou	.	oue	.	fouetter	.	to whip
5	.	.	é	.	ouoi, ouai	.	je dénouois, ouais	.	I untied
13	.	.	ou	.	oui	.	cambouis	.	cart grease
7	.	.	i	.	ouie	.	l'ouie	.	hearing
13	.	.	ou	.	ouen	.	boueur	.	scavenger
11	.	.	eu	.		.		.	
13	.	.	ou	.	oueu	.	noueux	.	knotty
12	.	.	eu	.		.		.	
13	.	.	ou	.	ouan	.	louange	.	praise
14	.	.	an	.	ouen	.	Rouen	.	Rouen, a city
13	.	.	ou	.	ouin	.	babouin	.	baboon
15	.	.	in	.		.		.	
13	.	.	ou	.	ouon	.	jouons	.	let us play
16	.	.	on	.		.		.	

9. OBSERVATIONS

UPON THE TWO FIRST TABLES (SEE ALSO LETTERS M.N.)

Am, *an*, do not take the nasal sound when *m* or *n* are doubled, as in *constamment*, *année*. *Am* is not nasal at the end of some foreign names, as *Abraham*, *Roboam*, *Rotterdam*, *Potsdam*, *Cham*, &c.; except *Adam*.

Em and *en* are articulated as in the English words *hem* and *men*:

1. In words from Latin, as *abdomen*, *amen*, *solen*, *hymen*, *item*, *décemvirat*, *décemvirs*, and proper names *Jérusalem*, *Sem*; except *examen*, *memento*, *agenda*, *mentor*, in which *en* has the sound of *in*.

2. *E* before double *nn*, is sounded like *è*, as *étrennes*, *ennemi*, *moyennant*; also in some persons and tenses of the verbs, *tenir*, *venir*, *prendre*, and their compounds, as *que je vienne*, *que tu soutiennes*, *qu'il comprenne*, &c. in the pronouns feminine, *la mienne*, *la tienne*, *les siennes*, in many other words, as *antienne*, *magicienne*, *Vienne en Autriche*, &c. See letter N.

Also in many nouns and persons of verbs ending in *ène*, *ème*, as in *arène*, *ébène*, *je me promène*, *il égrène*, *il sème*, where, however, the *e* is somewhat more open.

Aen has the sound of the French nasal *an* in *Caen*, a town of Normandy. *Aon* is sounded *an* in *Laon*, another town of France, in *faon*, a fawn, and in *paon*, a peacock; but these letters have the sound of *on* in *taon*, an ox-fly.

N, in the monosyllable *en*, both when a preposition and when a pronoun, in *on*, *mon*, *ton*, *son* pronouns, and in *bon*, *bien*, *rien*, ceases to be nasal when these words are immediately followed by a

vowel or an *h* mute, as *en Italie, on en aura, mon ami, c'est un bon homme, on a bien essayé, je suis bien aise qu'il n'ait rien oublié.* But *en* and *on* remain nasal, when they are placed after the verbs; as *donnez-en à votre sœur. A-t-on essayé? Va-t'en au logis.*

1. *Im, in,* are not nasal, 1. in the word *intérim*, and in proper names taken from foreign languages, as *Sélim, Ephraïm, Ibrahim.* However the nasal sound is preserved in *Benjamin, Joachim.*

2. In the beginning and middle of words, when *m* or *n* is followed by a vowel or an *h* mute, as *inanimé, inimaginable, unanimité, &c.*

3. Whenever *m* or *n* is doubled, as *immoler, immersion, innover, inné, innocent,* though in this latter word only one *n* is sounded.

Un has the sound of *u* close, as in *une, unième, unanime,* when followed by a word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, as *un homme, un esprit, aucun ami, commun accord.*

Um is pronounced *omm* in some words adopted from the Latin, as *centumvirs, album, quinquennium, ladanum, laudatum, géranium,* except *pensum, factotum.*

U after the consonants *q* and *g* is generally silent, as in *quatre, guerre, &c.* See those letters.

10. OF THE Y.

This letter has the sound of *i*, in all words derived from Greek; *lyre, physique,* and in *y* adverb. In *pays, paysan, paysage,* it is sounded like two *i*, as if these words were spelled *pai-is, pai-i-san, pai-i-sage.* *Y*, placed between two vowels, is also pronounced as two *i*, one of which alters the sound of

the first vowel, and the other making a diphthong with the second, thus, *payer*, is pronounced as if it were spelled *pai-ier*, *monnoyer* or *monnayer*, as if *mo-nai-ier*. *

EXAMPLES

ab-ba-ye	<i>Abbey</i>	nous é-ga-yons	<i>we enliven</i>
a-bo-ye	<i>to bark</i>	es-su-ye	<i>to wipe</i>
ap-pu-ye	<i>to support</i>	mo-ye	<i>means</i>
ba-la-ye	<i>to sweep</i>	net-to-ye	<i>to clean</i>
bé-ga-ye	<i>to stammer</i>	je pa-yais	<i>I was paying</i>
cra-yon	<i>pencil</i>	je ra-ye-rai	<i>I would stripe</i>
cro-ya-ble	<i>credible</i>	ro-yau-me	<i>kingdom</i>
é-cu-ye	<i>esquire</i>	vo-ya-ge	<i>voyage</i>
il ef-fra-ye	<i>he frightens</i>	vo-ya-geur	<i>traveller</i>

11. OF CONSONANTS.

B, b, at the beginning of a word or of a syllable, is sounded as in English.

Bal	<i>ball</i>	bo-bi-ne	<i>bobbin</i>
Ba-bel	<i>Babel</i>	bar-ba-ris-me	<i>barbarism</i>
ba-bil	<i>prating</i>	bi-bli-o-thè-que	<i>library</i>
ba-bouin	<i>baboon</i>	bar-les-que	<i>burlesque</i>

B is sounded in the middle of words, as *ab-di-quer*, *sub-ve-nir*, *ob-vi-er*: and at the end of proper names, as *Job*, *Caleb*, *Moab*; also in the words, *ra-doub*, the refitting of a ship, *rumb*, point of the compass; but it is not sounded in *plomb*, lead.

Double *bb* is not sounded, *abbé*, abbot; *rabbîn*, rabbin; *sabbat*, sabbath; which pronounce *a-bé*, *ra-bin*, *sa-bat*, but it is heard in *Abbatial*, *Abbeville*.

C, c, is { *Hard*, as in English, before *a, o, u, l, n, r*.
 Soft, before *e, i, y*, and also before *a, o, u*,
 when it has the cedilla ç,

* *Balaouette*, *biscayen*, *pâlen*, are sometimes spelt *bavounette*, *viscayen*, *pâyen*, but the *y* must be sounded as one *l*.

HARD.		SOFT.	
Cal-cul	calculation	ce-ci	this
ca-co-pho-nie	cacophony	cé-ci-té	blindness
clérical	clerical	cé-ta-cée	cetaceous
Cra-co-vie	Cracow	cer-ceau	corpse
co-que-li-cot	wild poppy	Cir-cé	Circe
cro-co-di-le	crocodile	ci-li-ce	hair-cloth
cris-tal	crystal	cy-ni-que	cynic
cu-cur-bl-te	cucurbit	cy-près	cypress
A-rach-né	Arachne	le-çon	lesson

Double *cc* and *cq*, in the middle of words, are sounded as one *c* before *a, o, u, la, le, li, lo, lu, ra, re, ri*; thus *a-cabler*, &c. except, *pec-cable, pec-cant, pec-cadille, pec-cavi, sac-cholactique*, in which the sound of the double *c* is distinctly heard. But before *é, i*, the two *cc* are heard distinctly; *succès, accident, vaccine*, are, therefore, pronounced, *suc-cès, ac-ci-dent, vac-cine*, &c.

C is sounded as *g* hard in *second* and its derivatives, and by many in *Claude*, and *Reine Claude*, and even by some, but improperly, in *secret*.

C, at the end of words, is usually sounded harsh, as in *cognac, lac*, (a lake), *avec, bec, pic, syndic, roc, froc, estoc, duc, aqueduc, agaric, arc, zinc*, &c. and in the singular of *échec*: but it is not sounded in *croc, accroc, arc-boutant, banc, broc, clerc, marc d'argent, cric, estomac, flanc, jonc, lacs* (toils,) *tabac, tronc, échecs*, nor in *donc* before a consonant; but

It is always sounded in *croc-en-jambe, franc étourdi, du blanc au noir*, and in both syllables of *mic-mac, tric-trac, ric-à-ric*, and *porc-épic*.

In words ending in *ct*, both consonants are generally sounded; as in *tact, contact, intact, exact, inexact, abject, correct, direct, infect, strict, succinct*: *c* alone is heard in *respect*; *ct* are silent in *amict, instinct, respects*; both letters are always heard in *suspecte, circonspecte, respecte, distincte*, as well as

in the middle of other words, such as *recteur, vecteur, séducteur, rédacteur, humecter, injecter, dactyle, ductile, tactique, &c.*

Ch has two sounds { one, which is most general like *sh*, in *she, shake* ;
the other, which very rarely occurs, is that of *k* in *chimera*.

EXAMPLES OF *sh*.

Chat	cat	ché-ru-bin	cherubim
che-val	horse	ca-té-chis-me	catechism
cher-cher	to seek	chou-et-te	screech-owl
chi-che	stingy	chu-te	fall
ar-chi-tec-te	architect	chu-cho-ter	to whisper
ar-chi-tra-ve	architrave	chy-le, &c. &c.	chyle

It has also sound in *Achille, Zachée, &c.*

EXAMPLES OF *ch* AS *k*.*

A-chab	Sham	Ma-chi-a-vel	Cal-chas
A-ché-lo-us	Cha-na-an	Mi-chel-ange	Bac-chus
An-ti-o-chus	Chi-o	Pul-crè-rie	Cha-ron
A-cha-ïe	Cho-rè-be	Ti-cho-Bra-hé	Zurich
A-nar-char-sis	Cho-ro-ès	Dyr-ra-chi-um	é-cho
a-na-cho-rète	Chal-da-l-que	chi-ro-man-cie	scho-li-s
ar-chan-ge	Chal-dée	chœur	cha-li-bé
ar-chan-gel	cha-os	cho-ris-te	chon-dril-la
ar-ché-type	ché-li-doi-ne	or-ches-tre	chi-ra-gre
ar-chon-tes	cher-so-nè-se	i-cho-reux	ar-cha-is-me
ar-chi-é-pis-co-pal	chi-li-ar-que	cho-rè-ge	
chal-cé-doi-ne	chal-co-gra-phie	Na-bu-cho-do-no-sor	
eu-cha-ristie	ca-té-chu-mé-ne		
	Za-cha-rie		

EXAMPLES OF *cht* AS *k*.

Yacht }
U-trecht } are pronounced { Yak } without sounding the *t*.
Mace-tricht } { Utrek }
 } { Matrik }

Ch has the hard sound of *g* in *drachme*, but is silent in *almanach*. On account of their Italian ori-

* The harsh sound of *ch* is heard in words of Greek or oriental etymology, which have not yet become popular and are not entirely Frenchified.

gin, *vermicelle* and *violoncelle* are, by some, pronounced *violonchelle*, *vermichel*.

Ch has uniformly the sound of *k*, in all words where it is followed by a consonant, as *Christ*, *chrétien*, *chloris*, *chronique*, *isochrone*, *chronomètre*. *Arachné*, *ichneumon*, *technique*, &c.

D, d, is sounded as in English.

Dé-da-le	<i>labyrinth</i>	Dry-ade	<i>Dryad</i>
do-du	<i>plump</i>	dro-ma-dai-re	<i>dromedary</i>
din-don	<i>turkey</i>	dé-di-ca-toi-re	<i>dedicatory</i>

D is always sounded in the middle of words, as *adjectif*, *adverbe*, *admirable*.

It is likewise heard at the end of proper names, as in *David*, *Obed*, *Gad*, *Alfred*, &c. and in some other words, as *Cid*, *Sud*, *Sund*, *Talmud*, *éphod*, *lamed*. *D* final, before a word beginning with a vowel, is sounded as *t*, as *quand il viendra*; *un grand homme*; *vend-il*? which are pronounced *quan-til-viendra*, &c. The *d* final of the following words is always silent in *bond*, *gond*, *fond*, *nid*, *nœud*, *muid*, and *pied*; except in *de fond en comble*, *de pied en cap*, *tenir pied-à-boule*, *avoir un pied-à-terre*, where it is sounded as *t*.

Double *d* is heard in some few words derived from the Latin, as in *ad-dition*, *ad-ducteur*, *red-dition*.

F, f, is sounded like the same letter in English.

EXAMPLE.

Far-fa-det	<i>hobgoblin</i>	fé-bri-fuge	<i>febrifuge</i>
fau-fi-ler	<i>to baste (in sewing)</i>	fruc-tu-fi-er	<i>to fructify</i>
fet-fa	<i>edict of the Mussli</i>	fi-fre	<i>fifer</i>
fan-fa-ron	<i>boaster</i>	for-fait	<i>crime</i>

Final *f* is sounded in all nouns and adjectives ending in *af*, *ef*, *if*, *af*, as *href*, *brief*, *chef*, *fief*, *nef*.

nerf, grief, serf, relief, méchef, Azof, lof, tof, tuf, ouf, pouf, œuf, veuf, bœuf, and neuf (new); *f* is silent in *clcf, éteuf, chef-d'œuvre, œuf frais*, and in these plurals *nerfs, œufs, bœufs, neufs* (new). In *neuf* (nine) when alone, or when it terminates the sentence, *f* is distinctly sounded, but it takes the sound of *v* before a vowel, and is silent before a consonant.

Double *f* is generally sounded as one *f* alone; however, in some few words, as *effusion, affadir, effraction*, it seems more proper to sound both.

G, g, has { before *a, o, u*, the hard sound of *g* in the English word *go*,
and before *e, i, y*, the soft sound of *s* in *pleasure*.

EXAMPLES OF *g* HARD.

Gan-grè-ne	gangrene	gut-tu-ral	guttural
Gro-nin-gue	Groningen	gom-me	gum
gal	cheerful	glacé	looking-glass
go-gue-nard	joker	Gor-go ne	Gorgon

EXAMPLES OF *g* SOFT.

Geai	jay	gé-né-ral	general
gé-or-gl-ques	georgics	gens	people
gen-re	gender	gin-gem-bre	ginger
gé-mir	to groan	gym-ni-que	gymnastic

G final is hard in *joug*, and in proper names, as *Agag, Doeg*. When *rang, sang, long*, precede a word beginning with a vowel, *g* final is sounded as *k*. It is silent in *faubourg, Luxembourg, bourg, Bourg-l'abbé, Bourg-la-Reine, &c.*; and likewise in *sang-sue, de sang froid, sang-de-dragon*, in *rang, sang, long* before a consonant, and always in *doigt, legs, poing, vieux-vingt, hareng, étang, seing, and vingt*.

Bourg-mestre is pronounced *bourgue-mestre*, and by some persons it is now, and not improperly, written in this latter manner.

Gu forms a distinct syllable in *ar-gu-er*, *aiguë*, *sur-aiguë*, *ciguë*, *ambiguë*, *contiguë*, *exiguë*, and *bésaiguë*. **Gui** is sounded as a diphthong, that is, the two vowels are heard in *aiguille*, *aiguillade*, *aiguillon*, and in the proper names, *d'Aiguillon*, *de Guise*, *le Guide*. But the *u*, in the inflections of more than forty verbs ending in *guer*, and in many other words, where it stands before *e* and *i*, as intended only to give to *g* the hard sound, is entirely silent, as in *anguille*, *aiguère*, *aiguade*, *bague*, *bègue*, *figue*, *dogue*, *fougue*, *fugue*, *onguent*, *langue*, *longue*, *nargue*, *vergue*, *morgue*, *distingue*, *gué*, *gui*, *guérir*, *guinder*, *guise*, *languir*, *guinguette*, &c.

Gua takes the mixed sound of the diphthong *goua* in some few words, as *lingual*, *paraguante*, *Guadeloupe*, *Guadalquivir*, *Guatemala*, *Guastalla*.

Double *g* is only sounded before *e* and *i*, then the first *g* retains the *hard*, and the second adopts the *soft* sound, as in *suggérer*, *suggillation*.

G before *h*, and before several consonants, in the middle of words, retains its *hard* sound, as in *Berghen*, *Enghien*, *église*, *énigme*, *segment*, *amygdales*. Before *l* there are two exceptions, in the words *imbroglio* and *de Broglio*, where it is sounded liquid, as in *seraglio*, and these words are generally pronounced as if written *imbroille*, *de Broille*.

Gn has two sounds: one *hard* as in the English word *ignorant*, and the other liquid, as in the last syllable of *onion*.

EXAMPLES OF THE HARD SOUND.

Gni-de	gna-pha-li-nm	ag-na-ti-que	rég-ni-cole
Gno-me	gnos-ti-que	cog-na-ti-que	mag-né-sie
gno-mi-de	ag-nat	ag-nus	stag-nant
gno-mi-que	ag-na-ti-on	ig-née	stag-na-ti-on
gno-mon	cog-nat	ig-ni-cole	di-ag-nos-ti-que
gno-mo-ni-que	cog-na-ti-on	ig-ni-ti-on	mag-nata

EXAMPLES OF LIQUID SOUNDS.

di-gni-té	dignity	ré-gner	to reign
i-gno-rant	ignorant	cham-pa-gne	Champaign
com-pa-gnie	company	Bou-lo-gne	Boulogne
si-gner	to sign		
ré-pu-gner	to feel a repug- nance		

G is silent in *signet* and *Regnard*, which are pronounced *sinet*, *Renard*.

H is sometimes aspirate, sometimes mute, as in English; thus, *l'homme*, *le héros*; but there is this difference that the breathing is much softer in French than in English.

H IS ASPIRATED IN

'Habler	to romance
'ha-che	axe
'ha-ïr	to hate
'har-pe	harp
'haut	high
'hé-ros *	hero
'hé-ris-son	hedge-hog
'hideux	hideous
'hon-te	shame
'hur-ler	to howl

H IS MUTE IN

ha-bit	coat
her-be	grass
heu-re	hour
heu-reux	happy
hé-roïne *	heroine
hé-roïque *	heroic
hé-roïs-me *	heroism
his-toi-re	history
hi-ver	winter
hor-reur	horror

The aspirate *h* is generally marked in dictionaries, as no general rule can be given on the subject.

H is never aspirated in the middle of a word, except when that word is the compound of another, beginning with an *h* aspirated, as in *s'acheurter*, *déhaler*, *déhanché*, *déharnacher*, *enharnacher*, *s'enharnacher*, *dehors*.

N.B.—Though there is no aspirated *h* before *onze*, *onzième*, and *oui*, it is customary to pronounce and write *le onze*, *le onzième*, and not *l'onze*, *l'onzième*; we say likewise *le oui* et *le non* without elision.

* Observe that *h* is aspirated in *héros*, but not in its derivatives
2**

S final in *mes, tes, ses, nos, vos, leurs, ces*, and *les*, is never sounded when placed before the words *ous, onze*, as *tous vos oui et vos non; sur les onze heures*. nor even before *une* in *sur les une heure*.

For what concerns *h*, placed after *c* or *g*, see the remarks on those letters.

H, after *r* or *t*, is always silent, as *rhéteur, Rhône, rhubarbe, thé, Thomas, thym*.

J, j, has constantly the sound of *z* in *azure*, or of *s* in *pleasure*.

EXAMPLE.

jus	gravy	jou-jou	toy
ja-mais	never	ju-ju-be	jujube
jo-vi-al	jovial	jeu-nes-se	youth

K, k has always a hard sound, as in the English word *king*.

This letter can hardly be considered as belonging to the French alphabet, as it is found only in some few words borrowed from foreign languages, as

Kan-ga-ron	kangaroo	ki-os-que	Turkish pavilion
ker-mès	cochineal	ky-ri-elle	tedious enumeration.

L, l has two sounds, the { first, is precisely the same as *l* in the English words *lily, law, &c.*
 second, resembles that of *ll* in *brilliant*, in which case *l* is called *l mouillée* (liquid.)

EXAMPLE OF THE FIRST

La-té-ral	lateral	li-las	lilac
lé-gis-la-teur	legislator	lo-cal	local
li-bel-le	libel	lu-ni-so-lal-re	lunisolar

SECOND SOUND.

It is impossible to define exactly the peculiar liquid sound which *l* has in French, in combinations of letters such as these, *ail, eil, œil, euil, ouil, aill, eill, euill, ouill, &c.*; it must be heard from the mouth of a native. It may not be useless, however, to make the following observation, that that liquid sound does not in the least affect that of the vowel or combination of vowels which precede or follow *il, ill*. Thus, in *tailleur*, the sound of *ta* and *eur* must be pure and distinct; nearly as if the word were thus spelt, *ta-ieur*; the liquid sound of *ill*, forming a sort of diphthong with the last syllable. In *bouillon*, *bou* must be pure and distinct, thus, *bou-ion*; in *treillage*, *trè* is also pure—thus, *trè-iage*. In *bail, travail, sommeil*, the liquid sound is final, and is sounded something between *ie* and *lie*, but rapidly and as it were whispered, *ba-ie, tra-va-ie, so-mè-ie*: when followed by a word beginning with a vowel, this final liquid sound blends itself with it thus, *travail utile, tra-va-iu-tile; sommeil agréable, so-mmè-ia-gré-able*.

EXAMPLES.

écureuil	é-ca-reu-ie	a squirrel
merveilleux	mer-vè-ieux	wonderful
gazouillage	ga-zou-iage	warbling
orgueil	or-gueu ie	pride
orgueilleux	or-gueu-ieux	proud
œillade	eu-ia-de	glance
oreille	o-rè-ie	ear
périlleux	pé-ri-ieux	dangerous
treillage	trèi-age	lattice work
bouillon	bou-ion	broth

Il final is liquid in *babil, avril, Brésil, cil, mil, péril*, but the *l* is silent in *baril, chenil, coutil, fenil, fusil, outil, gril, nombril sourcil persil*. In *file*, a son, the

l is silent, but it is sounded, though not liquidly, in *fil*, thread; *fil*s, threads; *poil*, hair.

Observe that *Milhaut*, *Pardalhac*, and *Sully*, proper names, are pronounced *liquid*, contrary to the established rule, and that the two latter are nearly the only known instances of an *l* or *ll* sounded *liquid*, without being immediately preceded by the vowel *i*.

Ill, is not liquid in *illégal*, *illuminer*, *distiller*, *instiller*, *osciller*, *scintiller*, *titiller*, *vaciller*, *fritillaire*, *imbécille*, *mille*, *tranquille*, *ville*, *Achille*, *campanille*, *codicille*, *fibrille*, *Gill*, *maxillaire*, *pupille*, *la Sibylle*, and *sille*. But it is liquid in *famille*, *fille*, *charmille*, *souquenille*, *carillon*, *piller*, *pillage*, &c.

Double *l* is sounded in the following words, *allégorie*, *allusion*, *appellatif*, *appellation*, *belligérant*, *belliqueux*, *collation de bénéfices*, *follicule*, *malléole*, *velléité*, *collusion*, *constellation*, *constellé*, *ébullition*, *Gallican*, *Gallicisme*, *intellect*, &c. *malléable*, *médullaire*, *palliatif*, *pellicule*, *équipoller*, *hellénisme*, and in proper names, as *Apollon*, *Bellone*, *Dolabella*, *Pallas*, *Sylla*, &c.

M, *m*, corresponds in sound with the same letter in English.

EXAMPLES.

Mar-me-la-de	marmalade	mo-mie	mummy
mar-mot-te	marmot	mo-ment	moment
mé-mo-ra-ble	memorable	Mu-sul-man	Musliman
mir-mi-don	myrmidon	mur-mo-re	murmur
mi-mi-que	mimic	mys-tè-re	mystery

M final is nasal and not sounded in *faim*, *daim*, *nom*, *renom*, *parfum*; it is not nasal, and is sounded in *Amsterdam*, *Rotterdam*, *Sem*, *Cham*, *item*, *Jérusalem*, *Sédim*, *Ibrahim*, and most proper names, except *Joachim*.

M, *n*, are both articulated in *amnistie*, *calomnie*, *hymne*, *insomnie*, *indemnité*, (pr. *indamnité*), *somnam-*

bule, automnal, but are sounded as one *n* alone in *automne, damner*, and derivatives.

Double *m* is sounded as one *m*, except in words beginning with *imm*, such as *immortel, immensité*. In compound words such as *emmancher, emmener*, the preposition is heard distinctly *en-man-cher*; *Emmanuel* is pronounced *Emanuel*. In *femme, différemment, ardemment*, the *e* preceding *mm* is sounded *a*, *fa-me*; but in *lemme*, *e* is sounded *è*. See Observations,

N, n, is sounded as in English.

EXAMPLES.

Né-na-sar	<i>Nenuphar</i>	non-ne	<i>non</i>
na-ti-o-nal	<i>national</i>	Ni-ni-ve	<i>Nineveh</i>
no-mi-nal	<i>nominal</i>	noc-tur-ne	<i>nocturnal</i>
no-na-gé-nai-re	<i>a man of ninety</i>	nym-phe	<i>nymphe</i>

N nasal, see Tables I and II and observations following.

Gn have two sounds, which see at letter *g*.

The termination *ent* of the third person of verbs is sounded *e*, *ils parlent, ils aimeraient*, pr. *ils par-le, ils ai-me-raie*.

Double *n* is not sounded except in *an-nexe, annal, an-nuel, an-notation, annuler, in-né, in-nové, innovation*, and a few other cases.

En final, and in all the persons of *venir, tenir*, and their compounds, is sounded like *in*, *ancien, mien, chien, citoyen, il vient, il tiendra*.

En is sounded nasally at the beginning of the following compound words, *enivrer, enamourer, enorgueillir, ennuyer, enhardir, enharmonique*.

P, p is sounded as in English.

EXAMPLES.

Pa-pit-lon	<i>butterfly</i>	pou-pée	<i>doll</i>
pe-pin	<i>pippin</i>	po-pu-lai-re	<i>popular</i>
pied-plat	<i>mean fellow</i>	pour-pre	<i>purple</i>
prin-ci-pe	<i>principle</i>	pur-pu-rin	<i>purplish</i>
pro-pos	<i>discourse</i>	py-ra-mi-de	<i>pyramid</i>

Ph is sounded as *f*, *philosophe*, *phosphore*, *physique*.

P is sounded distinctly in *adapter*, *adopter*, *capter*, *captieux*, *baptismal*, *aptitude*, *exception*, *exemption*, *inept*, *contempteur*, *gypse*, *Septembre*, *Septuagésime*, *corruption*, *rupture*, *apsides*, *rapsodies*, *symp tome*, *rédemption*, *rédempteur*; but is silent, in *baptême*, *baptiser*, *baptistère*, *Baptiste*, *exempt*, *exempter*, *sculpter*, *sculpteur*, *sculpture*, *je romps*, *il corrompt*, *sept*, *septième*, *temps*, *printemps*, *prompt*, and derivatives.

Final *p* is always sounded in *Alep*, *cap*, *Gap*, *jalap* and *julep*, it is also heard in *trop*, *beaucoup*, and *coup*, when before a vowel, but never in *champ*, *camp*, *drap*, *loup*, *sirop*, and *galop*.

In *aps*, *relaps*, and *rapt*, both the final consonants are pronounced, but both are silent in *ceps de vigne*.

Double *p* is sounded as one only.

Q, has generally the sound of *k* in *king*.

Qu has three sounds, { *ke*, by far the most general before any vowel.
kou, before *a* in some particular words.
ku before *e*, or *i* in some others.

EXAMPLES OF *k*.

<i>Quai</i>	<i>wharf</i>	<i>ques-tion</i>	<i>question</i>
<i>qua-li-té</i>	<i>quality</i>	<i>sé-ques-tre</i>	<i>sequestration</i>
<i>quel-que</i>	<i>some</i>	<i>queue</i>	<i>tail</i>
<i>qui-con-que</i>	<i>whosoever</i>	<i>a-queux</i>	<i>watery</i>
<i>qui-pro-quo</i>	<i>blunder</i>	<i>a-que-duc</i>	<i>aqueduct</i>
<i>quo-li-het</i>	<i>pun</i>	<i>é-qui-vo-que</i>	<i>ambiguity</i>
<i>quin-qui-na</i>	<i>Feruvian bark</i>	<i>se re-quin-quer</i>	{ <i>to trick oneself</i> <i>out</i>
<i>que-nouil-le</i>	<i>distaff</i>		

&c. &c. &c.

EXAMPLE OF *hox*.

A-qua-ti-que	<i>aquatic</i>	qua-ter-ne	<i>quaternion</i>
É-qua-teur	<i>equator</i>	qua-dra-gé-naire	} <i>a man of forty</i>
É-qua-ti-on	<i>equation</i>	qua-dra-gé-si-mal	
qua-cre	<i>quaker</i>		} <i>quadragesimal</i>
qua-dra-ture	<i>quadrature</i>	a-qua-ti-le	
qua-dri-ge	{ <i>ancient chariot, with four horses</i>	a-quar-el-le	<i>water colour</i>
qua-dru-pè-de	<i>quadruped</i>	li-qua-tion	<i>liquation</i>
qua-dru-ple	<i>quadruple</i>	in quar-to	<i>quarts sicc</i>
		lo-qua-ci-té	<i>loquacity</i>

EXAMPLE OF *hu*.

E-ques-tre	<i>equestrian</i>	é-qui-mul-ti-ple	<i>equi-multiple</i>
li-qué-fac-tion	<i>liquefaction</i>	é-qui-ta-tion	<i>horsemanship</i>
ques-teur	<i>questor</i>	quin-tu-ple	<i>quintuple</i>
ques-tu-re	<i>questura</i>	quin-tile	<i>quintile</i>
quin-quen-nium	<i>quinquennium</i>	quin-quen-nal	<i>quinquennial</i>
é-qui-la-tè-re	{ <i>of equal dimensions</i>	quin-dé-cem-viro	<i>quindecimviri</i>
é-qui-la-té-ral	<i>equilateral</i>	quin-qué-rème	<i>ancient galley</i>
é-qui-an-gle	<i>equiangular</i>	quin-quer-ce	{ <i>a term of the ancient gymnasium</i>
é-qui-dis-tant	<i>equi-distant</i>		

In *quinguagénaire*, a man of fifty, and *quinguagé-sime*, quinquagesima, the first syllable corresponds with the sound of *qu* in *équestre*, and the second corresponds with the sound of *qu* in *aquatique*. Q final is sounded in *cog*, *cing*, except when *cing* precedes a word beginning with a consonant, *cing livres*.

R, is sounded as in English.

EXAMPLES.

Ra-re-té	<i>scarcity</i>	rhyth-me	<i>rhythm</i>
ra-asu-rer	<i>to hearten</i>	sour-dre	<i>to spring</i>
ra-bou-gri	<i>stunted</i>	cour-roux	<i>wrath</i>
re-brou-sser	<i>to recoil</i>	il cour-ra	<i>he will run</i>
ri-gou-reux	<i>rigorous</i>	cor-ro-de-ra	<i>it will corrode</i>
rom-pre	<i>to break</i>	cor-ro-bo-re-ra	{ <i>it will corroborate</i>
rou-vrir	<i>to open again</i>	ir-ra-dia-ti-on	
ru-gir	<i>to roar</i>	ir-ro-ra-ti-on	<i>irrigation</i>
ru-ral	<i>rural</i>	tor-ré-fac-ti-on	<i>torrefaction</i>
rus-tre	<i>a boor</i>		

R is always sounded at the end of words after the vowels *a, i, o, u*, except in *Monsieur*, in which it is silent.

Er, ier, the terminations of the infinitive of verbs of the first conjugation, and of many adjectives and nouns, are pronounced *é* and *ie*. *Parler, marcher, jouer, premier, singulier, cordonnier, boulanger*.

But in the following words the termination *er* is pronounced *air*.

REMARKS

Cher	dear	ou-tre-mer	ultramarine
fer	iron	bel-vé-der	belvidere
ver	worm	Lu-ci-fer	Lucifer
mer	sea	Pa-ter	{ the Lord's prayer
fier	haughty	fra-ter	hair-dresser
gas-ter	stomach	ma-gis-ter	{ village school- master
hi-er	yesterday	Stat-hou-der	Stadtholder
hi-ver	winter	Ju-pi-ter	Jupiter
a-mer	bitter	Al-ger	Algiers
can-cer	cancer	Gess-ner	Gessner
en-fer	hell	Ni-ger	Niger, = river
é-ther	ether	cuiller	a spoon
a-vant-hier	{ the day before yesterday		

In terminations like *ers, ert, erd, art, -ard, arts, ort, ord, ords, orts, r* alone is sounded *canard, morts, pervers*.

When the following adjectives and a few others precede a substantive beginning with a vowel, the *r* is sounded, that is, there is what is called a *liaison*.

<i>R</i> sounded	{	Le premier acte	the first act
		son dernier ouvrage	his last work
		un singulier événement	a singular event
		un entier abandon	an entire cession
		un léger obstacle	a slight obstacle
<i>R</i> not sounded	{	Il est le premier à vous promettre et le dernier à vous tenir parole.—He is the first to promise, and the last to keep his word.	

R not sounded

C'est un homme *léger* et inconstant, *entier* en tout ce qu'il veut, et *singulier* en tout ce qu'il fait.—He is a *light versatile* character, *positive* in all he undertakes, and *singular* in all he does.

Final *r* in the present of the infinitive of all the verbs, of the first conjugation, may be sounded when preceding a word beginning with a vowel; in conversation, this distinction is, however, seldom observed.

Rh. See *n*.

Double *r* is not sounded, except, 1st, in *aberration*, *abhorrer*, *horreur*, *errer*, *torréfier*, and their derivatives: 2dly, in words beginning with *irr*, as *irrévocable*, *irrégulier*, *irruption*, &c.; 3rdly, in the future and conditional of the verbs *acquérir*, *courir*, *mourir*, and their derivatives—*j'acquerrai*, *je mourrais*, *nous cour-rions*, &c.

S, s has two { *hard*, as in the English word *sister*.
sounds, { *soft*, as in *rose* and *please*.

S has the hard or hissing sound at the beginning of words, and the soft sound, in the middle, between vowels.

EXAMPLES.

Sai-son	season	sour-noi-se	a sullen woman
sal-sie	scisure	sup-po-sez	suppose
sé-sa-me	se-samum	sé-dui-sant	alluring
si-se	situate	Su-se	Susa
sou-bi-se	soubise	Sy-ra-cu-se	Syracuse
sot-ti-se	silly action	Syn-thè-se	Synthesis
ous-en-ten-te	{ mental reser- vation		

In *Sbire*, *Svelte*, *Sganarelle* and *Sdili* for *Delos*, it has the *soft* sound; and, in familiar conversation, *aller à Sedan*, *il est le second de sa classe*, are pronounced as if these words were written *azdan*, *le zgon*. Before *ch*, *s* is mute, as in *Schall*, *Schaffhouse* *Schelling*, *Schiste* *Schorl*.

Sh 11. *shérif*, a sheriff, is sounded as in English.

Sce, *sci*, *scy*, are pronounced as *se*, *si*, *sci*, at the beginning of words, and as double *s*, in the middle, as *Scène*, *science*, *Scythie*, &c. *efferves-cence*, *efflores-cence*, *turges-cence*, *incandes-cence*, *reminis-cence*, *resipis-cence*, *mis-cible*, *res-cinder*, *sus-ception*, *sus-citer*, *lus-citation*, *vis-cère*, *vis-céral*, *trans-cendance*, and a few others. But *sc* before *a*, *o*, *u*, and *l*, *r*, have the hard sound of *sk*, as *scapulaire*, *scolie*, *sclérotique*, *scribe*, *esclave*, *scrupule*, &c.

S has the *hard* sound, in the middle of a word, when preceded or followed by a consonant, as in *transe*, *transir*, *Transylvanie*, *convulsion*, *valse*, *espace*, *ustensile*, *statistique*, *jasmin*, *dispos*, *aspirant*, *prisme*, *digestion*, *austérité*, *obstacle*, &c. &c. &c. However, it takes the *soft* sound, or that of *z*, in *Alsace*, *Arsace*, *Asdrubal*, *asbeste*, *balsamine*, *balsamique*, *bisbille*, *Israël*, *Israélite*, *Esdras*, *Thisbé*, *presbitère*, *transaction*, *transiger*, *transitoire*, *intransitif*, *transalpin*, *Lesbos*, *Isboseth*, *Brisgaw*, *Ryswick*, *Louisbourg*, *Augsbourg*, *Presbourg*, *Philipsbourg*, and some few others.

S takes the *soft* sound when between two vowels, as in *base*, *Thèse*, *bise*, *rose*, *ruse*, &c. Except compound words, in which it has the *hard* sound of the initial *s* of the radical word, as in *désuétude*, *entresol*, *monosyllable*, *polysyllable*, *parasol*, *tournesol*, *préséance*, *présupposer*, *resaisir*, *resaluer*, *vraisemblable*, and some derivatives.

Final *s* is heard in *as*, *atlas*, *argus*, *bibus*, *blocus*, *bolus*, *agnus*, *foetus*, *sinus*, *Phébus*, *les*, *us*, *virus*, *aloes*, *bis*, *jadis*, *iris*, *gratis*, *lapis*, *les lis*, *la Lys*, (a river), *maus*, *métis*, *vis*, *tournevis*, *Amadis*, *Adonis*, *Paris* (the shepherd), *pathos*, *Athos*, *Lesbos*, *Minos*, *Délos*, *Paros*, *Brutus*, *Vénus*, *Régulus*, *Protésilas*, *Blas*, *Gil Blas*, *Las Casas*, *Rheims*, *Sens*, *Mars*, *Rubens*, *Cérès*, *Damoclès*, finally in all Latin words not in common

use, and in proper names, Greek, Latin and foreign, &c. But it is always silent as the mark of the plural, *les hommes, les chats, les livres, les canifs, les chefs*, &c. in all persons of verbs, *tu parlas, tu mangeais, nous rions*, &c. in all words in common use, *repas, des bas, cas, appas, trépas, tapis, souris, propos, clos, depuis, toujours*, &c. and in *Jésus-Christ, fleur-de-lis*.

The *s* final of an adjective, pronoun and adverb, is joined to the initial vowel of the next word, and has the soft sound, *vous avez*, pron : *vous zavez*.

Though there is no *s* in *quatre*, yet, before *yeux*, it is, in conversation, pronounced as if there were one, *quatre zieux*.

Finally, double *s* is commonly sounded as one, as in *je ressassasse, assassinasse, Mississipi*, etc. There are some words, however, in which the double *s* is heard, as *assation, assonance, dissonance, accessible, inaccessible, admissible, inadmissible, missive, scissile, scission, scissure, fissure, fiaspède, assentiment, asservir*. Thus there is a difference in pronunciation between these phrases: *C'est un homme à SENTIMENS, il aime à SERVIR ses amis*, and *il faut son ASSENTIMENT, cet ambitieux voudrait ASSERVIR l'univers*, and again between *l'alun de plume est SCISSILE*, and *LA SICILE est une île triangulaire*, &c.

T is sounded as in English.

EXAMPLES

Tac-ti-que	tactics	a-mi-tié	friendship
tes-ta-teur	testator	sou-tien	support
thé-â-tre	theatre	nous par-tions	we were going
to-ta-li-té	totality	ti-are	tiara
tour-te-rel-le	turtle	bas-ti-on	bastion
ti-tu-lai-re	titulary	bi-jou-tier	jeweller
ti-thy-ma-le	tichymal	Ma-thi-as	MATTHIAS
chré-tien	christian	Pon-thieu	Ponthieu
le tien	thine	tu sou-tiens	thou supportest
pitié	piety	&c. &c. &c.	

Ti is sounded *ci* in words derived from the Greek or the Latin languages, in all words ending in *tion*, *attention*, *portion*, &c. except *question*, *gestion*, *digestion*, *combustion*, *mixture*. In all words ending in *tie*, *démocratie*, *inertie*, *ineptie*, &c. except *partie*, *modestie*, *dynastie*, *Eucharistie*, *hostie*, *repartie*.

Tieux, *tial*, *tient*, are also sounded *cieux*, *cial*, *cient*, *ambitieux*, *captieux*, *patient*, *patienter*.

Tien final is sounded *cien*, in names of nations and proper names, *Doctétien*, *Egyptien*, *Béotien*.

EXAMPLES.

Par-tial	<i>partial</i>	pa-tient	<i>patient</i>
par-tia-li-té	<i>partiality</i>	pa-tien-ter	<i>to bear patiently</i>
par-tiel	<i>partial</i>	Gal-la-tie	<i>Galatia</i>
pa-tien-ce	<i>patience</i>	Bé-o-tie	<i>Beotia</i>
im-pa-tien-ce	<i>impatience</i>	ac-tion	<i>action</i>
quo-tient	<i>quotient</i>	bal-bu-tier	<i>to stammer</i>
cap-tieux	<i>captious</i>	i-ni-tier	<i>to initiate</i>
ar-gu-tie	<i>cavil</i>	bal-bu-tia	<i>he stuttered</i>
can-tio-nne-ment	} <i>bail</i>	bal-bu-tie-ment	<i>stammering</i>
am-bl-tion		i-ner-tie	<i>inertness</i>
am-bl-tio-nner	<i>to wish</i>	Vé-ni-tien	<i>Venetian</i>

Th is sounded as a single *t*, *théologie*, *théâtre*, *thé*. In the combinations *st*, the *s* and *t* are heard distinctly. **T** final is not heard; *goût*, *rat*, *défaut*, *statut*, &c. except in the following words: *apt*, *rapt*, *fat*, *mall*, *mat*, *pat*, *opiat*, *exeat*, *transeat*, *vivat*, *spalt*, *spath*, *Goliath*, *net*, *fret*, *tacet*, *Thibet*, *aconit*, *déficit*, *granit*, *introît*, *prétérît*, *transit*, *subit*, *dot*, *Astaroth*, *azimut*, *brut*, *comput*, *chut*, *bismuth*, *indult*, *lut*, *occiput*, *sinciput*, both *s* and *t* are articulated in *Le Christ*, *Pest* (east) *l'ouest*, *Brest*, *lest*, *test*, *Pest*, *toast*, and *entre le zist et le zest*; but neither of these letters is heard in *Jésus-Christ*, which is pronounced *Jésus-Cri*.

The final *t* of *sept*, *huit*, is heard at the end of a

sentence, and before a vowel, but not before a consonant, *j'en ai huit, huit livres, sept ans.*

In words ending in *art, est, ort, ourt*, the *t* final is silent. *T* is always silent in the conjunction *et*, which is pronounced *é*.

Double *tt* is not heard except in *atticisme, attique, Atticus, guttural*, and *pittoresque*.

V, v, has the same sound in French as in English.

EXAMPLES.

Val-ve	valve	vi-vo-ter	to live poorly
val-vu-le	valvule	vi-re-vol-to	{ quick irregu-
vau-de-vil-le	ballad		lar walk.
ver-ve	poetic fire	vi-re-veau	windlass
vi-va-ce	vivacious	veu-ve	widow
vis-à-vis	opposite	veu-va-ge	widowhood
vi-vre	to live		

W is generally pronounced as single *v* in *Wolf-ram, Warwick, Windsor, Walcourt, Wallon, Warsovie, Westphalia, Wirtemberg, Wolga, Weser, Wendover, Rysswick, &c.* except in *wist* and *wiski*, where it has the English sound; but, in *Newton*, the first syllable *new* is pronounced as *neu*, in *neutralité*.

X, x, has the four different sounds of { *ks*, in *axe, expense*
gz, in *exhibit, exhale*
ss, in *bliss, mossy*
z, in *Xenophon*

EXAMPLES OF THE FIRST SOUND, *ks*.

axe	axis	Xan-tip-pe	Xantippe
sexe	sex	o-xy-gène	oxygen
ri-re	altercation	pa-ra-do-xe	paradox
bo-xer	to box	flu-xi-on	defluxion
lu-xe	luxury	ex-sic-ca-ti-on	exsiccation
ex-cé-der	to exceed	ex-suc-cion	exsuction
ex-cel-ter	to excel	ex-su-da-ti-on	exsudation
ex-cès	excess	ex-su-der	exude
ex-cep-tar	to except	ex-ci-per	{ to plead an ex-
ex-ci-se	excise		ception
A-lex-an-dre	Alexandre		

EXAMPLES OF THE SECOND SOUND, *gz*.

Xa-vi-er	<i>Xaverius</i>	ex-au-cer	{ <i>to hear favor-</i>
Xé-no-phon	<i>Xenophon</i>		{ <i>away</i>
ex-il	<i>exile</i>	ex-haus-ser	<i>to raise</i>
ex-or-de	<i>exordium</i>	ex-hi-ber	<i>to produce</i>
ex-ubé-ran-ce	<i>exuberance</i>	ex-hu-mer	<i>to diminish</i>
ex-a-men	<i>examination</i>		

EXAMPLES OF THE THIRD SOUND, *ss*.

Aix	<i>Aix</i>	Soixante	<i>Sixty</i>
Aix-la-Chapelle	<i>Aix-la-Chapelle</i>	Bruxelles	<i>Brussels</i>
Auxerre	<i>Auxerre</i>	Luxeu-il	<i>Luxeuil</i>
Auxonne	<i>Auxonne</i>		

EXAMPLES OF THE FOURTH SOUND, *s*.

Deuxième	<i>second</i>	dix écus	<i>ten crowns</i>
sixième	<i>sixth</i>	dix hommes	<i>ten men</i>
dixième	<i>tenth</i>	deux aunes	<i>two ells</i>
dix-huit	<i>eighteen</i>	beaux yeux	<i>fine eyes</i>
dix-neuf	<i>nineteen</i>	&c. &c.	

The first sound of this letter, (*ks*,) is by far the most general, and is found in words beginning with *exce*, *exci* and *exs*.

The second sound (*gz*) takes place in all words beginning with *x* or *ex*, followed by a vowel, or the letter *h*, as *le Xanthe*, *Xénocrates*, *Ximenès*, *exorable*, and several others with those already mentioned in the second examples.

The third sound *ss* is only found in the above examples, and in *six* and *dix*, when unaccompanied by substantives, as in *de seize ôlez six*, *reste dix*, where *six* and *dix* are pronounced with the hissing sound of *ss* in the English word *bliss*.

The final *x* of adjectives, *doux*, *heureux*, and such like, is silent before a consonant, and has the fourth sound when before a vowel, *doux accent*, *heureux père*,

The *x* final of *six*, *dix*, is sounded like *ss* at the end of a sentence, *il en a dix* ; like *z*, before a vowel, *il a dix ans*, and is silent before a consonant, *six livres*.

X final is silent, *je veux*, *prix*, *perdrix*, *feux*, *flux*, &c. except *Ajax*, *Astianax*, *borax*, *storax*, *Halifax*, *Hipponax*, *Dax*, *climax*, *thorax*, *Pertinax*, *Syphax*, *index*, *perplex*, *Béatrix*, *Erix*, *Félix*, *préfix*, *phénix*, *Fox*, *Palafox*, *Coysevox*, *lynx*, *sphinx*, *larynx*, *syrinx*, *onyx*, *Styx*, and *Pollux*.

N.B.—*X* takes the sound of *sh* only in *Don Quixote*, generally pronounced *Don Kishot*, or rather *Don Ghishot*.

Z, *z*, is generally pronounced as *z* in *zone*, or *s* in *rose*.

REMARKS

Zi-za-nie	zare	zig-zag	zigzag
zé-nith	zenith	zio-co-lin	reddish purple
zo-ne	zone	Zuy-der-zée	Zuyder-see

In *assez*, *chez*, *nez*, and in the second person of verbs, *vous avez*, *vous parlez*, the termination *ez* is pronounced *és*.

In proper names, especially Spanish names, the same termination *ez* is sounded *èce*, *Alvarez*, *Senez*, and also in *Metz*.

ZZ in Italian words is either sounded as one *z* or according to Italian pronunciation, by those to whom it is familiar.

12. PRACTICAL EXERCISES

ON THE PRONUNCIATION OF MONOSYLLABLES.

Grand	<i>fat</i>	il prend	<i>he takes</i>
ma	<i>my</i>	ceint	<i>girl</i>
ta	<i>thy</i>	cinq	<i>five</i>
sa	<i>his, her, it</i>	sain	<i>wholesome</i>
la	<i>the, her, i</i>	sein	<i>bosom</i>
las	<i>tired</i>	saint	<i>holy</i>
pas	<i>step</i>	seing	<i>signature</i>
un plat	<i>a dish</i>	il rend	<i>he returns</i>
bac	<i>ferry-boat</i>	il sent	<i>he smells, feels</i>
sac	<i>sack, bag</i>	je vends	<i>i sell</i>
arc	<i>arch, bow</i>	je	<i>i</i>
parc	<i>park</i>	me	<i>me</i>
bal	<i>ball</i>	ne	<i>not</i>
cap	<i>cape</i>	te	<i>thee</i>
car	<i>for</i>	ce	<i>this, that</i>
par	<i>by, through</i>	se	<i>himself, etc.</i>
part	<i>share</i>	le	<i>the, him, it</i>
art	<i>art</i>	de	<i>of</i>
cha	<i>chariot</i>	lé	<i>breadth</i>
dara	<i>dart</i>	né	<i>born</i>
lard	<i>bacon</i>	maia	<i>but</i>
tard	<i>late</i>	mes	<i>my, pl.</i>
quand	<i>when</i>	tes	<i>thy, pl.</i>
rang	<i>rank</i>	ses	<i>his, her, its, pl.</i>
blanc	<i>white</i>	les	<i>the, them</i>
sans	<i>without</i>	pré	<i>meadow</i>
dans	<i>in</i>	près	<i>near</i>
gland	<i>acorn</i>	prêt	<i>ready</i>
pan	<i>skirt of a coat</i>	ver	<i>worm</i>
cran	<i>notch</i>	vers	<i>towards</i>
plant	<i>plantation</i>	vert	<i>green</i>
plan	<i>plan</i>	il pera	<i>he loses</i>
flanc	<i>flank</i>	il sert	<i>he serves</i>
grand	<i>great</i>	peur	<i>fear</i>
en	<i>in</i>	il meurt	<i>he dies</i>
il fend	<i>he splits</i>	pleurs	<i>tears</i>
gens	<i>people</i>	leur	<i>their, them</i>
lent	<i>slow</i>	sel	<i>salt</i>
main	<i>hand</i>	tel	<i>such</i>
il ment	<i>he lies</i>	quel	<i>which</i>
il pend	<i>he hangs</i>	sec	<i>dry</i>

bec	bec	roc	rock
chef	chief	bloc	block
bref	short	troc	exchange
neuf	new	dot (pr. dote)	dowry
Est	East	on	one, people. they
vingt	twenty	bon	good
crin	horse-hair	bond	bound
lia	flax	ton	thy
hria	spring	son	his, her, its
pain	bread	ils sont	they are
pin	fine	mon	my
vin	wine	don	gift
fi	fy	dont	of which, etc.
filu	son	done	therefore
frit	fried	front	forehead
lis	lily	rond	round
pria	taken	blond	light (hair)
prix	price	pont	bridge
ris	laugh	long	long
ris	rice	fond	bottom
ni	neither, nor	ils font	they do
nid	nest	jone	rush
ni	if	non	no
il	he did	gond	hinge
man	put	nou	name
pin	folds	plomb	lead
fil	thread	na	naked
vil	vile	du	of the, sing. m.
vif	lively	il dut	he owed
tot	fool	bru	daughter-in-law
tôt	soon	brut	rough
clon	shut up	il but	he drank
clon	our	cru	raw
von	your	il crut	he believed
gros	big	je fus	I was
trop	too much	jus	juice
trot	trot	lu	read
croc	hook	il lut	he read
or	gold	plus	more
bord	edge	tu	thou
fort	strong	vu	seen
tort	wrong	flux	flux
je sors	I go out	glu	bird-slime
sor	fate	duc	duke
port	port	suc	juice
il mord	he bites	sur	upon
vol	theft	mur	wall
choc	shock	nul	no, none

bout	<i>end</i>	mon	<i>soft</i>
joug	<i>yoke</i>	tout	<i>all</i>
nous	<i>we, us</i>	toux	<i>cough</i>
vous	<i>you</i>	pon	<i>louse</i>
clou	<i>nail</i>	cour	<i>yard</i>
cou	<i>neck</i>	il pleut	<i>it rains</i>
coup	<i>blow, stroke</i>	peu	<i>little, few</i>
trou	<i>hole</i>	il veut	<i>he is willing</i>

13. ON DISSYLLABLES.

OR WORDS OF TWO SYLLABLES.

A-bus	<i>abuse</i>	bri-gand	<i>rubber</i>
a-chat	<i>purchase</i>	bras-que	<i>abrupt</i>
ac-teur	<i>actor</i>	bru-te	<i>brute</i>
â-ge	<i>age</i>	bu-fet	<i>cupboard</i>
ai-greur	<i>acidity</i>	bu-reau	<i>office</i>
â-me	<i>soul</i>	bus-te	<i>bust</i>
a-nneau	<i>ring</i>	ca-deau	<i>present</i>
ar-deur	<i>ardour</i>	ca-fé	<i>coffee</i>
ar-gent	<i>money</i>	ca-hot	<i>jolt</i>
as-tre	<i>star</i>	ca-non	<i>cannon</i>
au-cun	<i>none</i>	ca-ve	<i>cellar</i>
a-veu	<i>confession</i>	cau-se	<i>cause</i>
a-vis	<i>advice</i>	cer-cle	<i>circle</i>
au-tre	<i>other</i>	ci-seau	<i>chisel</i>
bal-con	<i>balcony</i>	clé-ment	<i>clement</i>
ban-que	<i>bank</i>	cli-mat	<i>climate</i>
bar-que	<i>a bark</i>	cloi-son	<i>partition</i>
ba-teau	<i>boat</i>	co-hue	<i>mob</i>
bâ-ton	<i>stick</i>	co-mmun	<i>common</i>
beau-té	<i>beauty</i>	com-pas	<i>compasses</i>
bè-gue	<i>stammerer</i>	com-te	<i>earl</i>
bê-te	<i>beast</i>	con-gé	<i>holiday</i>
heur-re	<i>butter</i>	con-te	<i>tale</i>
bi-ble	<i>bible</i>	co-quin	<i>rogue</i>
blâ-me	<i>blame</i>	cor-deau	<i>line</i>
bon-heur, pr. bo-	} <i>happiness</i>	côté	<i>side</i>
nheur		cou-ple	<i>couple</i>
bonté	<i>goodness</i>	cou-reur	<i>runner</i>
bos-quet	<i>grove</i>	cou-sain	<i>cushion</i>
bou-quet	<i>nosegay</i>	cou-vent	<i>convent</i>
bour-geon	<i>bud</i>	cré-me	<i>cream</i>
bour-ra	<i>surly</i>	cri-me	<i>crime</i>
bra-ssier	<i>brewer</i>	crot-te	<i>dirr</i>

croû-te	<i>crust</i>	hai-ne	<i>hatred</i>
da-me	<i>lady</i>	' hai-le	<i>market-hall</i>
dan-seur	<i>dancer</i>	' har-pe	<i>harp</i>
dé-bit	<i>sale</i>	' hà-te	<i>haste</i>
de-bout	{ <i>standing up</i> <i>right</i>	' hau-teur	<i>height</i>
de-mi	<i>half</i>	' ha-sard	<i>chance</i>
dé-pôt	<i>deposit</i>	' hè-tre	<i>beech</i>
dé-sert	<i>wilderness</i>	hom-me, pr. ho-	} <i>man</i>
dessert	<i>dessert</i>	mme	
dis-cours	<i>speech</i>	hon-neur, pr. ho-	} <i>honour</i>
dou-leur	<i>pain</i>	mmmm	
é-cu	<i>crown</i>	' hon-te	<i>shame</i>
en-clin	<i>inclined</i>	hor-reur	<i>horror</i>
en-fant	<i>child</i>	hò-te	<i>landlord</i>
é-poux	<i>spouse</i>	hu-main	<i>human</i>
es-poir	<i>hope</i>	im-pie	<i>impious</i>
é-tain	<i> pewter</i>	ju-ge	<i>judge</i>
ex-cès	<i>excess</i>	jour-née	<i>day</i>
fea-tin	<i>feast</i>	lai-teux	<i>milky</i>
fê-te	<i>festival</i>	la-quais	<i>footman</i>
fi-lon	<i>pickpocket</i>	lar-cin	<i>theft</i>
fla-con	<i>decanter</i>	lar-geur	<i>breadth</i>
flam-beau	<i>flambeau</i>	li-queur	<i>liquor</i>
flû-te	<i>flute</i>	lo-gis	<i>dwelling</i>
fo-rêt	<i>forest</i>	lon-gueur	<i>length</i>
fou-dre	<i>thunderbolt</i>	mar-bre	<i>marble</i>
four-mi	<i>ant</i>	mar-chand	<i>tradesman</i>
fri-pon	<i>knave</i>	ma-ri	<i>marriage</i>
fu-reur	<i>fury</i>	mè-re	<i>mother</i>
gaie-té	<i>cheerfulness</i>	meu-ble	<i>furniture</i>
gar-çon	<i>boy</i>	mon-de	<i>world</i>
gâ-teau	<i>cake</i>	mon-tre	<i>monster</i>
ga-zon	<i>turf</i>	mou-le	<i>mould</i>
gen-dre	<i>son-in-law</i>	mou-lin	<i>mill</i>
gen-re	<i>gender</i>	ni-gaud	<i>silly fellow</i>
gi-got	<i>leg of mutton</i>	nou-veau	<i>new</i>
gla-çon	<i>piece of ice</i>	œu-vre	<i>work</i>
gou-té	<i>luncheon</i>	on-guent	<i>ointment</i>
gout-te	<i>drop</i>	or-dre	<i>order</i>
grâ-ce	<i>savour</i>	ou-bli	<i>oblivion</i>
gron-deur	<i>grumbler</i>	pa-rent	<i>relation</i>
gru-au	<i>gruel</i>	par-rain, pr.	} <i>godfather</i>
guê-re	<i>little</i>	pa-rain.	
guer-re	<i>war</i>	pâ-te	<i>dough</i>
gueu-le	{ <i>mouth (of a</i> <i>beast)</i>	pâ-té	<i>pie</i>
gui-de	<i>guide</i>	pat-te	<i>paw</i>
		pê-che	<i>fishing</i>
		pé-ché	<i>sin</i>

pê-cheur	<i>fisherman</i>	sau-ce	<i>sauce</i>
pê-cheur	<i>stunner</i>	sau-teur	<i>tumbler</i>
pei-ne	<i>trouble</i>	sé-jour	<i>residence</i>
pein-tre	<i>painter</i>	si-gnal	<i>signal</i>
pè-re	<i>father</i>	si-gne	<i>sign</i>
peu-ple	<i>people</i>	som-bre	<i>dark</i>
pen-reux	<i>fearful</i>	sou-hait	<i>wish</i>
pin-te	<i>pin</i>	sou-pe	<i>soup</i>
plu-me	<i>feather</i>	sou-ri	<i>smile</i>
por-trait	<i>picture</i>	su-cre	<i>sugar</i>
pour-pre	<i>purple</i>	sus-pec	<i>suspicious</i>
prin-ce	<i>prince</i>	ta-che	<i>spot</i>
pru-neau	<i>prune</i>	tâ-che	<i>task</i>
ra-goût	<i>ragout</i>	tam-bour	<i>drum</i>
rè-gle	<i>rule</i>	tom-beau	<i>grave</i>
rè-gne	<i>reign</i>	to-me	<i>column</i>
rei-ne	<i>queen</i>	tou-pie	<i>top</i>
ren-te	<i>annuity</i>	tour-neur	<i>turner</i>
ré-ve	<i>dream</i>	traî-neau	<i>sledge</i>
ri-re	<i>laughing</i>	trô-ne	<i>throne</i>
rou-te	<i>road</i>	trou-peau	<i>flock</i>
ru-se	<i>trick</i>	ven-ve	<i>widow</i>
sa-bre	<i>sabre</i>	vi-gne	<i>vine</i>
sa-lut	<i>salute</i>	zè-le	<i>zeal</i>
sa-tin	<i>satin</i>	zé-lé	<i>zealous</i>

14. WORDS OF THREE SYLLABLES.

A-bî-me	<i>abyss</i>	ba-bio-le	<i>bauble</i>
a-bré-gé	<i>abridgment</i>	bas-set-se	<i>baseness</i>
a-bri-cot	<i>apricot</i>	bâ-ti-ment	<i>building</i>
ab-so-lu	<i>absolute</i>	bé-le-ment	<i>bleating</i>
ab-sur-de	<i>absurd</i>	ber-gè-re	<i>shepherdess</i>
ac-tri-ca	<i>actress</i>	bê-ti-se	<i>stupidity</i>
a-fai-re	<i>business</i>	bien-fai-sant	<i>benevolent</i>
am-pou-le	<i>blister</i>	bien-sé-ant	<i>becoming</i>
a-p-pé-tit	<i>appetite</i>	bien-ve-nu	<i>welcome</i>
à-pré-té	<i>arperity</i>	blan-châ-tre	<i>whitish</i>
a-rai-gnée	<i>spider</i>	bles-su-re	<i>wound</i>
ar-moi-re	<i>cabinet</i>	boi-se-rie	<i>wainscot</i>
ar-tis-te	<i>artist</i>	bor-du-re	<i>edging</i>
as-si-du	<i>assiduous</i>	bou-lan-ger	<i>baker</i>
a-tro-co	<i>atrocious</i>	bou-ta-de	<i>whim</i>
au-ber-ge	<i>egg</i>	bou-ti-que	<i>shop</i>
a-voi-ne	<i>oats</i>	bras-se-rie	<i>brewhouse</i>
aus-tè-re	<i>auster</i>	bra-rou-re	<i>walker</i>

bren-va-ge	<i>drink</i>	cre-moi-si	<i>crimson</i>
bro-de-rie	<i>embroidery</i>	cré-du-le	<i>credulous</i>
brou-et-te	<i>wheelbarrow</i>	cri-ti-que	<i>critic</i>
biû-li-re	<i>burning</i>	cru-au-té	<i>cruelty</i>
brus-que-ment	<i>bluntly</i>	cui-si-ne	<i>kitchen</i>
ca-de-nas	<i>padlock</i>	cui-bu-te	<i>tumble</i>
cam-pa-gne	<i>country</i>	cu-re-dent	<i>tooth pick</i>
ca-ré-me	<i>lent</i>	dé-com-brea	<i>rubbish</i>
car-ross-e	<i>coach</i>	dé-goû-tant	<i>disgusting</i>
cein-tu-re	<i>girdle</i>	dé-jêû-ner	<i>breakfast</i>
ce-pen-dant	<i>however</i>	de-meu-ra	<i>abode</i>
cham-pi-gnon	<i>mushroom</i>	dés-ho-nneur	<i>dishonour</i>
cha-pe-lier	<i>hatter</i>	des-po-te	<i>despot</i>
cha-pe-le	<i>chapel</i>	dis-ci-ple	<i>pupil</i>
cha-pi-tre	<i>chapter</i>	dis-grâ-ce	<i>disgrace</i>
char-la-tan	<i>quack</i>	dro-guis-te	<i>druggist</i>
char-ret-te	<i>cart</i>	droi-tu-re	<i>uprightness</i>
châ-ti-ment	<i>chastisement</i>	é-cha-faud	<i>scaffold</i>
chau-de-ment	<i>warmly</i>	é-chel-le	<i>ladder</i>
chau-diè-re	<i>copper</i>	é-che-veau	<i>sketch</i>
chauf-fa-ge	<i>fuel</i>	é-cu-me	<i>froth</i>
chau-sou-re	<i>shoes, stockings</i>	em-pe-reur	<i>emperor</i>
ci-viè-re	<i>hand-barrow</i>	em-plâ-tre	<i>plaster</i>
cla-ve-cin	<i>harpsichord</i>	em-plet-te	<i>purchase</i>
clo-a-que	<i>sewer</i>	en-clu-me	<i>anvil</i>
co-li-que	<i>colic</i>	en-ga-geant	<i>engaging</i>
co-l-lé-ge	<i>college</i>	en-ne-mi	<i>enemy</i>
co-lli-ne	<i>hill</i>	en-sei-gne	<i>sign</i>
co-lo-nne	<i>column</i>	é-pa-gneul	<i>spaniel</i>
co-lo-ria	<i>colouring</i>	é-pi-ce	<i>spice</i>
co-mé-die	<i>comedy</i>	é-pi-cier	<i>grocer</i>
co-mé-dien	<i>comedian</i>	é-pou-se	<i>wife</i>
co-mmer-çant	<i>merchant</i>	es-ca-lier	<i>stair-case</i>
com-pa-gnie	<i>company</i>	es-pa-ce	<i>space</i>
com-pa-gnon	<i>companion</i>	es-pè-ce	<i>kind</i>
con-dui-te	<i>behaviour</i>	es-quis-se	<i>sketch</i>
con-qué-rant	<i>conqueror</i>	es-tri-gon	<i>stragon</i>
con-quê-te	<i>conquest</i>	é-tei-gnoir	<i>extinguisher</i>
cons-tam-ment	<i>constantly</i>	é-tour-di	<i>thoughtless</i>
con-ti-gu	<i>contiguous</i>	é-vê-ché	<i>bishoprick</i>
cor-do-nnier	<i>shoemaker</i>	é-veil-lé	<i>awake</i>
co-ri-a-ce	<i>tough</i>	ex-cès-sif	<i>immoderate</i>
cor-ni-chon	<i>girkia</i>	ex-em-ple	<i>example</i>
cou-chet-te	<i>couch</i>	fa-bu-leux	<i>fabulous</i>
cou-ro-nne	<i>crown</i>	fa-ça-de	<i>front</i>
cou-te-las	<i>hanger</i>	faï-en-ce	<i>delft ware</i>
cou-te-lier	<i>cutler</i>	fa-ri-neux	<i>mealy</i>
cou-tu-re	<i>seam</i>	fa-rou-che	<i>fierce</i>

fi-las-se	<i>flax</i>	mé-tho-de	<i>method</i>
fieu-ris-se	<i>florist</i>	mo-dés-tie	<i>modesty</i>
fai-bles-se	<i>weakness</i>	mon-ta-gnard	<i>highlander</i>
fo-ù-tre	<i>playful</i>	mou-tar-de	<i>mustard</i>
fou-droy-ant	<i>thundering</i>	mur-mu-re	murder
four-bi-asseur	<i>sword-cutter</i>	na-tu-rel	<i>natural</i>
four-ru-re	<i>fur</i>	naù-fra-ge	<i>shipwreck</i>
fram-boi-se	<i>raspberry</i>	né-an-moins	<i>nevertheless</i>
fri-su-re	<i>curling</i>	no-bles-se	<i>nobility</i>
froi-ssu-re	<i>bruising</i>	noi-râ-tre	<i>blackish</i>
gi-ro-flé	<i>cloves</i>	o-bli-geant	<i>obliging</i>
go-be-let	<i>goblet</i>	om-bra-ge	<i>shade</i>
gou-lû-ment	<i>speedily</i>	o-pro-bre	<i>disgrace</i>
gué-ri-son	<i>cure</i>	o-ra-geux	<i>stormy</i>
gui-man-ve	<i>marsh-mallow</i>	or-fè-vre	<i>goldsmith</i>
ha-lei-ne	<i>breath</i>	or-phe-lin	<i>orphan</i>
'har-di-ment	<i>boldly</i>	pa-moi-son	<i>fainting fit</i>
'ha-ri-cot	<i>French bean</i>	pan-tou-flé	<i>slipper</i>
hor-lo-ge	<i>clock</i>	pa-pe-tier	<i>stationer</i>
hor-ri-ble	<i>horrid</i>	pa-ra-sol	<i>umbrella</i>
hò-tes-se	<i>landlady</i>	pa-ren-te	<i>kinswoman</i>
i-gno-rant	<i>ignorant</i>	pa-rois-se	<i>parish</i>
im-men-se	<i>immense</i>	pa-sa-ble	<i>tolerable</i>
im-pu-ni	<i>unpunished</i>	poi-sa-er-de	<i>fishwoman</i>
in-cen-die	<i>conflagration</i>	poi-tri-ne	<i>breast</i>
in-con-su	<i>unknown</i>	por-tiè-re	<i>coach door</i>
in-gé-nu	<i>ingenuous</i>	pos-tu-re	<i>posture</i>
i-nhu-main	<i>inhuman</i>	po-ta-ge	<i>porridge</i>
in-sec-te	<i>insect</i>	pou-ssiè-re	<i>dust</i>
ins-truc-tif	<i>instructive</i>	pré-tex-te	<i>pretence</i>
i-voi-re	<i>theory</i>	prin-cés-se	<i>princess</i>
i-vro-gne	<i>drunkard</i>	pro-mes-se	<i>promise</i>
ja-quet-te	<i>jacket</i>	pro-tec-teur	<i>protector</i>
jour-na-lier	<i>journeyman</i>	pu-é-ri-l	<i>childish</i>
lai-tiè-re	<i>milk woman</i>	pui-san-ce	<i>power</i>
lan-gou-reux	<i>languishing</i>	que-rel-le	<i>quarrel</i>
len-til-le	<i>lentil</i>	ra-piè-re	<i>rapier</i>
li-ma-çon	<i>snail</i>	ra-tiè-re	<i>rat-trap</i>
ma-ga-sin	<i>warehouse</i>	ré-col-te	<i>crop</i>
mal-a-droit	<i>awkward</i>	ré-ser-vé	<i>reserved</i>
ma-nœu-vre	<i>labourer</i>	re-sour-ce	<i>resource</i>
mar-mi-ton	<i>scullion</i>	re-trai-te	<i>retirement</i>
mas-cu-lin	<i>masculine</i>	ré-ve-rie	<i>meditation</i>
mé-con-tent	<i>discontented</i>	rou-geâ-tre	<i>reddish</i>
mé-moi-re	<i>memory</i>	rus-ti-que	<i>rural</i>
mé-na-ger	<i>thrifty</i>	scan-da-leux	<i>scandalous</i>
men-son-ge	<i>falsehood</i>	scrupu-leux	<i>scrupulous</i>
mé-pria-e	<i>mistake</i>	mé-an-ce	<i>sitting</i>

<i>un a-re</i>	<i>lock</i>	<i>thé-à-tre</i>	<i>theatre</i>
<i>si-fle-ment</i>	<i>whistling</i>	<i>thé-iè-re</i>	<i>tea-pot</i>
<i>sim-ple-ment</i>	<i>plainly</i>	<i>toi-let-te</i>	<i>toilet</i>
<i>so-bri-quet</i>	<i>nick name</i>	<i>tour-ne-vis</i>	<i>screw-driver</i>
<i>so-le-nnel, pro-nounced la</i>	} <i>solemn</i>	<i>tou-te-fois</i>	<i>nevertheless</i>
<i>so-nnet-te</i>		<i>tri-che-rie</i>	<i>cheat</i>
<i>so-no-re</i>	<i>little bell</i>	<i>tri-om-phe</i>	<i>triumph</i>
<i>sou-cou-pe</i>	<i>sonorous</i>	<i>trom-pet-te</i>	<i>trumpet</i>
<i>soup-ço-nneux</i>	<i>saucer</i>	<i>tu-mul-te</i>	<i>tumult</i>
<i>spec-ta-cle</i>	<i>suspicious</i>	<i>va-can-ces</i>	<i>holidays</i>
<i>splen-di-de</i>	<i>sight</i>	<i>ver-get-te</i>	<i>brush</i>
<i>suc-ce-sseur</i>	<i>splendid</i>	<i>ver-mi-seau</i>	<i>small worm</i>
<i>su-pré-me</i>	<i>successor</i>	<i>vic-toi-re</i>	<i>victory</i>
<i>symp-tô-me</i>	<i>supreme</i>	<i>vi-gou-reux</i>	<i>vigorous</i>
<i>tein-tu-re</i>	<i>symptom</i>	<i>vi-lla-geois</i>	<i>countryman</i>
<i>ten-dres-se</i>	<i>dyeing</i>	<i>voi-tu-re</i>	<i>carriage</i>
<i>té-né-breux</i>	<i>tenderness</i>	<i>xé-phir</i>	<i>sephyrus</i>
	<i>darkness</i>		

15. OF GENDER.

There are but two genders in French, the masculine and feminine.

The masculine gender expresses the male kind, as *un homme*, a man; *un lion*, a lion.

The feminine gender denotes the female kind, as *une femme*, a woman; *une lionne*, a lioness.

The French language has no neuter; consequently, inanimate objects are either masculine or feminine. Foreigners experience great difficulty in that respect, for, as the article, pronoun and adjective which refer to a noun, must agree with it in *gender*, as well as in *number*, much attention must be paid to ascertain the former. To enable them to do this, no general rules can efficiently be given, on account of the numberless exceptions which occur. We think that *ear* and *practice* are the safest and most correct guides which can be followed, and, in fact, they are the only ones which the French themselves have,

who hardly ever make a mistake, if we except the uneducated ; we, therefore, strongly recommend them to the English learners. Unwilling, however, to withhold from them any part of the assistance they may look for in a grammar like this, we will give some general rules with their exceptions.

16. GENERAL RULES,

TO ASCERTAIN THE GENDER OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVES IN
FRENCH, WITH THEIR EXCEPTIONS.

1. God, his angels, cherubim and seraphim, are of the masculine gender.

2. All *diminutives of animals*, when there is but one common denomination for both sexes, are of the masculine gender, whatever may be the gender of the root from which they are derived, as *un lionceau, un souriceau, un perdreau, un cornillas, un carpillon, un couleuvreau, un vipereau, un bécasseau*, &c. except *une bécassine* ; but these two latter, although derived from the word *bécasse*, and belonging to the *genus*, are not of the same *species*. In other cases, the diminutives follow the gender their sex indicates, as *un poulain, une pouliche, un cochet, une poulette*.

3. Diminutives of inanimate objects generally follow the gender of their roots, as *batelet, maisonnette, globule*, from *bateau, maison, globe*, &c. ; but *un corbillon, un soliveau, un cruchon, une savonnette, un trousseau*, from *la corbeille, la solive, la cruche, le savon*, and *la trousse*, and many others do not.

4. All the names of the days, months, and seasons of the year, are of the *masculine gender*, except *automne*, which is of both genders ; when, however,

the diminutive *mi* (half) is prefixed to the name of a month, the compound word then takes the feminine gender, as *la mi-mai*, *la mi-août*, *la mi-carême*; *mi* standing for *demi*, f.; *la St. Jean*, *la St. Michel*, and other saints' days are feminine; *fête de* being understood, as *la FÊTE DE St. Jean*.

NAMES	{	of <i>trees</i> , except <i>yeuse</i> , a sort of oak.	}	ARE FEMININE.
		of <i>shrubs</i> , with some exceptions,		
		of <i>metals</i> , without excepting <i>platine</i> , formerly feminine,		
		of <i>minerals</i> , a few excepted,		
		of <i>colours</i> , without excepting <i>l'Isabelle</i> , <i>le Feuille-morte</i> , &c. though they have a feminine termination.		
NAMES	{	of <i>mountains</i> , except when the words <i>Montagne côle</i> , are understood; <i>les Cordillères</i> , <i>les Alpes</i> .	}	ARE MASCULINE.
		of <i>winds</i> , except <i>la bise</i> , <i>la tramontane</i> , <i>la brise</i> , and <i>les moussons</i> .		
		of <i>towns</i> , except those which necessarily take the article <i>la</i> before them, as <i>la Rochelle</i> , <i>la Ferté-sur-Aube</i> , &c. and others.		

7. Ordinal, distributive, and proportional numbers, adjectives, and infinitives of verbs, prepositions and adverbs, all these, when used substantively, are masculine, as *le tiers*, *le quart*, *un cinquième*, *le quadruple*, *le beau*, *le sublime*, *le boire*, *le manger*, *le mieux*, *le pour*, *le contre*, *un parallèle*, (a comparison,) &c. except *la moitié*, and the elliptical forms of speech, *une courbe*, *une tangente*, *une perpendiculaire*, *une parallèle*, *une antique*, used for *une ligne courbe*, *une ligne tangente*, &c. *Antique* is feminine, for the same reason; the word *médaille*, or *statue* appearing to be understood.

8. Names of *virtues* are of the feminine gender, except *courage*, *mérite*.

17. GENDERS OF NOUNS,

TO BE KNOWN FROM THEIR TERMINATION.

9. The termination in an *e* mute, is called a feminine termination ; any other is called masculine. This distinction arises probably from the circumstance that most nouns of the feminine gender end with an *e* mute, thus *la table, la rivière, la rue, la plante, la tête, la fenêtre* ; but to this general rule there are innumerable exceptions, which we will notice as we speak of other terminations.

10. *Names of states, empires, kingdoms and provinces* are of the gender which their terminations indicate ; except *le Bengale, le Mexique, le Péloponèse. le Maine, le Perche, Rouergue, le Bigorre, le Vallage, la Franche-comté*, and perhaps a few more.

11. The names of fruits, grain, plants, and flowers, follow pretty generally the gender of their terminations, but there are too many exceptions to be introduced here.

18. TABLE,

SHOWING THE GENDER OF ALL WORDS WHICH DO NOT END
IN *e* MUTE.

MASCULINE.		FEMININE.	
0 0	-té	{ amitié, inimitié, mis- tié, pitié }	4
11 { Aparté, arrêté, béné- dité, comté, côté, été, pâté, traité, lé, thé, Lethé }	-té	{ absurdité, beauté, charité, cité, di- gnité, fidélité, gé- nérosité, etc. etc. . }	500
40 { alibi, biribi, lundi, gui, grand merci, etc. }	-i	{ Fourmi, merci, ga- gui, après-midi . . }	■
15 convoi, effroi, etc.	-oi	{ foi, loi, paroi }	3
30 { ergo, vertigo, indigo, etc }	-o	{ albugo, virago }	2
10 { fichu, cru, écu, tissu, etc. }	-u	{ bru, glu, tribu, ver- tu. }	4
200 { aloyau, anneau, etc. etc }	-au	{ eau, peau, surpeau, sans-peau }	4
<hr/>			
6 { bref, chafef, chef, fief, grief, relief. }	-ef	{ clef, nef, seif. }	3
3 { daim, essaim, abat- faim }	-aim	{ faim, male-faim }	2
100 { an, ban, cran, écran, pan, etc }	-an	{ maman }	1
200 { bain, baïse-main, a- vant-main, garde- main, tourne-main, essuie-main, gain, frein, basin, etc. . . }	-in	{ fin, main, nonnain. . . }	5
<hr/>			
4 { scion, bastion, hes- tion, Ixion }	{ -cion -sion -tion -gion -nion -xion }	{ suction, cersion, fric- tion, gestion, ré- gion, opinion, ré- flexion, fluxion, etc. etc. etc. }	1100
30 { gabion, taudion, mil- lion, lion, ardélion, fourmilion, trémi- on, capion, turion, camion, lampion, septentrion, brim- borion, gavion, etc. }	{ -bion -dion -lion -mion -pion -rion -vion }	{ rébellion, dent-déli- on, alluvion }	3

MASCULINE.

FEMININE.

8	{ alcyon, clayon, crayon, rayon, sayon, trayon, lamproyon, Amphictryon. . . }	-yon	.....	0
1	brise-raison.	-aison	cargaison, etc. etc. . .	30
11	{ pesson, bison, grison, groison, horizon, sison, tison, oison, poison, contre-poison, buson. . . }	{ -esson -ison -uson }	{ garnison, guérison, prison, trahison, cloison, foison, moison, pamoison, toison, canuson. . }	11
15	{ basson, caisson, cavesson, taïsson, poisson, cosson, buisson, frisson, hérisson, maudisson, nourrison, palisson, polisson, unisson, saucisson, courson. . . }	-asson	{ païsson, boïsson, moïsson, cuïsson, saïsson mousson. . }	6
4	{ arcanson, échanson, tenson, pinson. . }	-anson	{ chanson. }	1
20	{ charançon, caveçon, courçon, pinçon, suçon, etc. . . }	-çon	{ façon, contrefaçon, malfaçon, leçon, rançon. }	5
30	bridon, guéridon, etc. .	-don	condon.	1
150	{ tendron, jeune tendron, baron, etc. . }	{ -lon -ron }	{ laidron, souillon, taillon. }	3
70	{ abattis, apprentis, iris, tourne-vis, etc. . }	-is	{ brebis, souris, chœvre-souris, vis iris. }	5
15	{ bois, mois, carquois, harnois, etc. . . }	-ois	fois	1
12	{ adent, chiendent, li-ondent, claquedent, cure-dent, occident, trident, etc. . . }	{ -dent -gent }	{ dent, surdent, gent. . . }	3
00	{ acharnement, assortiment, etc. . . }	-ment	jument	1
250	{ ballet, billet, bosquet, minuit, conduit, réduit, etc. billet, brulot, complot, etc. bout, goût, ragoût, etc. }	{ -et -uit -ot -out }	{ forêt, nuit, dot, glout. . }	4
15	{ paix, choix, crucifix, prix, etc. taux, houx, courroux, époux, etc. }	{ -ix -aux -oux }	{ paix, croix, noix, poix, voix, perdrix, chaud, faux, toux. }	9

20	{ art, départ, champart, rempart, effort, port, sort, tort, etc. . . . }	-art -ort	{ hart, part, mort, ma-lemort }	4
40	{ fer, ver, hiver, etc. air, éclair etc. tour, contour, four, etc. }	-er -air -our	{ cuiller, mer, cha't, cour, tour }	6
900	{ bonheur, malheur, labeur, honneur, déshonneur, cœur, anticœur, crève-cœur, chœur, chou-fleur, pleurs, équateur, secteur, etc. }	-eur	{ aigreur, ampleur, ardeur, blancheur, candeur, chaleur, chandeleur, clameur, couleur, douceur, douleur, épaisseur, erreur, fadeur, défaveur, ferveur, fleur, }	76

passer-fleur, sans-fleur, fraîcheur, frayer, froideur, fureur grandeur, grosseur, hauteur, horreur, honneur, laideur, longueur, largeur, lenteur, liqueur, longueur, lourdeur, lueur, maigreur, moiteur, noirceur, odeur, pâleur, pesanteur, peur, primeur, profondeur, puanteur, pudeur, impudeur, rigueur, raideur, rondeur, roigeur, rousseur, rumeur, saveur, senteur, sœur, souleur, splendeur, sueur, teneur, terreur, tiédeur, torpeur, touffeur, tumeur, valeur, non-valeur, vapeur, verdure, vigneur, and mœurs; besides basseur, rancœur, trémeur, three words now obsolete, making in the whole the number of seventy-six

There are a great many proper names of females, which, though they may not have the feminine termination, are of that gender, as the learner, from their nature, will easily comprehend; such are, among the heathens, *Pallas, Cérés, Thétis, Vénus, Junon, Didon, etc.* Among christian names, *Sara, Deborah, Elizabeth, Agnès, etc.* and many of these are contractions, as *Fanchon* for *Fanny*, *Lison*, *Louison*, *Marion*, *Manon*, *Nanon*, *Jeanneton*, *Madelon*, *Tonton*, *Catant*, *Margot*, *Goton*, *Babet*, *Babeau*, *Isabeau*.

As this list of exceptions will be found pretty accurate, all other nouns, that belong to this termination, must be strictly considered as being of the masculine gender, since they are not enumerated in this Table.

19. A TABLE OF SUBSTANTIVES.

THAT ARE MASCULINE IN ONE SIGNIFICATION AND FEMININE
IN ANOTHER.

MASCULINE.		FEMININE.
<i>Assistant, helper</i>	<i>Aide</i>	<i>Aid, help, support</i>
<i>eagle, a great genius</i>	<i>aigle</i>	<i>a standard</i>
<i>an angel</i>	<i>ange</i>	<i>a kind of thornback</i>
<i>an alder tree</i>	<i>aune</i>	<i>an ell, a sort of measure</i>
<i>barb, a Barbary horse</i>	<i>barbe</i>	<i>beard</i>
<i>Bard, a poet</i>	<i>barde</i>	<i>{ a slice of bacon, horse- armour</i>
<i>red-breast</i>	<i>berce</i>	<i>cow-parsnip</i>
<i>a sort of privateer</i>	<i>câpre</i>	<i>caper (a fruit)</i>
<i>a scroll or ornament in painting</i>	<i>cartouche</i>	<i>cartouch, cartridge</i>
<i>a caravan, a boy</i>	<i>coche</i>	<i>a notch, a row</i>
<i>cornet, a standard bearer</i>	<i>cornette</i>	<i>a woman's head-dress</i>
<i>a couple, a man and wife</i>	<i>couple</i>	<i>a brace, a pair, two of a sort</i>
<i>Croat, a Croatian soldier</i>	<i>cravate</i>	<i>a cravat, neckcloth</i>
<i>a crape</i>	<i>crêpe</i>	<i>a pancake</i>
<i>an echo</i>	<i>écho</i>	<i>Echo, a nymph</i>
<i>ensign, an officer</i>	<i>enseigne</i>	<i>a sign post</i>
<i>example, model, instance</i>	<i>exemple</i>	<i>a copy for writing</i>
<i>a gimlet, a piercer</i>	<i>forêt</i>	<i>a wood, a forest</i>
<i>a large vat</i>	<i>foudre</i>	<i>lightning, thunderbolt</i>
<i>keeper, warden</i>	<i>garde</i>	<i>watch, hill, nurse</i>
<i>hoar frost</i>	<i>givre</i>	<i>a snake (in heraldry)</i>
<i>the rolls, a register</i>	<i>greffe</i>	<i>a graft</i>
<i>gules in heraldry</i>	<i>gueule</i>	<i>the mouth of beasts</i>
<i>guide, director</i>	<i>guide</i>	<i>reins in driving</i>
<i>heliotrope, sunflower</i>	<i>héliotrope</i>	<i>heliotrope, jasper</i>
<i>iris, the rainbow, iris of the eye</i>	<i>iris</i>	<i>{ sprig-crystal, a proper name</i>
<i>lacker, a kind of varnish</i>	<i>laque</i>	<i>lacca, gum-lac</i>
<i>a book</i>	<i>livre</i>	<i>a pound</i>
<i>a hat of otter's hair</i>	<i>loutre</i>	<i>an otter</i>

N B. Of this table it is to be remarked, that the French word stands in the middle column and its signification on the right hand and on the left. When it has the meaning which stands on the left, it is masculine; when that which stands on the right it is feminine.

MASCULINE.

handle of a tool
a labourer
mainoir, a bill
thanks
wood, mode
a pier, or mound
would, cast, form
a ship-boy
the philosopher's stone
office, prayers
ombre, a game at cards
angular is mas.
page of a prince, etc.
a merry andrew

a hand's breadth

pantomime
Easter, Easter-day
a comparison
pendulum
le Perche, in France
summit, highest pitch
anybody, nobody (a pro-
noun)
spade, at cards
guatnapper, a bird
a plane-tree
a stove, a canopy
post, a military station
punto at cards
purple colour, purples, }
(a disease)
a pretence

quadril at cards

the calling back a hawk
rest, relaxation
a glass coach
a sort of pear-tree
Satyr, a sylvan god
serpentarius
nap, slumber
a smile
a porter
holder, a book-keeper
a tour, turn, trick
triumph

manche
manœuvre
mémoire
merci
mode
môle
moule
mousse
œuvre
office
ombre
orgue
page
pailleuse

palme

pantomime
pâque
parallèle
pendule
perche
période

personne

pique
pivoine
plane
poêle
poste
ponte

pourpre

prétexte

quadrille

réclame
relâche
remise
sans-peau
satyre
serpenteaire
somme
souris
suisse
teneur
tour
triomphe

FEMININE.

a cleave, English chimney
the working of a ship
memory
pity, mercy
fashion
mole, moun-calf
muscle, a shell-fish
moss, a plant
action, an author's work
pantry, larder, buttery
shade, shadow
plural is feminine
page in a book
a straw bed
{ the branch of a palm
tree, victory
a dumb show
the passover
a parallel
a clock
pole, perch, a fish
period, epocha

a person, (a noun)

a pike
peony, a flower
plane, an instrument
a frying-pan
the post for letters
the laying of eggs

purple fish, purple dye

pretext
{ party of horse in a tour-
namant
a catch-word (in printing)
harbour
a coach-house, a remittance
a sort of pear
a satire, a lampoon
snake-root, dragon's wort
run, load, name of a river
a mouse
Switzerland
tenor, purport, contest
tower, rook at chess
a trump

<i>trumpeter</i>	<i>trompette</i>	<i>trumpet</i>
<i>space</i>	<i>vague</i>	<i>a wave, surge</i>
<i>a vase, vessel</i>	<i>vase</i>	<i>{ the slime in ponds, lakes,</i> <i>etc.</i>
<i>a hat of vigoña wool</i>	<i>vigogne</i>	<i>a vigoñ, or llama</i>
<i>a veil</i>	<i>voile</i>	<i>a sail</i>

20. A VOCABULARY,

FRENCH AND ENGLISH.

IN TWENTY-THREE CHAPTERS.

* In the following Vocabulary, the Gender has been affixed only to those Nouns that are not included in the preceding Rules.

OF THE UNIVERSE IN GENERAL.

<i>Dieu</i>	<i>God</i>	<i>nature</i>	<i>nature</i>
<i>créateur</i>	<i>creator</i>	<i>univers</i>	<i>universe</i>
<i>Jésus-Christ</i>	<i>Jesus Christ</i>	<i>monde m.</i>	<i>world</i>
<i>Trinité</i>	<i>Trinity</i>	<i>élément</i>	<i>element</i>
<i>Saint-Esprit</i>	<i>Holy Ghost</i>	<i>terre</i>	<i>earth</i>
<i>ange</i>	<i>angel</i>	<i>eau</i>	<i>water</i>
<i>archange</i>	<i>archangel</i>	<i>feu</i>	<i>fire</i>
<i>prophète</i>	<i>prophet</i>	<i>air</i>	<i>air</i>
<i>Messie</i>	<i>Messiah</i>	<i>firmament</i>	<i>sky</i>
<i>sauveur</i>	<i>saviour</i>	<i>étoile</i>	<i>star</i>
<i>rédeigneur</i>	<i>redeemer</i>	<i>planète</i>	<i>planet</i>
<i>Vierge Marie</i>	<i>Virgin Mary</i>	<i>comète</i>	<i>comet</i>
<i>apôtre</i>	<i>apostle</i>	<i>constellation</i>	<i>constellation</i>
<i>évangéliste</i>	<i>evangelist</i>	<i>soleil</i>	<i>sun</i>
<i>martyr</i>	<i>martyr</i>	<i>rayon du soleil</i>	<i>sun-beam</i>
<i>saint</i>	<i>saint</i>	<i>lune</i>	<i>moon</i>
<i>paradis</i>	<i>paradise</i>	<i>éclipse</i>	<i>eclipse</i>
<i>ciel</i>	<i>heaven</i>	<i>orage m.</i>	<i>storm</i>
<i>enfer</i>	<i>hell</i>	<i>tonnerre m.</i>	<i>thunder</i>
<i>diable</i>	<i>devil</i>	<i>éclair</i>	<i>lightning</i>

brouillard	<i>fog</i>	Chersonèse	<i>Chersonesus</i>
pluie	<i>rain</i>	cap	<i>cape</i>
arc-en-ciel	<i>rainbow</i>	promontoire <i>m.</i>	<i>promontory</i>
ondée	<i>shower</i>	isthme <i>m.</i>	<i>isthmus</i>
neige	<i>snow</i>	montagne	<i>mountain</i>
grêle	<i>hail</i>	mont	<i>mount</i>
glace	<i>ice</i>	colline	<i>hill</i>
gelée	<i>frost</i>	sommet	<i>summit</i>
dégel	<i>thaw</i>	pente, ou pen- chant	} <i>declivity</i>
rosée	<i>dew</i>	hauteur	
créature	<i>creature</i>	vallée	<i>eminence</i>
globe <i>m.</i>	<i>globe</i>	vallon	<i>valley</i>
sphère	<i>sphere</i>	abîme <i>m.</i>	<i>dale</i>
hémisphère <i>m.</i>	<i>hemisphere</i>	désert	<i>abyss</i>
horizon	<i>horizon</i>	plaine	<i>desert</i>
degré	<i>degree</i>	marais	<i>plain</i>
longitude	<i>longitude</i>	rive	<i>marsh or fen</i>
latitude	<i>latitude</i>	rivage <i>m.</i>	} <i>bank (of a river)</i>
points cardinaux <i>pl.</i>	} <i>cardinal points</i>	côte	
orient, ou est		rocher*	<i>shore</i>
occident, ou ouest	} <i>west</i>	roche*	<i>coast</i>
septentrion, ou nord		roc*	<i>rock</i>
midi, ou sud	} <i>north</i>	écueil*	<i>rock</i>
climat		banc*	<i>shoal</i>
région	<i>south</i>	récif*	<i>sand bank</i>
continent	<i>climate</i>	brisants*	<i>reef of rocks</i>
Europe	<i>region</i>	cime	<i>breakers, surf</i>
Asie	<i>continent</i>	pierre	<i>top</i>
Afrique	<i>Europe</i>	pont	<i>stone</i>
Amérique	<i>Asia</i>	chaussée	<i>bridge</i>
empire <i>m.</i>	<i>Africa</i>	gué	<i>causeway, road</i>
royaume <i>m.</i>	<i>America</i>	quai	<i>ford</i>
république	<i>empire</i>	route	<i>wharf or quay</i>
pays	<i>kingdom</i>	sentier	<i>road</i>
colonie	<i>republic</i>	fossé	<i>path</i>
principauté	<i>country</i>	gravier	<i>ditch</i>
électorat	<i>colony</i>	sable <i>m.</i>	<i>gravel</i>
province	<i>principality</i>	sablon	<i>sand</i>
comté	<i>electorate</i>	poussière	<i>small sand</i>
île	<i>province</i>	océan	<i>dust</i>
presqu'île	<i>shire or county</i>	mer	<i>ocean</i>
péninsule	<i>island</i>	golfe <i>m.</i>	<i>sea</i>
	} <i>peninsula</i>	baie	<i>gulf</i>
			<i>bay</i>

* These seven words do not convey in French the same idea; the four latter relate

rade	road (for ships)	charbon de terre	pit coal
anse	creek	charbon de bois	charcoal
canal	channel	braise	small coal
détroit	strait	tourbe	{ turf peat
courant	current	bois	wood
marée	tide	bûche	log of wood
flux	flowing	fagot	faggot
reflux	ebbing	coupeaux pl.	chips
vague	wave	cendre	ashes
flots pl.	billows, waves	sue	soot
ondes m.	waters	feu	fire
hâvre m.	haven	atmosphère	atmosphere
port	harbour	vent	wind
lac	lake	zéphyr	zephyr
rivière	river	vapeur	vapour
fleuve m.	great river	lumière	light
embouchure	mouth of a river	ténèbres pl.	darkness
ruisseau	brook	chaleur	heat
débordement	overflow	froid	cold
déluge m.	deluge	nue, nuée	cloud
inondation	inundation	nuage m.	cloud
écluse	flood-gate, sluice	nielle	blight
digue	dyke	humidité	dampness
étang	pond	serein	mildew
vivier	fish-pond	tourbillon	whirlwind
réservoir	basin	orage m.	storm
abreuvoir	horse-pond	tempête	tempest
bain	bath	ondée	shower
citerne	cistern	calme m.	calm
fontaine	fountain	éternité	eternity
source	source	temps	time
puits	well	siècle m.	age or century
pompe	pump	époque	epoch
bateau	boat	période m.	period
barque	bark	date	date
bac	ferry-boat	an, année	year
coche d'eau m.	barge	mois	month
gabare	lighter	janvier	january
navire m.	ship	février	february
vaisseau	vessel	mars	march
paquebot	packet-boat	avril	april
flamme	blaze	mai	may
étincelle	spark	juin	june
chaleur	heat	juillet	july
fumée	smoke	août	august
incendie m.	conflagration	septembre	september
chauffage m.	fuel	octobre	october
charbon	coals		

novembre	<i>november</i>	nuit	<i>night</i>
décembre	<i>december</i>	minuit	<i>midnight</i>
semaine	<i>week</i>	minute	<i>minute</i>
jour	<i>day</i>	seconde	<i>second</i>
journée	<i>day</i>	moment	<i>moment</i>
aujourd'hui	<i>to-day</i>	instant	<i>instant</i>
demain	<i>to-morrow</i>	saison	<i>season</i>
hier	<i>yesterday</i>	printemps	<i>spring</i>
lundi	<i>monday</i>	été	<i>summer</i>
mardi	<i>tuesday</i>	automne	<i>autumn</i>
mercredi	<i>wednesday</i>	hiver	<i>winter</i>
jeudi	<i>thursday</i>	carnaval	<i>carnival</i>
vendredi	<i>friday</i>	carême m.	<i>lent</i>
samedi	<i>saturday</i>	mi-carême	<i>midlent</i>
dimanche	<i>sunday</i>	pâque	<i>easter</i>
heure	<i>hour</i>	pentecôte	<i>whit-sunday</i>
demi-heure	<i>half an hour</i>	la Saint Jean	<i>midsummer</i>
quart-d'heure	<i>{ quarter of an hour</i>	l'avent	<i>advent</i>
aurore	<i>aurora</i>	noël	<i>christmas</i>
aube	<i>dawn</i>	fête	<i>festival</i>
matin	<i>morning</i>	équinoxe m.	<i>equinox</i>
matinée	<i>forenoon</i>	solstice m.	<i>the solstice</i>
midi	<i>noon</i>	canicule	<i>the dog-days</i>
l'après-midi	<i>{ the afternoon</i>	fenaison	<i>hay-harvest</i>
l'après-dinée		moisson	<i>harvest</i>
soir	<i>{ evening</i>	vendange	<i>vintage</i>
soirée		tonte	<i>shearing-time</i>
crépuscule m.	<i>twilight</i>	semailles pl.	<i>sowing-time</i>
		congé	<i>holiday</i>

II. OF MAN.

genre humain	<i>mankind</i>	virilité	<i>manhood</i>
homme	<i>man</i>	vieillesse	<i>old age</i>
femme	<i>woman</i>	décrépitude	<i>decrepitude</i>
sexe	<i>sex</i>	jeune homme	<i>young man</i>
enfant	<i>child</i>	jeune fille	<i>young girl</i>
garçon	<i>boy, youth, lad</i>	vieillard	<i>old man</i>
filie	<i>girl</i>	géant	<i>giant</i>
vierge	<i>virgin</i>	nain	<i>dwarf</i>
virginité	<i>virginity</i>	pignée m.	<i>pigny</i>
enfance	<i>infancy</i>	mari	<i>husband</i>
jeunesse	<i>youth</i>	femme	<i>wife</i>
adolescence	<i>adolescence</i>	veuf	<i>widower</i>

veuve	widow	ceinture	wallet
orphelin	orphan (boy)	côté	side
orpheline	orphan (girl)	hanche	hip
héritier	heir	reins <i>pl.</i>	loins
héritière	heiress	genou	knee
maître	master	jarret	ham
maîtresse	mistress	rotule	knee-pan
hôte	landlord	jambe	leg
hôtesse	landlady	mollet	calf of the leg
domestique	man servant	piéd	foot
servante	maid servant	talon	heel
voisin <i>m.</i>	neighbour	orteil	toe
voisine <i>f.</i>		bras	arm
compagnon <i>m.</i>	companion	coude <i>m.</i>	elbow
compagne <i>f.</i>		aisselle	the arm-pit
corps	body	épaule	shoulder
membre <i>m.</i>	member	main	hand
tronc	trunk	poing	flat
tête	head	poignet	wrist
crâne <i>m.</i>	skull	doigt	finger
front	forehead	pouce	thumb
visage <i>m.</i>	face	ongle <i>m.</i>	nail
traits <i>pl.</i>	features	côte	rib
œil	eye	cerveau	brain
yeux <i>pl.</i>	eyes	cervelle	
sourcils <i>pl.</i>	eye-brows	squelette <i>m.</i>	skeleton
paupière	eye-lid	cœur	heart
nez	nose	poumon	lungs
narines <i>pl.</i>	nostrils	foie <i>m.</i>	liver
bouche	mouth	rate	spleen
lèvres <i>pl.</i>	lips	estomac	stomach
dent	tooth	entrailles <i>pl.</i>	entrails
gencives <i>pl.</i>	gums	sang	blood
mâchoire	jaw-bone	humeurs <i>pl.</i>	humour
langue	tongue	glande	gland
palais	palate	poil	hair
joues <i>pl.</i>	cheeks	chair	flesh
fossette	dimple	peau	skin
menton	chin	pores <i>m. pl.</i>	pores
barbe	beard	nerf	nerve
tempes <i>pl.</i>	temples	artère	artery
oreille	ear	veine	vein
cheveux <i>pl.</i>	hair	os	bone
cou	neck	moelle	marrow
gosier	throat	ride	wrinkle
sein	bosom	bouton	pimple
poitrine	chest	santé	health
ventre <i>m.</i>	belly	tempérament	constitution

embonpoint	<i>plumpness</i>	bruit	<i>noise</i>
maigreur	<i>leanness</i>	odeur	<i>smell</i>
teint	<i>complexion</i>	puanteur	<i>stench</i>
rougeur	<i>redness</i>	saveur	<i>flavour</i>
pâleur	<i>palleness</i>	sensations <i>pl.</i>	<i>sensations</i>
port	<i>carriage</i>	chatouillement	<i>tickling</i>
démarche	<i>gait</i>	plaisir	<i>pleasure</i>
geste <i>m.</i>	<i>gesture</i>	joie	<i>joy</i>
vivacité	<i>liveliness</i>	douleur	<i>pain</i>
enjouement	<i>sprightliness</i>	faim	<i>hunger</i>
gaieté	<i>gaiety</i>	soif	<i>thirst</i>
beauté	<i>beauty</i>	dégoût	<i>distaste</i>
charmes <i>m.</i>	<i>charms</i>	maladie	<i>disease</i>
attraits <i>pl.</i>	<i>attractions</i>	mal	<i>complaint</i>
appas <i>pl.</i>	<i>beauties</i>	incommodité	<i>illness</i>
agrément	<i>pleasantness</i>	infirmité	<i>infirmity</i>
laideur	<i>deformity</i>	indisposition	<i>illness</i>
taille	<i>figure, size</i>	mal de dents	<i>tooth-ache</i>
voix	<i>voice</i>	mal de tête	<i>head-ache</i>
parole	<i>speech</i>	mal aux yeux	<i>bad, sore eyes</i>
silence <i>m.</i>	<i>silence</i>	migraine	<i>migrain</i>
action	<i>action</i>	vertige <i>m.</i>	<i>dizziness</i>
mouvement	<i>motion</i>	évanouissement	<i>swoon</i>
repos	<i>rest</i>	défaillance	<i>fainting, sinking</i>
grimace	<i>grimace</i>	faiblesse	<i>swoon</i>
ris, rire <i>m.</i>	<i>laughter</i>	démangeaison	<i>itching</i>
souris, sourire	<i>smile</i>	pesanteur	<i>heaviness</i>
<i>m.</i>		engourdisse-	} <i>numbness</i>
bumeur	<i>temper</i>	ment	
soupir	<i>sigh</i>	insomnie	<i>sleeplessness</i>
gémissement	<i>groan</i>	coup	<i>blow</i>
assoupissement	<i>drowsiness</i>	contre-coup	<i>counter-blow</i>
sommeil	<i>sleep</i>	égratignure	<i>scratch</i>
songe <i>m.</i>	<i>dream</i>	écorchure	<i>excoriation</i>
rêve <i>m.</i>	<i>dream</i>	entorse	<i>sprain</i>
souffle <i>m.</i>	<i>breath</i>	foulure	<i>strain</i>
haleine	<i>breath</i>	enflure	<i>swelling</i>
respiration	<i>respiration</i>	tumeur	<i>tumour</i>
éternuement	<i>sneezing</i>	meurtrissure	<i>bruise</i>
vue	<i>sight</i>	contusion	<i>contusion</i>
ouïe	<i>hearing</i>	blessure	<i>wound</i>
odorat	<i>smell</i>	cicatrice	<i>scar</i>
goût	<i>taste</i>	ulcère <i>m.</i>	<i>ulcer</i>
toucher	<i>touch</i>	gangrène	<i>mortification</i>
sentiment	<i>sense</i>	coupure	<i>cut</i>
obscurité	<i>darkness</i>	brûlure	<i>burn</i>
ombre	<i>shade</i>	cor	<i>corn</i>
son	<i>sound</i>	durillon	<i>callosity</i>

enrouement	<i>hoarseness</i>	sage-femme	<i>midwife</i>
rhume m.	<i>cold</i>	consultation	<i>consultation</i>
toux	<i>cough</i>	ordonnance	<i>prescription</i>
coqueluche	<i>hooping-cough</i>	remède m.	<i>remedy</i>
surdité	<i>deafness</i>	drogues pl.	<i>drugs</i>
frénésie	<i>frenzy</i>	poudres pl.	<i>powders</i>
folie	<i>lunacy</i>	pillules pl.	<i>pills</i>
rage	<i>madness</i>	saignée	<i>bleeding</i>
goutte	<i>gout</i>	lancette	<i>lancet</i>
convulsions pl.	<i>convulsions</i>	gouttes pl.	<i>drops</i>
vapeurs pl.	<i>vapours</i>	bain	<i>bath</i>
fièvre	<i>fever</i>	régime m.	<i>diet</i>
frisson	<i>shivering</i>	sirop	<i>syrup</i>
accès	<i>fit</i>	agonie	<i>agony</i>
délire m.	<i>delirium</i>	mort	<i>death</i>
crise	<i>crisis</i>	cadavre m.	<i>corps</i>
médecine	<i>physic</i>	vis	<i>life</i>
médecin	<i>physician</i>	guérison	<i>recovery</i>
chirurgien	<i>surgeon</i>	rechute	<i>relapse</i>
apothicaire m.	<i>apothecary</i>	symptôme m.	<i>symptom</i>
accoucheur	<i>man-midwife</i>	convalescence	<i>convalescence</i>

III. OF THE MIND AND ITS FACULTIES.

Âme	<i>soul</i>	apparence	<i>appearance</i>
esprit	<i>mind, talent, wit</i>	méprise	<i>mistake</i>
génie m.	<i>genius</i>	bévue	<i>oversight</i>
raison	<i>reason, sense</i>	science	<i>science</i>
entendement	<i>understanding</i>	connaissance	<i>knowledge</i>
jugement	<i>judgment</i>	pénétration	<i>penetration</i>
sens	<i>sense</i>	sagacité	<i>sagacity</i>
pensée	<i>thought</i>	disposition	<i>disposition</i>
idée	<i>idea</i>	inclination	<i>inclination</i>
imagination	<i>imagination</i>	capacité	<i>capacity</i>
fantaisie	<i>fancy</i>	mémoire	<i>memory</i>
caprice m.	<i>caprice</i>	souvenir	<i>remembrance</i>
volonté	<i>will</i>	oubli	<i>forgetfulness</i>
liberté	<i>liberty</i>	stupidité	<i>stupidity</i>
bel esprit	<i>wit</i>	passions pl.	<i>passions</i>
opinion	<i>opinion</i>	affections pl.	<i>affections</i>
sentiment	<i>sentiment</i>	amour	<i>love</i>
vérité	<i>truth</i>	amours pl.	<i>amours</i>
erreur	<i>error</i>	haine	<i>hatred</i>
vraisemblance	<i>likelihood</i>	désir	<i>desire</i>

probabilité	<i>probability</i>	crainte, peur	<i>fear</i>
appréhension	<i>apprehension</i>	patience	<i>patience</i>
espérance	<i>hope</i>	prudence	<i>prudence</i>
confiance	<i>confidence</i>	économie	<i>economy</i>
honte	<i>shame</i>	habileté	<i>skill</i>
timidité	<i>bashfulness</i>	industrie	<i>industry</i>
hardiesse	<i>boldness</i>	soin	<i>care</i>
assurance	<i>confidence</i>	diligence	<i>diligence</i>
colère	<i>anger</i>	exactitude	<i>exactness</i>
courroux	<i>wrath</i>	honneur	<i>honour</i>
fureur	<i>fury</i>	probité	<i>probity</i>
sage	<i>rage</i>	désintéresse-	<i>disinterestedness</i>
ressentiment	<i>resentment</i>	ment	
Vengeance	<i>revenge</i>	sagesse	<i>wisdom</i>
dépit	<i>spite</i>	constance	<i>constancy</i>
déplaisir	<i>displeasure</i>	bienveillance	<i>benevolence</i>
tristesse	<i>sadness</i>	émulation	<i>emulation</i>
chagrin	<i>grief</i>	faveur	<i>favour</i>
peine	<i>sorrow</i>	valeur	<i>valour</i>
désespoir	<i>despair</i>	bravoure	<i>stoutness</i>
doute m.	<i>doubt</i>	courage m.	<i>courage</i>
suspçon	<i>suspicion</i>	finesse, ruse	<i>cunning</i>
envie	<i>envy</i>	adresse	<i>skill</i>
jalousie	<i>jealousy</i>	chasteté	<i>chastity</i>
pitié	<i>pity</i>	innocence	<i>innocence</i>
miséricorde	<i>mercy</i>	libéralité	<i>liberality</i>
compassion	<i>compassion</i>	générosité	<i>generosity</i>
terreur	<i>terror</i>	reconnaissance	<i>gratitude</i>
épouvante	<i>fright</i>	frugalité	<i>frugality</i>
indignation	<i>indignation</i>	prospérité	<i>prosperity</i>
vertu	<i>virtue</i>	adversité	<i>adversity</i>
charité	<i>charity</i>	mœurs pl.	<i>manners</i>
justice	<i>justice</i>	bonheur	<i>happiness</i>
tempérance	<i>temperance</i>	récompense	<i>reward</i>
sobriété	<i>sobriety</i>	prix	<i>prize</i>
force	<i>fortitude</i>	présent	<i>present</i>
modestie	<i>modesty</i>	don	<i>gift</i>
civilité	<i>civility</i>	prêt	<i>loan</i>
pudeur	<i>bashfulness</i>	grâce	<i>grace</i>
politesse	<i>politeness</i>	réputation	<i>fame</i>
honnêteté	<i>honesty</i>	vice m.	<i>vice</i>
complaisance	<i>complaisance</i>	défaut	<i>defect</i>
douceur	<i>sweetness</i>	imperfection	<i>imperfection</i>
bonté	<i>goodness</i>	avarice	<i>avarice</i>
amitié	<i>friendship</i>	avidité	<i>greediness</i>
union	<i>union</i>	orgueil	<i>pride</i>
concorde	<i>concord</i>	paresse	<i>idleness</i>

fainéantise	<i>stolthfulness</i>	caquet	<i>prating</i>
tranquillité	<i>tranquillity</i>	nouçalance	<i>carelessness</i>
paix	<i>peace</i>	lâcheté	<i>suggishness</i>
luxé m.	<i>luxury, pomp</i>	prodigalité	<i>prodigality</i>
mollesse	<i>effeminacy</i>	gourmandise	<i>gluttony</i>
impureté	<i>lewdness</i>	impolitesse	<i>rudeness</i>
débauche	<i>revel</i>	incivilité	<i>incivility</i>
dissolution	<i>dissoluteness</i>	dissension	<i>dissension</i>
libertinage m.	<i>libertinism</i>	impatience	<i>impatience</i>
désordre m.	<i>disorderly life</i>	imprudence	<i>imprudence</i>
dérèglement	<i>licentiousness</i>	négligence	<i>negligence</i>
mépris	<i>contempt</i>	malhonnêteté	<i>rudeness</i>
raillerie	<i>jest</i>	déshonneur	<i>disgrace</i>
moquerie	<i>mockery</i>	exil	<i>exile</i>
médiançe	<i>detraction</i>	bannissement	<i>banishment</i>
calomnie	<i>calumny</i>	pusillanimité	<i>pusillanimity</i>
crime m.	<i>crime</i>	trahison	<i>treachery</i>
malice	<i>malice</i>	perfidie	<i>perfidiousness</i>
méchanceté	<i>wickedness</i>	punition	<i>punishment</i>
tromperie	<i>deceit</i>	châtiment	<i>chastisement</i>
parjure m.	<i>perjury</i>	légèreté	<i>levity</i>
friponnerie	<i>knavery</i>	coquetterie	<i>coquetry</i>
fourberie	<i>roguey</i>	badinage m.	<i>sport</i>
enchantement	<i>witchcraft</i>	larcin	<i>robbery</i>
injustice	<i>injustice</i>	vol	<i>theft</i>
tort	<i>wrong</i>	friponnerie	<i>roguey, cheating</i>
DECTE	<i>usury</i>	tromperie	<i>deceit</i>
achat	<i>purchase</i>	ivrognerie	<i>drunkenness</i>
VECTE	<i>sale</i>	ivresse	<i>ebriety</i>
troc	<i>barter</i>	assassinat	<i>murder</i>
gage m.	<i>pledge</i>	meurtre m.	<i>manslaughter</i>
dépôt	<i>trust</i>	mensonge m.	<i>lie</i>
contrat	<i>contract</i>	fausseté	<i>falsehood</i>
marché	<i>bargain</i>	conte m.	<i>tale</i>
baasesse	<i>meanness</i>	VERITE	<i>oath</i>
impudence	<i>impudence</i>	malheur	<i>misfortune</i>
effronterie	<i>effrontery</i>	folie	<i>folly</i>
audace	<i>audaciousness</i>	extravagance	<i>madness</i>
témérité	<i>temerity</i>	coutume	<i>custom</i>
poltronnerie	<i>cowardice</i>	usage m.	<i>use</i>
opiniâtreté	<i>stubbornness</i>	pratique	<i>practice, custom</i>
obstination	<i>obstinacy</i>	habitude	<i>habit</i>
cruauté	<i>cruelty</i>	licence	<i>licentiousness</i>
dispute	<i>dispute</i>	excès	<i>excess</i>
querelle	<i>quarrel</i>	tour	<i>trick</i>
brouillerie	<i>broil</i>	bagatelles pl.	<i>trifles</i>
babil	<i>babbling</i>	faute	<i>fault</i>

faiblesse	weakness	faible m.	foible
inconstance	inconstancy	affront	affront
ingratitude	ingratefulness	outrage m.	outrage
ambition	ambition	insulte	insult

IV. OF MEATS AND DRINKS.

nourriture	nourishment	jambon	ham
alimens pl.	food	lard	bacon
vivres pl.	victuals	moutarde	mustard
provision	provisions	soupe	soup
repas	meal	potage m.	pottage
déjeuner	breakfast	bouillon	broth
dîner	dinner	consommé	gravy soup
	formerly a light	ragoût	ragout
goûter	} meal between	fricassée	fricassée
collation		jus	gravy
	dinner and sup-	sauce	sauce
	per	poisson	fish
souper	supper	salade	salad
festin	feast	sel	salt
régal	treat	huile	oil
pain	bread	vinaigre m.	vinegar
croûte	crust	verjus	verjuice
mie	crumb	anchois	anchovies
farine	flour	épices pl.	spices
son	bran	poivre m.	pepper
pâte	dough	gingembre m.	ginger
levain	leaven	muscade	nutmeg
morceau	bit, morsel	mâcis	mace
tranche	slice	girofle m.	} cloves
bouchée	mouthful	(clous de)	
viande		cannelle	cinnamon
bouilli	fresh boiled beef	oublies pl.	wafers
rôt, rôti	roast meat	sucré m.	sugar
bœuf	beef	cassonade	moist sugar
mouton	mutton	dessert	dessert
agneau	lamb	fruit	fruit
veau	veal	pâté	pie
porc	pork	gâteau	cake
venaison	venison	tourte, tarte	tart
volaille	fowl	biscuit	biscuit
gibier	game	macaron	macaroon
gigot	a leg of mutton	crêpes	pancakes
andouille	chitterlings	confitures pl.	nutmeats
saucisse	sausage		

<i>gelée</i>	<i>jelly</i>	<i>thé</i>	<i>tea</i>
<i>marmelade</i>	<i>marmalade</i>	<i>café</i>	<i>coffee</i>
<i>confitures</i>	<i>preserves</i>	<i>chocolat</i>	<i>chocolate</i>
<i>tablettes pl.</i>	<i>lozenges, cakes</i>	<i>limonade</i>	<i>lemonade</i>
<i>dragées pl.</i>	<i>sugar-plums</i>	<i>ponche m.</i>	<i>punch</i>
<i>pralines pl.</i>	<i>burnt almonds</i>	<i>vin</i>	<i>wine</i>
<i>fromage m.</i>	<i>cheese</i>	<i>bière</i>	<i>beer</i>
<i>beurre m.</i>	<i>butter</i>	<i>eau-de-vie</i>	<i>brandy</i>
<i>lait</i>	<i>milk</i>	<i>nectar</i>	<i>nectar</i>
<i>crème</i>	<i>cream</i>	<i>ambroisie</i>	<i>ambrosia</i>
<i>œuf</i>	<i>egg</i>	<i>cidre m.</i>	<i>cider</i>
<i>coque</i>	<i>shell</i>	<i>poiré</i>	<i>perry</i>
<i>blanc</i>	<i>white</i>	<i>hydromel</i>	<i>mead</i>
<i>jaune m.</i>	<i>yolk</i>	<i>sirop</i>	<i>syrup</i>
<i>boisson</i>	<i>drink</i>	<i>lie</i>	<i>drugs</i>
<i>liqueur</i>	<i>liquor</i>		

V. OF THE DRESSING APPAREL, ETC.

<i>habillement</i>	<i>dress</i>	<i>redingote</i>	<i>great coat</i>
<i>hardes</i>	<i>clothes</i>	<i>linge m.</i>	<i>linen</i>
<i>habit</i>	<i>coat</i>	<i>toile</i>	<i>linen</i>
<i>habit complet</i>	<i>a suit</i>	<i>batiste</i>	<i>cambric</i>
<i>veston</i>	<i>jacket, round</i>	<i>moraseline</i>	<i>muslin</i>
	<i>jacket</i>	<i>linon</i>	<i>lawn</i>
<i>gilet</i>	<i>waistcoat</i>	<i>chemise</i>	<i>shirt</i>
<i>gilet de laine</i>	<i>flannel waistcoat</i>	<i>jabot</i>	<i>frill</i>
<i>gilet de peau</i>	<i>under waistcoat</i>	<i>cravate</i>	<i>cravat</i>
<i>manches pl.</i>	<i>sleeves</i>	<i>bas pl.</i>	<i>stockings</i>
<i>poches pl.</i>	<i>pockets</i>	<i>jarretières pl.</i>	<i>garters</i>
<i>bouton</i>	<i>button</i>	<i>lain</i>	<i>wool</i>
<i>doublure</i>	<i>lining</i>	<i>fil</i>	<i>thread</i>
<i>coutures</i>	<i>seam</i>	<i>coton</i>	<i>cotton</i>
<i>culotte</i>	<i>breeches</i>	<i>maille</i>	<i>stitch</i>
<i>pantalon</i>	<i>pantaloons</i>	<i>trou</i>	<i>hole</i>
<i>gousset</i>	<i>pob</i>	<i>chaussons pl.</i>	<i>socks</i>
<i>drap</i>	<i>cloth</i>	<i>guêtres pl.</i>	<i>gaiters</i>
<i>soie</i>	<i>silk</i>	<i>souliers</i>	<i>shoes</i>
<i>velours</i>	<i>velvet</i>	<i>escarpins pl.</i>	<i>pumps</i>
<i>serge</i>	<i>serge</i>	<i>semelle</i>	<i>sole</i>
<i>basin</i>	<i>dimity</i>	<i>bottes pl.</i>	<i>boots</i>
<i>flanelle</i>	<i>flannel</i>	<i>boucles pl.</i>	<i>buckles</i>
<i>étouffe</i>	<i>stuff</i>	<i>cuir</i>	<i>leather</i>
<i>manteau</i>	<i>cloak</i>	<i>chapeau</i>	<i>hat</i>
<i>sur tout</i>	<i>surcoat</i>	<i>perruque</i>	<i>wig</i>

jupon	petticoat	aiguille	needle
satins	under-petticoat	étui	case
taffetas	satins	dé	thumb
gaze	taffety	masque m.	mask
coiffure	gauze	voile m.	veil
coiffe	head-dress	tabatière	suff-box
collier	cap	tabac (en poudre)	suff
boucles	necklace	tabac (à fumer)	tobacco
d'oreilles pl.	ear-rings	bourse	purse
gants pl.		argent	money
mitaines pl.	gloves	porte-feuille m.	packet-book
tablier	mitten	ciseaux pl.	scissors
mules pl.	apron	crayon	pencil
pantoufles pl.	slippers	mouchoir	handkerchief
bague		lunettes pl.	spectacles
bijou	ring	lorgnette	opera-glass
bracelet	jewel	conserves pl.	spectacles
dentelle	bracelet	bouquet	nosegay
blonde	lace	canna	cane
éventail	blond lace	cordon	string
manchon	fan	épée	sword
agrafe	muff	montre	watch
épinglé	clasp	boite	box or case
	pin	chaîne	chain

VI. OF A HOUSE AND FURNITURE.

maison	house	brique	brick
hôtel	mansion	mortier	mortar
—	hotel, lodging	chaux	lime
	house	plâtre m.	plaster
hôtellerie	inn	ciment	cement
château	castle, country seat	tuile	tile
palais		ardoise	slate
couronne	palace	charpente	timber work
trône m.	crown	poutre	beam
sceptre m.	throne	solive	joist
aile	sceptre	échelle	ladder
pavillon	wing	cave	vault
fondements pl.	pavillion	cellier	cellar
mur, muraille	foundation	tonneau	cask
bâtiment	wall	fataille	vessel
matériaux pl.	building	boutique	shop
pierre	materials	atelier	work-shop
	stone	magasin	warehouse

vestibule m.	hall	boite	box
salle	} parlour or sitting room	caisse	chest
salon		cassette	casket
escalier	stairs	coffre m.	coffer
office	} pantry, butler's room	logement	lodging
cuisine		ameublement	furniture
garde-manger m.	kitchen	cheminée	chimney
boulangerie	larder	âtre m. foyer	hearth
brasserie	bakelhouse	soufflet	pair of bellows
lingerie	brewhouse	pelle	shovel
écurie	laundry	pincettes pl.	tongs
remise	stable	fourgon	poker
puits	coach-house	garde-feu m.	fender
étage m.	well	bouilloire	boiler
appartement	story	couvercle m.	lid
chambre	apartment	poêle	frying-pan
antichambre	room	poëlon	skillet
salle à manger	anti-chamber	casserole	saucepan
salon de com- pagnie	dining-room	fourneau	stove
cabinet de toi- lette	} drawing-room	allumette	match
chambre à coucher		pierre à fusil	flint
galerie	} dressing-room	briquet	steel
cabinet		four	oven
boudoir	} bed-room	clou	nail
garderobe		essuie-main	towel
porte	gallery	bassinoire	warming-pan
porte-cochère	closet	panier, cor- beille	} basket
seuil	} lady's sitting room	faïence	delft ware
jalousie		poterie	earthenware
gond	wardrobe	pot	pot
marteau	door	cruche	pitcher
serrure	gate	lampe	lamp
clé, or clef	threshold	lanterne	lantern
verrou	lattice	savon	soap
venêtre	hinge	amidon	starch
vitre	knocker	balai	broom
volet	lock	hanc	seat, form
balcon	key	escabeau	stool
store m.	bolt	plancher	floor
grenier	window	parquet	(drawing-room) floor
toit	glass	plafond	ceiling
gouttière	shutter	lambria	wainscot
alle	balcony	cloison	partition
	garret	tapisserie	} hangings, tape- stry
	roof	tapis	
	gutter		carpet, cloth
	trunk		

lit	bed	éteignoir	extinguisher
alcove	alcove	vergettes pl	brush
châlit	bedstead	buffet	cupboard
chevet	bolster	cabaret	stand
oreiller	pillow	tasse	cup
pailasse	straw mattress	soucoupo	saucer
matelas	mattress	théière	tea-pot
draps pl.	sheets	cafetière	coffee-pot
couvertures pl.	bed-clothes	chocolatière	chocolate-pot
courte-pointe	counterpane	sucrier	sugar-basin
rideau	curtain	jatte	bowl
tringle	curtain-rod	table	table
anneau	ring	nappe	cloth
sofa	sofa	serviette	napkin
fauteuil	arm-chair	assiette	plate
siège m.	seat	plat	dish
chaise	chair	couteau	knife
cousin	cushion	cuiller, ou cuil- } lère	spoon
armoire	dress	salière	salt-cellar
commode	chest of drawers	huilier	oil cruet
trumeau	pier-glass	mustardier	mustard pot
toilette	toilet	aiguière	cwer
miroir	looking-glass	coupe, tasse	cup
peigne m.	comb	gobelet	goblet
pomade	pomatum	verre m.	glass
poudre	powder	bouteille	bottle
houpe	puff	bouchon	cork
parfum	perfume	tire-bouchon m.	corkscrew
tableau	picture	carafe	flagon, decanter
dessin	drawing	bibliothèque	library
coloris	colouring	bureau	bureau
portrait	portrait	tiroir	drawer
paysage m.	landscape	cachet	seal
miniature	miniature	lettre	letter
chandelier	candlestick	enveloppe	cover
bobèche	socket	adresse	direction
chandelle	candle	signature	signature
bongie	wax-light	sonnette	bell
cire	wax	estampe	print
mouchettes pl.	suffers	médaille	medal
porte-mou- chettes m.	suffer-stand		

VII. OF THE CITY.

ville	<i>town, city</i>	convent	<i>convent</i>
village m.	<i>village</i>	monastère m.	<i>monastery</i>
bourg	<i>borough</i>	cellule	<i>cell</i>
rue	<i>street</i>	hermitage m.	<i>hermitage</i>
carrefour	<i>cross-way</i>	solitude	<i>solitude</i>
passage m.	<i>passage</i>	ret. aite	<i>retirement</i>
place	<i>square</i>	université	<i>university</i>
cul-de-sac	<i>blind alley</i>	collège m.	<i>college</i>
pyramide	<i>pyramid</i>	école	<i>school</i>
obélisque m.	<i>obelisk</i>	pension	<i>boarding-sch.</i>
pavé	<i>pavement</i>	parlement	<i>parliament</i>
ruisseau	<i>hennel</i>	chambre des pairs	} <i>house of lords</i>
marché	<i>market</i>	chambre des communes	
denrées pl.	<i>provisions</i>		} <i>house of com- mons</i>
boucherie	<i>meat market</i>		
poissonnerie	<i>fish market</i>	prison	<i>prison</i>
friperie	<i>rags, saw</i>	cachot	<i>dungeon</i>
édifice m.	<i>edifice</i>	hôpital	<i>hospital</i>
façade	<i>front</i>	infirmerie	<i>infirmary</i>
frontispiece	<i>frontispiece</i>	taverne	<i>tavern</i>
colonne	<i>column</i>	cabaret	<i>public-house</i>
pilastre m.	<i>pilaster</i>	auberge	<i>inn</i>
base	<i>base</i>	café	<i>coffee-house</i>
piédestal	<i>pedestal</i>	enseigne	<i>sign</i>
statue	<i>statue</i>	affiche	<i>bill</i>
arcade	<i>arcade</i>	pont	<i>bridge</i>
portique m.	<i>portico</i>	arche	<i>arch</i>
aqueduc	<i>aqueduct</i>	pilier	<i>pillar</i>
dôme m.	<i>dome</i>	bateau	<i>boat</i>
paroisse	<i>parish</i>	quai	<i>quay</i>
salle de comédie	<i>play-house</i>	bourse	<i>exchange</i>
théâtre m.	<i>theatre</i>	banque	<i>bank</i>
coulisses pl.	<i>scenes</i>	agiotage m.	<i>stock-jobbing</i>
décorations	<i>decorations</i>	douane	<i>custom-house</i>
toile	<i>curtain</i>	poste	<i>general post</i>
foyer	<i>green-room</i>	petite poste	<i>twopenny post</i>
orchestre m.	<i>orchestra</i>	trésorerie	<i>treasury</i>
parterre m.	<i>pit</i>	amirauté	<i>admiralty</i>
loge	<i>box</i>	arsenal	<i>arsenal</i>
amphithéâtre	<i>first gallery</i>	faubourg	<i>suburbs</i>
paradis	<i>upper gallery</i>	boulevards pl.	<i>bulwarks</i>
billet	<i>ticket</i>	remparts pl.	<i>ramparts</i>

barrière	<i>turnpike</i>	bât	<i>pack-saddle</i>
guinguette	<i>tea-garden</i>	arçon	<i>saddle-bow</i>
forge	<i>forge</i>	sangle	<i>girth</i>
verrerie	<i>glass-house</i>	étriers <i>pl.</i>	<i>stirrup</i>
fonderie	<i>foundry</i>	éperons <i>pl.</i>	<i>spurs</i>
carrosse <i>m.</i>	<i>coach</i>	berline	<i>berlin</i>
impériale	<i>roof</i>	cabriolet	<i>carriage</i>
portière	<i>door of a coach</i>	chaise	<i>chaise</i>
glaces <i>pl.</i>	<i>windows</i>	fiacre <i>m.</i>	<i>hackney-coach</i>
timon	<i>coach-pole</i>	charrette	<i>cart</i>
roue	<i>wheel</i>	fourgon	<i>waggon</i>
essieu	<i>axle-tree</i>	remise	<i>coach-house</i>
équipage <i>m.</i>	<i>equipage</i>	rasoir	<i>razor</i>
harnois <i>pl.</i>	<i>harness</i>	cuir	<i>strap</i>
rènes <i>pl.</i>	<i>reins</i>	moule	<i>mould</i>
bride	<i>bridle</i>	machine	<i>machine</i>
licou	<i>halter</i>	moulin	<i>mill</i>
selle	<i>saddle</i>		

VIII. OF TRADES, ARTS, PROFESSIONS, ETC.

boulangier	<i>baker</i>	maréchal	<i>farrier</i>
barbier	<i>barber</i>	poissonnier	<i>fishmonger</i>
forgeron	<i>blacksmith</i>	fondeur	<i>founder</i>
relieur	<i>book-binder</i>	fruitier	<i>fruiterer</i>
libraire <i>m.</i>	<i>bookseller</i>	fourreur	<i>furrier</i>
chaudronnier	<i>brasser</i>	jardinier	<i>gardener</i>
brasseur	<i>brewer</i>	doreur	<i>gilder</i>
boucher	<i>butcher</i>	verrier	<i>glass-maker</i>
ébéniste	<i>cabinet-maker</i>	vitrier	<i>glazier</i>
charpentier	<i>carpenter</i>	gantier	<i>glover</i>
charron	<i>wheelwright</i>	orfèvre	<i>goldsmith</i>
sculpteur	<i>sculptor</i>	épicier	<i>grocer</i>
chimiste	<i>chymist</i>	armurier	<i>gun-smith</i>
horloger	<i>clock-maker</i>	chapelier	<i>hatter</i>
confiseur	<i>confectioner</i>	aubergiste	<i>innkeeper</i>
carrossier	<i>coach-maker</i>	joaillier	<i>jeweller</i>
tonnelier	<i>cooper</i>	menuisier	<i>joiner</i>
corroyeur	<i>currier</i>	serrurier	<i>locksmith</i>
coutelier	<i>cutler</i>	maçon	<i>bricklayer</i>
fourbisseur	<i>sword-cutter</i>	couturière	<i>mantua-maker</i>
teinturier	<i>dyer</i>	maitre d'hôtel	<i>steward</i>
distillateur	<i>distiller</i>	mercier	<i>mercier</i>
droguiste	<i>druggist</i>	meunier	<i>miller</i>
graveur	<i>engraver</i>	peintre	<i>painter</i>

pâtissier	pastry-cook	apothicaire	apothecary
paveur	pavior	arpenteur	surveyor
colporteur	pedlar	tailleur	tailor
parfumeur	perfumer	tanneur	tanner
médecin	physician	bijoutier	jeweller
plâtrier	plasterer	menuisier	turner
plombier	plumber	entrepreneur	undertaker
potier	potter	tapissier	upholsterer
imprimeur	printer	horloger	watch-maker
sellier	sadler	tisserand	weaver
singère	sempstress	perruquier	hair-dresser
cordonnier	shoe-maker	ouvrage	work
pelletier	shiner	ouvrier	workman
forgeron	smith	ouvrière	workwoman
chirurgien	surgeon	manœuvre	labourer

IX. OF THE COUNTRY, HUSBANDRY, FLOWERS, TREES, ETC.

campagne	country	château	castle
chemin	way	terre	estate
sentier	foot-path	cour	yard
houe	mud	basse-cour	poultry yard
fange	mire	colombier	pigeon-house
poussière	dust	laiterie	dairy
bourbier	slough	écurie	stable
ornière	cart-rut	fruiterie	fruit-leaf
hameau	hamlet	jardin	garden
enclos	close	jardinage m.	gardening

X. FLOWERS.

fleuriste	flowerist	marguerite	daisy
parterre	parterre	impériale	turk's cap
fleur	flower	martagon	mountain lily
iris	flag	lil	lily
primevere	cowslip	muguet	may-lily
narcisse m	narcissus	oreille d'ours	auricula
jacinthe	hyacinth	anémone	anemone
tulipe	tulip	renoncule	ranunculus
violette	violet	jonquille	jonquil
pensée	heartsease	giroflée	stock-gilliflowers
églantier	sweet-brier	safran	carnation

campanule	} bell flower	tournesol	sun flower
gantelee		camomille	camomile
rose	rose	belle-de-nuit	great nightshade
jasmin	jasmins	éternelle	} cassidony
tubéreuse	tuberosa	immortelle	
réséda	mignonette	balsamine	balsam
chèvre-feuille m.	honey-suckle	ancolie	columbine
seringat	acringa	passé-rose	hollyhock
lilas	lilac	hépatique	hepatica
souci	marigold	pied d'alouette	larkspur
amarante	amaranth	pivoine	piony
pavot	poppy	scabiense	scabious
coquelicot	} wild-poppy	julienne	rocket
ponceau		planche	bed
bluet, barbeau	blue-bell	plate bande	flower-border

XI. FRUITS.

amande	almond	melon	melon
pomme	apple	mûre	mulberry
abricot	apricot	brugnon	nectarine
cerise	cherry	noisette	hazel-nut
guigne	{ black heart cherry	orange	orange
châtaigne		pêche	peach
marron	chestnut	poire	pear
groseilles pl.	large chestnut	citrouille	pumpkin
groseille	currants	coin	quince
figue	gooseberry	framboise	raspberry
aveline	fig	fraise	strawberry
raisin	filbert	noix	walnut
prune	grapes	épine-vinette	barberries
reine-claude	plum	grenade	pomegranate
citron	green-gage	olive	olive
ananas	lemon	cerneaux	{ fresh or unripe walnuts
nêfle	pine apple		
	medlar		

III. OF HERBS AND PLANTS.

aloès	<i>aloe</i>	moutarde	<i>mustard</i>
angélique	<i>angelica</i>	capucine	<i>nasturtium</i>
artichaut	<i>artichoke</i>	ortie	<i>nettle</i>
asperge	<i>asparagus</i>	ognon	<i>onion</i>
citron	<i>plant</i>	persil	<i>parsley</i>
basilie	<i>basil</i>	panais	<i>parsnip</i>
fève	<i>bean</i>	pois	<i>peas</i>
haricot	<i>French bean</i>	pariétaire	<i>pellitory</i>
poirée	<i>beet</i>	plante	<i>plant</i>
betterave	<i>beet-root</i>	plantain	<i>plantain</i>
bourrache	<i>borage</i>	pavot	<i>poppy</i>
bardane	<i>burdock</i>	pomme de terre	<i>potatoes</i>
primrenelle	<i>burnet</i>	courge	<i>pumpkin</i>
chou	<i>cabbage</i>	pourpier	<i>purslain</i>
carotte	<i>carrot</i>	rave	<i>radish</i>
céleri	<i>celery</i>	radis	<i>Spanish radish</i>
cerfeuil	<i>chervil</i>	roseau	<i>reed</i>
choux-fleurs <i>pl.</i>	<i>cauliflowers</i>	ruë	<i>ruë</i>
mâches <i>pl.</i>	<i>corn-salad</i>	ruë	<i>rush</i>
cresson	<i>cremes</i>	rhubarbe	<i>rhubarb</i>
concombre <i>m.</i>	<i>cucumber</i>	safran	<i>saffron</i>
dent-de-lion	<i>dandelion</i>	sauge	<i>sage</i>
patience	<i>dock</i>	sariette	<i>savory</i>
chicorée	<i>endive</i>	ciboule	<i>scullion</i>
fenouil	<i>fennel</i>	échalotte	<i>shallot</i>
fougère	<i>fern</i>	oseille	<i>sorrel</i>
ail	<i>garlick</i>	véronique	<i>speedwell</i>
calebasse	<i>gourd</i>	épinards <i>pl.</i>	<i>spinage</i>
éguë	<i>hemlock</i>	tansie	<i>tansy</i>
herbe	<i>herb</i>	ivraie	<i>tare</i>
raïfort	<i>horse-radish</i>	estragon	<i>stragon</i>
fonbarbe	<i>house-leek</i>	chardon	<i>thistle</i>
lierre <i>m.</i>	<i>ivy</i>	thym	<i>thyme</i>
poireau	<i>leek</i>	serpolet	<i>wild thyme</i>
laitue	<i>lettuce</i>	trèfle <i>m.</i>	<i>clover</i>
réglisse	<i>licorice</i>	navet	<i>turnip</i>
mauve	<i>mallows</i>	valériane	<i>valerian</i>
guimauve	<i>marsh-mallows</i>	Végétaux <i>pl.</i>	<i>vegetables</i>
marjolaine	<i>marjoram</i>	légumes <i>m. pl.</i>	<i>vegetables,</i>
réséda	<i>mignonette</i>		<i>greens</i>
mentha	<i>mint</i>	verveine	<i>vervain</i>
gui	<i>mistletoe</i>	absynthe	<i>wormwood</i>
mousse	<i>moss</i>	mille-feuille	<i>garrow</i>

XIII. OF TREES AND SHRUBS.

arbre m.	<i>tree</i>	hêtre	<i>beech-tree</i>
arbrisseau	<i>shrub</i>	bouleau	<i>birch-tree</i>
écorce	<i>bark</i>	hain	<i>bass</i>
branche	<i>branch</i>	genêt	<i>broom</i>
feuille	<i>leaf</i>	sureau	<i>elder-tree</i>
graine	<i>seed</i>	orme	<i>elm</i>
rejeton	<i>sucker</i>	sapin	<i>fir-tree</i>
abricotier	<i>apricot-tree</i>	condrier	<i>hazel-tree</i>
cerisier	<i>cherry-tree</i>	houx	<i>holly</i>
châtaignier	<i>chestnut-tree</i>	lilas	<i>lilac</i>
citronnier	<i>lemon-tree</i>	tilleul	<i>lime-tree</i>
coignassier	<i>quince-tree</i>	myrte	<i>myrtle-tree</i>
figuier	<i>fig-tree</i>	chêne	<i>oak</i>
noyer	<i>walnut-tree</i>	osier	<i>osier</i>
oranger	<i>orange-tree</i>	romarin	<i>rosemary</i>
pêcher	<i>peach-tree</i>	églantier	<i>sweet briar</i>
pommier	<i>apple-tree</i>	épine	<i>thorn</i>
poirier	<i>pear-tree</i>	buisson	<i>thorn bush</i>
prunier	<i>plumb-tree</i>	aubépine	<i>white-thorn</i>
arbusier	<i>arbutus</i>	vigne	<i>vine</i>
frêne	<i>ash-tree</i>	saule	<i>willow tree</i>
tremble	<i>aspen</i>	if	<i>ycw-tree</i>

XIV. PROMISCUOUS WORDS.

grange	<i>barn</i>	haie	<i>hedge</i>
hutte	<i>hut</i>	bruyère	<i>heath</i>
chaumière	<i>thatched-house</i>	dunes	<i>dunes</i>
seigneurie	<i>manor</i>	lande	<i>waste land</i>
dtme	<i>tithe</i>	commune	<i>common</i>
métairie	<i>farm</i>	plaine	<i>plain</i>
sillon	<i>furrow</i>	garenne	<i>warren</i>
pré, prairie	<i>meadow</i>	fondrière	<i>bog</i>
arpent	<i>acre</i>	marais	<i>marsh</i>
fossé	<i>ditch</i>	platebande	<i>border</i>
champ	<i>field</i>	serre	<i>green-house</i>
pâturage m.	<i>pasture-ground</i>	serre chaude	<i>hot-house</i>
terroir	<i>soil</i>	boulingrin	<i>bowling-green</i>
parc	<i>park</i>	berceau	<i>bower</i>

bosquet	<i>grove</i>	orge	<i>barley</i>
grotte	<i>grotto</i>	avoine	<i>oats</i>
vignoble m.	<i>vineyard</i>	riz	<i>rice</i>
pépinière	<i>nursery</i>	seigle m.	<i>rye</i>
taillis	<i>coppice</i>	millet	<i>millet</i>
halier	<i>thicket</i>	lin	<i>flax</i>
payage m.	<i>landscape</i>	chanvre m.	<i>hemp</i>
perspective	<i>prospect</i>	chènevis	<i>hemp-seed</i>
	<i>view</i>	épi	<i>ear (of corn)</i>
cascade	<i>cascade</i>	gerbe	<i>sheaf (of corn)</i>
canal	<i>canal</i>	tige	<i>stalk</i>
agriculture	<i>agriculture</i>	tuyau	<i>blade</i>
labourage m.	<i>tillage</i>	paille	<i>straw</i>
bétail	<i>cattle</i>	chaume m.	<i>stubble</i>
fumier	<i>dung</i>	foin	<i>hay</i>
terreau	<i>mould</i>	foufrage m.	<i>fodder</i>
récolte	<i>crop</i>	fermier	<i>farmer</i>
moisson	<i>harvest</i>	paysan	<i>peasant</i>
vendange	<i>vintage</i>	laboureur	<i>ploughman</i>
houblon	<i>hops</i>	moissonneur	<i>reaper</i>
grain	<i>corn</i>	faucheur	<i>mower</i>
blé	<i>wheat</i>	berger	<i>shepherd</i>

KV. OF QUADRUPEDS.

bête	<i>beast</i>	buffle m.	<i>buffalo</i>
animal	<i>animal</i>	taureau	<i>bull</i>
animal do- mestique	} <i>domestic animal</i>	vache	<i>cow</i>
bête de somme		génisse	<i>heifer</i>
monture	<i>beast of burden</i>	veau	<i>calf</i>
cheval	<i>saddle horse</i>	bouvillon	<i>bullock</i>
cavalle	<i>horse</i>	renne m.	<i>reindeer</i>
jument	<i>mare</i>	brebis	<i>ewe</i>
étalon	<i>mare</i>	mouton	<i>wether</i>
poulain	<i>stallion</i>	bélier	<i>ram</i>
pouliche	<i>colt</i>	agneau	<i>lamb</i>
bidet	<i>filly</i>	chèvre	<i>she-goat</i>
âne	<i>pony</i>	bonc	<i>he-goat</i>
lnease	<i>ass</i>	chevreau	<i>kid</i>
ânon	<i>she-ass</i>	cochon	<i>hog</i>
mulet	<i>young ass</i>	porc	<i>pig</i>
mule	<i>mule</i>	porcean	<i>pig</i>
bête à cornes	<i>she-mule</i>	truie	<i>sow</i>
bœuf	<i>horned beast</i>	cochon de lait	<i>sucking pig</i>
	<i>ox</i>	cochon d'inde	<i>guinea pig</i>

errat	beaver	porc-épie	porcupine
sanglier	wild boar	loutre	otter
loup	wild sow	raton	raccoon
marcassin	young wild boar	sure	ferret
bête fauve	deer	lièvre	hare
cerf	stag	'has	doc-hari
biche	hind	levraut	leveret
faon	fawn	lapin	rabbit
daim	fallow-deer	chien	dog
daim mâle	buck	chiennes	bitch
daim femelle	doe	lévrier	greyhound
chevreuil	roe-buck	levrette	greyhound bitch
chevrette	roe	dogue	bull dog
lion	lion	mâtin	mastiff
lionne	lioness	limier	blood-hound
lionceau	lion's whelp	bichon	lap-dog
tigre	tiger	épagneul	spaniel
tigresse	tigress	basset	terrier
ours	bear	barbet	shaggy-dog
ourson	bear's cub	chien d'arrêt	pointer
zèbre m.	zebra	meute de chiens	pack of hounds
giraffe	camel-leopard	chat, matou	cat, tom-cat
léopard	leopard	chatte	cat, puss
caméléopard	camel-leopard	chaton	kitten
rhinocéros	rhinoceros	minou	puss
hippopotame, m.	river-horse	minet, minette	young kitten
éléphant	elephant	singe m.	monkey
chameau	camel	guenon	ape
dromadaire m.	dromedary	magot, babouin	baboon
lama	lama	gazelle	antelope
buffle m.	buffalo	belette	weasel
hiène	hyena	putois	pole-cat
panthère	panther	fonine	pole-cat
once	ounce	loir	dormouse
licorne	unicorn	marmotte	marmot
élan	elk	taupe	mole
loup	wolf	rat	rat
louve	she-wolf	souris	mouse
louveteau	wolf's cub	tortue	tortoise
lynx	lynx	bétail, bestiaux	cattle
renard	fox	troupeau	stock, herd
taisson	brock	pâtre, berger	shepherd
blaireau	badger	bergère	shepherdess
castor	beaver	vacher, bouvier	cow-herd
hermine	ermine	porcher	swine-herd
marte, zibeline	marten, sable	chasse	hunting
écureuil	squirrel	chasseur	hunter
'hérisson	hedge-hog	braconnier	poacher

<i>gibier, venaison</i>	<i>game</i>	<i>tiré</i>	<i>shooting</i>
<i>fusil</i>	<i>gun</i>	<i>tireur</i>	<i>shooter</i>
<i>gibecière</i>	<i>pouch</i>	<i>garde-chasse</i>	<i>gamekeeper</i>

XVI OF BIRDS.

<i>oiseau</i>	<i>bird</i>	<i>pie</i>	<i>maggie</i>
<i>oiselet, oisillon</i>	<i>little bird</i>	<i>alouette</i>	<i>lark</i>
<i>volaille</i>	<i>fowl</i>	<i>bergeronnette</i>	<i>wagtail</i>
<i>coq</i>	<i>cock</i>	<i>alcyon, ou</i>	} <i>king's-fisher</i>
<i>poule</i>	<i>hen</i>	<i>martin-pêcheur</i>	
<i>poulet</i>	<i>chicken</i>	<i>pivert</i>	<i>wood-pecker</i>
<i>poussin</i>	<i>young chicken</i>	<i>mésange</i>	<i>tit</i>
<i>cochet</i>	<i>cockerel</i>	<i>pluvier</i>	<i>plover</i>
<i>poularde</i>	<i>pullet</i>	<i>roitelet</i>	<i>wren</i>
<i>chapon</i>	<i>capon</i>	<i>vanneau</i>	<i>lapwing</i>
<i>coq-d'Inde,</i>	} <i>turkey-cock</i>	<i>butor</i>	<i>bittern</i>
<i>dindon</i>		<i>berfigue m.</i>	<i>beccafico</i>
<i>dinde</i>	<i>turkey-hen</i>	<i>étourneau</i>	<i>starling</i>
<i>dindonneau</i>	<i>young turkey</i>	<i>sansonnet</i>	<i>starling</i>
<i>ois</i>	<i>goose</i>	<i>bruant</i>	<i>yellow-hammer</i>
<i>jar</i>	<i>gander</i>	<i>coucou</i>	<i>cuckoo</i>
<i>oison</i>	<i>gosling</i>	<i>freux, grosse</i>	<i>rook</i>
<i>canard</i>	<i>drake</i>	<i>corbeau</i>	<i>raven</i>
<i>cane</i>	<i>duck</i>	<i>corneille</i>	<i>crow</i>
<i>caneton, canette</i>	<i>duckling</i>	<i>hibou</i>	<i>owl</i>
<i>pigeon</i>	<i>pigeon</i>	<i>chouette</i>	<i>screech-owl</i>
<i>colombe</i>	<i>dove</i>	<i>buse</i>	<i>bussard</i>
<i>serin, canari</i>	<i>canary bird</i>	<i>choucas</i>	<i>chough</i>
<i>perroquet</i>	<i>parrot</i>	<i>aigle</i>	<i>eagle</i>
<i>perruche</i>	<i>parroquet</i>	<i>aiglon</i>	<i>eaglet</i>
<i>moineau, pas-</i>	} <i>sparrow</i>	<i>épervier</i>	<i>sparrow-hawk</i>
<i>sereau</i>		<i>émouchet</i>	<i>musket-hawk</i>
<i>hirondelle</i>	<i>swallow</i>	<i>milan</i>	<i>kite</i>
<i>martinet</i>	<i>marten</i>	<i>faucou</i>	<i>falcon</i>
<i>rossignol</i>	<i>nightingale</i>	<i>cormoran</i>	<i>cormorant</i>
<i>chardonneret</i>	<i>goldfinch</i>	<i>plongeon</i>	<i>didapper</i>
<i>pinson</i>	<i>chaffinch</i>	<i>héron</i>	<i>heron</i>
<i>verdier</i>	<i>greenfinch</i>	<i>cicogne</i>	<i>stork</i>
<i>bouvreuil</i>	<i>bullfinch</i>	<i>outarde</i>	<i>bustard</i>
<i>linot, linotte</i>	<i>linnet</i>	<i>pélican</i>	<i>pelican</i>
<i>rougegorge m.</i>	<i>redbreast, robin</i>	<i>autour</i>	<i>goshawk</i>
<i>merle m.</i>	<i>blackbird</i>	<i>vautour</i>	<i>vulture</i>
<i>grive</i>	<i>thrush</i>	<i>griffon</i>	<i>griffin</i>
<i>geai</i>	<i>jay</i>	<i>huppe</i>	<i>lapwing</i>

monette	<i>gull</i>	poule d'eau	<i>moor-hen</i>
perdrix	<i>partridge</i>	paon	<i>peacock</i>
bartavelle	} <i>large red partridge</i>	paonne	<i>peahen</i>
perdreau		paonneau	<i>young peacock</i>
caille	<i>young partridge</i>	cygne m.	<i>swan</i>
cailleteau	<i>quail</i>	autruche	<i>ostrich</i>
faisan	<i>young quail</i>	pintade	<i>pintado</i>
faisandeau	<i>pheasant</i>	fou-de-bassan	<i>gannet</i>
bécasse	<i>young pheasant</i>	pingoin	<i>razor-bill</i>
bécassine	<i>woodcock</i>	chauve-souris	<i>bat</i>
ortolan	<i>snipe</i>	chasse aux	} <i>fowling</i>
tourterelle	<i>ortolan</i>	oiseaux	
gêlinotte	<i>turtle-dove</i>	appeau	<i>bird-call</i>
francolin	<i>godwit</i>	gluaux	<i>lime twigs</i>
ramier	<i>francoline</i>	trébuchet	<i>bird-trap</i>
marcuse	<i>wood-pigeon</i>	filets	<i>nets</i>
sarcelle	<i>sea-duck</i>	oiseleur	<i>bird-catcher</i>
grue	<i>teal</i>	oiseleur	<i>bird-seller</i>
courlis	<i>crane</i>	volière	<i>aviary</i>
fonlue	<i>curlew</i>		
	{ <i>coot, moorcock,</i>		
	<i>or hen</i>		

XVII. OF FISHES.

poisson	<i>fish</i>	sardine	<i>sprat</i>
esturgeon	<i>sturgeon</i>	thon	<i>tunny</i>
turbot	<i>turbot</i>	plie	<i>plaice</i>
saumon	<i>salmon</i>	congre m.	<i>conger</i>
rouget	<i>roach</i>	merlan	<i>whiting</i>
brochet	<i>pike</i>	merluche	<i>haddock</i>
carpe	<i>carp</i>	hareng	<i>herring</i>
truite	<i>trout</i>	sèche	<i>cuttle fish</i>
perche	<i>perch</i>	limande	<i>burt, bret-fish</i>
cabillaud	<i>haddock</i>	lamproie	<i>lamprey</i>
morue	<i>stock fish</i>	homard, lan-	} <i>lobster</i>
raie	<i>skate</i>	gouste	
tanche	<i>tench</i>	écrevisse de	
éperlan	<i>smelt</i>	mer	
maquereau	<i>mackerel</i>	écrevisse	<i>crawfish</i>
surmulet	<i>mullet</i>	crabe m.	<i>crab</i>
carrelet	<i>flounder</i>	salicoque	<i>prawn</i>
barbeau	<i>barbel</i>	chevrette	<i>shrimp</i>
alose	<i>shad</i>	anguille	<i>eel</i>
sole	<i>sole</i>	anchois	<i>anchovy</i>

goujon	<i>gudgeon</i>	chien marin	<i>sea-dog</i>
véron	<i>minnow</i>	loup marin	<i>sea-wolf</i>
lotte, barbotte	<i>eel-pout</i>	hérisson de mer	<i>sea-urchin</i>
loche	<i>loach, ground-ling</i>	frail	<i>fry</i>
morue salée	<i>salt-fish</i>	fretin	<i>young fish</i>
barbue	<i>brill</i>	laite	<i>soft roe</i>
marsoin	<i>sea-hog, porpoise</i>	œufs	<i>spawn, hara roe</i>
espadon	<i>saw-fish</i>	museau	<i>snout</i>
porcelaine	<i>sea-mail</i>	oules	<i>gills</i>
tortue	<i>tortoise</i>	nageoires	<i>fins</i>
huitre	<i>oyster</i>	écailles	} <i>scales</i>
pétoncle	<i>cockle</i>	coquilles	
moule	<i>muscle</i>	arrêtes	<i>bones</i>
baleine	<i>whale</i>	pinces	<i>claws</i>
cachalot	<i>cachalot</i>	appât, amorce	<i>bait</i>
requin	<i>shark</i>	pêcheur	<i>fisherman</i>
dauphin	<i>dolphin</i>	pêche	<i>fishery</i>
		pêche à la ligne	<i>angling</i>

XVIII. OF REPTILES AND INSECTS.

grenouille	<i>frog</i>	fourmi	<i>ant</i>
serpent	<i>serpent</i>	charançon	<i>weevil</i>
couleuvre	<i>adder</i>	cloporte m.	<i>wood-louse</i>
vipère	<i>viper</i>	tique	<i>tick</i>
scorpion	<i>scorpion</i>	pou	<i>louse</i>
aspic	<i>aspick</i>	lente	<i>nit</i>
basilic	<i>basilisk</i>	puce	<i> flea</i>
dragon	<i>dragon</i>	punaise	<i>bug</i>
tarentule	<i>tarantula</i>	chenille	<i>caterpillar</i>
crapeau	<i>toad</i>	papillon	<i>butterfly</i>
lézard	<i>lizard</i>	mouche	<i>fly</i>
sanguis	<i>leech</i>	abeille	<i>bee</i>
limace	<i>slug</i>	frelon	<i>hornet</i>
ver	<i>worm</i>	bourdon	<i>drone</i>
ver-luisant	<i>glow-worm</i>	guêpe	<i>wasp</i>
ver-coquin	<i>wine-grub</i>	taon	<i>oxfly</i>
ver-à-soie	<i>silk-worm</i>	cousin	<i>gnat</i>
escargot	<i>snail</i>	cantbaride	<i>Spanish-flw</i>
escarbot	<i>beetle</i>	hanneton	<i>cockchafer</i>
grillon	<i>cricket</i>	sauterelle	<i>grasshopper</i>
perce-oreille m.	<i>ear-wig</i>	cigale	<i>halm-cricket</i>
teigne	<i>moth</i>	araignée	<i>spider</i>
ciron	<i>hand worm</i>	toile d'araignée	<i>cobweb</i>

essaim d'abeilles	<i>swarm of bees</i>	rayon de miel	<i>honeycomb</i>
miel	<i>honey</i>	ruche	<i>hive</i>
cire	<i>wax</i>	fourmilière	<i>ant-hill</i>

XIX. OF METALS &c.

or	<i>gold</i>	mercure	<i>mercury</i>
argent	<i>silver</i>	vil-argent	<i>quicksilver</i>
platine	<i>platina</i>	soufre	<i>sulphur</i>
vermeil	<i>silver-gilt</i>	nitre	<i>nitre</i>
cuivre	<i>copper</i>	salpêtre	<i>saltpetre</i>
airain	<i>brass</i>	bitume	<i>bitumen</i>
laiton	<i>latten</i>	antimoine	<i>antimony</i>
bronze	<i>bronze</i>	arsenic	<i>arsenic</i>
similor	<i>pinchbeck</i>	alun	<i>alum</i>
fer	<i>iron</i>	conperose f.	<i>copperas</i>
fil d'archai	<i>wire</i>	vitriol	<i>vitriol</i>
acier	<i>steel</i>	carmin	<i>carmine</i>
fer-blanc	<i>iron-tinned</i>	pastel	<i>pastel</i>
étain	<i> pewter</i>	ocre f.	<i>ochre</i>
plomb	<i>lead</i>	vermillon	<i>red lead</i>

XX. OF COLOURS.

blanc	<i>white</i>	rouge	<i>red</i>
noir	<i>black</i>	jaune	<i>yellow</i>
bleu	<i>blue</i>	brun	<i>brown</i>
vert	<i>green</i>	pourpre	<i>purple</i>
gris	<i>grey</i>	écarlate	<i>scarlet</i>
orangé	<i>orange colour</i>	indigo	<i>indigo</i>

XXI. OF PRECIOUS STONES.

diamant	<i>diamond</i>	améthyste	<i>amethyst</i>
topaze	<i>topaz</i>	cornaline	<i>cornelian</i>
émeraude	<i>emerald</i>	onix	<i>onyx</i>
saphir	<i>sapphire</i>	agathe	<i>agate</i>
escarboucle	<i>carbuncle</i>	corail	<i>coral</i>
rubis	<i>ruby</i>	perle	<i>pearl</i>

XII. OF THE PRINCIPAL COUNTRIES.

France	<i>France</i>	Malabar	<i>Malabar</i>
Italie	<i>Italy</i>	le Japon	<i>Japan</i>
Espagne	<i>Spain</i>	Barbarie	<i>Barbary</i>
Portugal	<i>Portugal</i>	Egypte	<i>Egypt</i>
Turquie	<i>Turkey</i>	Biledulgerid	<i>Biledulgerid</i>
Allemagne	<i>Germany</i>	Zaara	<i>Zaara</i>
Suisse	<i>Switzerland</i>	Nigritie	<i>Nigritia</i>
Prusse	<i>Prussia</i>	Guinée	<i>Guinea</i>
Pologne	<i>Poland</i>	Ethiopie	<i>Ethiopia</i>
Bohême	<i>Bohemia</i>	Zanguebar	<i>Zanguebar</i>
Hongrie	<i>Hungary</i>	Monomotapa	<i>Monomotapa</i>
Hollande	<i>Holland</i>	Monoémugi	<i>Monoemugi</i>
les Pays-Bas	<i>the Netherlands</i>	Caffrerie	<i>Caffraria</i>
Angleterre	<i>England</i>	Abyssinie	<i>Abyssinia</i>
Ecosse	<i>Scotland</i>	Canada	<i>Canada</i>
Irlande	<i>Ireland</i>	Pensylvanie	<i>Pennsylvania</i>
Russie	<i>Russia</i>	le Maryland	<i>Maryland</i>
Danemarck	<i>Denmark</i>	la Virginie	<i>Virginia</i>
Suède	<i>Sweden</i>	la Caroline	<i>Carolina</i>
Norvège	<i>Norway</i>	la Géorgie	<i>Georgia</i>
Tartarie	<i>Tartary</i>	le Pérou	<i>Peru</i>
Arabie	<i>Arabia</i>	le Paraguay	<i>Paraguay</i>
Persie	<i>Persia</i>	le Chili	<i>Chili</i>
Inde	<i>India</i>	le Brésil	<i>Brazil</i>
Chine	<i>China</i>	la Guiane	<i>Guiana</i>
Mogol	<i>Mogul</i>	St. Dominique	<i>St. Domingo</i>
Bengale	<i>Bengal</i>	la Jamaïque	<i>Jamaica</i>

XXIII. COMMON NATIONAL NAMES.

Français, e	<i>French</i>	Flamand, e	<i>Flemish</i>
Italien, ne	<i>Italian</i>	Anglais, e	<i>English</i>
Espagnol, e	<i>Spanish</i>	Ecossais, e	<i>Scotch</i>
Portugais, e	<i>Portuguese</i>	Irlandais, e	<i>Irish</i>
Turc, que	<i>Turkish, Turk</i>	Russe	<i>Russian</i>
Allemand, e	<i>German</i>	Danois, e	<i>Dane</i>
Prussien, ne	<i>Prussian</i>	Suédois, e	<i>Swede</i>
Suisse, ess	<i>Swiss</i>	Norvégien, ne	<i>Norwegian</i>
Poloais, e	<i>Pole</i>	Persan, e	<i>Persian</i>
Bohémien, ne	<i>Bohemian</i>	Chinois, e	<i>Chinese</i>
Hongrois, e	<i>Hungarian</i>	Américain, e	<i>American</i>
Hollandais, e	<i>Dutch</i>	Japon, e	<i>Japanese</i>
Autrichien, ne	<i>Austrian</i>	Lapon	<i>Laplander</i>

INTRODUCTION

TO THE

EXERCISES.

22. OF THE PREPOSITIONS *of*, *from*, *to*, AND OF THE ARTICLE *the*, *a*.

The English definite article *the*, is rendered by

le before a noun masculine } in the singular.
la before a noun feminine }

and *les* before nouns of either gender, in the plural.

The indefinite *a* or *an* is rendered by *un* before a noun masculine, and by *une* in the feminine.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Le livre</i>	<i>the book</i>	<i>un homme</i>	<i>a man</i>
<i>la rue</i>	<i>the street</i>	<i>une femme</i>	<i>a woman</i>
<i>les plantes</i>	<i>the plants</i>	<i>un héros</i>	<i>a hero</i>

EXERCISES.

<i>The wood;</i>	<i>the forest;</i>	<i>the houses;</i>	<i>the men;</i>	<i>the court;</i>	
<i>bois m.</i>	<i>forêt f.</i>	<i>maisons pl.</i>	<i>hommes pl.</i>	<i>cour f.</i>	
<i>the foot;</i>	<i>the arms;</i>	<i>the room;</i>	<i>the garden;</i>	<i>the windows</i>	
<i>piéd m.</i>	<i>bras pl.</i>	<i>chambre f.</i>	<i>jardin m.</i>	<i>fenêtres pl.</i>	
<i>a history;</i>	<i>a novel;</i>	<i>a foreigner;</i>	<i>a walk;</i>	<i>a day;</i>	
<i>histoire f.</i>	<i>roman m.</i>	<i>étranger m.</i>	<i>promenade f.</i>	<i>jour m.</i>	
<i>a night;</i>	<i>the sun;</i>	<i>the moon;</i>	<i>the stars;</i>	<i>a body:</i>	<i>a card.</i>
<i>nuits f.</i>	<i>soleil m.</i>	<i>lune f.</i>	<i>étoiles pl.</i>	<i>corps m.</i>	<i>carte f.</i>
<i>a crown.</i>					
<i>écor m.</i>					

23. The prepositions *of* and *from* are rendered literally by *de*, and *to* by *à*.

When followed by the definite article, they are rendered in this manner:

your relations; the top of the mountain; to my friend
 parents pl. summit m. montagne f. ami m.
 from these pleasures; of our duties; to their connexions; of
 pleasures pl. devoirs pl. liaisons pl.
 his acquaintances; to my neighbours.
 connaissances pl. voisins pl.

25. OF ELISIONS.

The *apostrophe* (') marks the suppression of a vowel before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, as in *l'église*, for *la église*, etc. This suppression is called *elision*: *a*, *e*, are the only two vowels which are thus cut off; *i* is cut off in *si*, before *il* and *ils*, *s'il*, *s'ils*, *o* and *u* are never cut off.

The *a* is suppressed only in *la* feminine, both when an article and a personal pronoun.

But the *elision* of *e* occurs, not only in the definite article and personal pronoun *le*, but also in many monosyllables, such as *je*, *me*, *te*, *se*, *de*, *ce*, *ne*, *que*, and in the compound of *que*, such as, *parceque*, *quoique*, *puisque*, *jusque*, *vü que*, etc.

EXAMPLES OF ELISIONS.

of	la	in l'amitié	for	la amitié	the friendship
	la	..l'herbe		la herbe	the grass
	le	..l'oiseau		le oiseau	the bird
	le	..l'honneur		le honneur	the honour
	je	..j'ai		je ai	I have
	me	..il m'oublie		il me oublie	he forgets me
	te	..je t'aime		je te aime	I love thee
	se	..il s'habille		il se habille	he dresses himself
	le	..vous l'aidez		vous le aidez	you help him
	la	..vous l'obligez		vous la obligez	you oblige her
	ce	..c'est vrai		ce est vrai	it is true
	de	..un coup-d'œil		un coup de œil	a glance
ne	..n'oubliez pas	vous	que attendez	ne oubliez pas	do not forget
	que			que attendez	what do you ex-
				vous	pect?

si	si	s'il arrivait	for	si il arrivait	if it happened
si	..	s'ils pouvaient		si ils pouvaient	if they could
parceque	..	parcequ'il faut		parceque il faut	because it is requisite
quoique	..	quoiqu'il fasse		quoique il fasse	whatever he may do
puisque	..	puisque on vous dit		puisque on vous dit	since they tell you
jusque	..	jusqu'à demain		jusque à demain	till to-morrow
vu que	..	vu qu'il obtiendra		vu que il obtiendra	since he will obtain
dès que	..	dèsqu'on saura		dès que on saura	as soon as it is known
quelque	..	quelqu'un vient		quelque un vient	somebody comes

The *e* of the preposition *entre* is not cut off generally before *eux*, *elles*, *autres*, good writers prefer leaving it, thus, *entre eux*, *entre elles*, *entre autres*; but in the following compound words there must be an elision :

Entr'acte	an interlude	} for {	entre-acte
s'entr'aider	to help another		se entre-aider
entr'ouïr	to hear imperfectly		entre-ouïr
entr'ouvrir	to half open		entre-ouvrir

EXERCISE.

The soul; the heroine; the mind; he loves him; she
âme f. héroïne f. esprit m. il aime 2 le 1; elle
 loves her; I love this man; you understand me; he es-
 2 la 1; je aime homme m. vous entendez 2 me 1; il es-
 teems thee; he goes away; it was the golden age; do not go
 time 2 te 1; se en-va ce était de or 2 âge 1; * ne aller
 there; if he comes; if they please; what has he said? till
 pas là; si vient: ils veulent; que a-t-il dit? jusque
 night; though he says; since he knows; when he saw;
 au soir m. quoique dise; puisque sait; lorsque vit;
 between them; somebody is come.
 entre eux; quelque un est venu.

26. OF NEGATIONS.

The negation *not*, is rendered by *ne-pas*, of which *ne* is placed *before* the verb, and the *pas* *after*.

Never is rendered by *ne-jamais*; *nobody* by *ne-personne*; *nothing*, by *ne-rien*, which are placed in the same order as *ne-pas*.

EXAMPLES OF NEGATIVE PHRASES.

N.B. The ^ shows the place of the verb.

<i>Not</i>	{ ne ^ pas ne ^ point	as	je ne suis pas, etc.	<i>I am not, etc.</i>
<i>never</i>	ne ^ jamais		nous n'avons point	<i>we have not</i>
<i>nothing</i>	ne ^ rien		il ne joue jamais	<i>he never plays</i>
<i>nobody</i>	ne ^ personne		vous ne dites rien	<i>you say nothing</i>
<i>not a jet</i>	ne ^ goutte		je ne vois personne	<i>I see nobody</i>
<i>no where</i>	ne ^ nulle part		je ne vois goutte	{ <i>I do not see, or I</i> <i>see not in the least</i>
			je ne vais nulle part	<i>I go no where</i>

In compound tenses, the negations are always placed before and after the auxiliary verb; as nous n'avons point parlé, *we have not spoken*; on n'aurait jamais cru, *one could never have believed*.

EXAMPLES

I do not say; I have not said; I have never seen; I never (tell a falsehood); I do nothing; I have done nothing; is he not arrived? does not he come? I see nothing; has he never seen? he never loses his time; that (is worth) nothing; I met nobody.

* dis ai dit ai vu mens
 fais ai fait est-il ar-
 rived * 2 vient I vois a-t- vu
 perd temps m. cela vaut rencontrai

27. OF WORDS WHICH ARE ALIKE IN BOTH LANGUAGES.

There are many words which are alike in both languages, and others which differ only in their termination.

The expressions, which are perfectly alike, are particularly those that have the following terminations :

-al	as	{ animal, cardinal, fatal, général, local, moral, natal, original, principal, etc.
-ble	..	{ capable, fable, etc. bible, éligible, etc. noble, double, soluble, insoluble, etc.
-ace	..	{ face, grimace, grace, place, préface, race, surface, trace, etc.
-ance	..	{ chance, complaisance, extravagance, ignorance, lance, tempérance, etc.
-ence	..	{ abstinence, conférence, continence, diligence, éloquence, patience, etc.
-ice	..	{ artifice, auspices, édifice, justice, injustice, office, orifice, précipice, solstice, etc.
-acle	..	{ miracle, oracle, obstacle, réceptacle, tabernacle, spectacle, etc.
-ade	..	{ ambuscade, cavalcade, brigade, esplanade, sérénade, rétrograde, etc.
-age	..	{ âge, adage, bandage, cage, cordage, image, page, plumage, rage, etc.
-ège	..	{ collège, privilège, sacrilège, siège, etc.
-ge	..	{ vestige, doge, barge, charge, orange, forge, rouge, refuge, déluge, etc.
-ule	..	{ globule, ridicule, animalcule, corpuscule, formule, module, mule, pustule, valvule, etc.
-ile	..	{ bile, débile, agile, docile, ductile, facile, fragile, nubile, reptile, versatile, etc.
-ine	..	{ carabine, fascine, doctrine, héroïne, machine, marine, famine, mine, rapine, etc.
-ion	..	{ action, fraction, légion, nation, opinion, passion, question, religion, etc.
-ant	..	{ arrogant, constant, élégant, éléphant, pétulant, piquant, poignant, vigilant, etc.
-ent	..	{ absent, accident, compliment, augment, content, élément, fréquent, serpent, etc.

28. Many other English words require only the change of termination, in the following manner :

-ary	into	-aire	as	<i>military</i>	<i>militaire</i>
-ory	....	-oire	..	<i>glory</i>	<i>gloire</i>
-cy	....	-ce	..	<i>clemency</i>	<i>clemence</i>
-ty	....	-té	..	<i>beauty</i>	<i>beauté</i>
-ous	....	-eux	..	<i>dangerous</i>	<i>dangereux</i>
-our	....	-eur	..	<i>favour</i>	<i>faveur</i>

-or	into	-eur	as	error	erreur
-tar	....	-in	..	clandestine	clandestin
-ive	....	-if	..	expressive	expressif
-rie	....	-rie	..	fury	furie
-cracy	....	-cratie	..	aristocracy	aristocratie

N.B. Adjectives in $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} -eux \\ -if \\ -in \end{array} \right\}$ make their feminine in $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} -euse \\ -ive \\ -ine \end{array} \right\}$

EXERCISE

The beauty of that fable ; the horror of vice ; the utility of
 f. *cette* f. f. h. m. art. m. f. art
 science ; the atrocity of this action ; the violence of his passions ,
 f. f. *cette* f. f. *ses* pl.
 the simplicity of that machine ; an audacious conspirator ; the
 f. *cette* f. 2 m. 1
 absurdity of that opinion ; the military evolutions ; an industrious
 f. *cette* f. pl. 2 pl. 1 2
 nation ; an important victory ; an alimentary pension ; a dangerous
 f. 1 2 f. 1 2 f. 1 2
 animal ; a figurative expression ; a famous general ; his constant
 m. 1 2 f. 1 m. *as* 2
 generosity ; he is incapable of attention ; his impudence is visible ;
 f. 1 *il est* *son*
 his fidelity is indubitable ; she is very attentive ; your clemency is
sa f. *elle est très-* f. *votre* f.
 admirable ; the destruction of his fortune was the consequence of
 f. *sa* f. *fut* f.
 his temerity ; she is very scrupulous ; his condition is horrible , his
sa f. *très-* f. *sa* f. *ses*
 parents are very miserable ; this history is incontestable ; your
 pl. *sont très-* pl. *cette* f. *votre*
 facility is prodigious ; his perfidy is odious ; it was a horrible
 f. *sa* f. f. *ce était*
 famine ; the sublimity of his sentiments is still preferable to the
 f. f. *ses* m. *encore*
 energy of his expressions ; it was a decisive action ; the carnage
ses f. *c'était* f. 2 f. 1 m.
 was terrible ; that obstacle is invincible ; this instrument is not
est *est* m.

harmonious ; the prosperity of the wicked is not durable ; your
insidious presents are not acceptable ; his memory is truly extra-
ordinary ; that is his principal occupation ; a central position ; his
extravagance is visible ; these arguments are insoluble.

PART I

**OF WORDS CONSIDERED IN THEIR NATURE AND
INTERRELATIONS**

There are in French nine sorts of words, or parts of speech, namely :

- | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------|------------------|
| 1. Substantive, or Noun, | 4. Pronoun, | 7. Preposition, |
| 2. Article, | 5. Verb. | 8. Conjunction, |
| 3. Adjective, | 6. Adverb | 9. Interjection. |

CHAPTER I

29. OF THE SUBSTANTIVE, OR NOUN.

The substantive is a word which serves to name a person, or thing, as *Pierre*, Peter; *livre*, book, etc.

There are two sorts of substantives, the *substantive proper*, or *proper name*, and the *substantive common*, also called *appellative*.

The *proper name* is that which is applied to a particular person, or thing, as *César*, *Cesar*; *la Tamise*, the *Thames*.

The *substantive common* is that which belongs to a whole class of objects. The word *homme*, man, is a substantive common, as it is applicable to any individual, that is to *Pierre*, or *Paul*, or *Jean*.

Of these nouns some are *collective*, and others *abstract*.

Collectives express either a whole mass, as *une armée*, an army ; *une forêt*, a forest ; or a partial assemblage, as *une quantité de*, etc. a certain quantity of ; *la plupart*, most part, etc.

Abstract nouns are the names of qualities abstracted from their subjects : as, *surface*, *rondeur*, *science*, *sagesse* ; surface, roundness, knowledge, wisdom, etc.

In substantives are to be considered *Gender* and *Number*.

30. OF GENDERS.

There are *only* two genders, the *masculine* and *feminine*.

The masculine belongs to the male kind, as *un homme*, a man ; *un lion*, a lion, etc.

The feminine belongs to the female kind, as *une femme*, a woman ; *une lionne*, a lioness, etc.

This distinction applies also, in French, to inanimate objects, which are either masculine or feminine, as, *un livre*, a book, is masculine ; *une table*, a table, is feminine, etc.

31. OF NUMBER.

There are two numbers ; the *singular* and the *plural*.

The *singular* expresses *one single* object, as *un homme*, *un livre*.

The *plural* announces *more* objects than *one*. as *des hommes*, *des livres*.

Some nouns have no plural, such as names of passions, senses, metals: *l'ivrognerie*, drunkenness; *l'ouïe*, hearing; *le courage*, courage; *l'or*, gold; *l'argent*, silver.

Some have no singular: *les annales*, annals; *les ancêtres*, ancestors; *les mouchettes*, snuffers; *les épinards*, spinach.

Proper names have no plural, as *Londres*, *Paris*, *Milton*, etc.

32. OF THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF SIMPLE SUBSTANTIVES.

GENERAL RULE.

The plural is formed in French, as in English, by the addition of an *s* to the singular.

EXAMPLES

Singular.			Plural.	
<i>le roi</i>	the king	|	<i>les rois</i>	the kings
<i>la reine</i>	the queen	|	<i>les reines</i>	the queens

EXCEPTIONS TO THE GENERAL RULE.

1. Words ending in *s*, *x*, *z*, in the singular, remain the same in the plural.

EXAMPLES.

Singular.			Plural.	
<i>le fils</i>	the son	|	<i>les fils</i>	the sons
<i>la voix</i>	the voice	|	<i>les voix</i>	the voices
<i>le nez</i>	the nose	|	<i>les nez</i>	the noses

2. Words ending in *au*, *eu*, *ou* form their plural by adding an *x*.

EXAMPLES.

Singular.			Plural.	
bateau	boat		bateaux	boats
feu	fire		feux	fires
bijou*	jewel		bijoux	jewels
vous	you		vous	you

3. Words ending in *al*, *ail*, change their terminations into *aux* to form the plural.

EXAMPLES.

Singular.			Plural.	
cheval†	horse		chevaux	horses
travail‡	work		travaux	works

4. Polysyllables ending in *ant*, *ent* form their plural by the addition of an *s*, thus : *enfant*, *enfants*, *moment*, *moments*, *commençant*, *commençants*.

M. Levizac's rule on this subject was to drop the *t* and put an *s*, *enfant*, *enfants*, and it has long been optional to adopt the one or the other way ; but the French Academy having, in the new edition of their dictionary, adopted the first orthography, it has been thought right to follow their example.

Monosyllables ending in *ent*, *ant* form their plural by the addition of an *s* : as *gant*, *gants*, *chant*, *chants*, *dent*, *dents*.

5. The following six words are quite irregular as to the formation of the plural :

Singular.			Plural.	
ail	garlic		aïux	heads of garlic
bétail	cattle		bestiaux	cattle
aïeul	grandfather		aïeux	ancestors
ciel	heaven		cieux	heavens
œil	eye		yeux	eyes
bercail	sheepfold		has no plural	

* Those in *-ou*, that take *s* in the plural, are *cheu*, *catteu*, *bijou*, *grecu*, *libre*, *loujou*, *poû* : the others now follow the general rule and take *s*, as *cien*, *clous*, *verrou*, *verrous*, &c.

† Several nouns in *-al*, as *bal*, *cal*, *pal*, *régal*, *carnaval*, *local*, &c. follow however the general rule, simply taking *s*.

‡ Those in *-ail*, making their plural in *aux*, are particularly *ball*, *sons-ball*, *corail*, *émail*, *soupirail*, *travail*, *vantail*, *ventail*. the rest, as *allail*, *détail*, *cornail*, *gouvernail*, *surcail*, *sarail*, &c. follow the general rule.

33. OF THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF COMPOUND SUBSTANTIVES.

1. When the word is composed of an adjective and un, both take the mark of the plural.

<i>un chef-lieu</i>	county town	<i>des chefs-lieux</i>
<i>un petit-maitre</i>	a dandy	<i>des petits-maitres</i>
<i>un loup-garon</i>	a hobgoblin	<i>des loups-garons</i>
<i>un franc-alleu</i>	a free-hold	<i>des francs-alleus</i>
<i>un arc-boutant</i>	a buttress	<i>des arcs-boutants</i>

To this rule there are exceptions : in some words compounded of a noun and an adjective, one of them takes the *s*, and the other does not ; in some both remain in the singular, as :

<i>un rouge-gorge</i>	a robin red-breast	<i>des rouge-gorge</i>
<i>un hôtel-Dieu</i>	a hospital	<i>des hôtels-Dieu</i>
<i>un arc-en-ciel</i>	a rainbow	<i>des arcs-en-ciel</i>

These differences and apparent contradictions arise from the following considerations :

Rouge gorge is an elliptical form of which the full sense is *oiseau à rouge gorge* ; *des rouge gorge*, consequently, means *des oiseaux à rouge gorge*, and cannot assume the sign of the plural. *Hôtel Dieu* is also elliptical, and its full sense is *hôtel de Dieu* ; there may be more hotels than one, but there is but one *Dieu*. The same may be said of *arcs* and *ciel*, in *des arcs-en-ciel*.

From what precedes may be established into a precise rule, viz. : that the *s* cannot be affixed to those words to which an idea of plurality cannot be attached.

2. One of the components of a compound substantive, or even each of them, may be a verb, an adverb,

a preposition, all undeclined parts of speech to which the *s* cannot be attached.

<i>un essai-mains</i>	a towel	<i>des essai-mains</i>
<i>un essai-main</i>	————	<i>des essai-main</i>
<i>un passe-partout</i>	a master key	<i>des passe-partout</i>
<i>un avant-coureux</i>	a fore runner	<i>des avant-coureux</i>
<i>un vice-amiral</i>	a vice admiral	<i>des vice-amiraux</i>

3. When the component words are taken from the Latin or from any foreign language, no *s* is added to the plural.

<i>des te-deum</i>	<i>des post-scriptum</i>
<i>des mezzo-termine</i>	<i>des vade-mecum</i>
<i>des auto-da-fé</i>	

4. In all words compounded of *porte* and a noun substantive, no *s* is to be added to the latter.

<i>un porte-étendard</i>	standard bearer	<i>des porte-étendard</i>
<i>un porte-épée</i>	sword bearer	<i>des porte-épée</i>
<i>un porte-mouchettes</i>	snuffers stand	<i>des porte-mouchettes</i>

EXERCISE.

The flowers of the gardens; the niceties of the languages; the
fleur *jardin* *délicatesse* *langue*
 palaces of the kings; the woods of those countries; the wallnuts of
palais *roi* *bois* *ces* *pays* *noix*
 their orchards; the pictures of those painters; the feathers of these
leurs *verger* *tableaux* *ces* *peintre* *plume* *ces*
 birds; the melody of their voices; the gods of the pagans; the
oiseaux *=f. s.* *leurs voix* *dieu* *païen*
 jewels of my sisters; the cabbages of our gardens; these charming
bijou *mes sœur* *chou* *nos jardin* *ces charmant*
 places; the horses of my stables; the fans of these ladies; the
2 lieu 1 *cheval* *mes écurie* *éventail* *ces dame*
 (front gates) of those churches; the actions of my ancestors; the
portail *ces* *église* *—* *mes aïeul*
 evils of this life; the victories of those generals; the works of
mal *cette vie* *—* *ces* *—* *travail*
 those architects; the corals of those seas; the (learned men) of
ces *—tecte* *corail* *ces mer* *savant*

those times; the presents of my parents; the teeth of your combs;
ces temps-là — mes — dent votre peigne
 the playthings of our children; the heads of these nails.
jeux nos enfant tête ces clous.

CHAPTER II.

OF THE ARTICLE.

34. The *Article* is a small word prefixed to substantives, to determine the extent of their signification.

The French article is $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{le} \text{ before a masculine} \\ \text{substantive} \\ \textit{la} \text{ before a feminine} \\ \text{substantive} \end{array} \right\}$ the plural is *les* for both genders.

EXAMPLE.

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>le jour</i>	<i>the day</i>	<i>les jours</i>	<i>the days</i>
<i>la nuit</i>	<i>the night</i>	<i>les nuits</i>	<i>the nights</i>

EXERCISE.

The sun, the moon, and the stars are the glory of nature.
soleil m. lune f. étoile f. pl. sont = l. art—f.

The king, the queen, and the princes are well pleased. The rose,
roi m. reine f. —m. pl. très-satisfaits — f.

the violet, the tulip, the narcissus, the hyacinth, the gilliflower,
violette f. tulip f. narcisse m. jacinthe f. giroflee f.

the jasmine, the lily, the honeysuckle, the ranunculus are the
jasmin m. lis m. chèvrefeuille m. renoncule f.

delight of the sight. Poetry, painting and music are
délices f. pl. eux f. art. poésie f. art. peinture f. art. musique

(sister arts). The day and the night are equally necessary.
sœur f. pl. jour m. nuit f. également nécessaire.

OF THE ELISION OF THE ARTICLE *le, la*.

35. The articles *le, la* form but one word with the noun following, if the latter begins with a vowel or an *h* not aspirate. This suppression of a letter is called *Elision*.

EXAMPLE.

<i>l'argent</i>	} instead of {	<i>le argent</i>	<i>the money</i>
<i>l'histoire</i>		<i>la histoire</i>	<i>the history</i>

36. The same elision takes place also with regard to the preposition *de*, when it precedes a word beginning with a vowel, or an *h* not aspirate.

EXAMPLE.

<i>gage d'amitié</i>	token of friendship.
<i>parole d'honneur</i>	word of honour.

EXERCISE.

The soul of man without cultivation is like a diamond
âme f. art. homme h. m. sans culture f. est comme diamant m.

(in the rough) The history of Spain is sometimes very interesting.
brut h. m. Espagne quelquefois très intéressante.

(Look at) the amaranthe and the anemone; what beauty! Self-
Considérez amaranthe f. ——— f. quelle — f. art. amour

love and pride are always the offspring of a weak mind.
propre art. orgueil toujours partage m. faible 2e esprit m. l.

Honesty, innocence, honour, and the love of
art. Honnêteté h. m. art. ——— art. honneur, h. m. amour art.

virtue are (very much) esteemed. Summer, autumn, and
vertu f. très- estimés art. été art. automne art.

winter are very changeable. France is separated from Italy
hiver h. m. variables art. — séparés de Italie

by the Alps, and from Spain by the Pyrenees (An act) of
par Alpes pl. art. — — pl. acte

ambition. She was struck with horror. He is full of vanity.
—— Elle était frappée de — Il est rempli orgueil

In a fit of humour.
dans un accès ———

CONTRACTION OF THE ARTICLES *le, la, les*, AND
PREPOSITION *de, à*.

37. It has been observed page 37 that the articles *le, la, les* are contracted into one word with the prepositions *de, à*, when they are used in connexion before a word beginning with a consonant or an *h* aspirate.

EXAMPLES.

Du roi	is instead of	<i>de le roi</i>	<i>of the king</i>
du héros	————	<i>de le héros</i>	<i>of the hero</i>
au roi	————	<i>à le roi</i>	<i>to the king</i>
au héros	————	<i>à le héros</i>	<i>to the hero</i>
des rois	————	<i>de les rois</i>	<i>of the kings</i>
des reines	————	<i>de les reines</i>	<i>of the queens</i>
ux rois	————	<i>à les rois</i>	<i>to the kings</i>
aux reines	————	<i>à les reines</i>	<i>to the queens</i>

EXERCISES.

The top of the mountains and the bottom of the vallies are
sommet m. montagne fond m. vallée
 equally agreeable. Silk is soft to the touch. The happiness
également agréables art. Soie f. douce toucher m. bonheur m.
 of a feeling man is to relieve the wants of the poor. A man
sensible 2 l de subvenir à besoin pauvre m.s.
 given to pleasure was never a great man. He obeyed the orders
livré art. plaisir m. ne fut grand Il obéit à ordres
 of the king. The warbling of birds, the murmuring of
gazouillement m. art. oiseau ——— rem. art.
 streams, the enamel of meadows, the coolness of woods,
ruisseau émail m. art. prairie fraîcheur f. art. bois
 the fragrance of flowers, and the sweet smell of plants,
parfum m. art. fleur douce odeur f. art. plante
 contribute greatly to the pleasure of the mind and to the health of
contribuent beaucoup esprit santé f.
 the body.
corps m.

De and *à* are never contracted with *la*.

EXAMPLES.

De la reine of the queen | *à la reine* to the queen

Nor are *de* and *à* contracted with *le*, before a masculine substantive singular, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

EXAMPLES.

De l'esprit of the mind | *de l'homme* of man
À l'esprit to the mind | *à l'homme* to man

Contraction does not take place either when the adjective *tout*, all, every, intervenes between *de* or *à*, and the article.

EXAMPLES.

<i>de tout le monde</i>	of every body
<i>de tous les hommes</i>	of all men
<i>à tout le monde</i>	to every body
<i>à tous les hommes</i>	to all men
<i>de toutes les vertus</i>	of all virtues
<i>à toutes les maisons</i>	to all houses

The hope of success strengthened the cause of virtue
espérance f. art. réussite f. fortifie — f. art. vertu f.
 and weakened the audaciousness of rebellion. Fire of
affaiblit audace f. art. — f. art. Feu m. art.
 imagination, strength of mind, and firmness of soul,
— f. art. force f. art. esprit art. fermeté f. art. âme
 are gifts of nature. We saw with horror that man
des dons m.pl. art. — f. Nous vîmes avec =
 given up to avarice and to voluptuousness. Good cultivation
*livré * art. — à art. volupté f. art. Bonne culture f.*
 is that which contributes most to the fertility of the soil. More
est ce qui contribue le plus = terre f. Plus
 or less pain is the lot of every body. The history
ou moins de peine partage m. tout art. monde m. =
 of man under all the circumstances of life, is the study of the
art. sous toutes art. circonstance f. art. vie f. étude
 wise Playfulness does not become all ages, nor
*sage m. art. Enjouement m. * ne sied ni à tout art. — m.pl. ni à*
 all dispositions
art. caractère m.pl.

OF THE ARTICLE.

38. In French, the article always agrees in gender and number with the substantive to which it relates.

EXAMPLES.

le livre que je cherche
la femme que je vois
les hommes qui étudient

the book which I am looking for
 the woman whom I see
 the men that study.

EXERCISE.

The father and the mother, the brothers and the sisters, the
père m. mère m. frère m.pl. sœur f.pl.art.
 uncles and the aunts, and several other relations were
oncles m.pl. art. tantes f.pl. plusieurs autres parents m.pl. étaient
 present. What we value is health, frugality, liberty,
présens. Ce que nous estimons c'est art. santé f. art. =f. art. =f.
 vigour of mind and body; it is the love of virtue,
art. vigueur f. art. art. corps m. ce amour m. art. f.
 the fear of the gods, fidelity to all mankind,
crainte f. de dieu m.pl. art. =f. envers art. monde m. art.
 moderation in prosperity, fortitude in adversity,
—f. dans art. =f. art. force f. art. =f. art.
 courage, good morals, and the abhorrence of flattery.
—m. art. bonnes mœurs f.pl. horreur f. à.m. art. =f.

OF THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

39. *Some*, signifying a little of, a small portion or quantity of, a few, is rendered by *du, de la, des, de l'* before a vowel and *h* not aspirate; but *some* is hardly ever used in English, whereas *du, de la, des* must always be expressed in French.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Je mange du pain</i>	I eat bread
<i>Il prend de la peine</i>	He takes pains
<i>Nous mangeons du hash</i>	We eat some hash
<i>Elle conçoit de la haine</i>	She conceives a hatred
<i>Vous avez de l'amitié</i>	You have friendship
<i>Vous prenez de l'humeur</i>	You get into an ill humour
<i>Nous cueillons des pommes</i>	We gather apples
<i>Ils vendent des oranges</i>	They sell oranges

EXAMPLES.

Give me	some bread and	butter.	Offer him some
<i>donnez-moi</i>	<i>pain m.</i>	<i>pr. part. beurre m.</i>	<i>Offrez-lui</i>
meat.	Take some	salt.	(There is) mustard. We
<i>viande f.</i>	<i>Prenez</i>	<i>scl m.</i>	<i>Voilà pr. art. moutarde f. Nous</i>
have some	girkins.	Shall I offer you	some fowl? Shall I
<i>avons</i>	<i>cornichons pl.</i>	<i>Vous offrirai-je</i>	<i>poulet m. Vous</i>
help you to	some fruit?	I will take (with pleasure)	some
<i>servirai-je *</i>	<i>— m.</i>	<i>Je prendrai</i>	<i>volontiers</i>
broth.	Bring me	some bread.	Pour me out some beer.
<i>bouillon m.</i>	<i>Apportez-moi</i>		<i>Verses-moi * bière f.</i>
Drink some	wine.	Take some	tea. Put (in it) some sugar
<i>Buvez</i>	<i>vin m.</i>	<i>Prenez</i>	<i>thé m. Mettez-y sucre m.</i>
and milk.	I hear	some noise.	It hails. She
<i>pr. art. lait m.</i>	<i>J'entends</i>	<i>bruit m.</i>	<i>Il tombe grêle f. s. Elle</i>
has	pride.	Have you	any ink and pens?
<i>a pr. art. orgueil m.</i>	<i>Avez-vous</i>	<i>pr. art. encre f.</i>	<i>pr. art. plumes pl.</i>
Put	some	oil	and vinegar in the salad.
<i>Mettez</i>		<i>huile, h. m.</i>	<i>pr. art. vinaigre m. dans salade f.</i>
Eat	some	lobster.	He has received some gold and
<i>Mangez</i>	<i>pr. art. homard m.</i>	<i>h. asp.</i>	<i>Il a reçu or m.</i>
	silver.		
<i>pr. art. argent m.</i>			

40. *Du, de la, des, de l'* are not used generally after a negation, nor before a noun preceded by an adjective. In those cases, *de* alone is used without any distinction of gender or number.

EXAMPLES.

Je ne mange pas de pain, *I do not eat bread.*
 Il ne prend jamais de peine *he takes no pains.*
 Ils vendent de bonnes oranges *they sell good oranges.*

EXERCISE.

Do not give me any bread. We have good girkins. I will not
M'a me donner pas avons bons Je ne prendrai pas
 take broth. We drink excellent wine. She has no pride.
bouillon nous buvons ——— vin Elle n'a pas
 Have you no ink? Do you not take salt? We never drink wine
Ne prenez-vous pas jamais
 Do you never eat fruit?
manges-vous jamais

CHAPTER III.

OF THE ADJECTIVE.

41. The adjective is a word, which is added to a substantive to express its quality, as,

bon père	<i>good father</i>	|	bonne mère	<i>good mother</i>
beau livre	<i>fine book</i>	|	belle image	<i>fine image</i>

These words *bon, bonne, beau, belle*, are adjectives, because they express the qualities of *père, mère, livre, image*.

A word is known to be an adjective, when it can be properly joined with the word *personne*, or the word *chose*. Thus, *habile*, skilful, and *agréable*, agreeable, are adjectives, because we can say *personne habile*, skilful person, *chose agréable*, agreeable thing.

In French, the adjective agrees in *gender* and *number* with the substantive to which it relates. This

difference of *gender* and *number* is generally marked by the termination of the adjective.

42. OF THE FORMATION OF THE FEMININE OF FRENCH ADJECTIVES.

All adjectives ending, in the singular, in *e* mute, are of *both* genders.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Un homme aimable,</i>	An amiable man
<i>Une femme aimable,</i>	An amiable woman

Adjectives ending, in the masculine, in *e*, *i*, *u*, *t*, *d*, form their feminine by the addition of an *e* mute

EXAMPLES.

m.	f.	
prudent	prudente	<i>prudent</i>
sensé	sensée	<i>sensible</i>
poli	polie	<i>polite</i>
tortu	tortue	<i>crooked</i>
instruit	instruite	<i>well-informed</i>
grand	grande	<i>large</i>

Adjectives in *-el*, *-eil*, *-ien*, *-on*, *-et*, *-as*, *-ès*, *-aus*, *-os*, *-ot*, *-ul*, *-il*, form their feminine, by doubling the final consonant, and adding *e* mute.

EXAMPLES.

m.	f.			
cruel	cruelle	<i>cruel</i>	= 50	} of each termination.
pareil	pareille	<i>like</i>	= 3	
ancien	ancienne	<i>ancient</i>	= 80	
bon	bonne	<i>good</i>	= 18	
net	nette	<i>clean</i>	= 34	

m.	f.		m.	f.	
bas	basse	<i>low</i>	épais	épaisse	<i>thick</i>
cas	casée	<i>cracked</i>	métis	métisse	<i>mongrel</i>
gras	grasse	<i>fat</i>	gros	grosse	<i>big</i>
las	lassée	<i>tired</i>	sot	sotte	<i>silly</i>
express	expresse	<i>express</i>	vieillot	vieillotte	<i>oldish</i>
profes	professe	<i>professed</i>	nul	nulle	<i>no</i>
		{ monk or nun }		gentille	<i>gentle</i>

Adjectives ending in *f*, change this letter into *ne*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>bref</i>	<i>brève</i>	<i>short</i>
<i>actif</i>	<i>active</i>	<i>active</i>
<i>naïf</i>	<i>naïve</i>	<i>ingenuous</i>
<i>neuf</i>	<i>neuve</i>	<i>new</i>

Adjectives ending in *-x* change *-x* into *se*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>honteux</i>	<i>honteuse</i>	<i>ashamed</i>
<i>vertueux</i>	<i>vertueuse</i>	<i>virtuous</i>
<i>jaloux</i>	<i>jalouse</i>	<i>jealous</i>

Adjectives ending in *eur*, derived from verbs, and which might be more properly called substantives, were it not that they have a feminine, form that feminine in various manners; they are few in number, and change as follows :

EUR, EUSE.

<i>complimenteur</i>	<i>—teuse</i>	<i>fond of compliments</i>
<i>connaisseur</i>	<i>—seuse</i>	<i>connaisseur, judge</i>
<i>demandeur</i>	<i>—deuse</i>	<i>one who asks</i>
<i>flatteur</i>	<i>—tieuse</i>	<i>flattering</i>
<i>menteur</i>	<i>—teuse</i>	<i>deceiving</i>
<i>parleur</i>	<i>—leuse</i>	<i>talker</i>
<i>rêveur</i>	<i>—veuse</i>	<i>dreamer</i>
<i>moqueur</i>	<i>—ueuse</i>	<i>sneering</i>
<i>trompeur</i>	<i>—peuse</i>	<i>deceiver</i>

etc., etc.

EUR, ERESSE.

<i>bailleur</i>	<i>bailleresse</i>	<i>donor</i>
<i>demandeur</i>	<i>—deresse</i>	<i>plaintiff</i>
<i>défendeur</i>	<i>—deresse</i>	<i>defendant</i>
<i>enchanteur</i>	<i>—teresse</i>	<i>charmer</i>
<i>pêcheur</i>	<i>—cheresse</i>	<i>sinner</i>
<i>vengeur</i>	<i>—geresse</i>	<i>avenger</i>

etc. etc.

EUR, RICE.

<i>accusateur</i>	<i>—trice</i>	<i>accuser</i>
<i>acteur</i>	<i>—trice</i>	<i>actor</i>

bienfaiteur	—trice	benefactor
admirateur	—trice	admirer
séducteur	—trice	seducer
protecteur	—trice	protector
conservateur	—trice	preserver
conducteur	—trice	leader
ambassadeur	—trice	ambassador

Auteur, docteur, imprimeur, professeur, have no feminine.

All *real* adjectives ending in *eur*, form their feminine by the addition of an *e*; they are about twelve in number: *antérieur, cilié, extérieur, intérieur, inférieur, meilleur, mineur, majeur, postérieur, supérieur, ultérieur, prieur*.

EXERCISE.

She is *decent*. This house is well situated. This pear
Elle — *Cette maison f.* *bien situé* *poire f.*
 is too ripe. She is tall and well formed. This story is
trop mûr *grand* *bien fait* *histoire f.*
 very entertaining. This person is very volatile. This mountain
très-amusant *personne f.* *bien léger* *montagne f.*
 is steep. This road is not very safe. The door is not
sous le vent *route f.* *sûr* *porte f.*
 open. This room is dark. This street is too narrow. It is
ouvert *chambre f.* *obscur* *rue f.* *étroit* *Ce*
 is an ancient custom. She has carnation lips. His
coutume f. *a* *vermeil 2 art.* *lèvre f. pl. 1.* *Sa*
 memory will be immortal. His manners are natural. The
= f. *sera* *—tel* *Ses manières f. pl.* *naïf*
 engagement was warm. (That is) an original thought. This
action f. *fut* *vif* *Voilà* *neuf 2* *pensée f. 1.*
 cloth is the best of all. These are delusive promises.
draps f. *meilleur* *f. pl.* *trompeur 2* *promesse f. pl. 1.*
 He seduces by his fawning manners. The delightful valley
séduit par *flatteur 2* *manières f. pl. 1.* *délicieuse vallée f.*
 of Tempe is in Thessaly. The grass is very thick. The soup
Tempé *dans art. = f.* *herbe f.* *soupe f.*
 is too fat. It is a foolish undertaking. This water is not clean.
est *entreprise f.* *Cette eau f.* *net*

It is a very silly story. The law is express upon that point.
C'est histoire f. loi f. sur ce — ro.
 The avenging thunder smote that impious wretch. He
*vengeur 2 foudre f. 1 frappa cet impie **
 (held out to us) a protecting hand.
tendit 2 nous 1 — leur 2 main f. 1.

OF IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

43. There are some adjectives which are irregular in the formation of their feminine. They will be found nearly all contained in the following list.

m.	f.		m.	f.	
[†] beau			*fou		
†bel	bel	fine	†fol	folle	mad
*nouveau					
*nouvel	nouvelle	new	*mou		
*vieux			†mol	molle	soft
†vieil	vieille	old			
m.	f.		m.	f.	
blanc	blanche	white	fauz	fausse	false
franc	franche	frank	rouz	rouse	red
frais	fraiche	fresh	douz	douce	sweet
Grec	Grecque	Greek	aigre-douz	aigre-douce	tartish, sweet
public	publique	public	tiers	tierce	third, etc.
caduc	caduque	frail			
Turc	Turque	Turkish	tors	{ torse, or torte	twisted
long	longue	long	col	coite or cole	still, snug
benin	benigne	benign	favori	favorite	favorite
malin	maligne	malignant	jumeau	jumelle	twin
sec	sèche	dry	traître	traîtresse	traitor

The following adjectives ending in *et*, not only form their feminine by the addition of *e* mute, but require the grave accent on the penultimate *e*.

* *Beau, nouveau, vieux, fou, mou*, before a consonant or *h* not aspirate.

† Before a vowel and *h* mute.

m.		f.
concret	} make	concrète
discret		discrète
indiscret		indiscrète
inquiet		inquiète
complet		complète
incomplet		incomplète
replet		replète
suret		surète
prêt		prête

Préfix m. makes *préfixe f.* and is the only adjective in *-x*, which retains this letter and follows the **SECOND RULE**.

Some adjectives have no feminine, as *bisché*, *dispos*, *fat*, *paillet*, etc.; others have no masculine, as *blette*, etc,

SINGULARITY OF DEMI, FEU, NU.

48*. *Demi*, *nu*, have a peculiarity which must be noticed. When they precede the noun, they are undeclined; when they follow it, they agree with it.

une demi-livre		half a pound
une demi-heure		half an hour
un demi-cent		half a hundred
une livre et demie		one pound and a half
deux heures et demie		half past two
trois cents et demi		three hundred and a half
nu-pieds	les pieds nus	bare feet
nu-tête	la tête nue	bare head

Feu is undeclined when preceding the article and a possessive pronoun; it is declined when following them.

Feu la reine	la feue reine	the late queen
--------------	---------------	----------------

The adjectives *bas*, *bon*, *court*, etc. being used with a verb, become adverbs, and are not declined.

ces fleurs sentent bon	these flowers smell nice
elle parle bas	she speaks low
ils demeurèrent court	they stood short
elle se fait fort d'y aller	she takes upon herself to go

REMARKS ON TOUT, QUELQUE.

44. **TOUT**, *all*, means also *every*, in a sort of distributive sense.

je vous souhaite toute espèce de bonheur, I wish you every happiness

Tout is very frequently prefixed to an adjective in the sense of *quite, entirely*, and is, consequently, undeclined.

<i>ces enfants, tout aimables qu'ils sont, me fatiguent</i>	<i>amiable as these children are, they fatigue me</i>
<i>ils étaient tout étourdis</i>	<i>they were quite astounded</i>

But it has this peculiarity that, when placed before an adjective feminine, beginning with a consonant, it is declined.

<i>c'est une tête toute vide</i>	<i>it is a head quite empty</i>
<i>elles étaient toutes tremblantes</i>	<i>they trembled all over</i>

Quelque, before a noun plural, qualified or not by an adjective, takes an *s*.

<i>quelques richesses que vous ayez, ne soyez pas prodigue.</i>	<i>whatever be your riches do not be lavish.</i>
<i>quelques bonnes actions que vous fassiez, soyez modeste.</i>	<i>whatever good actions you do, be modest.</i>

Quelque before an adjective, means *however*, and is not declined.

<i>quelque riches qu'ils soient, ils ne donnent rien.</i>	<i>however rich they be, they give nothing.</i>
---	---

Quel que, quelle que, quels que, quelles que; here, *quel* is a sort of pronoun adjective which must agree in gender and number with the noun to which it refers, and which is the subject of the verb following.

<i>quels que soient vos desseins, et</i>	<i>whatever be your designs and</i>
<i>quelles que soient vos vues</i>	<i>your views.</i>
<i>quelles que soient votre naissance</i>	<i>whatever be your birth and fortune.</i>
<i>et votre fortune</i>	

Observe that the verb is in the subjunctive mood after *quelque, quelques, quel que*.

EXAMPLES.

He drank a glass of brandy quite pure. My sisters were
but verre m. can de vie f. — étaient
 quite put out. Hope, deceitful as it is, leads us to the
déconcerté art. espérance trompeur f. nous mène
 end of life through a pleasant path. She was quite
fin f. art. vie par agréable 2 chemin m. l. fut
 astonished when she saw us. Whatever advantages you
étonnée vit 2 nous l. avantages que vous
 have, (do not make) too sure of success. (I will not have
avez ne soyez pas art. succès m. Je ne veux pas
 her), however beautiful she may be. You must conquer your
d'elle jolie qu'elle soit. il faut vaincre
 inclinations whatever they be. (Let us know) your choice
péchants m. soient faites-nous savoir choix m.
 whatever it may be. That soup is very good. There is no truth
whatever it may be. soupe f. Il n'y a nul vérité f.
 in all that. It is in the newest fashion. It is a fine statue
dans tout cela. à nouveau mode f. beau = f.
 He lives in a state of luxurious idleness. This wax is not
*Il vit dans * * mou oisiveté f. cire f.*
 very white. She is as fresh as a rose. The print on that
** comme — f. peinture f.*
 wainscot is not dry. His answer is a mere evasion. The
lambris m. réponse f. franc dé faite f.
 thing is public. That plant possesses a pernicious property.
chose f. herbe f. a malin 2 qualité f. l.
 She is of a benevolent disposition. This woman is jealous and
*a * benin 2 humeur f. femme f. jaloux*
 deceitful. His temper is gentle. This colour is too red.
faux Son humeur f. doux couleur f. trop rouge
 These old clothes are good for nothing. He ran bare
hardes f. pl. ne à rien il courait nu
 legged in the streets. Give me a guinea and a half.
*les jambes f. par — Donnez-moi guinée f. **

Cut Half a yard. The late princess was idolized.
Coupez en aune f. — cesse chéri

Do not stand in the cold air (without your hat).

Ne restes pas art. tête f. nu à l'air.

OF THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF FRENCH ADJECTIVES.

45. GENERAL RULE. The formation of the plural in adjectives follows the same rules as those given for the plural of substantives. All adjectives having the feminine termination in *e* mute, or ending in *e, i, u, c, d, g, f, n, t*, form their plural by the addition of an *s*, as : *aimable, aimables; docile, dociles; poli, polis; goulû, goulus; grand, grands; long, longs*. This rule applies to the participles past, *aimé, aimés; reçu, reçus*, etc.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Adjectives ending in *-s*, or *-x*, do not change their termination in the plural, as *gros, gras, hideux*.

2. Those ending in *-au*, take *x* in the plural, as *beau, beaux, nouveau, nouveaux*.

Those in *-al*, change this termination into *aux*, as *égal, equal, égaux; général, généraux*; but most of these have no plural masculine, as *amical, austral, boréal, canonial, conjugal, diamétral, fatal, filial, final, frugal, jovial, lustral, matinal, naval, pastoral, pectoral, spécial, vénéal*, and some others.

Canonical, clérical, conjectural, colossal, déloyal, diaconal, ducal, électoral, équinoxial, final, fiscal, are seldom used in the plural masculine; wherever they are, they follow the general rule.

Amical, automnal, colossal, frugal, glacial, jovial, total have no plural masculine.

Pascal makes *pascals*, but *fatals* ought to be avoided.

4. Polysyllables ending in *-nt*, according to general practice, may drop the *t* in the plural, as *excellent*, *excellens*; but the Academy keep the *t*, (see page 86). Monosyllables retain it, as *lent*, slow, *lents*; but the adjective *tout*, all, makes *tous*.

EXERCISE.

They are *envious* and *jealous*. Those fowls are large and
Ils = *jaloux* *poulet* m. pl. *gros*
fat Owls are *frightful* birds. (These are)
gras art. *Hibou* m. pl. *des* *hul-lus* 2 *oiseau* m. pl. 1. *Voilà*
beautiful jewels. The two new operas have succeeded.
de beaux *bijou* m. pl. *deux nouveaux* — m. pl. *ont réussi*
 Men are only *equal* (in the) infirmities of nature. The
 art. 2 *ne* 1 *que* 4 *égal* 3 *par les* = art. — f.
 general officers are assembled. This fruit is excellent.
 — 2 *officiers* m. pl. 1. — *bid* *ces* — m. pl. *sont* —
 His improvement is *slow*, but *solid*. All his friends have
Ses progrès, m. pl. *sont lent* *solide* *ses amis* m. pl.
 been very *glad* to see him. Those ladies are *tired* with
été bien aise de voir 2 *le* 1 *ces dames* f. pl. *las de*
 walking. You have powerful enemies; but their efforts
marcher *Vous avez de puissant ennemi* m. pl. *mais leurs* — m. pl.
 will be *vain* and *useless*. The four *cardinal* points are the
seront — *inutile* *quatre* — 2 *point* pl. 1
east, *west*, *south*, and *north*.
orient, m. art. *occident* m. art. *midi* m. art. *nord* m.

OF THE DEGREES OF SIGNIFICATION OF THE
ADJECTIVE.

46. Grammarians commonly reckon *three* degrees of comparison; the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

The *positive* is the adjective expressing the quality of an object, without any increase or diminution, as *beau*, *belle*.

EXAMPLES.

A child *gentle, amiable, and docile*, is beloved by every body
enfant m. doux aimable — aimé de tout le monde
 An *ingenuous candour*, an *amiable simplicity* and a *lively*
— m. 2 = f. l. = f. piquant 2
 artlessness are the charm of youth. The sight of an *agreeable*
naïveté f. l. charme m. art. jeunesse f. vue f. agréable
 landscape is a *varied* and *rapid* source of *delightful* sensations.
paysage m. varié 2 rapide 3—f. l. délicieux 2 —f. pl. l

47. The *comparative* is so called, because it draws a comparison between two or many objects. When two things are compared, the one is either superior, inferior, or equal to the other; hence three sorts of comparison, that of *superiority*, of *inferiority*, and *equality*.

The *comparative of superiority* is formed by putting *plus*, more, before the adjective, and *than* is rendered by *que*.

EXAMPLES.

La rose est plus belle que la violette. The rose is more beautiful than the violet.

By, in comparison before a noun of number, is rendered by *de*.

He is taller by two inches. *Il est plus grand de deux pouces*

EXERCISE.

The republic of Athens was more illustrious than that of
république f. Athènes a été illustre celle
 Lacedemon. Homer was perhaps a greater genius than Virgil
Lacédémone Homère était peut-être grand génie m. Virgile
 but Virgil had a more delicate and more refined taste than Homer.
mais a eu fin 2 délicat 3 goût m. l. à m.

Milton appears (to me) more *sublime* than all the other epic
paraît 2 me 1 ——— *autre 1 épique 3*
 poets. The river is deeper by four feet.
poète m. pl. 2. rivière f. profond

The *comparative of inferiority* is formed by prefixing *moins*, less, to the adjective, and rendering also *than* by *que*.

EXAMPLES.

La violette est moins belle que la rose The violet is less beautiful than the rose

EXERCISE.

Shipwreck and death are less fatal than the pleasures which
art. Naufrage m. art. mort f. funestes plaisirs m. qui
 attack virtue. The violet is less brilliant to the eye than the
attaquent art. f. f. brillant yeux
 lily, a true emblem of modesty and of pride
*lis m. * véritable 2 emblème m. l. art. = f. de art. orgueil m*
 Autumn is less varied than spring, but it is richer.
art. Automne f. varié art. printemps m. elle riche

In the *comparative of equality* the first *as* is rendered by *aussi* in affirmative, and by *si*, in negative phrases; the second *as* is rendered by *que*.

EXAMPLE.

La tulipe est aussi belle que la rose. the tulip is as beautiful as the rose.
La tulipe n'est pas si belle que la rose. the tulip is not so beautiful as the rose.

EXERCISE.

Pope's images are as perfect as his style is harmonious.
De Pops 2 art. — f. pl. 1. parfait son — m. 2.
 Delicacy of taste is a gift of nature as scarce as
art. Délicatesse f. art. goût m. don m. art. — f. rare

true genius. The love of our neighbour is as necessary in
 art. *un vrai génie m.* *amour du * prochain* *est dans*
 society for the happiness of life, as in christianity for
 art. *est pour bonheur m.* art. *vie f.* art. *—isme m.*
 eternal salvation. It is as easy to do good as to do
 art. *—est salut m. l.* *aisé de faire art. bien m.* *de*
 evil. Paris is not so large as London. James will not be
 art. *mal m.* *— m.* *grand Londres Jacques ne sera pas*
 so rich as his brother.
riche son frère.

Meilleur, pire, moindre are the comparatives of *bon, mauvais, petit*, which are irregular in the formation of the degrees. Thus :

<i>bon,</i>	good	<i>meilleur,</i>	better	<i>le meilleur,</i>	the best
<i>mauvais,</i>	bad	<i>pire,</i>	worse,	<i>la pire,</i>	the worst
<i>petit,</i>	small	<i>moindre,</i>	smaller	<i>le moindre,</i>	the smallest

48. N.B. As most beginners are apt to confound these comparative adjectives with the comparative adverbs, *MIEUX, PIS, and MOINS*, because they are generally rendered by the same English words *better, worse* and *less*, it may be advisable to subjoin here these comparative adverbs with their positives, that the difference of meaning may serve as a distinction.

ADJECTIVES.	<i>Meilleur</i> , better, is the comparative of <i>bon</i> , good, and is used instead of <i>plus bon</i> , which is never said.
	<i>Pire</i> signifies <i>plus mauvais</i> , worse, or more wicked, and is used instead of this.
	<i>Moindre</i> means <i>plus petit</i> , less, or smaller, and is used instead of these terms.
ADVERBS.	<i>Mieux</i> ,* better, is the comparative of <i>bien</i> , well, and is used instead of <i>plus bien</i> , more well, which is said in neither language.
	<i>Pis</i> * is the comparative of <i>mal</i> , badly, and is used for <i>plus mal</i> , worse, which, however, may be used.
	<i>Moins</i> is the comparative of <i>peu</i> , little, and is used for <i>plus peu</i> , which is never said.

* There are some instances of *pis* and *moins* used adjectively, but this is not the place to mention them.

EXAMPLES.

Ce fruit-là est bon, mais celui-ci est meilleur	<i>That fruit is good, but that is better</i>
Sa condition est mauvaise, mais elle a été pire	<i>His condition is bad, but it has been worse</i>
Ma dépense est petite, mais la vôtre est moindre	<i>My expense is small, but yours is smaller</i>
Il se conduit bien, mais elle se conduit encore mieux	<i>He behaves well, but she behaves still better</i>
Il se portait mal, mais il est pis que jamais	<i>He was badly, but he is worse than ever</i>
Je parle peu, vous parlez encore moins.	<i>I speak little, you speak still less</i>

REMARK.

His reasoning is not better than yours.	Your style is a great deal better than that of his brother.	The thickness of this wall is less than that of the next wall.	This column is less than the other in height and thickness.	The remedy is worse than the disease.	Your horse is worse than mine.
<i>Son raisonnement m.</i>	<i>le vôtre</i>	<i>Votre — m. de</i>	<i>celui son épaisseur f. ce</i>	<i>autre en hauteur f. en grosseur f.</i>	<i>remède m.</i>
			<i>mur m. celle voisin 2 1 Cette colonne f.</i>		
				<i>mal m. cheval m. le mien.</i>	

49. The adjective is in the *superlative* degree, when it expresses the quality in a high or in its highest state: hence there are two sorts of superlatives, the *absolute* and the *relative*.

50. The *superlative absolute* is formed by putting *très, fort, bien*, very, before the adjective; it is called *absolute*, because it does not express any comparison with, or relation to, any other objects.

EXAMPLE.

Londres est une très-belle ville	<i>London is a very fine city.</i>
----------------------------------	------------------------------------

REMARK. The adverbs *extrêmement*, extremely, *infiniment*, infinitely, are likewise marks of the *superlative absolute*.

EXAMPLE.

Cet homme est extrêmement sa- *That man is extremely learned.*
 Dieu est infiniment heureux *God is infinitely blessed.*

EXERCISE.

That landscape is *very diversified, very extensive, and infinitely*
Ce paysage m. varié étendu
agreeable on every side. The Alps are very high and very steep.
agréable de toutes parts f. pl. haut escarpé
 The style of Fénelon is *very rich, and very harmonious, but it is*
—m. — — — — —
sometimes prolix; that of Bossuet is extremely sublime, but it is
quelquefois prolixe celui élevé
sometimes harsh and unpolished.
dur rude

51. The *superlative relative* is formed by prefixing the article *le, la, les*, according to the gender of the noun, to the comparative, and is called *relative* because it expresses comparison with, or relation to, another subject.

The article *le, la, les* is not used in the superlative degree when a possessive pronoun precedes the noun.

EXAMPLES.

Londres est la plus belle des villes *London is the finest of cities*
 Je préfère une maison de cam- *I prefer a country house to the*
 pagne au plus beau palais *finest palace*
 C'est mon plus grand ennemi *He is my greatest enemy*
 Voici nos meilleurs voisins *These are our best neighbours.*

Plus and *moins*, with the article, are repeated before every adjective.

EXERCISE.

The most beautiful comparison that there is perhaps in any
beau comparaison f. que il y ait peut-être dans aucun

language is that which Pope has drawn from the Alps, in his Essay
langue f. elle que tiré l. de Alpes, dans son essai
 on Criticism. The most able men are not always the most
sur art. critique f. habile gens m. pl. toujours
 virtuous. The most ancient and most general of all kinds of
vertueux. f.—une f. art. espèce f. pl.
 idolatry was the worship rendered to the sun. The least excu-
= était culte m. rendu soleil m. —
 sible of all errors is that which is wilful. I will show you
art. — f. celle qui volontaire. Je montrerai 2 vous 1
 my prettiest flowers. These are her richest gifts. I have not
mes joli fleur f. précieux don m. Je ai
 read his best work.
in son ouvrage m.

CONCORD OF THE ADJECTIVE WITH THE SUBSTANTIVE.

52. The adjective always agrees in gender and number with the substantive to which it relates.

Le bon père	<i>The good father</i>
La bonne mère	<i>The good mother</i>
De beaux jardins	<i>Fine gardens</i>
De belles promenades	<i>Fine walks</i>

Bon is masculine singular, because *père* is masculine, and in the singular; *bonne* is feminine singular, because *mère* is feminine, and in the singular; *beaux* is in the masculine plural, because *jardins* is masculine, and plural, etc.

EXERCISE.

These hills are covered with trees loaded with
ces coteaux m. pl. couvert de arbre m. pl. chargé de
 fruit, already ripe. A pure stream rolls its limpid
— m. pl. déjà m. l. clair ruisseau m. roule son limpide 2
 water through the midst of meadows enamelled with
crystal m. 1 à mille m. prairie, f. pl. émaillé de

flowers. (Every thing) interests the heart in this abode
 fleur f. pl. tout intéresse cœur m. ce séjour m.
 which is full of charms. Fly, inconsiderate youth,
 • • *plein attrait m. pl. Fuyez, —dés 2 jeunesse f. l.*
 fly from the enchanting allurements of a vain world; its
 • —*cœur 2 attrait l. — 2 monde m. l. ses*
perfidious sweets are a slow poison, which (would destroy
 —*de 2 douceur f. pl. l. lent 2 — m. l. qui détruirait*
 in your soul the noble enthusiasm of goodness, and the
dans due — enthousiasme m. art. bien m.
precious seeds of sublime virtues.
 — *germe m. art. — 2. vertu l.*

53. When the adjective relates to two substantives singular, of the same gender, it must be put in the plural, and agree with them in gender.

EXAMPLE.

Le roi et le berger sont égaux *The king and the shepherd are*
après la mort *equal after death*
Ma mère et ma sœur sont vives *My mother and sister are quick*

EXAMPLE.

Uprightness and piety are much esteemed, even by the
art. droiture f. art. piété f. très-estimé même de
 wicked. Man, in the most elevated rank, and
méchant pl. art. dans (le plus élevé) 2 art. rang m. l.
 man in the most obscure situation, are equally precious
art. obscur 2 art. état m. l. également —
 in the eyes of God. Pilpay and Confucius are very celebrated
à m. pl. célèbre
 among the nations of Asia.
parmi peuples art.

54. When the two substantives, to which the adjective relates, are of different genders, the adjective is to be put in the masculine plural.

EXAMPLE.

Mon père et ma mère sont con- *My father and mother are con-*
tentés.

EXERCISE.

His probity and disinterestedness are known (every where).
 = f. *sa dévouement* m. *connu* *partout*
 The love of life, and the fear of death, are
amour m. *art. vie* f. *crainte* f. *art. mort* f.
 natural to man. Ignorance and self-love are
 — *rel* *art.* *art.* — f. *art. amour-propre* m.
 equally presumptuous. My sister and brother were very atten-
présomptueux *Ma* f. *mon* m. *ont été* —
 tive to the instructions of their masters.
 — *maître* m. pl.

NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES OF NUMBER.

55. Numbers are divided into five classes, viz :
cardinal, ordinal, collective, distributive, and pro-
portional.

CARDINAL NUMBER.	ORDINAL NUMBER.		NUMERICAL COLLEC- TIVE NOUNS.
1 un, une	<i>premier</i>	<i>first</i>	<i>unité, unit</i>
2 deux	<i>deuxième, second</i>	2d	<i>couple, paire, couple</i>
3 trois	<i>troisième</i>	3rd	<i>trio</i>
4 quatre	<i>quatrième</i>	4th	{ <i>deux couples, two</i> <i>couples</i>
5 cinq	<i>cinquième</i>	5th	{ <i>demi-douzaine, half</i> <i>a dozen</i>
6 six	<i>sixième</i>	6th	
7 sept	<i>septième</i>	7th	<i>hebdomade, week</i>
8 huit	<i>huitième</i>	8th	{ <i>neuvaine, nine days</i> <i>of prayer</i>
9 neuf	<i>neuvième</i>	9th	<i>dizaine, half a score</i>
0 dix	<i>dixième</i>	10th	<i>douzaine, dozen</i>
11 onze	<i>onzième</i>	11th	
12 douze	<i>douzième</i>	12th	<i>quinzaine, fortnight, etc.</i>
13 treize	<i>treizième</i>	13th	
14 quatorze	<i>quatorzième</i>	14th	
15 quinze	<i>quinzième</i>	15th	
16 seize	<i>seizième</i>	16th	

CARDINAL NUMBER.	ORDINAL NUMBER.	NUMERICAL COLLECTIVE NOUNS.
17 dix-sept	dix-septième 17th	vingtaine, a score
18 dix-huit	dix-huitième 18th	
19 dix-neuf	dix-neuvième 19th	
20 vingt	vingtième 20th	
21 vingt-et-un	vingt-et-unième 21st	
22 vingt-deux	vingt-deuxième, etc. 22nd	{ trentaine, a score and a half
30 trente	trentième 30th	
31 { trente-et-un, etc.	{ trente-unième 31st	
40 quarante	quarantième 40th	quarantaine, two score
41 { quarante-et-un, etc.	{ quarante-unième 41st	{ cinquantaine, two score and a half
50 cinquante	cinquant-ième 50th	
51 { cinquante-et-un, etc.	{ cinquante-unième 51st	
60 soixante	soixantième 60th	soixantaine, three score
61 { soixante-et-un, etc.	{ soixante-unième 61st	— four score
70 { soixante-dix	{ soixante-dixième 70th	
71 { soixante-onze	{ soixante-onzième 71st	
72 { soixante-douze, etc.	{ soixante-douzième 72d	
80 { quatre-vingts	quatre-vingtième 80th	
81 { quatre-vingt-un, etc.	{ quatre-vingt-unième 81st	1 centaine, one hundred
90 { quatre-vingt-dix	{ quatre-vingt-dixième 90th	
91 { quatre-vingt-onze, etc.	{ quatre-vingt-onzième 91st	
100 cent	centième 100th	2 centaines, 2 hundred
101 { cent-un, etc.	{ cent-un-ième, etc. 101st	
200 deux-cents	deux-centième 200th	1 millier, 1 thousand
1000 } mille	millième 1000th	

CARDINAL NUMBER.	ORDINAL NUMBER.	NUMERICAL COLLECTIVE NOUNS.
2000 { deux, mille, etc	{ deux-millième, etc. 2000th	} 2 milliers, 2 thousand
10,000 { dix mille	dix-millième 10,000th	1 myriade, 1 myriad
1,000,000 { mille fois mille	} million-ième, millionth	1 million 1 million

Un milliard or billion, a thousand millions, un trillion, etc.

Cent takes an *s* when immediately before the noun ; it does not take it when followed by another number. *trois cents hommes ; trois cent cinquante hommes.*

Mille never takes the *s* in the plural : *deux mille hommes.*

In dates, *mille* is contracted into *mil* : *mil huit cent trente-cinq.*

There are many other numerical expressions used in poetry, music, games, etc. : as, *distique, tercet, quatrain, sixain, huitain*, etc. *solo, duo, trio, quatuor, quinte, octave*, etc. *beset, sonnez*, etc.

Un millier is very often employed for one thousand weight, but *quintal* is never used except in the sense of one hundred weight.

The distributive numbers are those which express the different parts of a whole : as, *la moitié*, the half ; *le quart*, the quarter ; *un cinquième*, a fifth, etc.

The proportional denote the progressive increase of things : as, *le double*, the double ; *le triple*, the treble ; *le centuple*, a hundred fold, etc.

CHAPTER IV.

OF THE PRONOUN.

56. A *pronoun* is a word substituted in the place of a noun.

There are several kinds of pronouns, as the *personal*, *possessive*, *relative*, *absolute*, *demonstrative*, and *indefinite*.

SECTION I.

OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

57. *Personal pronouns* are used in the places of persons and things, to avoid their being repeated.

58. There are three *persons*: the first who speaks, the second who is spoken to, and the third is the person or thing spoken of.

Singular.

<i>Subject.</i>	je			je loue Dieu	<i>I praise God</i>
	me	for	à moi I	il me donne	<i>he gives me, or to me</i>
<i>Object.</i>	me	..	moi to me	il me blesse	<i>he hurts me</i>
	moi	..	à moi me	donnez-moi	<i>give me, or to me</i>
	moi	..	moi to me	aidez-moi	<i>help me</i>
	de moi..	—	of me	il parle de moi	<i>he speaks of me.</i>

Plural.

<i>Subject.</i>	nous		we	nous louons Dieu	<i>we praise God</i>
	nous	for	à nous to us	il nous donne	<i>he gives us</i>
<i>Object.</i>	nous	..	nous us	il nous blesse	<i>he hurts us</i>
	de nous ..	—	of us	il parle de nous	<i>he speaks of us.</i>

They are both masculine and feminine; that is, of the same gender as the person or persons they represent.

59. In general, *je* and *me* are put before the verb ; *moi*, *de moi*, *à moi* after it, and *nous* before or after, as the case requires.

EXERCISE.

I cast my eyes upon the objects which surrounded me, and
portai vue f. s. sur objet environnaient me
 saw with pleasure that all was calm and tranquil. Do you not
*je vis avec que était calme tranquille * 3 1-4*
 see in all the features of my father that he is satisfied with
voyez 2 dans trait m. pl. que content de
 me? We have told the truth. What were they saying of us?
*moi avons dit vérité f. Que * on 2 disait 1*
 If we desire to be happy, we must not deviate from the
Si désirons de ne devons pas nous écarter de
 path of virtue.
sentier m. art.

60. PRONOUNS OF THE SECOND PERSON.

Singular

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>thou</i>	<i>tu crains Dieu</i>	<i>thou fearest God</i>
	<i>te</i>	<i>for à toi to thee</i>	<i>il te parle</i>	<i>he speaks to thee</i>
	<i>te</i>	<i>.. toi thee</i>	<i>il te voit</i>	<i>he sees thee</i>
<i>Object.</i>	<i>toi</i>	<i>.. à toi to thee</i>	<i>donne-toi la peine</i>	<i>give thyself the trouble</i>
	<i>toi</i>	<i>.. toi thee</i>	<i>habille-toi</i>	<i>dress thyself</i>
	<i>de toi</i>	<i>.. — of thee</i>	<i>nous parlons de toi</i>	<i>we speak of thee.</i>

Plural.

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ye, or you</i>	<i>vous louez Dieu</i>	<i>you praise God</i>
	<i>vous</i>	<i>for à vous to you</i>	<i>il vous parle</i>	<i>he speaks to you</i>
<i>Object.</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>.. vous you</i>	<i>il vous respecte</i>	<i>he respects you</i>
	<i>de vous</i>	<i>.. — of you</i>	<i>il parle de vous</i>	<i>he speaks of you.</i>

In general, *tu* and *te* are put before the verb ; *toi*, *de toi*, *à toi* are placed after ; *vous* is placed either before or after, according as the case requires.

REMARK. Politeness has led to the use of the plural *vous*, instead of the singular *tu* : as, *vous êtes bien bon* you are very good. for *tu es bien bon*.

EXERCISE.

Thou art greater than I; and from *there* I have (at once)
es *moi* *toi* *et en même temps* 2
 learnt humility and wisdom. I (was telling) you that
appris 1 art. = f. art. *sageur* f. *disais* *le que*
 dancing is to the body what taste is to the mind. You have
art. danse f. m. *ce que art. goût* m. *esprit* m. *avez* 2
 shown us great talents; when (will you show) us great virtues?
montré 3 1 de — m. *quand montrerez-vous* 2 1 de f.pl.
 How amiable you are! How good you are to have thought of
Que 3 1 *êtes* 2 3 1 2 *de vous être occupé*
un! (It was said) of you the other day, that you intended to
On disait *autre jour* m. *vous vous proposiez de*
 spend a winter in London (in order to) see every thing curious
passer m. à — dres *pour voir tout ce* = 6
 which that city presents.
que 1 *cette* 2 *ville* 3 *offre* 4 *de* 5

61. PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

Singular

Subj.	{	il m.	he	il perd son temps	he loses his time
		elle f.	she	{ elle travaille <i>toujours</i>	{ she is always <i>at work</i>
Obj.	{	lui m. <i>for</i> à lui	to him	{ dites-lui que je lui parle- <i>rai</i>	{ tell him that I will speak to him
		lui f. .. à elle	to her	{ dites-lui que vous lui don- <i>nez</i>	{ tell her that you will give her
	{	de lui	of him	il parle de lui	he speaks of him
		.. d'elle	of her	il parle d'elle	he speaks of her
	{	lui m. ..	him	{ je ne connais que lui de <i>capable</i>	{ I know but him capable
		.. avec lui	with him	je le méprise	I despise him
	{	.. <i>for</i> lui	him	je la respecte	I respect her
		.. elle	her	{ Il ne connaît qu'elle	{ he know but her
	{	elle f. .. elle	her	venez avec elle	come with her
		le m. <i>for</i> cela	it	{ je ne <i>te</i> savais <i>pas</i>	{ I did not know it.

				Plural.		
Subj.	ils m.	..	..	they	ils chantent	they sing (gentlemen)
	elles f.	..	..	they	elles rient	they laugh (ladies)
Obj.	leur m.	for à eux	to them		payez-leur ce que vous leur devez	pay them what you owe to them, (to men)
	leur f.	for à elles	to them		dites-leur que je désire leur parler	tell them that I wish to speak to them (to ladies)
	les m.	for eux	them		vous les trou- verez	you will find them (men)
	les f.	for elles	them		il les admire	he admires them (ladies)
	eux m.	..	..	them	je ne vois qu'eux	I see but them (gentlemen)
	elles f.	..	..	them	allez sans eux il ne connaît qu'elles	go without them he knows not them (ladies)
					partez sans elles	go without them

Il, ils, le, les masculine, *elle, elles, la, les* feminine are used in speaking of things as well as of persons; but *de lui, d'elle, d'eux, d'elles, lui, leur* are not. See *Y, en.* No. 64, 65.

62. When the verb is interrogative, the pronoun, which is its subject, is always put after it; the interrogative *do*, used in English, has no equivalent in French, and is consequently not expressed.

				Singular.		
Subject	je	I		dois-je payer?	must I pay?	
	tu	thou		as-tu dit?	hast thou said?	
	il	he		chante-t-il bien?	does he sing well?	
	elle	she		travaille-t-elle?	does she work?	

				Plural.		
Subject	nous	we		irons-nous?	shall we go?	
	vous	you		viendrez-vous?	will you come?	
	ils m.	they		chantent-ils?	do they sing?	
	elles f.	they		travaillent-elles?	do they work?	

EXERCISE.

He loved them because they were gentle, attentive, and grateful.
aimait m. parce que doux = reconnaissant
He (was saying) (to them,) do you not know that the nature
disait • 3 1-4 savez 2 que propre m.
merit is to excite envy? She often exhorted me
art. mérite m. de exciter art. envie f. souvent 2 exhortait 1
the study the most useful, that of the human heart. They make
étude f. utile celle 2 m. 1 font
love virtue, more by their examples than by their words,
aimer art. f. par leur exemple parole f. pl.
What has been said of them? Did they speak of them?
Que 1 on 3 a-t-2 • dit eux • on 2 parlait 1 elle
Do you not see her? With what pleasure she plays! Look at
• 4 1-5 voyez 3 2 quel joue Regardez
that magnificent building, it unites gracefulness to beauty.
ce magnifique bâtiment m. réunit art. grâce f. art. beauté f.
Ignorance is vain, it sees difficulties in nothing. Do not judge
art. — f. vain ne voit de = à rien ne juge pas
from appearances, they are deceitful. Take one of these
sur art. apparences f. trompeur Prenez ces
roses, they smell so sweet.
— f. sentent si bon.

63. REFLECTED AND RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

Singular.		Examples.	
Object.	soi { with a preposition	chacun tire à soi	every one draws to himself
	soi { governed by the verb	l'égoïsme fait qu'on ne voit que soi	selfishness makes a person see none but himself
Object.	se per { à soi, à lui-même	il se donne des louanges	he gives himself praises
	se .. { à elle-même	elle se fait illusion	she imposes on herself.
	se .. { soi, or lui-même	il se perd	he ruins himself
	se .. { soi, or elle-même	elle se flatte	she flatters herself

		<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Examples.</i>	
Object.	se	for <i>eux-mêmes</i>	{ ils s'attribuent la gloire, etc.	{	they attribute to themselves the glory of, etc.
	se	.. <i>à elles-mêmes</i>	{ elles se prescrivent pour règle de etc.	{	they prescribe to themselves as rule to, etc.
	se	.. <i>l'un à l'autre</i>	{ ils s'entredonnent, ou se font des cadeaux	{	they exchange g/ls
	se	.. <i>eux-mêmes</i>	{ ils se sont déshonorés	{	they have disgraced themselves
	se	.. <i>elles-mêmes</i>	{ elles se sont flattées	{	they have flattered themselves
	se	.. <i>l'un l'autre</i>	ils s'entr'aident	{	they help one another
	se	.. { <i>les uns les autres</i>	{ les rats, dit-on, s'entre-dévorent	{	rats, it is said, eat one another

REMARK. *Se* is placed before a verb, and *soi* after a preposition.

EXERCISE.

In a thousand instances, we do not watch sufficiently over ourselves
 * mille occasion f. on * veille avec sur soi
 The glory of the world (passes away) in an instant. He gives
 = f. monde m. s'évanouit en — m. donne
 himself (a great deal) of trouble. She tires herself. People should
 se beaucoup peine f. lasser se On doit
 (very seldom) speak of themselves. Virtue is amiable in itself. We
 rarement parler soi art. f. de soi. On
 must take upon ourselves the care of our own affairs.
 doit prendre sur soi soin m. ses propre affaire f.pl.

OF THE PERSONAL AND RELATIVE *EN*.

64. This pronoun is personal when it means *of him, of her, of them, of it, of them*, and may be called the genitive case of *je, nous, tu, vous, il, elle, ils, elles*. It is relative when it is used in reference to an object or

place antecedently named, and signifies *out of it, out of them, some of it, some of them, and from that place, or thence.*

As a personal pronoun, it may be used in speaking of persons, although its chief use is about things; but, as a relative pronoun, its use is confined to things and places.

EXAMPLES.

EN for	de lui	<i>of him</i>	cet homme vous plaît, vous en parlez souvent	<i>that man pleases you, you speak of him often</i>
	d'elle	<i>of her</i>	jene crois pas cette femme sincère, je m'en méfie	<i>I do not believe that woman sincere, I distrust her</i>
	"	<i>of it, m.</i>	lisez son poème, et dites-moi ce que vous en pensez	<i>read his poem, and tell me what you think of it</i>
	"	<i>of it, f.</i>	sa conduite est mauvaise, je m'en plaindrai	<i>his conduct is bad, I will complain of it</i>
	"	<i>of them m.</i>	quant à ces événements nous en parlons souvent	<i>as for these events, we often mention them</i>
	"	<i>of them f.</i>	que dites-vous de ces gravures, en êtes-vous content?	<i>what do you think of these plates, are you pleased with them?</i>
	"	<i>some of them</i>	ces fruits paraissent bons, j'en mangerais volontiers	<i>these fruits look good, I should like to eat some of them</i>
	"	<i>some of them</i>	voilà de belles oranges, voulez-vous m'en donner?	<i>these are beautiful oranges, will you give me some?</i>
	de cela	<i>of that</i>	on ne m'a pas trompé, j'en suis sûr	<i>I have not been imposed upon, I am sure of it</i>
	d'ici	<i>hence?</i>	il arriva à Paris, comme j'en partais	<i>he arrived at Paris as I was setting off</i>
	de là	<i>thence</i>	vous allez à Paris, et monsieur en vient	<i>you are going to Paris, this gentleman comes from thence</i>

OF THE PERSONAL AND RELATIVE PRONOUN Y.

65. The use of *y*, as a pronoun, is strictly confined to things. It is employed in all those cases in which the objective case is marked by the preposition *à*. Speaking of persons, we say : *je pense à votre frère, je donne mes soins à votre frère* ; and, when not naming the person, we say : *je pense à lui, je lui donne mes soins* ; thus, speaking of things, we must say : *je pense à votre affaire, je donne mes soins à votre affaire*, and, speaking relatively, *j'y pense, j'y donne mes soins*.

Y is also used in reference to a place antecedently named, and when *here, there* are understood in English.

EXAMPLES.

for	à lui	to him	c'est un honnête homme, fiez-vous y *	he is an honest man, trust to him *
	à elle	to her	la poussière gâtera ce tableau, si on n'y met pas un verre	the dust will spoil this picture, if you don't put a glass to it
	"	to it, m.	si votre lettre est finie, mettez-y l'adresse	if you have finished your letter, put the direction to it
	"	to it, f.	ce sont de belles promesses, mais je ne m'y fie pas	these are fine promises, but I do not trust to them
	"	to th-m, f.	donnez-moi vos ordres, et j'y obéirai ponctuellement	give me your commands, and I will punctually obey them
	"	to them m.	ces arguments sont pressants, je n'y vois point de réplique	these arguments are cogent, I see no reply to them
	"	in them	allons, n'en parlons plus, il ne faut plus y penser	come, say no more, we must not think about it any longer
	à cela	to it	nous partons de Londres, quand vous y venez	we set off from London, when you come hither
	ici	here	c'est un endroit charmant, je compte m'y fixer	it is a fine place, I intend to settle there
	là	there		

REMARK. *Y* and *en* are always put before the verb, except with the imperative affirmative second person.

EXERCISES.

They speak (a great deal) of it. You like French authors,
On parle beaucoup aimez art. français 2 auteurs 1
 you are always speaking of them. That is a delicate affair; the
 * 2 *parles 1 Ce délicat 2 = f. l.*
 success of it is doubtful. See them; I consent to it, but do
*succès m. douteux Voyez consens 2 1 **
 not trust them. That is a fine appointment: he had
 1-5 *vous 2 fies 4 y 3 Ce place f. **
 long aspired to it. He has done it; but he
depuis long-temps —rait 2 1 a fait ne 1
 will get nothing by it.
gagnera 3 rien 4 y 2

§ II.

OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

66. These pronouns denote the possession of things. When we say, *mon habit*, my coat; *votre maison*, your house; *son jardin*, his, or her garden; it is the same, as saying *l'habit qui est à moi*, the coat which belongs to me; *la maison qui est à vous*, the house which belongs to you; *le jardin qui est à lui*, or *à elle*, the garden which belongs to him, or to her.

67. These pronouns are of two sorts, the *conjunctive*, which are always joined to a noun, which they precede, *mon livre*, my book; and the *relative*, which are used in reference to a noun, as *le mien*, mine.

By some, these pronouns have also been called adjectives, because they agree in gender and number with the noun. *Mon frère*, my brother; *ma sœur*, my sister.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS CONJUNCTIVE RELATING TO ONE PERSON.

Singular			Plural		
for the	1st person	mon, m. ma, f.	mes, m. f.	my	
	2nd ———	ton, m. ta, f.	tes, m. f.	thy	
	3rd ———	son, m. sa, f.	ses, m. f.	his, her, its	

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS CONJUNCTIVE RELATING TO MANY PERSONS.

Singular			Plural		
for the	1st person	notre, m. f.	nous, m. f.	our	
	2nd ———	votre, m. f.	vous, m. f.	your	
	3rd ———	leur, m. f.	leurs, m. f.	their	

EXAMPLES.

Mon père, ma mère et mes frères sont à la campagne, avec vos amis et leurs enfants.	<i>My father, mother, and brother are in the country, with your friends and their children.</i>
Mon cousin est allé consoler sa sœur, qui a perdu son fils.*	<i>My cousin is gone to visit and console his sister, who has lost her son.</i>

68. *Mon, ton, son*, are used before a noun feminine, when beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute, *mon âme*, my soul; *ton humeur*, thy humour; *son amitié*, his friendship, in order to avoid the meeting of the two vowels, or hyatus, *ma âme*, *ta humeur*, *sa amitié*.

EXERCISE.

<i>My principles, my love, of retirement, my taste</i>	
——pe	<i>goût m. pour art. retraite f. amour m</i>
for (every thing) that (is connected) with learning, and	
<i>tout ce qui tient à art. instruction,</i>	
my detestation of all spirit of party, (every thing) has	
<i>haine f. h. asp. pour esprit parti tout</i>	<i>a 2</i>
induced me to prefer a life passed in the closet, to the	
<i>porté 3 1 préférer * art. vie f. * de * cabinet</i>	

* Observe that the pronoun does not agree with the possessor as in English, thus, *his father*, *her father* are both rendered by *son père*, and *his mother*, *her mother*, by *sa mère*, no regard being paid to *his* or *hers*, but to the gender of *father* and *mother*.

active life of the world. Do not think, my daughter, that *thy*
 — 2 f. 1 m. " *pense* *que*
candour, thy ingenuousness, thy taste, so delicate and so
 = f. *ingénuité f. goût, m. délicat*
refined, and even thy graces, can shelter thee from
fin même — puissent mettre à l'abri de
censure. His wit, his talents, his honesty, and
art. — f. esprit m. — m. honnêteté f. à n.
even his (good nature) make him beloved by every body.
même bonhomie f. font aimer de tout le monde
Our constancy and our efforts will (at last) surmount all
 — f. — m. " *enfin 2 surmonteront 1*
obstacles. I see nothing that can (be censured)
art. — m. pl. vois 2 ne 1 rien 3 que on puisse reprendre
in your conduct. Their taste for the fantastical, the mon-
dans conduite f. pour bizarre, m. mon-
strous, and the marvellous gives to all their compositions
strucur, m. merveilleux m. donne — f.
although very fine in themselves, an air of deformity, which
quoique en elles-mêmes — m. difformité f. qui
shocks at first sight.
choque à art. coup-d'œil, &c.

69. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS RELATIVE, REFERRING TO ONE PERSON.

	<i>m. Sing.</i>	<i>f. Sing.</i>	<i>m. Plur.</i>	<i>f. Plur.</i>
1 st .	Le mien,	la mienne,	Les miens,	les miennes, <i>mine</i>
2 nd .	Le tien,	la tienne,	Les tiens,	les tiennes, <i>tiens</i>
3 rd .	Le sien,	la sienne,	Les siens,	les siennes, <i>his, her, its</i>

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS RELATIVE, REFERRING TO SEVERAL PERSONS.

	<i>m. Sing.</i>	<i>f. Sing.</i>	<i>Pl. of both Gen.</i>
1 st . Le nôtre,	la nôtre,	| Les nôtres, <i>ours</i> Les vôtres, <i>yours</i> Les leurs, <i>theirs</i>	
2 nd . Le vôtre,	la vôtre,		
3 rd . Le leur,	la leur,		

The use of these pronouns is to avoid the repetition of a noun antecedently named.

EXAMPLE.

Avez-vous toujours votre cheval? *Have you still your horse? I have*
 Je n'ai plus le mien; *for* Je n'ai *no longer mine.*
 plus mon cheval

EXERCISE.

Is it your temper or *hairs*, that hinders you from living well
ce humeur f. qui empêche 2 l de vivre
 together? If it be *yours*, it is easy for you to remedy it
*ensemble ce est il 2 ais3 * l d'y porter remède*
 by mastering (your temper); if it be *hairs*, redouble your
*en prenant sur vous-même; ce redoublez de **
 kindness, attention, and good behaviour; it is
complaisance de — de procédé m. pl. et
 very seldom that this method (proves unsuccessful). If my
très-rare ce moyen ne réussisse pas Si
 friends had served me with the same zeal as *yours*, it
avaient 2 servi 3 l même zèle m. que
 is very certain that I (should have) succeeded; but *yours* have
très sûr aurais réussi ont
 been all warmth, and mine all ice. All the pictures which we
été de feu de glace tableau m. que
 expected from Rome are arrived; there are some that are a
attentions arrivés il y en a qui
 little damaged; but *yours*, his, and mine, are in good
peu endommagés en
 condition. We know perfectly well what are your
*état m. savons parfaitement * quels*
 amusements in town, and I assure you we are very
— à art. ville f. — 2 l que sommes bien
 far from envying you them; but if you knew
éloigné pl. envie 3 l 2 connaissez quels
ours in the country, it (is most likely) you
sont à campagne f. il y a toute apparence que
 (would not be long) in giving them the preference. You
ne tarderiez pas à donner 2 leur 1 préférence f.
 have opened your heart to me with that noble frankness.
vous 2 ouvert 3 l — franchise f.

which so well becomes an honest man - this confidence well
qui si 2 3 sied 1 à honorable confiance f. 2
 deserves mine.
mérite 1.

REMARK. When through politeness *vous* is used for *tu*, then *votre, vos*, are used instead of *ton, ta, tes*, and *le vôtre, la vôtre, les vôtres*, for *le tien, la tienne, les tiens, les tiennes*.

EXAMPLES.

Que vous ressemblez peu à vos ancêtres ? *How little you resemble your ancestors.*

Quand vous aurez entendu, nos raisons, nous écouterons les vôtres. *When you have heard our reasons, we will listen to yours.*

§ III.

70. OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The demonstrative pronouns serve to designate and point out objects. They are of two sorts, the *conjunctive*, which are always placed before the noun, and the *relative*, which are used in reference to a noun antecedently named. Both agree in gender and number with the noun.

CONJUNCTIVE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

71. The demonstrative relative pronouns are in the singular.

Ce masc. before a consonant or an *h* aspirate.

Cet, masc. before a vowel or an *h* mute.

Cette, fem. in all cases.

MASCULINE SINGULAR.

Ce livre, *this or that book*

Ce héros, *this or that hero*

Cet homme, *this or that man*

Cet enfant, *this or that child*

FEMININE SINGULAR.

<i>cette fille,</i>	<i>this or that girl</i>
<i>cette âme,</i>	<i>this or that soul</i>
<i>cette histoire,</i>	<i>this or that story</i>
<i>cette haine,</i>	<i>that hatred</i>

The plural of *ce*, *cel*, *cette* is *ces*. It is common to both genders, and is used before vowels and consonants.

<i>ces livres, these or those books</i>	|	<i>ces hommes, these men</i>
<i>de ces héros, of these or those heroes</i>		<i>ces enfants, those children</i>
<i>à ces filles, to these or those girls</i>		<i>ces histoires, these stories</i>

Ci and *là* are often added to the noun, either to point it out more distinctly or speak of it more emphatically.

<i>Cet homme-là, that man.</i>	|	<i>Ces poires-ci sont bonnes, these pears are good.</i>
--------------------------------	--	---

RELATIVE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

72. The relative demonstrative agree also in gender with the noun, and are

MASCULINE SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

<i>Celui-ci, this</i>	<i>Celui-là, that</i>
<i>Ceux-ci, these</i>	<i>Ceux-là, those</i>

FEMININE SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

<i>Celle-ci, this</i>	<i>Celle-là, that</i>
<i>Celles-ci, these</i>	<i>Celles-là, those</i>

Celui, *celle*, *ceux*, *celles*, are used without *ci*, *là*, before a preposition and a relative pronoun.

J'aime mieux mon jardin que celui de mon frère.	<i>I like my garden better than my brother's.</i>
On ne peut les comparer à ceux que nous avons vus à Paris.	<i>They are not to be compared with those we saw at Paris.</i>
Je le donnerai à celui qui arrivera le premier.	<i>I will give it to him who comes in first.</i>

73. *Ceci*, this; *cela*, that; are, as it were, of the neuter gender, and are used to express *this thing*, *that thing*, when the object is not named.

Je n'aime pas cela.	<i>I do not like that.</i>
Ceci n'est pas pour vous.	<i>This is not for you.</i>

CE QUI, CE DONT, &c. FOR WHAT.

74. *Ce* is much used in conjunction with the relative pronoun.

Ce qui me plaît	<i>That which (or what) pleases me.</i>
Ce dont je parle	<i>What I speak of (or that of which I speak.)</i>
Ce à quoi je m'applique	<i>What I apply to, (or that thing to which I apply.)</i>
Ce que je dis	<i>What I say (or that thing which I say)</i>
Ce dont je dépends	<i>What I depend upon (that thing upon which I depend.)</i>

OBSERVE that the pronoun *what* is commonly used in English as if a contraction of *that which*, and is, accordingly, always expressed by two words in French, a demonstrative and a relative pronoun.

75. *CE* IN EXPLANATORY SENTENCES.

Ce is also much used in French, as the nominative or subject of *être*, in descriptive sentences, that is, when we name the nature, object of a thing, and even a person.

C'est une tabatière,	<i>It is a snuff-box.</i>
C'est un officier général,	<i>He is an officer general.</i>
Ce sont de bons enfants,	<i>They are good children.</i>

See *Syntax. Demonstrative Pronouns.*

EXERCISE.

Nothing is so opposite to *that* true eloquence, the office
 ne 2 rien 1 opposé véritable — f. fonction
 (of which) is to ennoble (every thing), as the use of
 tion f. 2 1 de 1 ennoblir 3 tout 2 * que emploi m.
 those refined thoughts, and hunting after those light,
 fin 2 pensée f. 1. art. recherche f. de léger 2
 airy, unsolid ideas, which, like a leaf of
 délié 3 sans consistance 4 idée f. 1. qui comme feuille f.
 beaten metal, acquire brightness only by losing
 battu 2 — m. 1. ne prennent de art. éclat m. que en perdant
 part of their solidity. *This* man has nothing in common
 * * art. = f. à m. de commun
 with *that* hero. *This* long restrained hatred broke,
 à asp. 1 long-temps 3 contenu 4 haine, f. 2. éclata
 and was the unhappy source of those dreadful events.
 fut malheureux — f. terrible événement
It is a great pleasure to me. *It* was a great
 ment m. pl. Ce plaisir m. * fut
 pain to us. The pleasures of the wise resemble in
 déplaisir m. * nous. ressemblent 2-3
 nothing those of a dissipated man. *He* that suffers himself to (be
 1 4 à dissipé 2 1. se laisse *
 ruled) by his passions, must renounce happiness.
 dominer doit renoncer à art. m.
This stuff (will suit) you admirably. I desire you
 étoffe-ci f. séra 2 1 à merveille que
 to take *this*. *That* action is blameable. *This*
 prendra m. -là digne de blâme
 scene is calculated to interest all men, but *that* cannot
 -ci faite pour intéresser art. -là ne saurait
 succeed. (Here are) certainly two charming prospects, *this*
 réussir. Voilà certainement beau perspective f. pl.
 has something (in it) more cheerful, but many people
 quelque chose de * riant bien de art. personnes f. pl.

that *quelque chose de* *more striking* *and* *more majes-*
trous. *The body perishes, the soul is immortal: yet all*
mean. *périt* *dependant*
the cares are for *that*, while we neglect *this*. What
m. *tandis que* *négligeons* *f*
means *this*? *That* is true. It is not *that*. *This* is low and
vent dire *Ce* *bas*
mean, but *that* is grand and sublime.
rampant

OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

76. *Relative pronouns* are those which relate to a noun preceding, called the *antecedent*. In the phrase *l'homme qui joue*, the man who plays, *qui* relates to the substantive *homme*; *l'homme* is then the *antecedent* of the pronoun relative *qui*.

Relative pronouns are used as follows according as they refer to persons and things :*

qui, common to persons and things	who	Dieu qui voit tout	God who sees every thing
	which	les chevaux qui courent	the horses which are running
	of whom, or from whom	l'homme dont or de qui vous parlez les femmes dont, or de qui il se moque	the man of whom you speak the women whom he laughs at
de qui, said of persons only; dont, common to persons and things, d'où	of which, or from which	le livre dont vous parlez les livres dont vous parlez la maison d'où (de laquelle) il est sorti	the book of which you speak the books of which you speak the house out of which he came
	whose	le marchand dont le magasin est brûlé les enfants dont il a placé le père	the merchant whose warehouse is burnt the children whose he placed the father
	to whom	l'homme à qui vous vous adressez	the man to whom you apply

*Much attention must be paid to the distinction between persons and things as the use of some of the pronouns is common, and the use of others is restricted to persons.

auquel, à laquelle, auxquels, auxquelles common, but especially applied to things, où	to which	{	l'affaire à laquelle	{	the business in which
			vous mettez tant d'intérêt		you are so interested
			les dépenses auxquelles vous êtes obligé		the expences to which you are obliged
que, common to persons and things	{	whom which	le but où (auquel) vous tendez	{	the thing at which you aim
			l'homme que vous cherchez		the man whom you seek
			les lois que nous observons		the laws which we observe

RELATIVE PRONOUNS WITH PREPOSITIONS.

qui referring to persons	{	pour qui est cette lettre?	{	for whom is this letter?
lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles, common, but chiefly said of things of which the gender is known	{	avec qui irez-vous à Paris?	{	with whom do you go to Paris?
ce sont de ces choses avec lesquelles il ne faut pas badiner	{	c'est bien là la maison dans laquelle il est entré	{	these are things with which you must not trifle this is indeed the house which he went in
quoi, said of things not named, of which the gender has not been expressed	{	pourquoi faites-vous cela	{	what do you do that for? (for what reason?)
de quoi parlez-vous?	{	avec quoi fait-on de l'encre?	{	what are you speaking of? what is ink made of?

Qui, *que*, and *dont*, are of both genders and both numbers.

Lequel is a compound of *quel* and of the article *le*, *la*, *les*, with which it is joined, and forms but one word.

Singular.		Plural.		
lequel	laquelle	lesquels	lesquelles	which
duquel	de laquelle	desquels	desquelles	of which
auquel	à laquelle	auxquels	auxquelles	to which

This pronoun always agrees in gender and number with its antecedent.

Quoi is always governed by a preposition.

77. *Qui*, relative, is common to persons and things

and is of both genders and numbers; the verb which follows it, and adjective which refer to it, must be of the same number and gender as the antecedent.*

EXAMPLES :

<i>Moi qui suis son fils</i>	I who am his son.
<i>Mon frère qui est si bon</i>	My brother who is so kind.
<i>L'enfant qui joue</i>	The child who plays.
<i>Les enfants qui étudient</i>	The children who study.
<i>Vous qui riez</i>	You who laugh.
<i>Les livres qui instruisent</i>	The books which instruct.

In the first example, the verb is in the first person singular, to agree with *moi*, and, in the second, *bon* is masculine singular, to agree with *frère*.

78. *Dont*, whose, of whom, of which, from whom, from which, is common to persons and things, and *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels*, *desquelles* have the same meaning, but are used only when the object is particularly pointed out, or distinguished from others of the same nature.

EXAMPLES :

<i>La tour dont nous apercevons les créneaux doit être très-élevée.</i>	<i>The tower whose battlements we perceive must be very high.</i>
<i>Ce dont je vous ai parlé l'autre jour n'a pas réussi.</i>	<i>What I was speaking to you of the other day did not succeed.</i>
<i>C'est une démarche de laquelle tout dépend.</i>	<i>It is a step on which every thing depends.</i>

79. *A qui*, of both genders and numbers, (to whom, to which,) is never used in reference to things, but *auquel*, *à laquelle*, *auxquels*, *auxquelles*, which agree in gender and number with the antecedent.

EXAMPLES :

<i>L'homme à qui vous avez écrit, n'a pas répondu.</i>	<i>The man to whom you wrote, did not answer.</i>
<i>Sont-ce là les choses auxquelles vous pensez ?</i>	<i>Are those the things you think of ?</i>

* The relative pronoun is so important a part of a sentence, its use in French so different from what it is in English, that it has been thought better to anticipate a little, and to place here at once rules which properly belong to the syntax, but which it is quite necessary the learner should understand whilst he is doing the exercises which precede that part of the **SYNTAX** which belongs to the relative pronoun: according to the usual order.

EXERCISE.

I who did not suspect (so much) falsehood, cunning,
 * *soupçonnais tant de fausseté f. pr. ruse f.*
 and perfidy, in a man whom I loved blindly, followed
 pr. = *j'aimais aveuglément, je suivis*
 his counsels. Thou, who art candour and innocence itself,
conseil m. es art. = f. art. = f. même
 trust not too lightly. The great empire of the Egyptians
te confie légèrement. — m. — tien
 which was, (as if) detached from all others, was
fut comme détaché art. fut
 not of long duration. We who know the value of time
durée f. connaissons prix m. art.
 ought to make a good use (of it), instead of wasting
*nous devons * emploi m. en au lieu perdre*
 it in idleness and frivolity. What! is it you, my
dans art. oisiveté f. art. inutilité f. Quoi ce
 daughter, who (would wish) that I (should love) you less? The
voudriez que aimasse
 greatest men, who were the ornament and glory of Greece,
étaient ornement art. = f. art. Grâce f.
 Homer, Pythagoras, Plato, even Lycurgus and Solon, went
Homère, —gore Platon, même —gue. — allèrent
 to learn wisdom in Egypt. Is this the man whose house
 * *apprendre art. sagesse f. en Egypte. Est-ce là*
 was burnt down last week. I know the books of which
*a été brûlée * 2 art. semaine f. l. connais*
 you (are speaking). It is a project to which he has devoted
parlez —jet m. a consacre
 much time. Who is the lady to whom you (paid a visit) this
hier du avec fait visite ce
 morning? Come in the (drawing room) I will show you the
matin Venez salon m. montrerais
 table on which he (was writing).
à écrivait.

80. *Que* is also common to persons and things, and is of both genders and numbers.

EXAMPLES.

c'est moi que l'on demande, it is I whom they ask for
c'est toi que l'on appelle, it is thou whom they call

la femme que je vois si bien parée, *the woman whom I see so well dressed*
 c'est nous que vous offensez, *it is we whom you offend*
 c'est vous que je cherche, *it is you I am seeking*
 les dames que vous voyez *the ladies whom you see*

EXAMPLE

I whom temptation surrounded on every side fell
 art. *séduction f.* environnait de tout part f. pl. je tombai
 into the snare. It is you *whom* the public voice calls to that
 dans piège m. Ce 2 f. l. appelle
 office. A power, which terror and force have founded,
 place f. puissance f. art. = f. art. — f. fondé, f.
 cannot be of long duration. It is we *whom* they persecute with
 ne peut durée f. l'on poursuit avec
 unexampled rage. You *whom* every body respects,
 une sans exemple 2 fureur f. l. tout le monde respects
 hasten to (show yourself). (Every thing) in the universe
 hâtez-vous de paraître Tout dans univers m.
 alters and perishes; but the writings which genius has
 s'altère périt écrit m. pl. art. génie m.
 dictated, shall be immortal.
 dicté m. pl. seront — tel.

81. *D'où* is very often used for *duquel, de laquelle, desquels, desquelles*; and *où* for *auquel, à laquelle, auxquels, auxquelles*.

EXAMPLE

Voilà le but, où (auquel) il tend *That is the object he has in view.*
 Ce sont des affaires, où (aux-
 quelles) je suis embarrassé *Those are affairs with which I am perplexed.*
 Voilà une chose d'où (de laquelle)
 dépend le bonheur public *That is an affair on which the public happiness depends.*
 Tels sont les lieux par où (par
 lesquels) il a passé *These are the places through which he passed.*

82. *Lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles*, are generally used after prepositions, and also in the sense of *which*, when it is necessary to distinguish between objects of the same nature.

EXAMPLE

Sont-ce là les personnes avec les-
 quelles il passe son temps? *Are those the people with whom he spends his time.*

Ce sont de ces moments dans lesquels on oublie tous ses chagrins.	<i>These are the moments in which a man forgets all his sorrows.</i>
C'est une de ces dames, mais je ne sais laquelle	<i>It is one of these ladies, but I do not know which.</i>

83. *Quoi* comes after prepositions, and is used in speaking of things of which the gender is not ascertained; it is generally used to express *what, what thing, which thing*.

EXAMPLE

Dites-moi en quoi je puis vous être utile	<i>Tell me in what thing I can be of use to you.</i>
De quoi a-t-il été question ?	<i>What has been the matter ?</i>
On dansa jusqu'à minuit, après quoi il y eut un souper superbe.	<i>They danced until twelve, after which there was a beautiful supper.</i>

EXERCISE.

The protection	on	which	he	relied	has been too weak
— f.	sur			comptait	faible
That after	which	a true philosopher sighs most ardently			
Ce	après	vrai	— m.	soupire	art. ardemment
is to spread that sentiment of universal benevolence which					
de répandre	— m.	— ac 2	bienveillance	f. 1	
should unite and (bring together) all men. These are con-					
devrait unir	rapprocher	art.	Ce sont de	art.	
ditions without which the thing (would not have been) concluded.					
sans	l.	n'aurait pas été	fait	f.	
Nature, of whose secrets we (are ignorant) (will					
art. — f.	1	art. — m. pl. 4	2	ignorons 2	sera
always be) a source of conjecture to mankind. What does					
toujours	— f. 3	— f. pl. 4	pour 1	art. homme 2	*
he complain of so bitterly ? The only moments, in which his					
se plaint	ardemment	seul	— pl.		
soul is yet opened to pleasure, are those which he devotes					
s'ouvre encore	art.	ceux	consacrer		
to study. The mountains from whence gold (is					
art.	f. pl.	on 1	art. or 3		
extracted), are not in general barren. The different countries					
tire 2	* en —	infertile	pl.	—	pays m. pl.

through which he has passed have furnished his pencil with
par a passé ont fourni à pinceau m. de
 romantic and picturesque scenes,
art. — tique 2 pittoresque 3 — 1.

84. OF THE PRONOUN ABSOLUTE *QUI*, AND OTHER PRONOUNS USED IN QUESTIONS.

Who and *whom* are rendered by *qui*, in questions.

EXAMPLES.

Qui vous a dit cela ?	<i>Who told you that ?</i>
Qui voulez-vous inviter ?	<i>Whom do you wish to invite ?</i>
Savez-vous qui l'a dit ?	<i>Do you know who said so ?</i>

What (or what thing) is rendered by *que*.

EXAMPLES.

Que voulez-vous dire ?	<i>What do you mean ?</i>
Que fait-il en haut ?	<i>What is he doing up stairs ?</i>

Quoi must be used after prepositions, and also with adjectives.

EXAMPLES.

À quoi pensez-vous ?	<i>What are you thinking of ?</i>
Quoi de plus beau ?	<i>What can be finer ?</i>

What, which, joined to a noun, is rendered by *quel, quelle, quels, quelles*.

EXAMPLES.

Quel habit mettrez-vous ?	<i>What coat shall you put on ?</i>
On ne sait quelle route il a pris.	<i>No one knows which road he has taken.</i>
Quel homme est-ce ?	<i>What sort of a man is he ?</i>

What and *which*, used relatively, are rendered by *lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles*.

EXAMPLES.

Voilà deux habits; lequel mettez-vous ? *There are two coats, which will you put on ?*
 Avec laquelle de ces dames voulez-vous danser ? *With which of those ladies do you wish to dance ?*

EXERCISES.

Who (will not agree) that life has few real pleasures and
ne conviendra pas art. f. *peu de vrai plaisir*, m.
 many dreadful pains ? (Some one) entered
beaucoup de affreux 2 *peine* f. pl. 1. *On entra*
 secretly; guess who it was. What have you read in that book
secrètement, devinez * * *le* m.
 that can have excited in your soul emotion and enthu-
qui puisse avoir porté art. — f. art. enthou-
 siasm ? I know not what to think (of it). About what did you
sais m. *ne sais* *penser* 2 en 1 à *avez-vous*
 find them occupied ? (There is) in that discourse I know
trouvés *occupé* m. pl. *Il y a* *discours* m. *sais* 2
 not what which appears to me designing. What have you
ne 1 *sembler* * *insidieux*
 remarked good, beautiful and sublime in Homer ? What
remarqué de pr. pr.
 more brilliant, and, at the same time, more false, than the
pr. brillant en * *même* pr.
 expressions of a man, who has (a great deal) of wit; but
 — *beaucoup esprit* *qui*
 wants judgment ? What grace, what delicacy, what har-
manque de jugement ? *grâce* f. *délicatesse* f.
 mony, what colouring, what beautiful lines in Racine ! What
 = f. *coloris* m. *vers* m. — 1
 then must have been that extraordinary man, to whom seven
donc 3 *doit* 2 *avoir été* = 2 —
 cities contested the glory of having given birth ? He
se sont disputé = f. *avoir donné* art. *jour* m.
 (does not know) what model to follow. I have told you what man
ne sait pas *modèle* m. * *savoir* *ai dit*
 it is. Which of those ladies do you think the most amiable ?
ou f. *dames* f. * ? *trouve* 1 f.
 Choose which of those two pictures you like best.
Choisissez m. 4 5 6 *tableaux* m. 7 1 *aimes* 2 art. *mieux* 3

§ VI.

OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

85. *Indefinite pronouns* are those which have a vague and indefinite signification, and which have reference to persons and things in general, without particularizing.

They are of four sorts.

FIRST CLASS.

86. Those that are never joined to a substantive.

ON*	one	on aime à se flatter	one is apt to flatter ones self
	a man	on n'est pas toujours maître de soi	a man cannot always command his own temper
	a woman	on n'est pas toujours maîtresse d'aller où l'on veut	a woman cannot always go where she pleases
	somebody	on frappe à la porte	somebody knocks at the door
	people	on pense et* l'on dit tout haut	people think and say openly
	they	on raconte d'iversement cette histoire	they relate that story differently
	we	on acquiert l'expérience à ses dépens	we acquire experience at our own expense
	you	on trouve partout de importuns	you will find troublesome people every where
	I	on prévient qu'on n'a point eu l'intention de, etc.	I beg to observe, that I had no intention to, etc.
	I	quand on vous dit que† l'on compte sur vous	when I tell you that I depend upon you
	they	si † l'on vous blâme et si † on le loue, on a tort	if they blame you, and praise him, they are wrong.

* On is an abbreviation or a contraction of *homme*, which in old French was spelt *hom*. No doubt but that formerly it was usual to say, when speaking in a vague sense, *homme dit, homme étudie*, from which mode of expression *on* has been derived.

† Instead of *et on*, *ou on*, *si on*, it is better for euphony, to join these words with an *l'*, thus: *et l'on*, *ou l'on*, *si on*, when the next word does not begin with an *l*, as seen by the examples; and instead of *les habitudes qu'on contracte, ce après quoi on court, quoiqu'on croie, un homme à qui on reproche*, say rather: *les habitudes que l'on contracte, ce après quoi l'on court, bien que l'on croie, un homme à qui l'on reproche*.

quelqu'un	<i>one somebody</i>	quelqu'un m'a dit, <i>somebody to'd me.</i>
quiconque	<i>whoever whosoever</i>	qui connaît les hommes, apprend à s'en défier, <i>whoever knows mankind, learns to distrust them.</i>
chacun	<i>each every one</i>	chacun s'en plaint, <i>every one complains of him.</i>
autrui	<i>other people others</i>	n'enviez pas le bien d'autrui, <i>do not covet the property of others</i> ne faites pas à autrui ce que vous ne voudriez pas que l'on vous fît, <i>do not do to others what you would not have done to you</i>
personne	<i>nobody no one</i>	la fierté ne convient à personne, <i>pride becomes nobody</i>
rien	<i>nothing not anything any thing</i>	rien ne lui plaît, <i>nothing pleases him.</i> y a-t-il rien qui puisse lui plaire? <i>is there any thing that can please him?</i>

SECOND CLASS.

87. Those which are always joined to a substantive.

quelque	<i>some</i>	si cela était vrai, quelque historien en aurait parlé, <i>if that were true, some historian would have mentioned it</i>
chaque	<i>each, every</i>	à chaque jour suffit sa peine, <i>sufficient for the day is the evil thereof</i>
quelconque	<i>whoever whatever</i>	il n'y a raison quelconque qui puisse l'y obliger, <i>no reason whatever can oblige him to it</i>
certain	<i>certain some</i>	certain homme, <i>a certain man</i> certaines nouvelles, <i>some news</i>
un	<i>a, an</i>	j'ai vu un homme, <i>I saw a man</i> prenez une orange, <i>take an orange</i>

THIRD CLASS.

88. Those which are sometimes used in conjunction with a substantive, and sometimes relatively.

nul	no, one	{ nulle raison ne peut le convaincre, <i>no reason can convince him</i> nul d'eux ne l'a rencontré, <i>not one of them has met him</i>
pas un	no, not one	{ il n'y a pas une erreur dans cet ouvrage, <i>there is not one error in that work</i> pas un ne le dit, <i>not one says so</i>
aucun	no, none	{ je ne connais aucun de vos juges, <i>I know none of your judges</i> il n'a fait aucune difficulté, <i>he has made no difficulty</i>
autre	other	{ servez-vous d'une autre expression, <i>make use of another expression</i> je vous prenais pour un autre, <i>I took you for another</i>
même	same	{ c'est le même homme que je vis hier, <i>he is the same man I saw yesterday</i> cet homme n'est plus le même, <i>that man is no longer the same</i>
tel	{ <i>such</i> <i>like</i>	{ il tint à peu près un tel discours, <i>he made nearly such a discourse</i> je ne vis jamais rien de tel, <i>I never saw any thing like it</i>
plusieurs	{ <i>several</i> <i>many</i>	{ il est arrivé plusieurs vaisseaux, <i>several vessels have arrived</i> il ne faut pas que plusieurs pâtissent pour un seul, <i>many must not suffer for one</i>
tout	{ <i>all</i> <i>every</i> <i>every thing</i>	{ tous les êtres créés, <i>all created beings</i> tout disparaît devant Dieu, <i>everything vanishes before God.</i>

FOURTH CLASS.

89. Of those which are followed by *que*.

quel que	whoever	{ qui que tu sois, <i>whoever thou mayest be</i> qui que ce soit, <i>whoever it may be</i>
quoi que	whatever	{ quoi que ce soit, <i>whatever it may be</i> quoi que vous disiez, <i>whatever you may say</i>
quelque	{ <i>whatever</i> <i>however</i>	{ quel que soit cet homme, <i>whoever that man may be</i> quel que soit votre courage, <i>whatever your courage may be</i>

telque	such as	{ cette étoffe est telle que vous la voulez, this stuff is such as you wish for
quelque— que	{ whatever however	{ quelque raison que vous donniez, what- ever reason you may give quelque puissant que vous soyez, how- ever powerful you may be
tout—que	however	{ tout savant qu'il est, however learned he may be.

CHAPTER V.

OF THE VERB.

90. The *Verb* is a word, the chief use of which is to express action, feeling, existence; it has persons, moods, and tenses.

In the phrase *la vertu est aimable*, virtue is amiable, it is affirmed that the quality *aimable* belongs to *la vertu*; likewise in this sentence, *le vice n'est pas aimable*, vice is not amiable, it is affirmed that the quality *aimable* does not belong to *le vice*; the word *est* expresses this affirmation.

That concerning which we affirm or deny a thing is called the *subject*, and what is affirmed or denied is called its *attribute*. In the two preceding sentences, *vertu* and *vice* are subjects of the verb *est*, and *aimable* is the attribute affirmed respecting the one, and denied with respect to the other.

91. There are in verbs *two numbers*, the singular and plural, and, in each number, *three persons*.

I. The first person is that who speaks; it is designated by *je*, I, in the singular, and by *nous*, we, in the plural: as, *je pense*, I think; *nous pensons*, we think.

II. The second is the person spoken to, expressed by *tu*, thou, in the singular, and by *vous*, you, in the plural: as, *tu penses*, thou thinkest; *vous pensez*, you think.

III. The third is the person spoken of, known by *il*, he, or *elle*, she, in the singular, and by *ils* or *elles*, they, in the plural: as, *il* or *elle pense*, he or she thinks; *ils* or *elles pensent*, they think.

All substantives, either common or proper, are of the third person, when not addressed or spoken to: as, *les lions rugissent*, lions roar; *ces arbres sont beaux*, these trees are beautiful; *les soldats se battent*, soldiers are fighting.

REM.—A word is known to be a *verb*, when it admits the personal pronouns: thus, *finir*, to finish, is a verb, because we can say, *je finis*, *tu finis*, *il*, or *elle finit*, etc.

92. There are *five moods*, or modes of conjugating verbs.

I. The *infinitive mood* expresses the nature of the action, feeling, without any reference to persons, numbers or time, as, *aimer*, to love; *avoir aimé*, to have loved.

II. The *indicative* simply indicates and asserts a thing in a direct manner; as, *j'aime*, I love; *il aime*, he loved.

III. The *conditional* affirms a thing with a condition, as, *j'aimerais*, *si*, etc. I should love, if, etc.

IV. The *imperative* is used for commanding, exhorting, requesting, or reproving; as, *aime*, love (thou); *aimons*, let us love.

V. The *subjunctive mood* expresses an action in a manner which is subordinate; it is always preceded of a verb, conjunction, or phrase implying the necessity, desire, apprehension that a thing should be,

as *il faut que nous partions*, it is necessary that we should go.

93. There are three tenses, the *present*, which declares a thing now existing, or doing, as, *je lis*, I read; the *past*, denoting that the thing has been done, as, *j'ai lu*, I did read; the *future*, denoting that the thing will be done, as, *je lirai*, I shall read. In order to specify in a precise and correct manner, the moment when the action has taken, or will take place, the verb has several forms: thus, *je lisais*, I was reading; *je viens de lire*, I have just read; *je venais de lire*, I had just read, etc. Numerous examples of these latter forms are given at the end of the grammar. See No. 19, *Examples on the Difficulties*.

There are five kinds of verbs, the *active*, *passive*, *neuter*, *pronominal*, and *impersonal*.

94. The *verb active*, or *transitive*, is that which expresses an action, the object of which may be *quelqu'un*, some person, or *quelque chose*, some thing; as, *aimer Dieu*, to love God; *aimer l'étude*, to love study. The object of this action is called the *regimen*, or *government* of the verb active.

N.B. A simple question will show this *regimen* as, *qu'est-ce que j'aime?* what do I love? answer, *Dieu*, God. *Dieu* is then the regimen of the verb *j'aime*.

95. Passive verbs express that the action is suffered by the subject; they are conjugated by means of the auxiliary *être*, and the participle past of the active voice, as *je suis aimé*, I am loved. Thus, to change the verbs from active to passive in these sentences, *mon père m'aime*, my father loves me; *le milan a enlevé le serin*, the kite has carried off the canary bird, they must be turned in this way, *je suis*

aimé de mon père, I am loved by my father; *le serin a été enlevé par le milan*, the canary bird has been carried off by the kite.

96. The *verb neuter*, or *intransitive*, is that which has no direct regimen, that is, after which you cannot put a substantive, without a preposition. *Aller* to go, is a neuter verb, because one cannot say, *aller Londres*, to go London, but *aller à Londres*, to go to London. *Plaire*, to please, is likewise a verb neuter, as we cannot say in French, *plaire quelqu'un*, to please somebody, but *plaire à quelqu'un*.

The *pronominal verbs* are those in which each person is conjugated through all the tenses, with two pronouns.

me	{	<i>je me</i> , I myself	{	<i>nous nous</i> we ourselves
		<i>tu te</i> , thou thyself		<i>vous vous</i> { you yourself, or
		<i>il se</i> , he himself		ye yourselves
		<i>elle se</i> , she herself		<i>ils se</i> } they themselves
				<i>elles se</i> }

There are four sorts of *pronominal verbs* :—

97. I. The *reflective*, when the action of the verb falls upon the subject, as *je me flatte*, I flatter myself; *il se loue*, he praises himself. Almost all active verbs are susceptible of being *reflective*.

II. The *pronominal verb neuter*, which indicates only a state, a disposition of the subject as, *se repentir*, to repent; *se désister*, to desist; *s'enfuir*, to run away.

III. The *reciprocal verb* expresses a reciprocity of action between two or more subjects, and consequently has no singular; such are, *s'entr'aider*, to help one another; *s'entre-donner*, to give each other.

IV. The *pronominal verb impersonal*, is only used in the third person singular. Active verbs frequently assume this form in a passive sense, for the

sake of brevity and energy; as, *il se bâtit*, there is building; *il se faisait*, there was doing; *il se conclut*, there was concluded; *il s'est dit*, it has been said; *il se donnera une grande bataille*, a great battle will be fought.

98. The *impersonal verb* is only used in the third person singular, with the pronoun *il* for its subject. *Neiger*, to snow, is an impersonal verb, as it cannot be applied to any person, or thing; *il neige*, it snows, *il neigeait*, it did snow. *Neuter verbs* may be used impersonally, as *il vint un homme*, there came a man, instead of *un homme vint*, a man came.

Though the greater part of the French verbs are regular, there are, however, as in other languages, some that are *irregular*, and others that are *defective*. Regular verbs are those which are conjugated conformably to a general principle. Irregular verbs are those which deviate from that general principle in the formation of their persons and tenses; and defective verbs are those which, in certain tenses, or persons, are not used.

OF CONJUGATIONS.

99. To conjugate is to give all the persons and tenses of a verb through all its different inflections.

The French generally admit four regular conjugations, which are distinguished by the termination of the present of the infinitive.

Il	{	FIRST	ends in	-er	as, parler, aimer, chanter, donner, etc.
		SECOND		-ir	as, finir, avertir, punir, ternir, etc.
		THIRD		-oir	as, recevoir, apercevoir, devoir, etc.
		FOURTH		-re	as, rendre, vendre, mordre, battre, etc.

100 The French, like most modern nations, not having a sufficient number of inflections in their

verbs to specify exactly the moment at which the action takes place, supply this deficiency with two auxiliary verbs, *avoir* and *être*, to have and to be.

Besides AVOIR and ÊTRE, which are the only verbs generally recognised as auxiliaries, there are four others which are as fully deserving of that name, in consequence of their being frequently used in conjunction with the infinitive, to express *times* and *circumstances*, which the simple tenses are insufficient to do. These four verbs are *aller*, *venir de*, *devoir*, *pouvoir*. (See models of their use, No. 19, of the EXAMPLES ON DIFFICULTIES.)

Those tenses, which are formed from the infinitive, are called simple tenses, as *parler*, *je parle*, *je parlais*, *je parlai*, *je parlerai*, etc. Those which are formed by the conjunction of the participle with *être* and *avoir*, or of the infinitive with *venir de*, *aller*, *devoir*, *pouvoir*, are compound tenses, as *j'ai parlé*, *je viens de parler*, etc.

101. CONJUGATION

OF THE

VERB *AVOIR*, TO HAVE.

INFINITIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.

COMPOUND TENSES.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
<i>avoir</i>	<i>to have.</i>	<i>avoir eu</i>	<i>to have had.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.			PAST.	
<i>ayant</i>	<i>having</i>			
<i>eu, m. eue, f.</i>	<i>had</i>	<i>ayant eu</i>	<i>having had</i>	

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.		PRETERIT INDEFINITE, or compound of the present.	
<i>j'ai</i>	<i>I have</i>	<i>j'ai eu</i>	<i>I have</i>
<i>tu as</i>	<i>thou hast</i>	<i>tu as eu</i>	<i>thou hast</i>
<i>il, or elle a</i>	<i>he or she has</i>	<i>il a eu</i>	<i>he has</i>
<i>nous avons</i>	<i>we have</i>	<i>nous avons eu</i>	<i>we have</i>
<i>vous avez</i>	<i>you have</i>	<i>vous avez eu</i>	<i>you have</i>
<i>ils, or elles ont</i>	<i>they have</i>	<i>ils ont eu</i>	<i>they have</i>

} *had*

EXERCISE.

102. In the following exercises, the substantive being taken in a partitive sense, it will be necessary to use the partitive *du, de l', de la, des*, according to the gender and number. See Rule the 39th.

SIMPLE TENSES.

IMPERFECT.

j'avais	<i>I had</i>	} <i>or was having</i>
tu avais	<i>thou hadst</i>	
il avait	<i>he had</i>	
il avait	<i>we had</i>	
vous aviez	<i>you had</i>	
ils avaient	<i>they had</i>	

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

j'eus	<i>I had</i>
tu eus	<i>thou hadst</i>
il eut	<i>he had</i>
nous eûmes	<i>we had</i>
vous eûtes	<i>you had</i>
ils eurent	<i>they had</i>

COMPOUND TENSES.

PLUPERFECT, or compound of the imperfect.

j'avais eu	<i>I had</i>	} <i>had</i>
tu avais eu	<i>thou hadst</i>	
il avait eu	<i>he had</i>	
nous avions eu	<i>we had</i>	
vous aviez eu	<i>you had</i>	
ils avaient eu	<i>they had</i>	

PRETERIT ANTERIOR, or compound of the preterit.

j'eus eu	<i>I had</i>	} <i>had</i>
tu eus eu	<i>thou hadst</i>	
il eut eu	<i>he had</i>	
nous eûmes eu	<i>we had</i>	
vous eûtes eu	<i>you had</i>	
ils eurent eu	<i>they had</i>	

PRESENT.

I have books.	you hast friends.	He has honesty.	She
<i>livre</i>	<i>ami</i>	<i>honnêteté f. & m.</i>	
has sweetness.	We have credit.	You have riches.	They
<i>douceur f.</i>	<i>— m.</i>	<i>richesse pl. m.</i>	
have virtues.	They have modesty.		
<i>vertu f.</i>	<i>— f.</i>		

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have had pleasure.	Thou hast had gold.	He has had patience	
<i>plaisir m.</i>	<i>or m.</i>	<i>— f</i>	
She has had beauty.	We have had honours.	You have had	
<i>— f.</i>	<i>honneur</i>		
friendship.	They have had sentiments.	They have had feeling.	
<i>amitié f. m.</i>	<i>— f.</i>	<i>sensibilité f.</i>	

IMPERFECT.

I had ambition	Thou hadst wealth.	He had sincerity.	She
<i>— f.</i>	<i>biens m.</i>		

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.	
FUTURE ABSOLUTE.		FUTURE ANTERIOR, or compound of the future.	
j'aurai	<i>I shall or will have</i>	j'aurai eu	<i>I shall or will have</i>
tu auras	<i>thou shalt or wilt have.</i>	tu auras eu	<i>thou wilt have</i>
il aura	<i>he will have</i>	il aura eu	<i>he will have</i>
nous aurons	<i>we shall have</i>	nous aurons eu	<i>we shall have</i>
vous aurez	<i>you will have</i>	vous aurez eu	<i>you will have</i>
ils auront	<i>they will have</i>	ils auront eu	<i>they will have</i>

had grapes. We had oranges. You had pears. They had apples.
 — — — poire m. pomme

They had lemons.
 f. citron

PLUPERFECT

I had had apricots. Thou hadst had nectarines. He had had
 abricot brugnons
 walnuts. She had had hazel-nuts. We had had chestnuts. You
 noix noisette châtaigne.
 had had figs. They had had medlars. They had had filberts.
 figue m. noisette f. aveline.

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I had plums. Thou hadst cherries. He had strawberries. She
 prune cerise fraise
 had pine-apples. We had almonds. You had currants. They had
 ananas amande groseille m.
 raspberries. They had grapes.
 framboise f. raisin m. pl.

103. In the following exercises, the addition of an adjective, after the substantive, will make no difference as to the use of *du, de la, de l', des*.

PREFERIT ANTERIOR.

I had had very black ink. Thou hadst had honest
 fort 2 noir 3 encre f.). honnête 2

CONDITIONAL.

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT.

j'aurais	<i>I should or would have</i>
tu aurais	<i>thou shouldst have</i>
il aurait	<i>he should have</i>
nous aurions	<i>we should have</i>
vous auriez	<i>you should have</i>
ils auraient	<i>they should have</i>

COMPOUND TENSES.

PAST, or compound of the conditional.

j'aurais eu	<i>I should</i>
tu aurais eu	<i>thou shouldst</i>
il aurait eu	<i>he should</i>
nous aurions eu	<i>we should</i>
vous auriez eu	<i>you should</i>
ils auraient eu	<i>they should</i>

have 1, 2, 3.

friends. She had had uncommon graces. We had had very ripe
amis, rare 2 1. 2 mûr 3
grapes. You had had exquisite melons. They had had ready
1. exquis 2 -- m. 1. compliant 2
money.
argent m. 1.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

I shall have studious pupils. Thou wilt have horrid
appliqué 2 élève m. 1. horrible 2
pains. He will have ridiculous ideas. We shall have use-
peine f. 1. ridicule 2 idée f. 1. mu-
less cares. You will have true and real pleasures. They will
sûre 2 soin m. 1. 2 réel 3 m. 1.
have poignant griefs.
cuisant 2 chagrin m. 1.

104. But if the adjective precedes the substantive, then *de*, or *d'*, only is to be used without any regard to the number or the gender of the noun.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall have had good paper. Thou wilt have had excellent
papier m.
fruit. She will have had charming flowers. We shall have had
m. pl charmant fleurs f.

good pens. You will have had large buildings. They will
plume f. *grand bâtiment m.*
 have had fine clothes
superbe habit m.

PRESENT OF THE CONDITIONAL.

I should have fine engravings. Thou shouldst have pretty play-
gravure f. *joli jou-*
 things. He should have immense treasures. We should have
en m. *trésor m.*
 beautiful pictures. You would have pretty houses. They should
tableau m. *f.*
 have long conversations.
 — *f.*

105. *De* is also to be used alone, without any regard to the gender or number of the noun, after an adverb of quantity, such as *beaucoup*, a great deal, great many; *peu*, little, few; *plus*, more; *moins*, less; *trop*, too much, too many, etc; except *bien*, much, many, which requires *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*.

CONDITIONAL PAST.

I should* have had a great deal of trouble. Thou wouldst have
peine f.
 have had more pleasure. He would have had (a vast deal) of
de *infiniment*
 knowledge. We should have had more opportunities of succeeding.
connaissance f.pl. *de occasion f.pl.* *réussir*
 You would certainly have had many advantages over him.
certainement *l* *beaucoup de avantage* *sur lui*
 They would have had many enemies.
bien ennemi

* *Would*, *should*, *could* are not always mere signs of the conditional; they are on the contrary, more frequently used as having a distinct and separate sense, expressing *will*, *duty*, or *power*. In such cases, they are also to be rendered in French by separate words, such as *vouloir*, *devoir*, *pouvoir*. The attention of the scholar will be called to that necessary distinction hereafter; but for the present, that is, in the course of the following introductory exercises on the conjugation of verbs, he must consider *would*, *could*, and *should* as being used in their first capacity only, that is, as *Signs of the Conditional*.—See 36.

N.B. *J'eusse eu, tu eusses eu, il eût eu, nous eussions eu, vous eussiez eu, ils eussent eu*, I should have had, &c. is also used for the conditional past.

IMPERATIVE.

<i>me, or aye</i>	<i>hâte (time)</i>
<i>qu'il ait</i>	<i>let him have</i>
<i>ayons</i>	<i>let us have</i>
<i>ayez</i>	<i>have (ye)</i>
<i>qu'ils aient</i>	<i>let them have</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.	
	PRESENT.		PRESENT.
<i>que</i>	<i>that</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>that</i>
<i>j'aie</i>	<i>I may have</i>	<i>j'aie en</i>	<i>I may</i>
<i>tu aies</i>	<i>thou mayst have</i>	<i>tu aies en</i>	<i>thou mayst</i>
<i>il ait</i>	<i>he may have</i>	<i>il ait en</i>	<i>he may</i>
<i>nous ayons</i>	<i>we may have</i>	<i>nous ayons en</i>	<i>we may</i>
<i>vous ayez</i>	<i>you may have</i>	<i>vous ayez en</i>	<i>you may</i>
<i>ils aient</i>	<i>they may have</i>	<i>ils aient en</i>	<i>they may</i>

} *have had*

106. When the verb is followed by several substantives, the proper article and preposition must be repeated before each.

IMPERATIVE.

Have thou patience, perseverance, and courage. Let him have
 ———f. ———f. ———m.
 modesty and more correct ideas. Let her have more decency. Let
 ———f. 2 juste 3 1 *décence*
 us have courage and firmness. Have ye gravy soup, nice roast
 ———m. *fermeté f.* *un gras 2 soupe f.l. un bon ro-*
 beef and a pudding. Let them have ale, rum, and punch. Let
bif m. pudding m. m. ale f. rum m. punch m.
 them have morals and conduct
 f. *mœurs f.pl. conduite f.*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT.

That I may have many friends. That thou mayest have good
beaucoup
 reasons to give him. That he may have elevated sentiments. That
donner lui *élevé 2* ———m.l.
 we may have courage and magnanimity. That you may have
bravoure f. =f.
 delightful landscapes, and beautiful sea-pieces. That they may
délicieux 2 paysage m.pl. *marine f.pl.*
 have more condescension and more prepossessing manners.
 ————*dance* 2 *prévenant 3 manière f.pl.l.*

PRETERIT.

That I may have had wine, beer, and cider. That thou mayest
vin m. bière f. cidre m.
 have had a good horse, and a fine dog. That he may have had
cheval m. chien m.
 enlightened judges. That we may have had snow, rain, and wind.
éclairé 2 juge m.l. *neige f. pluie f. vent m.*
 That you may have had a great dining-room, and a beautiful drawing-
salle à manger f. superbe salon de
 room, a pretty dressing-room, and a delightful bed-
compagnie m. joli cabinet de toilette m. charmant chambre-
 room. That they may have had vast possessions, fine meadows,
à coucher f. vaste ———f. prairie f.
 and delightful groves.
délicieux 2 bois m.l.

SIMPLE TENSES.

IMPERFECT.

<i>que</i>	<i>that</i>
<i>j'eusse</i>	<i>I had, or might have</i>
<i>tu eusses</i>	<i>thou might'st have</i>
<i>il eût</i>	<i>he might have</i>
<i>nous eussions</i>	<i>we might have</i>
<i>vous eussiez</i>	<i>you might have</i>
<i>ils eussent</i>	<i>they might have</i>

COMPOUND TENSES.

PLUPERFECT, or compound of the imperfect.

<i>que</i>	<i>that</i>
<i>j'eusse eu</i>	<i>I might</i>
<i>tu eusses eu</i>	<i>thou mightest</i>
<i>il eût eu</i>	<i>he might</i>
<i>nous eussions eu</i>	<i>we might</i>
<i>vous eussiez eu</i>	<i>you might</i>
<i>ils eussent eu</i>	<i>they might</i>

} have had

IMPERFECT.

That I might have a sword, a musket, and pistols. That thou
épée f. fusil m. pistolet m.
 might'st have a knife, a spoon, and a fork. That we might
couteau m. cuillère f. fourchette f.
 have a penknife, pencils, and good copies. That he might have
carnif m. pinceau m. modèle m.
 a coach, a good house, and furniture, simple but elegant. That
carrosse m. f. meuble m.pl. — mais —
 you might have health and great respect. That they might have
santé f. m. considération f.
 fruitful lands.
fertile 2 terre f.].

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have had friendship. That thou might'st have had
amitié f.
 gloves, boots, and horses. That he might have had zealous and
gant m. botte f. cheval m. zélé 2
 faithful servants. That we might have had fine clothes, precious
fidèle 3 domestique m.l. = f. 2
 jewels, and magnificent furniture. That you might have had warm
bijou m.l. magnifique 2 } chaud 2
 friends. That they might have had greatness of soul and pity.
1 grandeur f. pitié f.

SENTENCES ON THE SAME VERB, WITH A NEGATIVE.

107. *De, d'* is also used, without any regard to the gender or the number of the noun, after a negative phrase.

EXAMPLES :

Je n'ai pas de livres	<i>I have no books</i>
tu n'avais pas de bien	<i>thou hast no wealth</i>
nous n'avons pas eu d'amitié	<i>we have had no friendship</i>
si vous n'aviez pas eu de puissants amis	<i>if you had not had powerful friends</i>
ils n'auront pas d'ennemis	<i>they will not have enemies</i>
il n'aurait pas de plaisir	<i>he would not have any pleasure.</i>

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

I have no precious medals. We have no useless things.
 —2 médaille f.1 inutile 2 chose f.1

PRÉSENT INDEFINITE.

I have had no perseverance. We have had no generosity.
 —f. —f.

IMPERFECT.

Thou hadst not a beautiful park. You had no good cucumbers.
 parc m. concombre m.

PLUPERFECT.

He had had no fine houses. They had had no money.
 argent m.

PRÉTERIT DEFINITE.

He had no answer to his letter. They had no carpets.
 réponse f. lettre f. tapis m.

PRÉTERIT ANTERIEUR.

Thou hadst had no kindness. You had had no great talents.
 complaisance f. —m.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

I shall have no great difficulty. We shall not have company at
 grand difficulté f. amuse à

dinner
 dîner

FUTURE ANTERIOR

You will not have had quiet days.
tranquille 2 m. 1

CONDITIONAL

PRESENT.

He would not have bad pictures. They would have no leisure.
magna tabernum. *loisir in*

PART.

I should have had no griefs. We should have had no troubles
 chagris m.pl. *veine f.*

IMPERATIVE.

Have no such whims. Let him not have such absurd ideas.
caprice m. et absurde 2 f.pl.1

Let us not have discussions of this sort. Have no such whims.

Let them not have foreign servants.
étranger domestique

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT.

That I may have no protectors. That we may have no success.

PRETERIT.

That he may have had no perseverance. That they may have had

no valour.
bravoure f.

IMPERFECT.

That thou might'st have no taste. **That you might not have a just**
 god! m. *justice*

reward,
récompense f.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might not have had good advice. That we might not have
avis m.pl.

had any news.
nouvelle f.pl.

THE VERB *AVOIR*, INTERROGATIVELY AND AFFIRMATIVELY

108. In interrogations, the pronoun, which is the subject of the verb, is placed after it, and they are joined by an hyphen, *ai-je*? In compound tenses, the pronoun is placed immediately after the auxiliary *ai-je eu*? When the third person singular of the verb ends with a vowel, *-t-* is placed between the verb, and *il*, *elle*, in order to avoid the hiatus occasioned by the meeting of the two vowels: *a-t-il*? *aura-t-il*? This applies to *on*: *aura-t-on*?

EXAMPLES :

<i>ai-je des livres ?</i>	<i>have I books ?</i>
<i>avais-tu du bien ?</i>	<i>hadst thou wealth ?</i>
<i>eut-elle ce courage ?</i>	<i>had she that courage ?</i>
<i>Jean a-t-il de l'argent ?</i>	<i>has John any money ?</i>
<i>avons-nous eu de bons conseils ?</i>	<i>have we had good counsels ?</i>
<i>aviez-vous eu de la prudence ?</i>	<i>had you had prudence ?</i>
<i>aura-t-il de l'argent ?</i>	<i>will he have money ?</i>
<i>aura-t-elle eu des protecteurs ?</i>	<i>will she have had protectors ?</i>

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Hast thou needles ?</i>	<i>Have you coloured maps ?</i>
<i>aiguille f.</i>	<i>enluminé 2 carte f. l</i>

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

<i>Have I had good friends ?</i>	<i>Have we had much fortune ?</i>
<i>bon ami</i>	<i>——— f.</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>Had she time ?</i>	<i>Had they large buildings ?</i>
<i>le temps</i>	<i>grand bâtiment m.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Had she sufficient means ?</i>	<i>Had they extensive fields ?</i>
<i>suffisant moyens m.</i>	<i>spacieux 2 champ m. l</i>

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>Had he good shoes ?</i>	<i>Had they looking glasses ?</i>
<i>soulier m.</i>	<i>l. miroir m.</i>

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

Hadst thou had lace? Had you had odoriferous shrubs?
dentelle f. odoriférant 2 arbuste m. 1

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Shall I have gold and silver? Shall we have (good luck) ?
m. argent m. bonheur

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Will they have had company?
compagnie f.

CONDITIONAL.

EXAMPLE.

Shouldst thou have happy moments? Would you have good
heureux — m.

wine and nice liqueurs?
vin m. fin 2 liqueur f. 1

PAST.

Would he have had uncommon patience? Would they have had
extraordinaire

rich clothes.
habit m.

THE SAME VERB INTERROGATIVELY AND NEGATIVELY.

109. This form is the same as the preceding, except that the first negative *ne* is placed before the verb, and the second, *pas* or *point*, after the pronoun: *ai-je ? n'ai-je pas ? ai-je eu ? n'ai-je pas eu ?*

EXAMPLE.

n'a-t-elle pas beaucoup d'esprit ? has she not a great deal of wit ?
n'avons-nous pas eu de bons procédés ? have we not had considerate regards ?
n'aviez-vous pas eu de nouvelles robes ? had you not had new gowns ?
n'aura-t-il pas de ressources ? will he have no resources ?

109. (*bis*). It has been said (107) that, after negations, *de* must be used before the noun substantive, without any regard to its gender or number, instead

of *du, de la, des*, used in affirmative sentences: as *je n'ai pas d'argent, elle n'a pas d'amis*. Yet, in *interrogative and negative sentences*, there are some cases when *du, de la, des*, may be used, and others when *de* must: thus,

1st. n'ai-je pas du mépris pour lui ?	<i>have I not contempt for him ?</i>
n'avez-vous pas des livres ?	<i>have you not books ?</i>
n'avez-vous pas de l'argent ?	<i>have you not money ?</i>
2nd. n'avez-vous pas de livres ?	<i>have you no books ?</i>
n'avez-vous pas d'argent ?	<i>have you no money ?</i>

Although the first examples are under the interrogative form, they are intended for affirmations. By a figure, called *litote*, one form has been substituted to another, thereby to convey more meaning than the simple assertions *j'ai du mépris pour lui; vous avez des livres; vous avez de l'argent*, would be able to do. Thus, for instance, *you complain of being dull, how can that be, have you not books ?* instead of saying *since you have books ?*

EXAMPLES.

n'ai-je pas des livres ?	<i>have I no books ?</i>
n'avais-tu pas des amis ?	<i>hadst thou no friends ?</i>
n'auraient-elles pas eu des consolations ?	<i>will they have had no consolations ?</i>

In the second examples, on the contrary, nothing but mere questions is intended, there is no substitution of form, no other meaning *understood*, but the one expressed. The difference is also somewhat marked in English.

INDICATIVE.

FUTURE.

Hast thou no diamonds ?	Have you no indulgent parents ?
<i>diamant m.</i>	<i>----- 2 ----- m. 1</i>

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

Hast thou not had contempt and even hatred	for that man ?
<i>mépris m.</i>	<i>même haine f. h. asp. pour cet</i>
Have you not had better examples ?	
<i>meilleur</i>	<i>exemple m.</i>

IMPERFECT.

Had he not a rigid censor? Had they not inattentive children?
être 2 censur m.1 *=2 enfan/ m.1*

PLUPERFECT.

Had I not had other views? Had we not had amethysts, rubies,
autre vue f.pl. *améthyste f. rubis m.*
 and topazes?
topaze f.

PAST TENSE DEFINITIVE.

Had we not perfidious friends?
perfidie 2 1

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

Had he not had too studied expressions? Had they not had
2 -écherché ——— f.1
 excellent models?
——— modèle m.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Wilt thou not have a more regular conduct? Will you not have
plus 2 réglé 3 conduite f.1
 fashionable dresses?
à la mode 2 robe f.1

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Shall we have had sufficient time then?
avoir de temps

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Should she not have clear and just ideas? Would they not have
clair 2 3 f.1
 more extensive knowledge?
2 étendu 3 connaissances f.pl.1

PAST.

Would she not have had any objection? Would they have had no
 reward?
récompense f.

110. CONJUGATION

OF THE

AUXILIARY VERB *ETRE*, TO BE.

INFINITIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT.

être *to be*

COMPOUND TENSES.

PAST.

avoir été *to have been*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

étant *being*

PAST.

été *been*

PAST.

} *ayant été* *having been*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>je suis</i>	<i>I am</i>
<i>tu es</i>	<i>thou art</i>
<i>il, ou elle est</i>	<i>he or she is</i>
<i>nous sommes</i>	<i>we are</i>
<i>vous êtes</i>	<i>you are</i>
<i>ils } sont</i>	<i>they are</i>
<i>elles }</i>	

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

<i>j'ai été</i>	<i>I have been</i>
<i>tu as été</i>	<i>thou hast been</i>
<i>il a été</i>	<i>he has been</i>
<i>nous avons été</i>	<i>we have been</i>
<i>vous avez été</i>	<i>you have been</i>
<i>ils ont été</i>	<i>they have been</i>

111. GENERAL RULE. In those sentences in which there is an adverb, it must be placed between the verb and the adjective or participle : *il n'est jamais content ; il est toujours récompensé.*

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.	
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
<i>j'étais</i>	<i>I was</i>	<i>j'avais été</i>	<i>I had been</i>
<i>tu étais</i>	<i>thou wast</i>	<i>tu avais été</i>	<i>thou hadst been</i>
<i>il était</i>	<i>he was</i>	<i>il avait été</i>	<i>he had been</i>
<i>nous étions</i>	<i>we were</i>	<i>nous avions été</i>	<i>we had been</i>
<i>vous étiez</i>	<i>you were</i>	<i>vous aviez été</i>	<i>you had been</i>
<i>ils étaient</i>	<i>they were</i>	<i>ils avaient été</i>	<i>they had been</i>
PRETERIT DEFINITE.		PRETERIT ANTERIOR.*	
<i>je fus</i>	<i>I was</i>	<i>j'eus été</i>	<i>I had been</i>
<i>tu fus</i>	<i>thou wast</i>	<i>tu eus été</i>	<i>thou hadst been</i>
<i>il fut</i>	<i>he was</i>	<i>il eut été</i>	<i>he had been</i>
<i>nous fûmes</i>	<i>we were</i>	<i>nous eûmes été</i>	<i>we had been</i>
<i>vous fûtes</i>	<i>you were</i>	<i>vous eûtes été</i>	<i>you had been</i>
<i>ils furent</i>	<i>they were</i>	<i>ils eurent été</i>	<i>they had been</i>

The following exercises, on the verb *être*, are composed of four forms of sentences, affirmative, interrogative, and negative; interrogative and negative.

When, in a question, the substantive is expressed, it must always begin the sentence, and the pronoun still be put after the verb.

EXAMPLES.

Mon frère est-il venu ? *is my brother come ?*
 la reine n'est-elle pas arrivée ? *is not the queen arrived ?*

EXERCISES.

I am very glad to see you. Art not thou pleased with that book
aise de voir *satisfait de*
 Is she really amiable ? We are happy. Are you not too
véritablement *heureux*
 obliging ? Are your friends still in London ?
complaisant *encore à Londres*

* Exercises upon this tense would be as yet too complicated, as may be seen by this sentence: *à peine y eus-je été cinq ou six minutes qu'il arriva*, I had scarce been there five or six minutes when he arrived.

PRÆTERIT INDEFINITE.

Have not I been constant? Hast thou always been steady? She
poor
 has been faithful. Have we not been firm and courageous? You
fidèle *ferme* *=*
 have been charitable. Have these men always been good and
 benevolent?
bienfaisant

IMPERFECT.

I was too busy to see you. Wast not thou troublesome?
occupé pour recevoir *importun*
 Was this girl idle? Were we not too untractable? You were
jeune paresseuse *indocile*
 not quiet enough. They were vain, light, and coquettish.
tranquille 2 assez 1 *f.* — *frivole* *coquette*

PLUPERFECT.

I had hitherto been very indifferent. Hadst not thou been too
jusqu'alors *indouciant*
 imprudent? Had his wife been sufficiently modest and reserved?
épouse *assez* *assez réservé*
 We had not yet been sufficiently attentive. Had you been envious
encore *appliqué* *=*
 and jealous? They had not been grateful.
jaloux *reconnaissant*

PRÆTERIT DEFINITE.

Perhaps I was not sufficiently prudent. Wast thou discreet
peut-être que *assez* *discret 2*
 enough on that occasion? Was not that princess too proud? We
1 en *—f.* *—ceste* *fierté*
 were very unhappy. Were not you too hasty? They were not
prompt
 much satisfied.
fort satisfait

SIMPLE TENSES.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

je serai	<i>I shall or will be</i>
tu seras	<i>thou wilt be</i>
il sera	<i>he will be</i>
nous serons	<i>we shall be</i>
vous serez	<i>you shall be</i>
ils seront	<i>they shall be</i>

COMPOUND TENSES.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

j'aurai été	<i>I shall or will</i>	} <i>shall</i>
tu auras été	<i>thou wilt</i>	
il aura été	<i>he will</i>	
nous aurons été	<i>we shall</i>	
vous aurez été	<i>you will</i>	
ils auront été	<i>they will</i>	

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

To-morrow I shall be at home till (twelve o'clock.) Wilt thou
demain chez moi jusqu'à midi
 always be restless, brutal, and sour? Will your father be
inquiète bourru chagrin Monsieur
 at home this evening? Shall not we be more diligent? You will
chez lui soir m. 1
 then be ever capricious, obstinate, and particular. Will not your
2 1 3 quintsens opiniâtre pointilleux
 scholars be troublesome?
écotier incommode

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Shall not I have been too severe? Thou wilt have been too
 distrustful. Shall we not have been desirous enough? Will not
défiant empressé 2 1
 you have been inconsiderate? Will not the judges have been just?
indiscret juges

CONDITIONAL.

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.	
PRESENT.		PAST.	
Je serais	<i>I should, would, or could be</i>	j'aurais été	<i>I should</i>
tu serais	<i>thou wouldst be</i>	tu aurais été	<i>thou wouldst</i>
il serait	<i>he would be</i>	il aurait été	<i>he would</i>
nous serions	<i>we should be</i>	nous aurions été	<i>we should</i>
vous seriez	<i>you would be</i>	vous auriez été	<i>you should</i>
ils seraient	<i>they would be</i>	ils auraient été	<i>they would</i>

} *have been*

This form *j'eusse été, tu eusses été, il eût été, nous eussions été, vous eussiez été, ils eussent été*, is also used instead of the conditional past, *j'aurais été*.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

I would not be so rash. Wouldst thou be as consistent in thy
téméraire *conséquent dans*
 behaviour as in thy language? Would not his son be ready in time
conduite f. *propos m.pl.* *fils* *prêt à*
 Should we always be incorrigible? You would not be disinterested
dérivé
 enough. Would not those ladies be always ready?
 1 *dame* *prêt*

PAST.

(But for) your instructions, I should have been proud and
sans *conseil m.pl.* *dédaigneux*
 haughty. Wouldst not thou have been malicious and sarcastic?
hautain *malin* *ricaneur*
 Would not that man have been quite destitute? Certainly, we
entièrement dépourvu
 should not have been so ridiculous. Would not you have been
si ridicule
 more kind and indulgent? They would not have been so
doux *plus complaisant*
 rude.
malveillante

IMPERATIVE

sois	be (thou)
qu'il soit	let him be
soyons	let us be
soyez	be (ye)
qu'ils soient	let them be

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT.

que	that
je sois	I may, can, or should be
tu sois	thou may'st be
il soit	he may be
nous soyons	we may be
vous soyez	you may be
ils soient	they may be

COMPOUND TENSES.

PRETERIT.

que	that	
j'aie été	I may, can, or should	} have been
tu aies été	thou mayest	
il ait été	he may	
nous ayons été	we may	
vous ayez été	you may	
ils aient été	they may	

112. When the noun is expressed, its place is immediately after *que*: *que votre fils soit plus poli*, let your son be more polite.

Be liberal, but with discretion. Do not be so lavish. Let us be
sing. ——— avec ——— sing. prodigue
equitable, humane, and prudent. Let us not be greedy. Be economical
——— humain ——— avide économe
and temperate. Do not be thoughtless. Let him be more patient,
sobre pl. léger
Let her be ready at six o'clock. Let your children be better
prêt à six heures enfant mieux
(taken care of). Let these (poor men) be admitted. Let them
soignés malheureux admis
not be so hasty in their conclusions.
prompt à porter un jugement

OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

113. In the preceding exercises, and in the tenses of the subjunctive mood, we have given such English

sentences as might lead the learner to suppose that the French *que je parle*, and the English *that I may speak*, are always equivalent, and that the use of the subjunctive mood corresponds in both languages; but it is indeed very far from being the case, as the following examples will show.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Je désire qu'il vienne | <i>I wish him to come</i> |
| 2. Voulez-vous que je vous le dise ? | <i>do you wish me to tell it you ?</i> |
| 3. Je ne crois pas qu'il vienne | <i>I do not think he will come</i> |
| 4. Cachez cela, de peur qu'il ne le voie | <i>hide that, lest he sees it, or lest he should see it</i> |
| 5. Dites-le lui, afin qu'il vienne à temps | <i>tell it him, in order that he may come in time</i> |
| 6. Il faut que j'y sois à deux heures | <i>I must be there at two o'clock</i> |

Here are six sentences in which the subjunctive mood is *necessarily* used in French, and there is but one in which it is used in English, the fifth. The use of the subjunctive mood in French depends upon the preceding or governing sentence, and is determined by rules which will be found in their proper place. (*See Syntax*) We will confine ourselves, for the present, in these exercises on the various tenses of the subjunctive, to giving full sentences; that is, we will add the introductory part after which that mood is required.

It must further be added that the conjugation *that* is often omitted in English, whereas *que* is and must always be expressed in French.

PRESENT OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

- | | |
|--|---|
| Is it possible that he is so credulous? | We wish that thou |
| <i>est-il possible</i> | <i>est-ce que nous désirons</i> |
| mayest be more modest. | Is it true that she is so obstinate? They |
| | <i>est-ce qu'elle est si obstinée</i> |
| wish you to be more assiduous. | It is not expected that you should |
| <i>désire</i> | <i>on ne s'attend pas</i> |
| be back so early. | We fear they will be deceived. |
| <i>de retour de si bonne heure, nous craignons</i> | <i>trompé</i> |

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.	
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
que je fusse	that I might or could be	que j'eusse été	that I might, or could
tu fusses	thou mightst be	tu eusses été	thou might'st
il fût	he might be	il eût été	he might
nous fussions	we might be	nous eussions été	we might
vous fussiez	you might be	vous eussiez été	you might
ils fussent	they might be	ils eussent été	they might

PRETERIT.

It is possible that I may have been too hasty and too impatient,
'l se peut emporté
 I cannot believe that he may have been so puffed with pride. *1. is*
je ne saurais croire bouffi d'orgueil m. c'est
 (a pity) that she has been so fickle. My father regrets that we have
dommage volage mon père regrette
 been so headstrong. It is wrong that you should have been so
entêté il est mal
 covetous. I cannot think that they have been so unreasonable.
avare je ne puis croire déraisonnable.

IMPERFECT.

Could you doubt my being humane and generous? We wish
avez-vous pu douter humain = nous voudrions
 thou wert more careful. We told it to her in order that she might
soigneux nous le lui avons dit afin
 not be so arrogant. Prayers were offered to the gods that we might
on offrit des prières aux dieux pour
 be victorious. It would be better if you were not so stern. We
= il vaudrait mieux que sévère nous
 used all our efforts that they might be successful.
avons fait tous nos efforts afin que heureux

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have been more studious. That thou mightst have
 been more circumspect. That she might have been more attentive
circospect

to her duties. That we might have been less addicted to
dévoir m. pl. *livré* d

pleasure. That you might have been more assiduous and more
 art. m. pl. *assidu* *plus*

grateful. That they might have been less daring.
reconnaissant *hardi*

FIRST CONJUGATION.

114. GENERAL REMARKS ON THE ORTHOGRAPHY OF SOME
OF THE VERBS ENDING IN *er*.

The infinitive ends in *er* : as, *aimer*, to love ; *parler*, to speak.

I. In verbs ending in *-ger*, the *e* is retained in those tenses where *g* is followed by the vowels *a* or *o*, in order that the *g* may have the soft sound, in every tense and person, as in the infinitive : as, *mangeant*, *jugeant*, *je négligeai*.

II. In verbs ending in *-cer*, a cedilla is put under *c*, for the same reason, when followed by *a* or *o* : as, *suçant*, *plaçant*, *j'effaçai*.

III. In verbs ending in *-oyer* and *-uyer*, the *y* is changed into *i* before a mute *e* : as, *j'emploie*, *il essuie*, *j'appuierai*, *il nettoierait*.

IV. This practice is extended by some to verbs in *-ayer*, and *-eyer* : as, *il paie*, *j'essaierai*, *elle grassèye*, or *grassèie*.

V. In some few verbs ending in *-eler* and *-eter*, the *l* and *t* are doubled in those inflections, which receive an *e* mute, after these consonants : as, from *appeler*, *il appelle*, from *jeter*, *je jetterai*, etc.

VI. The first person singular of the present of the indicative changes *e* mute into acute *é*, in interrogative sentences ; as, *négligé-je ? aimé-je ?* This remark is also applied to some verbs of the second conjugation ending in *-vrir*, *-frir*, and *-tir* : as *offré-je ? cueillé-je ?*

There are but two irregular verbs in *er* : *aller*, *envoyer*, which will be found in their proper place.

115. PARADIGM, OR MODEL.

INFINITIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT.

parl-er *to speak*

COMPOUND TENSES.

PAST.

avoir parlé *to have s^d. det.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

parl-ant *speaking*

PAST.

	PAST.	} ayant parlé <i>having spoken</i>
parl-é m. -de f.	<i>spoken</i>	

REMARKS.

All the verbs of the first conjugation follow the terminations of the verb *parler*.

EXAMPLE.

	parl-er	aim-er	expliqu-er	avou-er
	parl-ant	annonç-ant	engag-eant	défray-ant
	parl-é	agré-é	décri-é	dédommag-é
je	par-le	dans-e	ignor-e	renvoi-e
tu	par-es	din-es	rejet-tes	renouvel-le ^s
il	par-e	chant-e	légai-e	grassèy-e
nous	par-ons	berç-ons	choy-ons	chang-cons
vous	par-es	régn-es	essuy-es	épel-es
ils	par-ent	caress-ent	ennu-ient	appel-lent

And so on through the whole verb.

It must be remembered, in writing the following exercises on the various conjugations,

1. That the adverb comes after the verb, in simple tenses, or between the auxiliary and the participle, in compound ones.

INDICATIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES

PRESENT.

je parl-e	<i>I speak, am speaking,</i> or <i>do speak</i>
tu parl-es	<i>thou speakest</i>
il parl-e	<i>he speaks</i>
nous parl-ons	<i>we speak</i>
vous parl-ez	<i>you speak</i>
ils parl-ent	<i>they speak</i>

COMPOUND TENSES.

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

j'ai parl-é	<i>I have</i>
tu as parl-é	<i>thou hast</i>
il a parl-é	<i>he has</i>
nous avons parl-é	<i>we have</i>
vous avez parl-é	<i>you have</i>
ils ont parl-é	<i>they have</i>

speak

II. That *du, de la, de l', des*, are always placed before any noun which is not taken in the general sense, and where *ever some* may be understood.

III. That *de* alone is used, after negations, without regard to the gender or the number, and also when the noun is preceded by an adjective.

IV. That personal pronouns, in the objective case are generally placed before the verb, except the imperative affirmative 1st pers. pl. 2nd pers. sing. & pl.

V. That the signs of the interrogation *do, did*, are not rendered in French; nor are they rendered when emphatically joined to the English verb thus: *as, I do love*.

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

I readily	give	that plaything	to your sister.	Do I prefer
volontiers	donner	joujou m.	f.	préferer
pleasure	to my duty?	Dost not thou incense	thy enemies?	He
art. m.	devoir m.	irriter	ennemi	
does not	give salutary advice	to his friends.	We do sincerely	love
	donne un = 2 avis m.l.		sincèrement	
peace and	tranquillity.	We do not neglect	(any thing) to please	
art. pais f. art.	= f.	négliger	rien pour plaire	

SIMPLE TENSES.

IMPERFECT.

je parl-ais	<i>I did speak. or was speaking</i>
tu parl-ais	<i>thou didst speak</i>
il parl-ait	<i>he did speak</i>
nous parl-ions	<i>we did speak</i>
vous parl-iez	<i>you did speak</i>
ils parl-aient	<i>they did speak</i>

COMPOUND TENSES.

PLUPERFECT.

j'avais parl-é	<i>I had</i>	} <i>pluperfect</i>
tu avais parl-é	<i>thou hadst</i>	
il avait parl-é	<i>he had</i>	
nous avions parl-é	<i>we had</i>	
vous aviez parl-é	<i>you had</i>	
ils avaient parl-é	<i>they had</i>	

you. Do you not admire the beauty of that landscape? Do not
admirer = f. *payage* m.

your parents comfort the afflicted? They (make use of) every
 ——— *consoler* *affligé* m. pl. *employer* *tous* art.

means to succeed.
moyen m. *pour réussir*

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have (given up) my favourite horse to my cousin. Hast thou
céder *favori* 2 *cheval* m. l. — m.

not exchanged watches with my sister? Has the tutor given
changer de montres *précepteur* *de*

fine engravings to his pupil? We have spoken (a long while) of
gravure f. pl. *élève* *long-temps*

your adventure. Have you not insisted too much on that point
aventure f. *insister* * *sur* — m

Have your aunts prepared their ball dresses?
tante *préparer* *de bal* 2 *habit* m. pl. l.

IMPERFECT.

I unceasingly thought of my misfortunes. Didst thou dread
sans cesse *penser à* *malheur* m. pl. *redouter*

his presence and firmness? He exhibited in his person all the
 ——— f. *pron. fermeté* f. *retracer* en f.

virtues of his ancestors. Did not that woman accuse her friend of
 f. *ancêtre* *accuser* *ami* f.

levity? We did not protect that bad man. You despised a vain
légèreté f. *protéger* *méchant* *mépriser* — 2.

erudition. Did the Romans disdain so weak an enemy?
 ——— f. l. *Romain* *dédaigner* *faible* 2 m. l.

SIMPLE TENSES.

COMPOUND TENSES

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>Je parl-ai</i>	<i>I spoke</i>
<i>tu parl-as</i>	<i>thou spokest</i>
<i>il parl-a</i>	<i>he spoke</i>
<i>nous parl-âmes</i>	<i>we spoke</i>
<i>vous parl-âtes</i>	<i>you spoke</i>
<i>ils parl-èrent</i>	<i>they spoke</i>

<i>j'eus parl-é</i>	<i>I had</i>	} <i>spoken</i>
<i>tu eus parl-é</i>	<i>thou hadst</i>	
<i>il eut parl-é</i>	<i>he had</i>	
<i>nous eûmes parl-é</i>	<i>we had</i>	
<i>vous eûtes parl-é</i>	<i>you had</i>	
<i>ils eurent parl-é</i>	<i>they had</i>	

REVERBENT

I had drained an unhealthy marsh. Hadst thou not married
dessécher *malsain* 2 *marais* m. 1 *épouser*
 a rich man, but unluckily without education? Had his father
malheureusement *sans* — f.
 rejected these advantageous offers? We had not long listened
rejeter *avantageux* 2 *offre* f. 1 *long-temps écouter*
 to the singing of the birds. Had you already studied
 * *chant* m. *oiseau* m. *déjà étudier* art.
 geography and history? Had not his friends procured him a
 = f. *art* = *procurer* 2 *lui*
 troop of cavalry?
compagnie f. *cavalerie*

There is a fourth preterit, called *preterit anterior indefinite*, which is used instead of the preterit anterior, when speaking of a time not entirely elapsed : as, *j'ai eu achevé mon ouvrage ce matin, cette semaine*, etc. and not *j'eus achevé*, as it is found in every conjugation. We shall insert it here : *j'ai eu parlé, tu as eu parlé, il a eu parlé, nous avons eu parlé, vous avez eu parlé, ils ont eu parlé*.

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I gave them peaches and flowers out of my garden. Thou
leur *pêches* f. pl. *fleurs* f. pl. *de mon jardin*
 forgottest an essential circumstance. Did not your cousin relate
oublier *essentiel* 2 *circonstance* f. *raconter*

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.	
FUTURE ABSOLUTE.		FUTURE ANTERIOR.	
je parl-erai	<i>I shall or will speak</i>	j'aurai parl-é	<i>I shall or will</i>
tu parl-eras	<i>thou shalt speak</i>	tu auras parl-é	<i>thou shalt</i>
il parl-era	<i>he shall speak</i>	il aura parl-é	<i>he shall</i>
nous parl-erons	<i>we shall speak</i>	nous aurons parl-é	<i>we shall</i>
vous parl-erez	<i>you shall speak</i>	vous aurez parl-é	<i>you shall</i>
ils parl-eront	<i>they shall speak</i>	ils auront parl-é	<i>they shall</i>

have spoken

that charming history with (a great deal) of grace? He lightly
 — *manif* = *f* avec beaucoup *légèrement*

judged of my intentions. Did we not show courage
juger * — *montrer de art. — m. pl.*

perseverance, and firmness. Did you not visit the grotto and
art. persévérance pr. art. fermeté f. visiter grotte f.

the grove? They did not generously forgive their enemies?
bois m. généreusement pardonner à

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

I had soon wasted my money, and exhausted my resources.
bientôt manger argent m. épuiser ressource f.

Hadst thou very soon reinforced thy party. Had not Alexander
 * *vite renforcer parti m. Alexandre*

soon surmounted all obstacles. We sat down to table as soon
surmonter tous art. = m. pl. nous nous mêmes à — aussitôt

as we had closed the shutters and drawn the curtains. Had you not
que fermer volets tirer rideau

quickly dined. They retired to their quarters when they
promptement diner ils rentrèrent aux casernes quand

had dispersed the mob.
disperser populace f.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

I shall relieve the poor. Wilt thou faithfully keep that secret?
soulager pauvre m. pl. fidèlement garder — m.

Will he consult enlightened judges? He will support you
consulter de art. éclairé 2 juge 1 appuyer

with all his credit. We shall not prefer pleasure to glory.
de — m. préférer art. m. art. f.

CONDITIONAL.

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT.

je parl- <i>crais</i>	<i>I should, would, or could speak</i>
tu parl- <i>erais</i>	<i>thou shouldst speak</i>
il parl- <i>erait</i>	<i>he should speak</i>
nous parl- <i>erions</i>	<i>we should speak</i>
vous parl- <i>eriez</i>	<i>you should speak</i>
ils parl- <i>eraient</i>	<i>they should speak</i>

COMPOUND TENSES.

PAST.

j'aurais parl- <i>é</i>	<i>I should, would, or could</i>	} <i>have spoken</i>
tu aurais parl- <i>é</i>	<i>thou shouldst</i>	
il aurait parl- <i>é</i>	<i>he should</i>	
nous aurions parl- <i>é</i>	<i>we should</i>	
vous auriez parl- <i>é</i>	<i>you should</i>	
ils auraient parl- <i>é</i>	<i>they should</i>	

J'eusse parlé, tu eusses parlé, il eût parlé, nous eussions parlé, vous eussiez parlé, ils eussent parlé, are also used for the conditional past. This remark holds good for every verb.

and riches to honour. With such conduct will you not
 art. pl. art. *par une telle conduite*
 grieve your father and mother? Will they not astonish their
affliger pron. *étonner*
 hearers?
auditeur m. pl.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall soon have finished this book. By thy submission wilt thou
achever m. *soumission f.*
 not have appeased his anger? The country will be happy when
apaiser *colère f.* *ce pays* *heureux*
 the king shall have triumphed over his enemies. We shall be better
trionpher de *plus*
 pleased with ourselves, when we shall have rewarded the merit of
content de nous *récompenser* *mérite m.*
 this good man. Will you not have flown to his assistance then?
de bien 2 1 *voler* *secours m.*
 Will not our servants have (brought back) our horses then?
domestique m. *ramené* *cheval*

CONDITIONAL PRESENT.

I would not plan such vain projects. Thou wouldst not avoid so
former — *projet m.* *éviter* 2

IMPERATIVE.

parl-e*	speak (thou)
qu'il parl-e	let him speak
parl-ons	let us speak
parl-es	speak (ye)
qu'ils parl-ent	let them speak

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT.

que	that
je parl-e	I may or can speak
tu parl-es	thou mayest speak
il parl-e	he may speak
nous parl-ions	we may speak
vous parl-iez	you may speak
ils parl-ent	they may speak

COMPOUND TENSES.

PRETERIT.

que	that
j'ai parl-é	I may or can
tu aies parl-é	thou mayest
il ait parl-é	he may
nous ayons parl-é	we may
vous ayez parl-é	you may
ils aient parl-é	they may

} have spoken

great a danger. Would not his attorney (clear up) that business?
 3. 1 4 *procureur débrouiller affaire f.*

We would (drive away) the importunate. Would you not discover
chasser importun m. pl. dévoiler

that atrocious plot? They would not unravel the clue of that
atroce 2 complot m. 1 démêler fil m.

intrigue.

— f.

FASST.

I should have liked hunting, fishing, and the country.
aimer art. chasse f. art. pêche f. campagne f.

Wouldst thou not have played? Would he not have bowed to the
*jouer saluer **

company? Would we gladly have praised his pride and
compagnie f. avec plaisir 2 louer 1 orgueil m.

incivility? You would have awakened every body. Would
pron. malhonnêteté f. éveiller tout le monde

those merchants have paid their debts?
négociant payer dette f. pl.

* The second person singular of the imperative of this conjugation, and likewise of some verbs of the second ending in *oir*, *frir*, *ir*, take an *s* after *a*, before the word *y* and *en*, as, *portes-en à ton frère*, carry some to thy brother; *offres-en à ta sœur*, offer some to thy sister; *cueilles-en aussi pour toi*, gather some alike for thyself; *apportes-y tes livres*, bring there thy books.

IMPERATIVE.

In all thy actions, consult the light of reason. Never
dans —f.pl. *consulter* *lumière* art. f.
 yield to the violence of thy passions. Let us love
se abandonner — f. —
 justice, peace, and virtue. Let us not cease to
 art. — f. art. f. art. f. *cesser de*
 work. Sacrifice your own interest to the public good. Do
travailler. *sacrifier* * *intérêt* m. pl. 2 *bien* 1
 not omit such useful and interesting details.
négliger de si utile 2 *intéressant* 3 art. — m. pl. 1.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Must I ever listen to a severe censor of my defects? I wish
faut il toujours 2 *écouter* 1 * —2 = m. l. *défaut* m. pl. *je souhaite*
 that thou mayest find real friends. He must study, in order
trouver de vrai *il faut qu'il travaille afin*
 that he may adorn his speeches with the graces of a pure diction.
parer discours de —2 — f. 1
 We have retired in order that she may remain alone and quiet.
nous nous sommes retirés afin *rester*
 Provided we do not so hastily condemn the world. It is not
pour que *légèrement condamner* *monde* m. *il n'est*
 well to sulk incessantly. We pay them well that they may
pas bien bouder sans cesse *nous les payons bien afin que*
 work more willingly.
travailler plus volontiers

PRETERIT.

It is not unlikely that I have spoken rashly. Do you not
il n'est pas improbable *imprudemment ne croyez-*
 believe that he has carried despair into the heart of his
vous pas *porter* art. *désespoir* m. *dans* *âme*
 friend? Can any one imagine that we should have blamed a conduct
pourra-t-on s'imaginer. *blâmer conduite* f.
 so prudent and so wise? I easily conceive your having exasperated
 — *sage.* *je conçois facilement que* *exaspérer*
 so petulant a disposition That they may not have (taken advantage
 —2 *caractère* m. 1 *profiter*
 of the circumstances.
circonstances f pl

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.	
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
que	that	que	that
je parl-asse	I might, could or would	j'eusse	I might, could or would
tu parl-asses	thou mightest	tu eusses	thou mightest
il parl-ât	he might	il eût	he might
nous parl-assions	we might	nous eussions	we might
vous parl-assiez	you might	vous eussiez	you might
ils parl-assent	they might	ils eussent	they might

IMPERFECT.

That I might not copy his example. That thou mightest (give up)
imiter *exemple m.* *abandonner*
 perfidious friends. That he might inhabit a hut
de — *de 2 art. l* *habiter chaumière f.*
 instead of a palace. That we might fall at the feet of an
au lieu *palais m.* *tomber à* *pied m.*
 illegitimate king. That you might respect the laws of your
illégitime 2 l *respecter* *loi f. pl.*
 country. That they might not speak at random.
pays m. *à tort et à travers*

PLUPERFECT.

That I might not have burnt that work. That thou mightest not
brûler *m.*
 have contemplated the beauties of the country. That he might have
contempler *=* *campagne*
 improved his natural abilities. That we might not have
perfectionner — *rel 2 moyens m. l*
 gained the victory. That you might have delighted the public.
remporter *= f.* *enchanter* *— m.*
 That they might have struck their enemies with fear.
frapper *de crainte*

116. SECOND CONJUGATION.

IN -IR.

This conjugation is divided into five branches, which are distinguished by the *participle present*, the *first person of the indicative*, and the *preterit*, thus :

1 punir	punissant	je punis	je punis
2 dormir	dormant	je dors	je dormis
3 ouvrir	ouvrant	j'ouvre	j'ouvris
4 venir	venant	je viens	je vins
5 courir	courant	je cours	je courus

The first branch contains upwards of two hundred and eighty verbs, the second contains seven radical verbs, and eleven derivatives.

As there are many verbs of the first branch, the infinitives of which end in *mir*, *tir*, *vir*, like those of the second branch, as may be seen from the following table, some confusion may arise in conjugating the one or the other, that is, the learner might be led, by analogy, to say *valentant*, *je valentais*, or *dormissant*, *je dormissais*. To avoid this confusion effectually, he will do well to learn the second branch by heart, especially as the few verbs of which it is composed, are very commonly used.

The third branch has four radical verbs, and five derivative.

The fourth branch has two radical verbs and twenty-three derivatives.

The fifth has one radical, and seven derivative verbs.

TABLE OF THE FIVE BRANCHES.

FIRST BRANCH.

ralent-ir	to slacken	asserv-ir	to enslave
retent-ir	to retain	âcr-ir	to punish
appesant-ir	to make heavy	assouv-ir	to glut
nant-ir	to pledge	appauvr-ir	to impoverish
renform-ir	to plaster	tern-ir	to tarnish
afferin-ir	to strengthen	vern-ir	to varnish
répart-ir	to distribute	garn-ir	to garnish
avert-ir	to inform	fourn-ir	to furnish
dessert-ir	to unset a stone	bén-ir	to bless
sort-ir	to obtain	henn-ir, etc.	to neigh
assort-ir	to match		
ressort-ir	{ to be under the jurisdiction of		

SECOND BRANCH.

			Derivatives.
dor-mir, je dors	to sleep	{	redor-mir to sleep again
men-tir, je mens,	to lie		endor-mir to fall asleep again
sen-tir, je sens,	to feel	{	se rendor-mir to fall asleep again
			démen-tir to give the lie
par-tir*, je pars,	to set out	{	consen-tir to consent
nor-tir*, je sors,	to get out		pressen-tir to foresee
ser-vir, je sers,	to serve	{	ressen-tir to resent
se repen-tir, je me repens,	to repent, has no derivative.		dépar-tir to divide
			repar-tir to set out again
			ressor-tir to go out again
			desser-vir to clear the table

THIRD BRANCH.

ou-vrir	to open	{	rou-vrir to open again
			entr'ou-vrir to half open
cou-vrir	to cover	{	décou-vrir to discover
off-rir	to offer		recon-vrir to cover again
			mésol-frir to underbid

souff-ir to suffer has no derivative.

* N.B.—Partir, repartir, sortir, and ressortir, of the second branch, take the auxiliary être. Venir, and its derivatives, are likewise conjugated with être, except provenir and subvenir, which take avoir; convenir also takes avoir, when it means to suit, but it takes être, when it signifies to agree. Avenir is a defective and obsolete verb, only used impersonally.

FOURTH BRANCH.

Roots. Derivatives.		Roots. Derivatives.	
VENIR to come	contre-venir to contravene	TENIR to hold	s'abs-tenir to abstain
	a-venir to happen		appar-tenir to belong
	con-venir* to agree		con-tenir to contain
	de-venir to become		dé-tenir to detain
	discon-venir to deny		entre-tenir to keep up
	inter-venir to intervene		main-tenir to maintain
	par-venir to attain		ob-tenir to obtain
	pré-venir to prevent		re-tenir to retain
	pro-venir* to proceed		sou-tenir to uphold
	re-venir { to come again		
	sur-venir to befall		
	sub-venir* to relieve		
	se sou-venir to remember		
	se rappor- venir } to recollect		

FIFTH BRANCH.

COURIR,	accourir, to run to	parcourir, to run over
COURANT,	concourir, to concur	recourir, to recur
JE COURS,	discourir, to discourse	secourir, to succour
to run	encourir, to incur	

117. PARADIGMS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

Branch 1.	Branch 2.	Branch 3.	Branch 4.	Branch 5.
to punish	to feel	to open	to hold	to run
pu-nir †	sen-tir †	ou-vrir †	t-enir †	cou-rir †

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

punishing	feeling	opening	holding	running
pu-nissant	sen-tant	ou-vrant	te-nant	cou-rant

PARTICIPLE PAST.

punished	felt	opened	held	ran
pu-ni	sen-ti	ou-vert	te-nu	cou-ru

* See Note to page 182.

† The italics show the letters which are altered from the infinitive, in the formation of the different persons.

<i>to have punished</i>	} <i>felt</i> | <i>opened</i> | <i>held</i> | <i>run</i>	} <i>sen-ti</i> | <i>ou-vert</i> | <i>t-enu</i> | <i>cou-ru</i>
<i>avoir pu-ni</i>		
<i>having punished</i>		
<i>ayant pu-ni</i>		

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>I punish</i>	<i>feel</i>	<i>open</i>	<i>hold</i>	<i>run</i>
<i>je pu-nis</i>	<i>sen-s</i>	<i>ou-vre</i>	<i>t-iens</i>	<i>coure</i>
<i>tu pu-nis</i>	<i>sen-s</i>	<i>ou-vres</i>	<i>t-iens</i>	<i>coures</i>
<i>il pu-nit</i>	<i>sen-t</i>	<i>ou vre</i>	<i>t-ient</i>	<i>coure</i>
<i>nous pu-nissons</i>	<i>sen-tous</i>	<i>ou-vrons</i>	<i>te-nons</i>	<i>cou-rons</i>
<i>vous pu-nissez</i>	<i>sen-tes</i>	<i>ou-vrez</i>	<i>te-nes</i>	<i>cou-rez</i>
<i>ils pu-nissent</i>	<i>sen-tent</i>	<i>ou-vrent</i>	<i>t-iennent</i>	<i>cou-rent</i>

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

<i>I have punished</i>	<i>felt</i>	<i>opened</i>	<i>held</i>	<i>run</i>
<i>j'ai pu-ni</i>	<i>sen-ti</i>	<i>ouv-ert</i>	<i>t-enu</i>	<i>cou-ru</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>I did punish</i>	<i>feel</i>	<i>open</i>	<i>hold</i>	<i>run</i>
<i>je pu-nissais *</i>	<i>sen-tais *</i>	<i>ouv-rais *</i>	<i>t-ennais</i>	<i>cou-rais *</i>

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>I choose this picture.</i>	<i>I feel all the unpleasantness of your</i>
<i>choisis tableau m.</i>	<i>désagrément m.</i>
<i>situation. Whence comest thou? Does he thus define that word?</i>	
<i>— d'où venir * ainsi définit mot m.</i>	
<i>Does his mother (go out) so early? Do we not (set off) for the</i>	
<i>* sortir tôt. * partir</i>	
<i>country? Do you not sympathise with his sorrows? Do you</i>	
<i>campagne f. * compatir à mal. m. pl. *</i>	
<i>not (tell a lie)? They (are finishing) at this moment. They</i>	
<i>mentir finit dans * art. — m.</i>	
<i>(act contrarily) to your orders.</i>	
<i>contredire ordre.</i>	

* The first person only of these tenses, which are invariably conjugated alike, will now be given, the scholar will easily supply the rest. These tenses are, the imperfect, *je punissais*, the future and conditional, *je punirai*, *je punirais*.

PLUPERFECT.

<i>I had punished</i> j'avais pu-ni	<i>felt</i> sen-ti	<i>opened</i> ouv-ert	<i>held</i> t-enu	<i>ran</i> cou-ru
--	-----------------------	--------------------------	----------------------	----------------------

PRÆTERIT DEFINITE.

<i>I punished</i> je pu-nis	<i>felt</i> sen-tis	<i>opened</i> ouv-rit	<i>held</i> t-înt	<i>ran</i> cou-ru
<i>tu pu-nis</i>	<i>sen-tis</i>	<i>ouv-rit</i>	<i>t-înt</i>	<i>cou-ru</i>
<i>il pu-nit</i>	<i>sen-tit</i>	<i>ouv-rit</i>	<i>t-înt</i>	<i>cou-ru</i>
<i>nous pu-nîmes</i>	<i>sen-tîmes</i>	<i>ouv-rîmes</i>	<i>t-îmes</i>	<i>cou-rûmes</i>
<i>vous pu-nîtes</i>	<i>sen-tîtes</i>	<i>ouv-rîtes</i>	<i>t-îtes</i>	<i>cou-rûtes</i>
<i>ils pu-nirent</i>	<i>sen-tirent</i>	<i>ouv-rirent</i>	<i>t-îrent</i>	<i>cou-rurent</i>

PRÆTERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>I had punished</i> j'eus pu-ni	<i>felt</i> sen-ti	<i>opened</i> ou-vert	<i>held</i> te-nu	<i>ran</i> cou-ru
--------------------------------------	-----------------------	--------------------------	----------------------	----------------------

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

<i>I shall punish</i> je pu-nirai	<i>feel</i> sen-tirai	<i>open</i> ou-vrirai	<i>hold</i> t-iendrai	<i>run</i> cour-rai
--------------------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------	------------------------

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>I shall have punished</i> j'aurai pu-ni	<i>felt</i> sen-ti	<i>opened</i> ouv-ert	<i>held</i> te-nu	<i>ran</i> cou-ru
---	-----------------------	--------------------------	----------------------	----------------------

IMPERFECT.

I fortified his soul against the dangers of seduction. I served
prévenir *contre* — *art.* — *f.* *servir*
 my friends warmly. Didst not thou amuse him with fair
avec chaleur * *entretenir* *de beaux*
 promises? He generally complied with the wishes of his family
promesse f. pl. *en général consentir à* *désir m. pl.* *famille f.*
 Were we sleeping then? Did you not belie your character?
dormir *démentir* *caractère m.*
 The children were running about the garden. We (used to) discourse
courir dans *discourir*
 on interesting subjects. My sister (used to come) every
intéressant 2 *sujet m. 1* *venir* *tous*
 morning to see me. Did you not go out when you pleased?
les matins *sortir* *voulliez*
 Did not the master punish you severely?
sévèrement

PRESENT.

I softened my father by my submission. I foresaw that terrible
fléchir soumission f. pressentir — 2
catastrophe. Thou didst not (come again) as thou hadst pro-
— f. 1. *revenir comme le ind-2 pro-*
mised. He did not succeed through thoughtlessness. Did not his
mis réussir par étourderie f.
daughter (set out again) immediately? Did not Alexander sully
reparaître sur-le-champ ternir
his glory by his pride? Did we (go out) of the city before him?
sortir ville f. avant lui
We never betrayed that important secret. Did not you agree to
trahir — 2 — m. 1 consentir de
(leave it to me?) They served their country with courage.
vous en rapporter à moi pays

FUTURE.

Shall I not obtain this of you? What will become of thee, if I
*obtenir cela de que devenir * tu*
forsake thee? Will he not embellish his country seat?
abandonner embellir maison de campagne f.
He will not sleep quietly. Shall we consent to that ridiculous
tranquillement 2
bargain? With time and patience, you (will
marché m. 1 avec de art. m. pr. art. f. venir
accomplish) your object. We shall not sully the splendour of
à bout de dessein m. ternir éclat m.
our life by an unworthy action. Will those men enrich their
indigne 2 — 1 enrichir
country by their industry? Will not our friends offer us their
pays industrie offrir
assistance? (Take off) your coat and you will run faster.
secours ôter courir

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

<i>I should punish</i>	<i>feel</i>	<i>open</i>	<i>hold</i>	<i>run</i>
<i>je pu-nirais</i>	<i>sen-tirais</i>	<i>ou-vrirais</i>	<i>t-ten-drais</i>	<i>cour-rais</i>

PAST.

<i>I should have punished</i>	<i>felt</i>	<i>opened</i>	<i>held</i>	<i>run</i>
<i>j'aurais pu-ni</i>	<i>sen-ti</i>	<i>ou-vrit</i>	<i>te-nus</i>	<i>cour-us</i>

IMPERATIVE.

<i>punish (thou)</i>	<i>feel</i>	<i>open</i>	<i>hold</i>	<i>run</i>
<i>pu-nis</i>	<i>sen-s</i>	<i>ou-vre</i>	<i>t-iens</i>	<i>cours</i>
<i>qu'il pu-nisse</i>	<i>sen-te</i>	<i>ou-vre</i>	<i>t-ienne</i>	<i>cou-re</i>
<i>pu-nissons</i>	<i>sen-lons</i>	<i>ou-vrons</i>	<i>te-nons</i>	<i>cou-rons</i>
<i>pu-nissez</i>	<i>sen-les</i>	<i>ou-vrez</i>	<i>te-nez</i>	<i>cou-rez</i>
<i>qu'ils pu-nissent</i>	<i>sen-tent</i>	<i>ou-vrent</i>	<i>t-iennent</i>	<i>cou-rent</i>

CONDITIONAL.

I would open the door and the window. I should still cherish
porte f. fenetre f. chérir
life. Wouldst not thou interfere in that affair? Would
art. intervenir f.
my brother (set off again) without taking leave of us? You would
repartir sans prendre congé
not succeed in injuring him in the public opinion. You would
parvenir à nuire lui 2 — f. 1.
never soften that hard hearted man. Could they foresee their
attendrir cœur de rocher pressentir
misfortune? Would men always (grow old) without growing
malheur art. vieillir sans devenir inf.-1
wiser, if they reflected on the shortness of life. I would
réfléchir ind.-2 sur brièveté f. art.
visit France and Italy if (I had the means.)
parcourir art. — art. = mes moyens le permettaient.

IMPERATIVE.

Shudder with horror and terror. Do not open the door
Frémir de = de effroi m. ouvrir
to any one in my absence. Let him not suffer such insults.
personne souffrir paroi insults f.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>that I may punish</i>	<i>feel</i>	<i>open</i>	<i>hold</i>	<i>run</i>
que je pu- <i>nisse</i>	sen- <i>te</i>	ou- <i>vre</i>	t- <i>ienne</i>	cou- <i>re</i>
que tu pu- <i>nisses</i>	sen- <i>tes</i>	ou- <i>vres</i>	t- <i>iennes</i>	cou- <i>res</i>
qu'il pu- <i>nît</i>	sen- <i>te</i>	ou- <i>vre</i>	t- <i>ienne</i>	cou- <i>re</i>
que nous pu- <i>nissions</i>	sen- <i>tions</i>	ou- <i>vrions</i>	te- <i>nions</i>	cou- <i>riens</i>
que vous pu- <i>nissiez</i>	sen- <i>tiez</i>	ou- <i>vriez</i>	te- <i>nies</i>	cou- <i>riez</i>
qu'ils pu- <i>nissent</i>	sen- <i>tent</i>	ou- <i>vrent</i>	t- <i>iennent</i>	cou- <i>rent</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>that I may have punished</i>	<i>felt</i>	<i>opened</i>	<i>held</i>	<i>ran</i>
que j'aie pu- <i>nî</i>	sen- <i>ti</i>	ou- <i>vert</i>	te- <i>nu</i>	cou- <i>ru</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>that I might punish</i>	<i>feel</i>	<i>open</i>	<i>hold</i>	<i>run</i>
que je pu- <i>nisse</i>	sen- <i>tisse</i>	ou- <i>vrisse</i>	t- <i>inse</i>	cou- <i>russe</i>
que tu pu- <i>nisses</i>	sen- <i>tisses</i>	ou- <i>vrisses</i>	t- <i>insses</i>	cou- <i>russes</i>
qu'il pu- <i>nît</i>	sen- <i>tit</i>	ou- <i>vrît</i>	t- <i>int</i>	cou- <i>rût</i>
que nous pu- <i>nissions</i>	sen- <i>tissions</i>	ou- <i>vrissions</i>	t- <i>inssions</i>	cou- <i>ruissions</i>
que vous pu- <i>nissiez</i>	sen- <i>tissiez</i>	ou- <i>vrissiez</i>	t- <i>inssiez</i>	cou- <i>ruissiez</i>
qu'ils pu- <i>nissent</i>	sen- <i>tissent</i>	ou- <i>vrissent</i>	t- <i>inssent</i>	cou- <i>ruissent</i>

Do not go out in the rain. Let us not run so fast. Let us
sortir à *courir*

feed the poor. Let us gain glory by our perseverance. I et
nourrir m pl. *obtenir* art. m f. —

us not divulge our secrets to every body. Do not maintain an
découvrir — *tout le monde.* *soutenir*

absurd an opinion.
 — de 2 — f. l.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

That I may never stain my reputation. (That I may be before-hand)
stain f. *prévenir*
 with such dangerous enemies. I will not have thee (go out) this
 A art. m — 2 l *veux* que tu *sortir*

PLUPERFECT.

<i>I might have punished</i> que j'aie puni	<i>felt</i> senti	<i>opened</i> ouvert	<i>held</i> tenu	<i>run</i> couru
--	----------------------	-------------------------	---------------------	---------------------

morning. That he may not obtain his ends. That we may become
matin m. parvenir à fin f. pl. devenir

just, honest, and virtuous. That you may punish the guilty. (We
honnête vertueux coupable pl. nous

all pray) that you may return covered with laurels. That
prions tous pour revenir couvert de laurier m. pl.

they may establish wise and just laws. That they may agree
établir de 2 3 art. 1 consentir

about the conditions. You must run faster, if you wish to
de ——— il faut que vous voulez le

overtake him. I sincerely wish he may long enjoy his good fortune
attraper désirer long-temps jouir de bonheur m.

IMPERFECT.

That I might stun the whole neighbourhood. That I might not
étourdir 2 tout l. voisinage m.

(bring about) my designs. That he might not bear his disgrace
venir à bout de projet m. pl. soutenir — f.

with firmness. That we might disobey the laws. That we might
fermé désobéir à

belong to that great king. That you might renounce your errors
appartenir revenir de =

and prejudices. That they might weaken the force of their
pr. pron. préjugé affaiblir t.

reasons. That they might hold the most absurd ideas.
raisonnement tenir à 2 art. 1

118. THIRD CONJUGATION.

IN -OIR.

PARADIGM.

This conjugation contains only seven verbs, which

are

perc-evoir	to receive	déc-evoir	to deceive
aperc-evoir	to perceive	d-evoir	to owe
conc-evoir	to conceive	red-evoir	to owe again

and *recevoir*, which serves as a paradigm. *Percevoir* is a law term, and *apercevoir* is often *reflected*.

In all tenses in which *c* comes before *o* or *u*, it takes the cedilla, in order that it may retain its soft sound.

INFINITIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES	
PRESENT.		PAST.	
re-c <u>ei</u> voir	to receive	avoir re-ç <u>u</u>	to have received

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.		}	PAST.	
re-ç <u>ev</u> ant	receiving		ayant re-ç <u>u</u>	having received
re-ç <u>u</u>	received			

INDICATIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT.

<i>I receive</i>	<i>we receive</i>
<i>je re-çois</i>	<i>nous re-cevons</i>
<i>tu re-çois</i>	<i>vous re-cevez</i>
<i>il re-çoit</i>	<i>ils re-çoivent</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>I did receive</i>	<i>we did receive</i>
<i>je rec-vois</i>	<i>nous rec-visions</i>

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>I received</i>	<i>we received</i>
<i>je re-çus</i>	<i>nous reç-ûmes</i>
<i>tu re-çus</i>	<i>vous reç-ûtes</i>
<i>il re-çut</i>	<i>ils reç-urent</i>

COMPOUND TENSES.

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

<i>j'ai re-çu</i>	<i>I have received</i>
<i>tu as etc.</i>	<i>thou, etc.</i>

PLUSQUAMPERFECT.

<i>j'avais reç-u</i>	<i>I had received</i>
----------------------	-----------------------

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>j'eus reç-u</i>	<i>I had received</i>
<i>tu eus etc.</i>	<i>thou etc.</i>

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>I see</i>	<i>the summit of the Alps</i>	<i>covered with perpetual</i>
<i>apercevoir</i>	<i>sommet</i>	<i>Alpes f. pl. de éternel 2</i>
<i>snow.</i>	<i>What gratitude</i>	<i>dost thou not owe to her who (has</i>
<i>neige f. pl. 1</i>	<i>reconnaissance f.</i>	<i>devoir celle 1</i>
<i>discharged)</i>	<i>(the duty of a mother)</i>	<i>(to thee) (in thy infancy?)</i>
<i>remplir 3</i>	<i>5</i>	<i>près de 4 2</i>
<i>Does not your pupil understand that rule</i>	<i>which is so simple?</i>	<i>We</i>
<i>écolier concevoir</i>	<i>règle f. * *</i>	
<i>do not owe a large sum.</i>	<i>Do you not perceive the snare?</i>	<i>Ought</i>
<i>devoir gros somme f.</i>	<i>piège m. devoir 5</i>	
<i>firm and courageous men to yield to</i>	<i>circumstances?</i>	
<i>des 1 3 = 4 2 * céder</i>	<i>art. circonstance</i>	

IMPERFECT.

<i>I received a letter from her</i>	<i>daily.</i>	<i>Did he see the castle</i>
<i>tous les jours</i>	<i>apercevoir</i>	<i>château</i>
<i>from such a distance?</i>	<i>We did not receive our income</i>	
<i>si * loin</i>	<i>percevoir</i>	<i>revenu m. pl.</i>
<i>regularly.</i>	<i>Did you not receive great attentions?</i>	<i>Did those</i>
<i>régulièrement</i>	<i>de honnêteté f. pl. *</i>	
<i>tyrants conceive all the blackness of their crimes?</i>		
<i>tyrans concevoir</i>	<i>noirceur f.</i>	

SIMPLE TENSES.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

I shall receive we shall receive
je re-cevrai nous rec-eurons

COMPOUND TENSES

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

j'aurai re-çu I shall have received

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

I should receive we should receive
je re-cevrais nous rec-eurions

PAST.

j'aurais re-çu I should have re-
tu, etc. ceived

IMPERATIVE

re-çois receive thou
qu'il re-çoive let him receive

re-cevons let us receive
re-ceven receive ye
qu'ils re-çoivent let them receive

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I perceived him walking by moon-light. He saw him
le qui se promenait à art. clair de la lune m.

in the middle of the river struggling for his life. Did we not
au milieu se débattant contre la mort

immediately perceive the snare? You did not receive his letters in
lettres à

time. Did the ministers conceive the depth of his plan?
temps —tre profondeur f. — m.

FUTURE

Shall I receive any letters to-day? We shall soon see
de art. aujourd'hui apercevoir

the spire of the village. Go and see him; I am sure he will
clocher m. — m. aller à le voir que

receive you well. Will they never understand so simple a thing?
concevoir — 2 chose 1

CONDITIONAL.

I would receive them more politely. Should a wise man thus
devoir 2 1 ainsi 2

(give himself up) to despair? You would easily perceive so
s'abandonner 1 art. désespoir m.

gross a trick. Would not my sisters receive their friend with
grossier 2 russ f. l. f.

tenderness?
tendresse f.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

IN -RE.

119. This conjugation has five branches.

The first ends in	{	-andre	as	répandre	to spill
		-endre	..	vendre	to sell
		-ondre	..	répondre	to answer
		-erdre	..	perdre	to lose
		-ardre	..	mordre	to bite
the second ends in	{	-aire	..	plaire	to please
			..	taire	to keep secret
the third ends in	{	-aître	..	repâître	to feed
		-eître	..	connaître	to know
the fourth ends in	{	-eître	..	instruire	to instruct
			..	contraindre	to constrain
the fifth ends in	{	-aindre	..	peindre	to paint
		-eindre	..	joindre	to join
		-aindre	..		

IMPERFECT.

I did not believe that he perceived the secret designs of the
je ne croyais pas *caché 2 dessein 1*

enemy's general. We were obliged to receive every body with
 2 * 1 *il fallait que vous*

civility. It was likely that you might not perceive the
bonneteté *il était probable*

depth of this book. That they might not perceive the
profondeur f.

masts of the ship.
mât m. p., *vaisseau m.*

120. PARADIGMS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

Branch 1. <i>to render</i>	Branch 2. <i>to please</i>	Branch 3. <i>to appear</i>	Branch 4. <i>to reduce</i>	Branch 5. <i>to join</i>
<i>rend-re</i>	<i>pl-âre</i>	<i>pa-raître</i>	<i>rédui-re</i>	<i>join-dre</i>

PART. (To have).

<i>rendered</i> <i>avoir ren-dû</i>	<i>pleased</i> — <i>pl-u</i>	<i>appeared</i> — <i>pa-rû</i>	<i>reduced</i> — <i>ré-duit</i>	<i>joined</i> — <i>join</i>
--	---------------------------------	-----------------------------------	------------------------------------	--------------------------------

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

<i>rendering</i> <i>ren-dant</i>	<i>pleasing</i> <i>plai-sant</i>	<i>appearing</i> <i>pa-raissant</i>	<i>reducing</i> <i>rédui-sant</i>	<i>joining</i> <i>join-gnant</i>
-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	--	--------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

PARTICIPLE PAST.

<i>rendered</i> <i>ren-dû</i>	<i>pleased</i> <i>pl-u</i>	<i>appeared</i> <i>pa-rû</i>	<i>reduced</i> <i>réduit</i>	<i>joined</i> <i>join</i>
----------------------------------	-------------------------------	---------------------------------	---------------------------------	------------------------------

COMP. PAST PARTICIPLE.

<i>Avoir rendu</i> <i>Ayant rendu</i>	} <i>pl-u</i>	| <i>pa-rû</i>	| <i>duit</i>	| <i>join</i>
--	---------------	--------------	-------------	-------------

INDICATIVE

PRESENT.

<i>I render</i>	<i>please</i>	<i>appear</i>	<i>reduce</i>	<i>join</i>
<i>je rends</i>	<i>pl-ais</i>	<i>pa-raïs</i>	<i>réduis</i>	<i>join</i>
<i>tu rends</i>	<i>pl-ais</i>	<i>pa-raïs</i>	<i>réduis</i>	<i>join</i>
<i>il rend</i>	<i>pl-ait</i>	<i>pa-raît</i>	<i>réduit</i>	<i>join</i>
<i>nous ren-dons</i>	<i>plai-sons</i>	<i>pa-raïssons</i>	<i>rédui-sons</i>	<i>join-gnons</i>
<i>vous ren-des</i>	<i>plai-tes</i>	<i>pa-raïssez</i>	<i>rédui-tes</i>	<i>join-gnez</i>
<i>ils ren-dent</i>	<i>plai-sent</i>	<i>pa-raïssent</i>	<i>rédui-sent</i>	<i>join-gnent</i>

PRETERIT INDEFINITE. (*I have*).

<i>rendered</i> <i>j'ai ren-dû</i>	<i>pleased</i> — <i>pl-u</i>	<i>appeared</i> — <i>pa-rû</i>	<i>reduced</i> — <i>réduit</i>	<i>joined</i> — <i>join</i>
---------------------------------------	---------------------------------	-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------	--------------------------------

IMPERFECT.

Branch 1.	Branch 2.	Branch 3.	Branch 4.	Branch 5.
<i>I did render</i> je ren-dais	<i>please</i> plai-sais	<i>appear</i> pa-raissais	<i>reduce</i> rédui-sais	<i>join</i> joi-guais

PLUPERFECT.

<i>I had rendered</i> j'avais ren-du	<i>pleased</i> —plu	<i>appeared</i> —paru	<i>reduced</i> —réduit	<i>joined</i> —joint
---	------------------------	--------------------------	---------------------------	-------------------------

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

I know his fiery and impetuous temper. I expect his
connaître bouillant 2 = 3 caractère m. 1 attendre
 return with impatience. Does he fear death? Does not
retour avec impatience. craindre art. f.
 virtue please every body? We do not compel you to adopt this
à contraindre de adopter
 opinion. We suppress for the present several interesting circum-
— f. taire — m. intéressante 2
 stances. Do you not confound these notions (with one another?)
f. 1 confondre l'une avec l'autre
 You captivate your hearers by your modest exterior. Do your
séduire auditeurs m. pl. 2 = m. 1
 sons acknowledge their errors? Do not those workmen waste their
reconnaître = ouvrier perdre
 time about trifles?
à bagatelle pl.

IMPERFECT.

I did not displease by my conduct. I pitied those sad victims
déplaire plaire triste victime f. pl.
 of the revolution. Did not this dog bite? She pleased every
— f. chien mordre plaire à tout
 body. He never seemed satisfied. Did he not beat every body
le monde paraître content battre
 at draughts? We did not hear well because we were too far.
aux dames entendre éloigné
 She was painting. His presence diffused joy wherever he
peindre répandre par tout où
 appeared. They led us into error.
se montrait induire en

FUTURE.

Branch 1.	Branch 2.	Branch 3.	Branch 4.	Branch 5.
<i>I rendered</i>	<i>pleased</i>	<i>appeared</i>	<i>reduced</i>	<i>joined</i>
je ren-dis	plu	pa-rus	rédui-sis	joï-gnis
tu ren-dis	plu	pa-rus	rédui-sis	joï-gnis
il ren-dit	plut	pa-rut	rédui-sit	joï-gnit
nous ren-dîmes	plâmes	pa-râmes	rédui-sîmes	joï-gnîmes
vous ren-dîtes	plâtes	pa-râtes	rédui-sîtes	joï-gnîtes
ils ren-dirent	plurent	pa-rurent	rédui-sirent	joï-gnirent

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>I had rendered</i>	<i>pleased</i>	<i>appeared</i>	<i>reduced</i>	<i>joined</i>
j'eus ren-dû	plu	pa-rû	rédui-t	joïnt

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

<i>I shall render</i>	<i>please</i>	<i>appear</i>	<i>reduce</i>	<i>join</i>
je rend-rai	plai-rai	pa-rai-trai	rédui-rai	joïn-drai

FUTURE ANTERIOR. (*I shall have*)

<i>rendered</i>	<i>pleased</i>	<i>appeared</i>	<i>reduced</i>	<i>joined</i>
j'aurai ren-dû	plu	pa-rû	rédui-t	joïnt

PRETERIT.

I sold every thing I had before my departure. She compelled
vendre tout ce que ind. 2. *contraindre*
 him to speak the truth. They started before us, but we joined
de dire *partir* *rejoindre*
 them at Paris where they (waited for) us. After giving him a
attendre ind. 2. *donner inf. 2*
 good dinner, we took him back to his cottage in our own car-
reconduire * *chaumière f.*
 rriage. They put out all the candles which alarmed us a little.
éteindre lumières f. ce qui donner ind. 3
 My dog ran after him and bit him in the leg.
courir ind. 3. *mordre à*

FUTURE.

Shall I hear him when he calls? I shall not conceal
entendre appeler, ind. 7 *cacher 2*
 my mind from you. Will not the general compel the offi-
façon de penser 3 * *1* *contraindre offi-*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Branch 1.	Branch 2.	Branch 3.	Branch 4.	Branch 5.
<i>I should render</i>	<i>please</i>	<i>appear</i>	<i>reduce</i>	<i>join</i>
je ren-drais	pl-ai-rai	pa-rai-trais	ré-duit-rai	join-drais

PAST. (*I should have*).

<i>rendered</i>	<i>pleased</i>	<i>appeared</i>	<i>reduced</i>	<i>joined</i>
j'aurais ren-du	—plu	—pa-ru	—ré-duit	—join-t

IMPERATIVE.

<i>render (thou)</i>	<i>please</i>	<i>appear</i>	<i>reduce</i>	<i>join</i>
ren-de	plais	pa-rai	réduis	joins
qu'il ren-de	plaise	pa-raisse	réduise	join-gue
ren-dons	plai-sons	pa-raissions	rédui-sons	join-gnons
ren-des	plai-sses	pa-raissent	rédui-sses	join-gnes
qu'ils ren-dent	plai-sent	pa-raissent	rédui-sent	join-gnent

cers to join their respective corps? Will not a thought,
cier à rejoindre = f.

true, grand, and well expressed, please? (We shall make our
asprimé, plaire parat-

appearance) on this great stage next month. Shall
tre sur théâtre m. art. prochain 2 mois m. 1

we describe all the horror of this terrible night? Will you
dépeindre — 2 nuit f. 1

not re-model a work so full of errors? Will you know your
refondre pleins erreurs f. reconnaître

things again? They will assiduously correspond with their
effet m. pl. assidûment correspondre

friends.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Should I, by these means, gain the desired end? I
moyen m. s. atteindre à désiré 2 but m. 1

would (carry on) the undertaking with success. Would his mother
conduire entreprise f.

wait with (so much) patience? Could sincerity displease a
attendre tant de art. = f. déplaire à

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT. (*That I may*).

Branch 1.	Branch 2.	Branch 3.	Branch 4.	Branch 5.
<i>render</i>	<i>please</i>	<i>appear</i>	<i>reduce</i>	<i>join</i>
<i>que je ren-de</i>	<i>plaise</i>	<i>pa-raisse</i>	<i>rédui-se</i>	<i>joï-gue</i>
<i>tu ren-des</i>	<i>plaises</i>	<i>pa-raisses</i>	<i>rédui-ses</i>	<i>joï-gues</i>
<i>il ren-de</i>	<i>plaise</i>	<i>pa-raisse</i>	<i>rédui-se</i>	<i>joï-gue</i>
<i>nous ren-dions</i>	<i>plaisions</i>	<i>pa-raissions</i>	<i>rédui-sions</i>	<i>joï-guions</i>
<i>vous ren-diez</i>	<i>plaisiez</i>	<i>pa-raissiez</i>	<i>rédui-siez</i>	<i>joï-guiez</i>
<i>ils ren-dent</i>	<i>plaisent</i>	<i>pa-raissent</i>	<i>rédui-sent</i>	<i>joï-guent</i>

man (of sense)? Should we sell our liberty? Should we
sensé vendre

build our house upon that plan? Would you oblige
construire — m astreindre de art.

young people to live as you do? Would you drive your child
*gens pl. vivre comme * réduire*

to despair? They should fear public censure. Would
art. désespér m. craindre 2 art. f. 1

my protectors introduce an unknown person into the world?
*= introduire inconnu m. **

IMPERATIVE.

Depict in thy idyl all the charms of a rural life. Do
peindre idylle douceur f. champêtre 2 1

not wait for me, for it is uncertain whether I shall
*attendre * douteux que re-*

return or not. Know the powers of thy mind before thou
*savoir subj.-1 form *. avant de **

write. Let us unite prudence with courage. Let us not
écrire joindre art. f. à art. m.

descend to useless particulars. Do not appear either too
descendre dans des 2 —larité 1 paraitre ni

cheerful or too grave. Ye sovereigns make the people happy
*gai ni sérieux * souverain pl. rendre*

Sweet illusions, vain phantoms, vanish. (Keep to yourself
— f. — fantôme m. disparaitre taire

such truths as may offend.
certain f. pl. qui peussent offenser

PRETERIT. (*That I may have*).

<i>rendered</i> que j'ai ren-du	<i>pleased</i> —plu	<i>appeared</i> —pa-ra	<i>reduced</i> —réduit	<i>joined</i> —joi-ut
------------------------------------	------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------	--------------------------

IMPERFECT. (*That I might*).

<i>render</i> que je ren-disse	<i>please</i> pluss	<i>appear</i> pa-russ	<i>reduce</i> rédui-sses	<i>join</i> joi-gniss
tu ren-disse	plusses	pa-russes	rédui-sses	joi-gnusses
il ren-dît	plût	pa-rât	rédui-ût	joi-gnût
nous ren-dissions	plussions	pa-russions	rédui-ussions	joi-gnussions
vous ren-dissiez	plussiez	pa-russiez	rédui-ussiez	joi-gnussiez
ils ren-dissent	plussent	pa-russent	rédui-ussent	joi-gnussent

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

That I may fear that host of enemies. That I should please
craindre *naître f.* à
every body, is impossible. That he may not reply to such
ce *répondre* *un et 2*
absurd criticism. That he may lead his pupil step by step
— *f. critique f. l* *conduire élève par à*
to a perfect knowledge of the art of speaking and writing. That
connaissance f. *inf. l* *pr. inf-1*
we may confound the arts with the sciences. That you may have
confondre *tendre à*
the same end (in view). That they may not depend on any body.
*être m. * ** *dépendre de personne*
That they may not increase our sufferings.
accroître peines

IMPERFECT.

He did not allow us to answer him. They were obliged
Il ne voulait pas que *répondre lui* *Il fallait que*
to appear in full uniform at dinner. He stayed a fort-
grande —forme m. *attendre ind-3 * guises*
night in Paris, (in order) that we might rejoin him. That we
j'irais à afin *rejoindre*

PLUPERFECT. (*that I might have*).

rendered		pleased	appeared	reduced	joined
que j'eusse ren-dre	plu		par-u	réduit	joint

might take him to court. That you might hear their
conduire art. cou f. *entendre*

justification. That you might know your real friends. That they
savoir

might (wait for) the opinion of sensible persons.
attendre art. sensé 2 f. pl. 1

121. *Pronominal or reflected verbs* are, as it has already been said, conjugated with two pronouns, one the subject and the other the object. In their compound tenses the participle past agrees in gender and number with the subject.*

EXAMPLES.

<i>je me blesse</i>	<i>I hurt myself</i>
<i>nous nous trompons</i>	<i>we deceive ourselves</i>
<i>elle s'est tuée</i>	<i>she has killed herself</i>

Almost all active verbs may be made reflected, since a person may hurt and deceive himself in the same manner that he hurts or deceives others. This point is common to both languages, but there are two things in which they differ with regard to reflected verbs. First, the compound tenses are conjugated with *to have*, in English, and with *être* in French: *I have hurt myself, je me suis blessé*. Secondly, there are a good many verbs which are used in the reflected form in French which are *neuter* in English; such as *je m'arrête, je me dépêche*,

* There is one exception which will be found noticed in the chapter on the *Participle Past*

I stop, I make haste. As these latter are very frequently used in conversation, we subjoin a list of them.

122. LIST OF COMMON REFLECTED VERBS.

s'abstenir	to abstain	s'intéresser	to feel an interest
s'abonner	to subscribe	se lever	to get up
s'apercevoir	to perceive	se méfier	to distrust
s'asseoir	to sit down	se moquer	{ to laugh at not to care for
se coucher	to lie down	se nommer	to be named
se dépêcher	to make haste	s'occuper	to be busy about
se défaire	to get rid	se promener	to walk
se désespérer	to despair	se plaindre	to complain
se dispenser	to dispense with	se plaire	to take pleasure
s'entretenir	to converse	se porter	to be (ill or well)
s'endormir	to fall asleep	se rappeler	to remember
s'en aller	to go away	se réjouir	to rejoice
s'efforcer	to endeavour	se rendre	to go, to repair to
s'empêcher	to forbear	se repentir	to repent
s'emporter	to grow warm	se souvenir	to remember
s'enfuir	to run away	se rire	{ to laugh at not to care for
s'enquérir	to enquire	se retourner	to turn round
s'étonner	to feel surprised	se reposer	to rest
s'éveiller	to wake	se réveiller	to wake
s'évanouir	to faint	se savoir gré	to be glad
s'enquérir	to enquire	se servir	to make use of
se fâcher	to be angry	se taire	to be silent
se fier	to trust	se tromper	{ to mistake or be mis- taken
se garder	to beware	se trouver	to be
s'habiller	to dress	se vanter	to boast
s'habituer	to get used		
se hâter	to hasten		
s'imaginer	to fancy		

123. PARADIGM OF A REFLECTED VERB.

INFINITIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT.

se repentir *to repent*

PRESENT.

repentant *repenting*

COMPOUND TENSES.

PAST.

s'être { repenti
ou
repentie } *to have repented*

PARTICIPLES.

PAST.

repenti, m.
repentie, f.
repentis, m.
repenties, f. } *repented*

PART.

s'étant { repenti,
or
repentie } *having re-
pented*

INDICATIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT.

*I repent.*je me repens
tu te repens
il, or elle se repent
nous nous repentons
vous vous repentez
ils, or elles se repentent

IMPERFECT.

*I did repent.*je me repentai
tu te repentai
il, or elle se repentait
nous nous repentions
vous vous repentiez
ils, or elles se repentaient

COMPOUND TENSES.

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

*I have repented.*je me suis
tu t'es
il, or elle s'est
nous nous sommes
vous vous êtes
ils, or elles se sont } repenti
or
repentie
repentis
or
repenties

PLUPERFECT.

*I had repented.*je m'étais
tu t'étais
il, or elle s'était
nous nous étions
vous vous étiez
ils, or elles s'étaient } repenti
or
repentie
repentis
or
repenties

124. INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE FORMS.

<i>Je ne me repens pas</i>	<i>I do not repent?</i>
<i>te repens-tu ?</i>	<i>dost thou repent ?</i>
<i>ne nous repentons-nous pas ?</i>	<i>do we not repent ?</i>
<i>Je ne me suis pas repenti</i>	<i>I have not repented</i>
<i>ne se sont-ils pas repentis ?</i>	<i>have they repented ?</i>
<i>ne se sont-elles pas repenties ?</i>	<i>have they not repented ?</i>
<i>ma sœur se repent</i>	<i>my sister repents</i>
<i>ma sœur ne se repent-elle pas ?</i>	<i>does not my sister repent ?</i>
<i>vos frères se sont-ils repentis ?</i>	<i>have your brothers repented ?</i>

INDICATIVE

PRESENT.

<i>I often</i>	<i>walk</i>	<i>by</i>	<i>moonlight.</i>	<i>Dost thou not</i>
<i>souvent</i>	<i>se promener†</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>art. clair de la lune m.</i>	<i>se</i>
<i>deceive thyself?</i>	<i>He (is never happy)</i>	<i>but (when he is doing)</i>		
<i>tromper</i>	<i>se se plaît</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>à faire</i>	
<i>wrong. I complain of his bad conduct.</i>	<i>(Do we</i>			
<i>de art. mal m.</i>	<i>se plaindre</i>	<i>mauvais</i>	<i>conduite f.</i>	
<i>not take too much care of ourselves?)</i>	<i>How do you do?</i>	<i>They</i>		
<i>s'écouter</i>	<i>trop</i>	<i>se porter</i>	<i>se</i>	
<i>Intend to travel in the spring.</i>				
<i>proposer de voyager à</i>	<i>printemps m.</i>			

PRESENT INDEFINITE.

<i>I (have been) tolerably well for some time.</i>	<i>Didst thou not</i>
<i>se porter</i>	<i>assez bien depuis</i>
<i>lose thyself in the wood? (It is said) that he killed himself</i>	
<i>s'égayer</i>	<i>on dit se tuer</i>
<i>(out of) despair. Have we flattered ourselves without foundation?</i>	
<i>de</i>	<i>se flatter</i>
	<i>fondement</i>
<i>Ladies, have you walked (this morning)?</i>	<i>Did those ladies re-</i>
<i>Mesdames</i>	<i>promener</i>
	<i>matin m.</i>
	<i>dame se</i>

† It need hardly be remarked that reflected verbs do not belong to one conjugation alone, but to all. The learner must, therefore, be careful to ascertain to which of them those which come under his consideration belong. *Se promener* is of the first, *se plaindre* is of the fourth and fifth branch; and *se plaît* is fourth conjugation, second branch.

SIMPLE TENSES.

COMPOUND TENSES.

PRÆTERIT DEFINITE.

PRÆTERIT ANTERIOR.

*I repented.**I had repented.*

je	me	repentis
tu	te	repentis
il or elle	se	repentit
nous	nous	repentîmes
vous	vous	repentîtes
ils or elles	se	repentirent

je	me	fus	} repentis,
tu	te	fus	
il or elle	se	fut	} or
nous	nous	fûmes	
vous	vous	fûtes	} repentis
ils or elles	se	furent	

cognise themselves in this portrait? You have mistaken the
reconnaître à — m. se tromper de
 house We have made as much haste as we could. Has he stopped
se dépêcher autant que possible s'arrêter
 'on the) road? I have fallen asleep.
en s'endormir

IMPERFECT.

I troubled myself about the affairs of others. You were always
se tourmenter pour autrui. se
 complaining of being too warm, and now you are too cold. Were
plaindre d'avoir trop chaud avoir trop froid
 you not comfortable in his house? My mother did not like the
se trouver bien se plaire à
 country, because we went to bed so early. He was a very suspicious
se coucher de si bonne heure très soupçonneux
 man, who never trusted any body. Did you fancy that he would
** il ne se fier à personne s'imaginer*
 return early? Did you not laugh at us?
revenir cond-1 de si bonne heure se moquer de

PLUPERFECT.

I had trusted myself to (very uncertain) guides. Didst thou not
se livrer peu sûr 2 des m. pl. 1 se
 confide too inconsiderately in this man? Had that officer rushed
confier légèrement à — crier se précipiter
 rashly into this danger? We had condemned ourselves. Had
impétueusement dans — m. se condamner nous-mêmes

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

I shall repent.

je	me	repentirai
tu	te	repentiras
il or elle	se	repentira
nous	nous	repentirons
vous	vous	repentirez
ils or elles	se	repentiront

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall have repented.

je	me	serai	}	repenti
tu	te	seras		or
il or elle	se	sera	}	repentie
nous	nous	serons		repentis
vous	vous	serrez	}	or
ils or elles	se	seront		repenties

you not been engaged with trifles? Had those travellers
s'occuper de bagatelle f. pl. voyageurs se
 (gone out) of the right way?
détourner d'old chemin m.

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I repented too late of having taken such a step. Were you
tard inf-2 fait 2 1 démarche f.
 not well amused yesterday evening? He suffered
s'amuser hier au ne se trouver pas bien
 for his imprudence. We met in the street, but we did not
de ——— f. se rencontrer rue
 speak. Did not those rash children go too near the
se parler téméraire 2 1 s'approcher trop de
 river? They rejoiced when they heard of his great success.
ind-3 se réjouir apprendre succès m. pl.

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

(As soon as) I had discovered that they sought - to deceive
Dès que s'apercevoir on chercher ind-2 à tromper
 me, I was on my guard. What didst thou, when thou
se tenir ind-3 garde f. pl. fis ind-3 quand
 didst see thyself thus forsaken? When she recollected all the
se trouver ainsi abandonné se souvenir de
 circumstances, she was quite ashamed. When we had rejoiced
f. ind-3 toute honteux se réjouir
 sufficiently, we parted. When you had amused yourself suffi-
assez se séparer ind-3 s'amuser
 ciently at his expence, did you not leave him alone?
à dépens m. pl. laisser ind-3 tranquille

When they had walked enough, they (sat down) at the foot of a
se promener *s'assirent à*
 tree.

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

I will yield, (if they convince me). Wilt thou remember the
se rendre si on me convainc *se souvenir de*
 engagement that thou makest? What wilt not he reproach himself
prendre *se reprocher à lui-même*
 for)? We shall not forget ourselves (so far as) to (be wanting)
** s'oublier* *jusque* *manquer*
 in respect towards him. Will you employ the means I (point
de *lui* *se servir de* *que* *indico*
 out) to you? Will not these flowers fade?
quer *f.* *se flétrir*

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Shall I have betrayed myself? Wilt thou not have degraded
se trahir *moi-même* *s'avilir*
 thyself in his eyes? He will have (been proud) of this trifling ad-
à *s'enorgueillir* *faible*
 vantage. We shall have fatigued ourselves (to no purpose). In
avantage m. *se fatiguer* *inutilement* *à*
 the end, you will have been undeceived. Will your children have
se désabuser
 (loved each other) too much?
s'entr'aimer

CONDITIONAL.

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT.

I should repent.

je	me	repentirais
tu	te	repentirais
il or elle	se	repentirait
nous	nous	repentirions
vous	vous	repentiriez
ils or elles	se	repentiraient

COMPOUND TENSES.

PAST.

I should have repented

je	me	serais	}	repenti
tu	te	serais		or
il or elle	se	serait	}	repentis
nous	nous	serions		repentis
vous	vous	seriez	}	or
ils or elles	se	seraient		repenties

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Should I suffer, myself to (be drawn) into the
se laisser * *entraîner*
 party of the rebels? Wouldst thou be (so easily)
parti m. * *de si peu de chose* 2
 frightened? Would not the nation submit to so just a
s'effrayer 1 — *f se soumettre* 3 4 1
 law? We should not like to see the triumph of guilt.
 2 *se plaire* à voir *triomphe* art. crime m.
 Would you dishonour yourselves by such an action? Would those
se déshonorer 2 1
 lords avail themselves of their birth and fortune,
seigneur se prévaloir de naissance f. pron. richesses
 (in order to) act against our feelings.
pour faire violence à sentiment.

PAST.

Would I not then have devoted myself entirely to the
se dévouer alors *entièrement*
 service of my country? (Had it not been for) thy carelessness,
pays m. *sans* *insouciance f.*
 thou wouldst certainly have grown rich. Would this pleasing
certainement rule 11th *s'enrichir* *doux*
 hope have vanished so soon? Should we have degraded our-
espoir m. *s'évanouir* *se dégrader*

IMPERATIVE.

AFFIRMATIVE.

Repent (thou).

repens-toi
 qu'il or qu'elle *se* repente
 repentons-nous
 repentez-vous
 qu'ils or } *se* repentent
 qu'elles }

NEGATIVE.

Do not repent.

ne te repens
 qu'il or qu'elle *ne se* repente
ne nous repentons
ne vous repentez
 qu'ils or } *ne se* repentent
 qu'elles }

selves to such a degree? You would have reduced yourselves to
 * 2 1 point m. *se réduire*

absolute want. They would have been drowned, if (they
 art. *plus grand besoin* *se noyer*
 had not had assistance).
ne les avait secourus

IMPERATIVE.

O man, remember that thou art mortal. Do not flatter
se souvenir *se promettre*

thyself (that thou wilt succeed easily). Let us take an exact
un succès facile *se rendre* — 2

account of our actions. Let us not deceive ourselves. Rest
compte 1 *se flatter* *se reposer*

yourself in the shade of this tree. Do not expose yourself so
à ombre *s'exposer*

rashly.
témérement.

SURJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I must rise to-morrow at an earlier hour. I wish that
Il faut que se lever *de * meilleur heure l. souhaiter*

thou mayest be better. I wish him to conduct himself
se porter mieux *Je désire qu'il * se conduire*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT.

That I may repent.

que
je me repente
tu te repent
il or elle se repent
nous nous repentions
vous vous repentiez
ils or elles se repentent

IMPERFECT.

That I might repent.

que		
je	<i>me</i>	repentisse
tu	<i>te</i>	repentissas
il <i>or</i> elle	<i>se</i>	repentit
nous	<i>nous</i>	repentissions
vous	<i>vous</i>	repentissiez
ils <i>or</i> elles	<i>se</i>	repentissent

COMPOUND TENNES.

PRETERIT.

That I may have repented.

que				
le	me	sois	}	repenti
tu	te	sois		or
l or elle	se	soit		repentie
nous	nous	soyons	}	repentis
vous	vous	soyez		or
ils or elles	se	soient		repenties

FLUPRAFECT.

That I might have repented.

que			
je	<i>me</i>	<i>fusse</i>	} repentir
tu	<i>te</i>	<i>fusses</i>	
il or elle	<i>se</i>	<i>fût</i>	} repentir
nous	<i>nous</i>	<i>fussions</i>	} repentir
vous	<i>vous</i>	<i>fussiez</i>	
ils or elles	<i>se</i>	<i>fussent</i>	} repentir

better. Is it not essential that we should contain ourselves? They

wish that you should early accustom yourselves to industry.
désirer s'accoutumer de bonne heure art. travail m.

It is time that they should rest from the fatigue of business.
se délasser —f. art. *affaires*, f

PRETERIT.

Can I have been deceived so grossly? It is
Se peut-il que se tromper grossièrement?

astonishing that thou hast determined to stay. It is not said
donnant se décider à rester On a

that he interfered in this business. It will never be believed that
se méler de *on* *croira*

we have conducted ourselves so ill. It is not suspected that you
se comporter *mal.* *On* * *soupçonner*
 have disguised yourselves so ingeniously. (It is not reported) that
se déguiser *adroitement* *On ne dit pas*
 they have behaved ill.
se conduire

IMPERFECT.

They required that I should go to bed at ten o'clock.
On exigeait *se coucher* *■* *heures.*
 They wish that thou shouldst walk oftener. Did they
On voudrait *se promener* *On*
 not wish that he should practise fencing? Was it ne-
voulait *s'exercer à faire des armes*
 cessary that we should have recourse to this method? Did they
 = *se servir* *de* *moyen, m.* *on*
 wish that you should complain of their want of attention? Did
voulait *se plaindre* *manque* ———
 they not wish them to make more haste?
on désirer ind-2 que ils se hâter davantage

PLUPERFECT.

Could they wish me to revenge myself? I should have
Aurait-on voulu que *se venger* *avoir cond-1*
 wished that thou hadst shewn thyself more accommodating.
désirer *se montrer* *moins difficile*
 I should have wished that he had been less negligent. Would you
avoir cond-1 voulu *se négliger moins* *Auriez vous*
 have wished us to have ruined ourselves in public opinion, (in order
voulu que *se perdre* *1* *pour*
 to) satisfy your resentment? I might perhaps have wished that
satisfaire *ressentiment* *J'aurais pu désirer peut-être*
 you had applied yourselves more to your studies. We could
s'appliquer *davantage* *Nous aurions*
 have wished that they had extricated themselves more skilfully
pu désirer *se tirer* *adroitement*
 from the difficulties (in which) they (had involved themselves).
embarras *où* *s'étaient mis.*

125. CONJUGATION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

A passive verb shows that the action is directed to ourselves, that we *suffer* it; whereas the *active verb* expresses that *we act*, or perform the action, and direct it towards another object, thus: *I love*, is active, *I am loved* is passive. The Greek and the Latin languages have a peculiar form of verbs, called *passive verbs* or *passive voice*, totally distinct from the *active verb* or *active voice*. The French language as well as the English and other modern languages have no such form, and express the passive voice by means of the *participle past* of the active voice with the auxiliary *être*, to be, thus: *je suis aimé*, I am loved. The participle, in that case, being as an adjective, is made to agree in gender and number with the subject of the verb.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Je suis aimé or aimée</i>	<i>I am loved</i>
<i>tu étais estimé or estimée</i>	<i>thou wast esteemed</i>
<i>ce roi fut chéri de son peuple</i>	<i>that king was beloved by his people</i>
<i>elle fut toujours chérie</i>	<i>she was always beloved</i>
<i>mon père fut respecté</i>	<i>my father was respected</i>
<i>ma mère fut révérée</i>	<i>my mother was revered</i>
<i>nous serons loués or louées</i>	<i>we will be praised</i>
<i>vous en serez blâmés or blâmées</i>	<i>you will be blamed for it</i>
<i>ils seraient craints et redoutés</i>	<i>they would be feared and dreaded</i>
<i>elles seraient mieux instruites</i>	<i>they would be better informed</i>
<i>afin que mes fils soient connus</i>	<i>that my sons may be known</i>
<i>je voudrais que les portes fussent ouvertes</i>	<i>I should wish the doors were opened</i>

OBSEVE.—In future, the tenses of the verbs will be promiscuously intermixed; but directions will be given as to those which it is proper to use; that is, marks like these will be found under the verb, *ind-1*, *ind-2*, *ind-3*, etc. The learner will do well, therefore,

to consult the *explanations of the abbreviations* given at the beginning of the grammar, that he may be familiar with those marks.

EXERCISES.

My brother was wounded. They were detested. Has she not
 ind-3 *blessar* *ils* ind-2 *détester*
 been rewarded? The robbers were apprehended in the park. Has
récompenser ind-4 *saisir*
 not your sister been well received? The boys shall all be punished.
recevoir *écouter* *punir*
 Is the garden door opened? When were these fruits gathered?
porte du jardin f. ouvrir ind-4 — m. *cueillir*
 The actress has been crowned.
actrice *couronner*

126. OF NEUTER VERBS.

Neuter verbs are of two sorts. 1. Those which express a state, a quality, as: *je languis*, I languish; *il excelle*, he excels. 2. Those which express an action, which cannot pass over to another object, as: *je dîne*, I dine; *je marche*, I walk; since we cannot say: *je dîne un homme*, I dine a man; *je marche mon frère*, I walk my brother. Neuter verbs are also sometimes on that account called *intransitive*.

Some neuter verbs admit a substantive after them, as complement, that is to say, as giving full sense to the sentence: *je pense à mon père*, I think of my father; *je dépends de mon oncle*, I am dependant on my uncle; *je tremble de peur*, I tremble with fear; but that substantive is always governed by a preposition.

127. Neuter verbs are not all conjugated with the same auxiliary in their compound tenses; some have *avoir*, others have *être*.

AVOIR.

J'ai parlé,	<i>I have spoken.</i>
Nous avons ri,	<i>We have laughed.</i>
Ils ont mangé,	<i>They have eaten.</i>

ÊTRE.

Je suis parti,	<i>I am gone.</i>
Ils sont venus,	<i>They are or have come.</i>
Nous sommes tombés,	<i>We have fallen.</i>

128. It is important to observe that neuter verbs do not require the same preposition in both languages: Thus, *je pense à mon père*, may not be translated by I think *to* my father, but *of* my father. We must also add that a verb, which is neuter in French, is sometimes active in Eng-

lish, as: *j'obéis à mon père*, I obey my father, and vice versâ. This is one of the most material points of difference in the construction of the two languages. It is not here the place to treat it at full length, because it properly belongs to the Syntax, where it will be found; meanwhile, it is recommended that the learner should not lose sight of it, and attend to the preposition which, in the course of the exercises, will carefully be affixed to the infinitives of neuter verbs.

EXERCISE.

We will return at five o'clock. Do you speak to that man?
revenir *parler*

We resist obstacles. I have not accepted of his offers.
résister à art. — *accepter* ind-4 *

Think of my father. They live on vegetables. We will
penser à *vivre* ind-1 *de légumes*

agree about the price. All at once twenty men entered
convenir de *entrer dans* ind-3

the room. She sleeps. Do not walk so fast. You will fall
dormir *marcher* *tomber* ind-7

They run. We shall arrive in the morning.
courir ind-1 *arriver* *

129. OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impersonal verbs are those which have only the third person singular, such as: *il pleut*, it rains; *il neige*, it snows. We subjoin a list of the most common.

pleuvoir	il pleut	it rains
neiger	il neige	it snows.
grêler	il grêle	it hails
tonner	il tonne	it thunders
éclairer	il éclaire	it lightens
geler	il gèle	it freezes
dégeler	il dégèle	it thaws
bruiner	il bruine	it drizzles
importer	il importe	it matters
faire chaud	il fait chaud	it is warm
faire froid	il fait froid	it is cold
faire glissant	il fait glissant	to be slipping
faire crotty	il fait crotté	to be dirty
falloir	il faut	it is necessary, must
y avoir	il y a	there is

These verbs are also called *unipersonal*, from their having only the third person singular. *Falloir*, *y avoir*, being very commonly used in French, they are conjugated at full length separately.

The genius of the French language admits of using some active and neuter verbs impersonally, such as *dire*, *il se dit des choses singulières*, singular things are reported; *arriver*, *il arrive des choses singulières*, singular things happen. This peculiarity will be found noticed in the Syntax.

EXERCISE.

Does it rain this morning? Did it hail
pleuvoir *matin m.* *grêler* ind-4 art. dernier.
 night? It does not snow. I thought it had thundered Does it
 f. 1 *neiger* *Je croyais que* *tonner* ind-6

not lighten? Do you think it freezes? It is ten o'clock.
déclairer croyez que geler subj. 1 heure pl.

It will freeze long. It (is fit) to act so. It (was of great im-
long-temps convenir de importer beau-
 portance) to succeed. It appears that he has not attended to
coup ind-2 de réussir sembler s'occuper de ind-4
 that business. It is very slippery in the streets. Is it cold?
faire glissant rue f. faire froid

It will be very warm to-day. It was very cold all night. Open
bien ind-4 art. nuit f. ouvrir
 the window, for it is too warm in this room. Will it not be too
appartement m.

cold? (I put on) thick boots, for I thought it was very dirty
marcher ind-4 croire ind-2 ind-2
 in the streets.

180. CONJUGATION

OF THE

IMPERSONAL VERB, *FALLOIR, IL FAUT*,
IT MUST, IT IS NECESSARY.

INFINITIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT *falloir*
PARTIC. PRES. *venant*

COMPOUND TENSES.

PAST *avoir fallu*
PAST *fallu, ayant fallu*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT *il faut*
IMPERFECT *il fallait*
PRETERIT DEF. *il fallut*
FUTURE ABSOL. *il faudra*

PRETERIT IND. *il a fallu*
PLUPERFECT *il avait fallu*
PRETERIT ANT. *il eut fallu*
FUTURE ANT. *il aura fallu*

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT *il faudrait*

PAST *il aurait fallu*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT *qu'il faille*
IMPERFECT *qu'il fallût*

PRETERIT *qu'il ait fallu*
PLUPERFECT *qu'il eût fallu*

181. COMPARISON BETWEEN MUST AND FALLOIR.

The English verb *must*, not being impersonal, may take any noun, or pronoun, for its subject; *I must, we must, my sister must*; *FALLOIR*, on the contrary, being impersonal, can only have the third person singular. The latter has besides too distinct meanings; it implies *necessity* or *duty*, and *want* or *deficiency*. In both acceptations, the construction is

so peculiar in French, and differs so materially from the English, that it is deemed necessary to illustrate it by examples.

132. *FALLOIR*, in the sense of *duty, necessity*.

il faut que je parte	<i>I must go</i>
il faut que ma sœur vienne	<i>my sister must come</i>
faut-il que cet homme entre ?	<i>must that man come in ?</i>
il faudra que vous écriviez	<i>you will be obliged to write</i>
ne fallait-il pas qu'il lui répon-	<i>was it not necessary that he should</i>
dît ?	<i>answer ?</i>
n'aurait-il pas fallu que mon	<i>must not my father have paid him ?</i>
père le payât ?	
il faut partir	<i>we must set off</i>
faudra-t-il le payer ?	<i>must he be paid ?</i>

Observe that when *falloir* implies *personal or individual obligation*, it requires the *subjunctive mood* but if it implies *suggestion, general advice*, it requires the *infinitive*.

133. *FALLOIR*, in the sense of *want, deficiency, must have*.

il faut un habit neuf à mon père	<i>my father wants a new great coat</i>
il me faut vingt livres	<i>I must have twenty pounds</i>
ne lui faudra-t-il pas du papier	<i>shall he not want paper and ink ?</i>
et de l'encre ?	
il faut peu de choses aux enfants	<i>children require few things to be</i>
pour les amuser	<i>amused</i>
c'est là ce qu'il lui faut	<i>that is what he wants</i>

Observe also that when *falloir* implies *want, necessity* of having, it requires the person who wants the thing to be in the *dative case*.

EXERCISE.

You must speak	to him	about that affair.	It was necessary	for
sub-1	de	l.	ind-2	que *
him	to consent	to that bargain.	We were obliged	to (set out)
il *	sub-2	marché m.	ind-3	partir sub-2
				19*

Immediately. Children *should* learn every day something by
sur-le-champ art. cond-1 sub-2

heart. *Shall* I suffer patiently such an insult? He *must* have
 ind-7 sub-1 1 2 cond-2 *être*

been a blockhead not to understand such easy rules.
 sub-2 *soit* 2 *pour* 1 *comprendre* inf-1 *des* si 2 3 *règle* f. 1

(How much) does your brother want? He does what is *requisite*.
combien *fait* *falloir*

Do that as it (*should be*). What *must* he *have* for his trouble?
fautes *falloir* ind-1 *que* 2 *ait* 1 * *peine* f.

You are the man I want. Do not give me any more bread,
que * *de*

I have already more than I want. I need not ask you whether
en *se m'en* * inf-1 *si*

you will come. I do not think that *it is necessary* to be a con-
venir ind-7 *crois* sub-1 * *con-*

jurer to guess his motives. I could not suspect that I
cier pour deviner *votis* *pourrais* *supposer*

ought to ask pardon for a fault I have not committed.
 sub-2 * inf-1 — *de faute* f. *que* *commise*

134. CONJUGATION

OF THE

IMPERSONAL VERB, *Y AVOIR*, THERE IS.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT	<i>y avoir</i>	<i>there to be</i>
PAST	<i>y avoir eu</i>	<i>there to have been</i>
PARTIC. PRES.	<i>y ayant</i>	<i>there being</i>
PARTIC. PAST	<i>y ayant eu</i>	<i>there having been</i>

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT	<i>il y a</i>	<i>there is or there are</i>
PRET. INDEF.	<i>il y a eu</i>	<i>there has been or there have been</i>
IMPERFECT.	<i>il y avait</i>	<i>there was or there were</i>
PLUPERFECT.	<i>il y avait eu</i>	<i>there had been</i>
PRETERIT DEF.	<i>il y eut</i>	<i>there was or there were</i>
PRETERIT ANT.	<i>il y eut eu</i>	<i>there had been</i>
FUTURE ABSOL.	<i>il y aura</i>	<i>there will be</i>
FUTURE ANTER.	<i>il y aura eu</i>	<i>there will have been</i>

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT	<i>il y aurait</i>	<i>there would be</i>
PAST	<i>il y aurait eu</i>	<i>there would have been</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT	<i>qu'il y ait</i>	<i>that there may be</i>
PRETERIT	<i>qu'il y ait eu</i>	<i>that there may have been</i>
IMPERFECT	<i>qu'il y eût</i>	<i>that there might be</i>
PLUPERFECT	<i>qu'il y eût eu</i>	<i>that there might have been</i>

This verb in English is used in the plural, when followed by a substantive plural; in French it remains always in the singular.

EXERCISE.

There must be a great difference of age between those two
to doit ——— f.
 persons. *There being (so many) vicious people in this world,*
tant de = 2 *gens m. pl. 1*
 is it astonishing that *there are* so many persons who become the
étonnant sub-1 *devenir*
 victims of the corruption of the age? *It is a thousand to*
perversité f. *siècle m.* * *mille à parier contre*
 one that he will not succeed. *There would be more happiness if*
réussir ind-3 *de bonheur*
 every one) knew how to moderate his desires. I did not think
chacun savait * * *modérer* *désir* *croire ind-2*
 that *there could be* (any thing) to blame in his conduct. *There*
subj-2 *rien* *à reprendre* *conduite f.*
 would not be so many duels, did people reflect that one of the
 ——— *et l'on réfléchir ind-2* f.
 first obligations of a Christian is to forgive injuries. Could
 ——— f. *de chrétien* *de pardonner art.* *pourrait-il*
 there be a king more happy than this who has always been the
ceint-ci
 father of his subjects?
supra

135. OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FIRST
CONJUGATION.

The only irregular verbs of the first conjugation are **ALLER** and **ENVOYER**.

136. INF. PRES.	ALLER, <i>to go</i> .
INF. PAST.	Avoir été, être allé, <i>e, to have gone</i> .
PART. PRES.	Allant, <i>going</i> .
PART. PAST.	Été, allé, allée, <i>gone</i> .
COMP. PAST.	Étant allé, ayant été, <i>having gone</i> .

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Je vais	{ nous allons vous allez ils vont -
tu vas	
il va	

IMPERF.	j'allais, etc.*
PRET.	j'allai, etc. or je fus, etc.
FUTURE	j'irai, etc.
CONDIT.	j'irais, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

va, qu'il aille, allons, allez, qu'ils aillent.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. que j'aile, que tu ailles, qu'il aille, que nous allions, que vous alliez, qu'ils aillent.

Imp. que j'aillasse, que tu aillasses, qu'il allât, que nous allussions, que vous allassiez, qu'ils allassent.

137. **S'EN ALLER**, *to go away*; will be given at full length because its conjugation is rather difficult on account of its two pronouns.

* In future the first person only of tenses regularly conjugated will be given.

INFINITIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.			COMPOUND TENSES.		
PRESENT	s'	en aller	s'	en être	} allé, a été
PARTIC. PRES.	s'	en allant	s'	en étant	
PARTIC. PAST.		en allé			} allés, allées

INDICATIVE.

PRES.	je	m'	en vais	je	m'	en suis	} allé
	tu	t'	en vas	tu	t'	en es	
	il or elle	s'	en va	il or elle	s'	en est	
	nous	nous	en allons	nous	nous	en sommes	
	vous	vous	en allez	vous	vous	en êtes	
IMP. PRET. FUT. COND.	ils or elles	s'	en vont	ils or elles	s'	en sont	} allées
	je	m'	en allais	je	m'	en étais	
	je	m'	en allai	je	m'	en fus	
	je	m'	en irai	je	m'	en serai	
	je	m'	en irais	je	m'	en serais	

Or je (m'en) vas.

IMPERATIVE.

AFFIRMATIVE.			NEGATIVE.		
qu'il	va	t' en	ne t'	en va	} pas
		s' en	ne s'	en aille	
	allons	nous en	ne nous	en allons	
qu'ils	allez	vous en	ne vous	en allez	
		s' en	ne s'	en aillent	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.				COMPOUND TENSES.				
PRES. que	je	m'	en aille	je	m'	en sois	} allé	
	tu	t'	en ailles	tu	t'	en sois		} or allés
	il or elle	s'	en aille	il or elle	s'	en soit		
	nous	nous	en allons	nous	nous	en soyons		} allés
	vous	vous	en alliez	vous	vous	en soyez			} or allées
	ils or elles	s'	en aillent	ils or elles	s'	en soient		} allées
y.	que je	m'	en aiasse	je	m'	en fusse	allé. Acc.	

REMARKS.

Je fus, j'ai été, j'avais été, j'aurais été, are not synonymous of *j'allai, je suis allé, j'étais allé, je serais allé*. The former serve to express the *fact of having gone*, the latter, the *fact of being gone*.

The imperative *va* takes an *s* when followed by *y*, or by *en* as : *vas-y, vas en savoir des nouvelles*, go thither, go and make enquiries about it; however it

takes no *s* when the *y* is followed by a verb, as : *va y donner ordre*, go and see about it.

Puer, to stink ; is defective ; it has no preterit of the indicative, nor the imperfect of the subjunctive.

Tisser, to weave ; is only irregular in the participle past, which makes *tissu* instead of *tissé*.

Envoyer and *renvoyer*, make in their future absolute and conditional present, *j'enverrai*, *j'enverrais*, and *je renverrai*, *je renverrais*.

EXERCISE.

Are you going into the country this evening? I am going to
ind-7 à campagne f. soir m.
 pay some visits. Go there with thy brother. Go and do that
faire * *faire*
 errand. Go there and put every thing in order. Let him go
*commission f. * mettre en*
 to church on holidays. I shall go to London. When
*art. église, f. * art. jour pl. de fête.*
 do they go to Italy? My sisters are going away next week. We
en Italie ind-1
 shall go away early. Do not go away yet. Make haste for
de bonne heure dépêchez-vous
 they are going away. I shall send early flowers
de art. printanier 2 f. pl. 1
 to those ladies. I would go to Rome, if I could. We would
dame f. pl. pouvais
 (send back) our horses. Why do they go away so soon? My
pourquoi
 brother and sister went yesterday to Windsor. I shall not go
pron. ind-4
 (any more) a hunting.
*nous à * art. chasse f.*
 wiser, if they reflected on the shortness of life. I would
réfléchir ind.-2 sur brièveté f. art.
 visit France and Italy if (I had the means.)
parcourir art. — art. = mes moyens le permettaient.

IMPERATIVE.

Shudder with horror and terror. Do not open the door
Frémir de = de effroi m. ouvrir
 to any one in my absence. Let him not suffer such insults.
personne souffrir pareil, insulte f.

138. IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

BRANCH I. PUNIR.

Bénir, to bless; has two participles, *béni*, *bénite*, consecrated, (by prayers or religious ceremonies); *pain béni*, consecrated bread; *eau bénite*, holy water; *béni*, *bénie*, blessed, favored of God. *Peuple béni*, a blessed, happy, Godly nation.

Fleurir, in the common acceptation of *to blossom*, *to come to bloom*, is regular; but, in the sense of *to flourish*, it makes, *florissant*, *florissait*.

In *haïr*, to hate; the letters *-ai* form throughout two syllables, except in the three persons singular of the present of the indicative, *je hais*, *tu hais*, *il hait*, and in the second person singular of the imperative *hais*, which are pronounced as one syllable, as if written, *je hès*, *tu hès*, *il hèt*.

Gésir, to lie, is a defective verb, and has only retained *gisant*, *gît*, *nous gisons*, *ils gisent*, *il gisait*, and particularly *ci-gît*, here lies.

EXERCISE.

May the name of that good king be *blessed* from generation to generation. These trees *blossomed* twice every year. The arts and sciences *flourished* at Athens in the time of Pericles. Horace and Virgil *flourished* under the reign of Augustus. We discovered from the top of the mountain a vast plain full of

nom m. *en*
ind-2 *deux fois tout art. en pl.*
art. *—* *ind-2* *à Athènes*
Virgile *ind-2* *sous* *règne* *Auguste.*
découvert *haut* *plaine f. - empl. de*

Flowery meadows. The empire of the Babylonians was
flourissant 2 pré m. pl. 1 ———— nice ind-3

long a flourishing one. We did not hate the man, but his
long-temps *

vices. Does she really *hate* that vain pomp and all the display of
pomp & *apparel*

grandeur ?

139. BRANCH II, ON SENTINEL.

Bouillir, to boil

Par. pres. bouillant—Parf. bouilli

IND. pres. bous, bous, bout, bouillons, bouilles, bouillent

Imperf. bouillais—*Pres.* bouillie

Future. **bonillirai—Cond. bonillirais**

IMP. bous, qu'il bouille, bouillons, bouillez, qu'ils bouillent.

Sub. pres. bouillo—Imp. bouillies

Rebouillir, to boil again, and *ébouillir*, to boil away, are conjugated like *bouillir*; this latter is only used in compound tenses, and the infinitive, as: *cette sauce est trop ébouillie*, this sauce has boiled away too much.

PAILLIN, to fail.

Part. pres. faillant²—Past. failli

IND. pres. faux.* faux.* faut.* faillons.* failliez.* faillent.*

Imperf. faillais*—*Prot.* faillis, etc.—*Fut.* faudrai*

COND. *faudrais**—**SUBJ. imperf.** *que je faillisse*

DEFAILLIE, *to faint*, has now only the plural of the

IND. pres. nous défailloⁿs, ils défailleⁿt—*Imperf.* défailleⁱs.

Pret. défaille—*Pret. indef.* j'ai défaille, and *INF. pres.* défaille.

N.B The tenses marked with an asterisk are obsolete.

EXERCISE.

Take that water off the fire, it ~~boils~~ too fast. Do not
retirer *l. de dessus* *m. l.* *fort*

let the soup (boil away) (so much). That sauce has (boiled
 1 3 2 — f. est f.

away) (too much). *Boil* that meat again; it has not boiled
trop *faites rebouillir* *viande f.* * *f.* 2
 long enough.
 * *assez l*

FUIR, to fly, to run away.

Part. pres. fuyant—Past. fui.

IND. pres. fuis, fuis, fuit, fuyons, fuyez, fuient.

Imperf. fuyais—Pret. fuis—Fut. fuirai—COND. fuirais.

IMP. fuis, fuie, fuyons, fuyez, fuient.

SUBJ. pres. fuie, fuies, fuie, fuyions, fuyiez, fuient.

Imperf. fusse, or rather, prisse la fuite.

MOURIR, to die.

Part. pres. mourant—Past. mort.

IND. pres. meurs, meurs, meurt, mourons, mourez, meurent.

Imp. mourais—Pret. mourus—Fut. mourrai—COND. mourrais.

IMP. meurs, meure, mourons, mourez, meurent.

SUBJ. pres. meure, meures, meure, mourions, mouriez, meurent.

Imperf. mourusse—Comp. tenais. Je suis mort, j'étais mort, etc.

REM.—*S'enfuir*, to run away, is conjugated after *fuir*. *Mourir* takes the auxiliary *être*; and when reflected, *se mourir* signifies to be dying, or emphatically and figuratively to be dying with. It is seldom used except in the present and imperfect of the indicative.

EXERCISE.

He (was near) losing his life in that encounter. He (was
faillir *perdre* * *art.* *rencontre f.* *faillir*
 falling into the snare which was laid for him. His
ind-4 *sonner* *piège m.* *qu'on avait tendu* * *lui* *
 strength fails him. Give us something to eat
art. *force f. pl.* *défaillir lui.* *donnez-nous* * *manger* 2
 directly; we are fainting with fatigue and hunger. I cannot get at
vite l *se mourir de* — *pr. fatm.* *ne puis rencontrer*
 him, he shuns me. Would he not avoid flatterers, if he
fuir *fuir* *art.* *flatteur m. pl.*
 knew all their falsehood. He died of a (very painful) disease.
ind-2 *fausseté f.* *de* *cruel* 2 *maladie f. l*

She died of grief (for the loss of) her son. He is dying.
 ind-4 *chagrin m. d'avoir perdu* *se mourir*
 She was dying with grief, when the fear of death at l-nd.
se mourir de crainte f. art. *en*
 wrested her secret from her.
arracher ind-3 — m. • lui.

Quérir, to fetch; is used, in familiar conversation, after *venir*, *envoyer*, *aller*, as: *envoyez quérir*, send for; *allez quérir*, go and fetch.

ACQUÉRIR, to acquire.

Part. pres. acquérant—*Past.* acquis.
IND. pres. acquiers, acquiers, acquiert, acquérons, acquérez, acquièrent.
Imper. acquérais—*Pret.* acquis—*Fut.* acquerrai—*COND.* acquerrais
IMP. acquiers, acquière, acquérons, acquérez, acquièrent.
SUBJ. pres. acquière-e, -es, -e, acquér-ions, -iez, acquièrent.
Imperf. acquise.

S'enquérir, to enquire; and *requérir*, to request; are conjugated as *acquérir*.

Conquérir, to conquer, is seldom used but in the *IND. pret.* je conquis, etc., and in the *SUBJ. imperf.* que je conquisse. Its chief use is in the *compound tenses*.

Ouïr, to hear; is only used in the *INF. pres.* ouïr *Part. past.* ouï. *IND. pret.* j'ouïs, tu ouïs, etc. and *SUBJ. imperf.* que j'ouïsse, tu ouïsses, etc. Its principal use is in the *compound tenses*, as: *je l'ai* or *je l'avais ouï dire*, I have or I had heard it.

VÊTIR, to clothe.

Part. pres. vêtant*—*Past.* vêtu.
IND. pres. vêts,* vêts,* vêt,* vêtons, vêtez, vêtent.
Imperf. vêtais—*Pret.* vêtis—*Fut.* vêtirai—*COND.* vêtirais.
IMP. vêts,* vêts,* vêtons, vêtez, vêtent.
SUB. pres. vête—*Imperf.* vêtisse.

N.B.—*Vêtir* is seldom used in the forms marked with an asterisk, and is most frequently used as reflected, *se vêtir*, to dress one's self.

Revêtir, to clothe, to invest, is used through all the tenses; *dévetir*, to divest, is principally used as a reflected verb, and in some forms only.

Send for the physician and follow exactly his advice. Go and
médecin suivrez

fetch my cane. Every day he acquired celebrity by
canne f. tout art. jour m. pl. ind-3 de art. = f.

works calculated to fix the attention of an enlightened
de art. ouvrage m. pl. fait pour 2

public. Would you have me acquire riches at the expense
I voudriez-vous que subj-2 de art. dépens m. pl.

of my honesty? He had acquired by his merit great influence
probité f. m. une — f.

over the opinions of his contemporaries. I have enquired about
sing. contemporains s'enquérir ind-4 de

that man (every where), and I have not (been able) (to hear
homme-là partout pu en avoir

any thing of him). Who has requested it of you?
*de nouvelles Qui est-ce qui 3 4 en 2 * 1*

Sesostris, king of Egypt conquered a great part of Asia. The
ind-3 art.

formidable empire which Alexander conquered did not last
2 1 —dre ind-6 durer

longer than his life. I have heard that he will not return,
plus long-temps f. ouïr dire ind-4 revenir

He dressed himself in haste and (went out) immediately.
se vêtir ind-3 à art. hâte f. sortir ind-3 sur-le-champ.

I wish she would dress the children with more
voudrais que vêtir subj-2 de

care. If his fortune permitted him, he would clothe all the
permettait 2 le lui 1

poor of his parish. Two servants clothed him in his dural
paroisse f. domestique revêtir de 2

mantle. It begins to be very warm; one might
manteau m. l. commencer à faire chaud; pourrait
 (throw off some clothing).
se dévêtir.

140. BRANCH III. *OUVRIR*.

CUEILLIR, to gather.

<i>Part. pres.</i> cueillant	<i>Past.</i> cueilli	<i>IND. pres.</i> cueille
<i>Imperf.</i> cueillais	<i>Pret.</i> cueillis	<i>Fut.</i> cueillerai*
<i>COND.</i> cueillerais*	<i>IMPER.</i> cueille	<i>SUBJ. pres.</i> cueille
<i>Imperf.</i> cueillisse		

The irregularity of *cueillir*, in the future and the conditional, is remarkable; these two tenses are formed from the old infinitive *cueiller*. Thus, *accueillir*, to welcome; and *recueillir*, to collect.

Saillir, to project, has only *saillant*, *sailli*; and the following forms: *il saille*, *il saillait*, *il saillera*, *il saillerait*, *qu'il saille*, *qu'il saillît*. But *saillir*, to gush out; is regularly conjugated like *finir*; *saillissant*, *je saillis*, etc., *ils saillissent*, etc. Its principal use is in the third persons.

ASSAILLIR, to assault.

<i>Part. pres.</i> assaillant	<i>Past.</i> assailli	<i>IND. pres.</i> assaille
<i>Imperf.</i> assaillais	<i>Pret.</i> assaillis	<i>Fut.</i> assaillirai
<i>COND.</i> assaillirais	<i>IMPER.</i> assaille	<i>SUB. pres.</i> assaille
<i>Imperf.</i> assaillisse		

Tressaillir, to start, conjugated like *assaillir*, make in the fut. *je tressaillirai*, or *tressaillirai*, etc.

EXERCISE.

I will gather with pleasure some of these flowers and of these
 fruits, since you wish to have some. Do not gather.
puisque être bien aise de en

these peaches, before they are ripe. That is a country
 f. pl. *avant que* ne subj-1 *mur* *Ce* *pays*
 where they neither reap corn, nor (gather) grapes. We
 où on ne *recueillir* ni *blé* ni * *vin*
 shall collect in ancient history important and valuable
recueillir 2 1 *de* art. —2 *précieux* 3
 facts. He received us in the most polite manner.
fait 1 *accueillir* 3 1 *de* 2 *manière* f. 1
 Poverty, misery, sickness, persecution, in a word, all
 art. f. art. f. art. *maladie* f. art. *en*
 the misfortunes in the world (have fallen upon) him. If you
malheur m. pl. *de* *accueillir* ind-4
 give six inches to that cornice, it will project too much.
donner *pouce* m. *corniche* f. *trop*
 That balcony projected too much; it darkened the dining-
balcon m. ind-2 *trop* *obscurcir* ind-2 *salle à*
 room. When Moses struck the rock, there gushed
manger f. *Quand Moïse frapper* ind-3 *rocher* m. *il* ind-3
 out (of it) a spring of (fresh running) water. The blood gushed
 2 *en* 1 *source* f. *vif* 2 f. 1 ind-2
 from his vein with impetuosity. We shall assault the enemy
veine f. *assaillir* pl.
 to-morrow in their entrenchments. Were we not overtaken by a
dernain *retranchement* ind-3. *assailli*
 horrible storm? At every word which they said to him
tempête f. *à* *chaque* *que* *en* *disait* 2 *lui*
 concerning his son, the good (old man) leaped for joy.
de *vieillard* *ressaillir* ind-2 *de* *joie*

141. IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Avoir, to have, is conjugated at length, No. 101.

Ravoir, to have again; and *se ravoir*, to recover, are only used in the present of the infinitive.

Choir, to fall, has only the participle past, *chu*, *chue*, *être chu*.

DÉCHOIR, to decay.

(No Part. pres.) Part. past, *déchu*.

IND. pres. *déchois*, *déchois*, *déchoit*, *déchoyons*, *déchoyez*, *déchoient*

(No Imperf.) Pret. *déchus*—Fut. *décherrai*—COND. *décherrais*

IMPER. *déchois*, *déchole*, *déchoyons*, *déchoyez*, *déchoient*.

SUB. pres. *déchoie*, *déchoies*, *déchoie*, *déchoy-ions*, —iez, *déchoient*.

Imperf. *déchusse*.

Échoir, to fall to, to expire, has only now in use the IND. pres. *il échoit*, sometimes pronounced *il échel*, the pret. *il échut*, fut. *il écherra*, cond. *il écherrait*, the imperf. SUBJ. *que j'échusse*; INF. and PAST. *échoir*, *échéant*, *échu*.

Choir, *déchoir*, *échoir*, take the auxiliary *être* and **ÊTRE**.

Falloir, to be necessary, is an impersonal verb, the conjugation of which has been given.

EXERCISE.

I had apartments that I liked; I will endeavour to have them
ind-2 *un logement* aimer ind-2 *vous essayer de* s.
again. Beware of falling. How has he fallen into
prenez garde inf-1 *comment* en
poverty? Since the publication of his last work, he has
vauceté depuis dernier —
much fallen in the esteem of the public. If he do not
déchoir

alter his conduct, he will gradually lose his reputation
changer de * *déchoir de jour en jour de* — f.
 and credit. He has put in the lottery, and he hopes
pr. pron. — m. *mis à loterie f.*
 that a capital prize will fall (to his share). That bill
 * *art. gros lot m. échoir lui lettre f.*
 of exchange has expired on the twenty-fifth. The first term
*change échoir * le vingt-cinq terme n.*
 expires at Midsummer. You have drawn on me a bill of
à la Saint-Jean tirer sur moi
 exchange; when is it payable? I did not believe that I must
échoir ind-1 croire ind-2 falloir sub-2
 so soon (have taken) that journey. He must
faire voyage m. ind-4 que
 have sunk under the efforts of (so many) enemies.
succomber sub-2 tant de

MOUVOIR, to move.

Part. pres. mouvant—Part. past. mu.

IND. pres. meus, meus, meut, mouv-ons, —ez, meuvent.

Imperf. mouvais—Pres. mus—Fut. mouvrai—COND. mouvrais

IMPER. meus, meuve, mouvons, mouvez, meuvent.

SUBJ. pres. meuv-e, —es, —e, mouv-ions, —iez, meuvent.

Imperf. musse

Thus are conjugated *émouvoir*, to move, excite, stir up; *se mouvoir*, to move, stir; *s'émouvoir*, to be moved, affected.

Promouvoir, to promote in rank or office, has only the infinitive, and participle *promu*.

Démouvoir, to induce to desist, has the infinitive only.

PLEUVOIR, to rain (impersonal).

<i>Part. pres. pleuvant</i>	<i>Past. plu</i>	<i>IND. pres. il pleut</i>
<i>Imperf. il pleuvait</i>	<i>Pres. il plut</i>	<i>Fut. il pleuvra</i>
<i>COND. il pleuvrait</i>	<i>SUB. pres. qu'il pleuve</i>	<i>Imperf. qu'il plût</i>

EXERCISE.

The spring which moves the whole machine is very inge-
ressori m. 2 tout l — f.

nious, though very simple. It was passion which moved
 = *quoique* — *Ce* ind-1 art. — f. ind-4
 him to that action. Can you doubt that the soul, though it
 — f. *pouvés* f. *
 is spiritual, moves the body at pleasure? That is a man
 * — *tuel ne* sub-1 *à sa volonté* *ce*
 whom nothing moves. We had scarcely lost sight of
émouvoir. ind-3 *à peine perdu vue* f. 3 2
 land, when there arose a violent tempest.
 art. *terre*, f. 1 *que il s'émouvoir* ind-3 *grand tempête* f.
 We were moved with fear and pity. When the famous
 ind-3 *émus de crainte* f. pr. *pitié* f. *quand célèbre*
d'Aguesseau was promoted to the dignity of chancellor, all
 ind-3 = f. *chancelier tout*
 France shewed the greatest joy. That bishop well
 art. f. *en témoigner* ind-3 f. *éclyse*
 deserved, by his talents and by his virtues, that the king
mériter ind-2
 should promote him to the dignity of primate. The people
 sub-2 2 *le* 1 *primal* sing.
 think that it rains frogs and insects
croît *de* art. *grenouille* f. pl. pr. art. *insecte* m. pl.
 at certain seasons. It will not rain to-day, but I
en — *temps* pl. *aujourd'hui*
 (am fearful) of its raining to-morrow.
craindre que * *ne* sub-1

POUVOIR, to be able.

Part. pres. pouvant—*Part. past.* pu.

IND. pres. puis,* peux, peut, pouv-ons, —ez, peuvent.

Imperf. pouvais—*Pret. pus*—*Fut. pourrai*—*COND. pourrais*.

(No imperative). *SUBJ. pres.* puisse—*Imperf.* pusse.

* Conversation and poetry admit also *je peux*, but not *peux-je*?

There is an imperative used, not to express command, but a wish that a thing be, as a sort of imprecation. *Puisse-je, puisses-tu, puisse-t-il, puissions-nous, puissiez-vous, puissent-ils*. Ex: *puissiez-vous arriver à temps*, may you arrive in time.

SAVOIR, to know

Part. pres. sachant—Part. past. su.

IND. pres. sais, sais, sait, savons, savez, savent—Imperf. savais.

Pret. sus—Fut. saurai—COND. saurais.

IMPER. sache, sache, sachons, sachez, sachent.

SUBJ. pres. sache—Imperf. sasse.

Seoir, to be becoming, to befit; has only the *part. pres. seyant*; and the third persons of the *simple tenses*, *il sied, ils sièent, il séyait, il siéra, il siérait, qu'il siéc*. But *seoir*, to sit, is used only in the two participles, *séant* and *sic*. This verb is also used impersonally.

ASSEOIR, to set.

Part. pres. asseyant—Part. past. assis.

IND. pres. assieds, assieds, assied, assey-ons, —ez, —ent.

Imperf. asseyais —Pret. assis.—Fut. assiérni, or asseyerai.

COND. assiérrais, or asseyerai.—IMP. assieds, assèye, assey-ons, —ez, —ent—SUBJ. pres. assèye.—Imperf. assisse.

N.B.—This verb is more frequently reflected, as *s'asseoir*, to sit down. Its compound *rasseoir*, to set again, to calm, or to sit down again, is conjugated in the same manner.

EXERCISE.

When he arrived at home, he (was quite exhausted).

être ind-1 arrivé chez lui n'en pouvoir ind-2 plus

The minister had (so many) people at his levee, that I

ministre ind-3 tant de monde à audience

could not speak to him. Are you afraid that he cannot

ind-3 2 1 craindre, ind-1 pouvoir sub-1

accomplish that affair? I know that he is not your friend,

venir à bout de de pl,

but I know likewise that he is a man of probity. Let them know

savoir * bien

that their pardon depends on their submission. I could wish

grâce dépendre de soumission. désirer cond-1

that he *Answer* a little better his lessons. Let us see if this new-
sub-2 voyons d'un
fashioned dress becomes you, or not. He assured that
nouveau goût 2 robe f. 1 2 1 non
colours too rich will not become you. The head-dress which that
art. f. voyant coiffure f. que
lady wore did not become her at all. These
porter ind-2 seoir ind-2 2 lui 1 du tout
colours become you so well, you (would do wrong) to wear any
inf-3 avoir tort cond-1 de en porter de
others. Sit that child in this arm-chair, and take care he
asseoir m. fauteuil m. prena garde que
does not fall. I will sit down on the top of that hill,
ne subj-1 s'asseoir sommet m. coteau m.
whence I shall discover a prospect (no less) magnificent
découvrir scène f. aussi —que
than diversified. We (were sitting) on the banks of the
varié s'asseoir ind-6 bord m. pl.
Thames, whence we contemplated myriads of vessels,
Tamise f. contempler ind-2 de art. millier vaisseau
which bring, every year, the riches of the two hemis-
apporter art. pl.
pheres.

VOIR, to see.

Part. pres. voyant.—*Part. past.* vu.
IND. pres. vois, vois, voit, voyons, voyez, voient.
Imperf. voyais.—*Pret. vis.*—*Fut. verrai.*—*COND.* verrais.
IMPER. vois, voie, voyons, voyez, voient.
SUBJ. pres. voie, voies, voie, voyions, voyiez, voient.—*Imp. visse.*

Revoir, to see again; and *entrevoir*, to have a glimpse of, are conjugated in the same manner; but *prévoir*, to foresee; makes in the future and the conditional, *je prévoirai*, etc. *je prévoirais*, etc.

Pouvoir, to provide; makes in the *pret.* *je pourvus*, *tu pourvus*, etc. *fut.* *je pourvoirai*, etc. *COND.* *je pourvoirais* etc., and *imperf.* *SUBJ.* *que je pourvusse*, etc.

Surseoir, to supersede, though a compound of *seoir*, is conjugated like *voir*, except that it makes *fut. je surseoirai*, etc. COND. *je surseoirais*, etc., and *part. past. sursis*.

VALOIR, *to be worth.*

Part. pres. valant.—Part. past. valu.

IND. *pres. vaux, vaux, vaut, valons, valez, valent.*

Imperf. valais.—Pret. valus.—Fut. vaudrai.—COND. vaudrais.

IMPER. *vaux, vaille, valons, valez, vaillent.*

SUBJ. *pres. vaille, vailles, vaille, valions, valiez, vaillent.*

Imperf. valusse.

Revaloir, to pay off, and *équivaloir*, to be equivalent to, follow *valoir*; but *prévaloir*, to prevail, makes in the SUBJ. *pres. que je prévale, que tu prévales, qu'il prévale, que nous prévalions*, etc.

VOULOIR, *to be willing.*

Part. pres. voulant.—Part. past. voulu.

IND. *pres. veux, veux, veut, voulons, voulez, veulent.*

Imperf. voulais.—Pret. voulus.—Fut. voudrai.—COND. voudrais.

SUBJ. *pres. veuille, —es, —e, voulions, vouliez, veuillent.*

Imperf. voulusse.

The imperative is *veuille, veuillons, veuillez*, but the last person only is commonly used, in the sense of *be so kind or so good as, please to*.

EXERCISE

Behold the admirable order of the universe. Has he again seen

his country and his friends (Had he had a glimpse of) the dawn
pays *aurore*

of this fine day? To terminate their affairs, it would be neces-
pour *falloir*

nary for them to (see one another). I clearly foretold,
*cond-1 que * ils * s'entrevoir subj-2* *bien 2*

(from that time), all the obstacles he would have to surmount.
dès lors — m. *que* à surmonter

Would you have had the judge (put off) the execution
vouloir ind-2 que juge surseoir subj-2

of the sentence that he had pronounced? I shall not put off the
arrêt ind-2 rendu

prosecution of that affair. If men do not provide (for it),
poursuite f. pl. art. 2 y 1

God will provide (for it). (But for the cooking), this fish (would be
2 y 1 sans la sauce ne valoir

good for nothing). You have not paid for this ground more than
*rien * terre f.*

it is worth; (are you afraid) that it is not worth six hundred
ne - craindre que subj-1

pounds? One ounce of gold is equivalent to fifteen
livre f. pl. sterling? once f.

ounces of silver. Doubt not that reason and truth will
*douter art. art. **

prevail at last. I can and I will tell the truth. If you
ne subj-1 à la longue dire te

are willing, he will be willing too. Let us resolve to resist
*le avant vouloir * combattre*

our passions, and we shall be sure to conquer them. (Be so good as)
ne vaincre 2 1 pouvoir

to lend me your grammar.
** prêter 1*

142. IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

BRANCH I. On *RENDRE*.

RESOUDRE, to *rescive*.

Part. pres. résolvant.—*Part. past.* résolu, or résous.

IND. pres. résous, résous, résout, résolv-*ons*, —*ez*, —*ent*.

Imperf. résolvais.—*Pret.* résolu*s*.—*Fut.* résoudrai.

COND. résoudrais.—*IMPER.* résous, résolve, résolv-*ons*, —*ez*, —*ent*.

SUBJ. pres. résolve.—*Imperf.* résolusse.

This verb has two participles past, *résolu*, in the sense of *to determine, to fix*; *résous*, without a feminine, in the sense of *to resolve into, to turn into*.

Absoudre, to absolve, is conjugated like *résoudre*; but has neither *pret. IND.* nor *imperf. SUBJ.*; its participle past is *absous*, m. *absoute*, f.

Dissoudre, to dissolve; has the same irregularities, and wants the same tenses as *absoudre*.

COUDRE, to *sew*.

Part. pres. cousant.—*Part. past.* cousu.

IND. pres. couds, couds, coud, cousons, cousez, cousent.

Imperf. cousais.—*Pret.* cousis.—*Fut.* coudrai.—*COND.* coudrais.

IMPER. couds.—*SUBJ. pres.* couse.—*Imperf.* cousisse.

Découdre, to unsew; and *recoudre*, to sew again, are conjugated in the same manner.

METTRE, to *put*.

Part. pres. mettant.—*Part. past.* mis.

IND. pres. mets, mets, met, mettons, mettez, mettent.

Imperf. mettais.—*Pret.* mis.—*Fut.* mettrai.—*COND.* mettrais.

IMPER. mets.—*SUBJ. pres.* mette.—*Imperf.* misse.

In the same manner are conjugated the derivatives:

admettre	to admit	permettre	to permit
commettre	to commit	promettre	to promise
compromettre	to compromise	remettre	to replace
se démettre	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{to put out of joint} \\ \text{to resign} \end{array} \right.$	soumettre	to subject
omettre	to omit	transmettre	to transmit
		s'entremettre	to intermeddle

RESOLVERE

Wood when burning resolves itself into ashes and smoke.
 art. bois m. que l'on brûle se résoudre en cendre f. pr. fumée f.
 Have they resolved on peace or war? The fog has
 on * art. f. art. f. brouillard m. s.
 resolved itself into rain. Would that judge thus lightly
 résoudre ind-4 en pluie f. et légèrement
 absolve the guilty? Strong waters dissolve metals.
 cond-1 coupable m. pl. art. fort 2 f. pl. 1 art. on 1
 Those drugs were dissolved before they were put into
 drogue 3 ind-4 avant que de les * mettre
 that medicine. My sister did sew all day yesterday. That piece
 remède m. * hier
 is not well sewed, it must (be sewed over again). Unpick
 falloir la inf-1 dénouer
 that lace, and sew it again very carefully. Does he
 dentelle f. 2 1 avec beaucoup de soin
 set a great value upon riches? I never admitted those
 mettre pris m. à art. ind-4
 principles. Has he committed that fault? If he (would take my
 faute f. me
 advice), he would resign his charge in favour of his
 croyait se démettre cond-1 de f. on m
 son. He put his arm out of joint yesterday. I will omit nothing
 se démettre le bras ind-4
 that depends on me to serve you. God frequently
 se ce dépendre ind-7 de pour souvent 2
 permits the wicked to prosper. Put this book
 I que méchant m. pl. * prospérer sub-1 remettre

its place again. Under whatever form of government
 -- f. * *quelque* *gouvernement* m. que
 you (may live), remember that your first duty is to be
votre subj.-1 *se souvenir* *devoir* m. *de*
 obedient to the laws. It frequently happens that fathers transmit
soumis 2 *arriver* 1 art.
 to their children both their vices and their virtues.

He has long meddled with public affairs; but his
s'entremettre ind-4 *long-temps* *de* art. 2 1
 endeavours have not been crowned with success.
effort *couronner* *de* art. m.

MOUDRE, to grind (corn, &c.)

Part. pres. moulant.—*Part. past.* moulu.

IND. pres. mouds, mouds, moud, moul-ons, --ez, --ent.

Imperf. moulais.—*Pret.* moulus.—*Fut.* moudrai.—*COND.* moudrais.

IMPER. mouds, moule, moulons, moulez, moulent.

SUBJ. pres. moule.—*Imperf.* moulasse.

In the same manner are conjugated the derivatives:

moudre	{ <i>to grind</i> (knives, etc.)	| remoudre	<i>to grind again</i> (corn, etc.)
		| rémoudre	<i>to grind again</i> (knives, etc.)

PRENDRE, to take.

Part. pres. prenant.—*Part. past.* pris.

IND. pres. prends, prends, prend, pren-ons, --ez, prennent.

Imperf. prenais.—*Pret.* pris.—*Fut.* prendrai.—*COND.* prendrais.

IMPER. prends, prene, prenons, prenez, prennent.

SUBJ. pres. prenn-e, --es, --e, pren-ions, --iez, prennent.

Imperf. priasse.

In the same manner are conjugated:

apprendre	<i>to learn</i>	entreprendre	<i>to undertake</i>
désapprendre	<i>to unlearn</i>	se méprendre	<i>to mistake</i>
comprendre	<i>to understand</i>	reprandre	<i>to retake, to reply</i>
déprendre	<i>to separate</i>	surprendre	<i>surprise</i>

ROMPRE, to break.

Part. pres. rompant.—*Part. past.* rompu.

IND. pres. romps, romps, rompt, romps, —ez, —ent.

Imperf. rompais.—*Pret.* rompis.—*Fut.* romprai.—*COND.* rompra.

IMPER. romps, rompe, romps, rompez, rompent.

SUBJ. pres. rompe.—*Imperf.* rompiasse.

In the same manner are conjugated *corrompre*, to corrupt; and *interrompre*, to interrupt.

SOURDRE, to rush out of the ground, as water, has only the infinitive, and *il* or *elle sourd*.

EXERCISE.

I took great pains. Grind those razors with care.
ind-3 beaucoup de sing. rasoir m.
 Those knives (are just) ground. This corn is not sufficiently
couteau m. venir d'être grain m. assez
 ground, it should be ground again. I wish that you would
 falloir ind-1 le inf-1 vouloir cond-1
 take courage. What news have you learnt? Philosophy
subj-2 f. pl. art.
 comprehends logic, ethica, physics, and
art logique f. art morale f. art. physique, f. art.
 metaphysics. It is (with difficulty) that he divests himself of
métaphysique f. Ce difficilement que se dépandre
 his opinions. He has forgotten all that he knew. I fear
déapprendre ce que savoir ind-2 craindre que
 you will undertake a task above your strength. Could
ne subj-1 tâche f. au-dessus de forces, f.
 he have been mistaken so grossly? I reproved him
se méprendre cond-2 grossièrement reprendre ind-2 2 1
 continually for his faults, but (to no purpose). We surprised
sans cesse de défaut inutilement ind-3
 the enemy, and cut them to pieces. In the middle of the
pl. tailler 1 2 en 2
 road the axle-tree of our carriage broke. Bad
chemin essieu m. carrosse se rompre ind-3 art. mauvais

company corrup^t the minds of young people. Why
compagnie pl. sing. gens *pourquoi*
 you interrupt your brother, when you see him busy?
quand 2 1 *occupe*

SUIVRE, to follow.

Part. pres. suivant—Part. past. suivi.
IND. pres. suis, suis, suit, suivons, suivez, suivent.
Imperf. suivais—Pret suivi—Fut. suivrai—COND. suivrais.
IMPER. suis, suive, suivons, suivez, suivent.
SUBJ. pres. suive—Imperf. suivisse.

Poursuivre, is conjugated in the same way.

S'ensuire also, but it has the third persons singular and plural only.

VAINCRE, to conquer, to vanquish.

Part. pres. vainquant—Part. past. vaincu.
IND. pres. vaincs, vaincs*, vainc,* vainqu-ons,* —ez, —ent.*
Imperf. vainquais—Pret. vainquis—Fut. vaincrai—COND. vain-
crais.
SUBJ. pres. vainque—Imperf. vainquisse.

*All the persons of this verb, marked with an asterisk, are very little used. But its derivative, *convaincre*, to convince, is generally used in all its tenses and persons.

EXAMPLES.

(For a long while) we followed that method, which was only
long-temps 2 ind-3 l f. ind-2 ne
 calculated to mislead us. What is the consequence? See the errors
propre que à égarer 2 l que s'ensuire f.
 that have sprung from this proposition, which appeared so
s'ensuire ind-4 — f. ind-2
 true. We pursued our course when some cries, which
*suire ind-2 chemin lorsque de art. cri, m. pl **
 came from the midst of the forest struck terror into our
sortir fond m. forêt f. porter ind-3 art. — f.

soula. The Greeks *vanquished* the Persians at Marathon, Salamis
Grec Pers à pr. Salamin-
 Plata, and Mycale. I have at last *convinced* him, by
pr. Platae, pr. convaincre enfn ind-4 2
 such powerful reasons, of the greatness of his fault, that I
des si-2 fort 3 f. pl. 1 énormité fonte f.
 (have no doubt) but he will repair it.
ne douter nullement que ne réparer subj-1 2 1

BATTE, to beat.

Part. pres. battant—Part. past. battu.
IND. pres. ba's, bats, bat, battons, battes, battent.
Imperf. battais—Pret. battis—Fut. battrai—COND. battrais.
IMPER. bats—SUBJ. pres. batte—Imperf. battisse.

Conjugate in the same manner :

<i>abattre</i>	<i>to pull down</i>	<i>combattre</i>	<i>to fight</i>
<i>rabattre</i>	<i>to abate</i>	<i>débattre</i>	<i>to debate</i>
<i>rebattre</i>	<i>to beat again</i>	<i>s'ébattre</i>	<i>to be merry</i>

VIVRE, to live.

Part. pres. vivant—Part. past vécu.
IND. pres. vis, vis, vit, vivons, vivez, vivent.—Imperf. vivais.
Pret. vécus—Fut. vivrai—COND. vivrais—IMP. vis.
SUBJ. pres. vive—Imperf. vécuise.

In the same manner are conjugated *revivre*, to re-
 vive ; and *survivre*, to survive.

EXERCISE.

It is during winter that they *thresh* the corn in cold
Ce pendant art. on battre froid 2
 countries. The enemy were so completely *beaten* in that
art. pays m. pl. 1 pl. ind-3 moment
 engagement, that they were forced to abandon thirty leagues of the
rencontre f. de lieue f.
 country. The cannon *beat down* the tower. They were *fighting*
pays canon abattre ind-3 tour f. ind-2
 with unexampled rage when a panic terror
un sans exemple 2 acharnement m. 1 panique 2 = f. 1
 made them take flight, and dispersed them in an instant.
ind-3 2 leur 1 art. fuite f. 2 — m.

Rest these mattresses again. Happy those who live in
rebatte *mattelas m.* *

solitude! Long live that good king! He
 art. *retraite f.* Que 1 *long-temps* 4 subj-1 3 2 2 2
 did not long survive a person who was so dear to him.
survivre ind-3 à f. 2 1

Fathers live again in their children. He was in a great
 art.

dejection of mind; the news which he has received has
accablement f. pl. *ent fait f. pl.*
 revived him.
inf-1 2 1

BRANCH II. *Plaire.*

Braire, to bray; is used in the third persons only and in the following tenses: *il brait, ils braient, il braira, ils brairont, il brairait, ils brairaient.*

FAIRE, to do.

Part. pres. faisant—Part. past. fait.

IND. pres. fais, fais, fait, faisons, faites, font.

Imperf. faisais—Pret. fis—Fut. ferai—COND. ferais.

IMPER. fais, fasse, faisons, faites, fassent.

SUBJ. pres. fasse, fassions—Imperf. fisse.

Some authors, on account of the similarity of sound, write *nous fesons, fesant*, etc. but it is contrary to the opinion of the French Academy.

In the same manner are conjugated:

<i>contrefaire</i>	<i>to counterfeit</i>	<i>refaire</i>	<i>to do again</i>
<i>défaire</i>	<i>to undo</i>	<i>satisfaire</i>	<i>to satisfy</i>
<i>redéfaire</i>	<i>to undo again</i>	<i>surfaire</i>	<i>to exact</i>
<i>forfaire*</i>	<i>to trespass</i>	<i>méfaire*</i>	<i>to misdo</i>
<i>malfaire</i>	<i>to do ill</i>	<i>parfaire</i>	<i>to perfect</i>

TRAIRE, to milk (defective).

Part. pres. trayant—Part. past. trait.

IND. pres. trais, trais, trait, trayons, trayez, traient.

Imperf. trayais—(No pret.)—Fut. trairai—COND. trairais.

IMPER. trais, traie, trayons, trayez, traient.

SUBJ. pres. traye—(No imperf.)

* These four verbs are only used in this form, and the partic. past. *brûlé, méfait, méfait and parfait.*

Conjugate in the same manner :

attirer	to allure	retraitre	to seduce
abstraire	to abstract	retraire	to redeem
distraindre	to divert	soustraire	to subtract
extraire	to extract		

All these verbs are principally used in the compound tenses.

EXERCISE.

What will you have him do? Do not make (so much) *Que voudriez-vous qu'il sub-1 tant*
 noise. Do they never exact? That woman mimicked all the per-
de bruit ind-2 f.
 sons whom she saw. It was with difficulty he (divested himself)
pl. voir ind-3 Ce ind-3 peine que se défaire ind-3
 of the false opinions which had been given him in his infancy.
*— f. on ind-2 * 2 données 3 lui 1 f.*
 Is there no chance of our making again another trip to
n'est-il donc pas probable que sub-1 le voyage de
 Paris, Rome, and Naples. He says that you have offended him,
pr. pr. dit 2 offensé 3 1
 and that, if you do not satisfy him quickly, he will find means
promptement art. moyen
 to satisfy himself. Every night, she milked her
sing. de se lui-même art. soir m. pl. ind-2
 cows, which gave her a (great quantity) of wholesome milk.
*qui ind-2 lui abondant 2 * et sein 3 lait m. 1.*
 Have you milked your goats? Are the cows milked?
chèvres f. pl. vaches f. pl. art.
 Salt is good to entice pigeons. You will never know the
Sel m. pour attirer art. m. pl. connaître
 nature of bodies, if you abstract not their accessory qualities
art. = 2 = 1 l.
 from those which are inherent (in them). The least thing (diverts
2 — leur 1 moindre le
 his attention). Will you not extract that charming passage? Have
extraire — m.
 you darned your gown? Should he not redeem that land?
retravailler devoir cond-1

What! would you have me screen those guilty
*Quoi! ind-1 * que je soustraire sub-1 coupable ca. pl.*
 persons from the rigour of the laws?
** à rigueur f.*

BRANCH III. *Paraître.*

NAÎTRE, to be born.

Part. pres. naissant—*Part. past.* né.
IND. pres. nais, nais, naît, naissons, naissez, naissent.
Imperf. naissais—*Pret.* naquis—*Fut.* naîtrai—*COND.* naîtra.
IMPER. nais—*SUBJ. pres.* naisse—*Imperf.* naquisse.

This verb takes the auxiliary *être*; but its derivative, *renâître*, to be born again; has no participial past, and, consequently, no compound tenses.

PAÎTRE, to graze (defective).

Part. pres. paissant—*Part. past.* pu.
IND. pres. pais, pais, pait, paissions, paissez, paissent.
Imperf. paissais—(No pret.)—*Fut.* paîtrai—*COND.* paîtra.
IMPER. pais—*SUBJ. pres.* païsse—(No imperf.)

Repâître, to feed to bait is, like *paraître*, regular in all its tenses, making in the *pret. IND.* je repus, etc. and in the *imperf. SUBJ.* je repusse, etc.

EXERCISE.

Was not Virgil born at Mantua? It is from that poisoned
ind-3 Mantoue Ce empoisonné 2
 source that have arisen all the cruel wars that have desolated
f. 1 que nature f. pl. 2 f. pl. 1 désoler
 the universe. The fable says that, as soon as Hercules had
f. dit aussitôt que Hercule à m. ind-2
 (cut off) one of the heads of the hydra, others sprang up.
couper tête f. pl. hydre f. d'autres 2 il en renâître
 While their united flocks fed on the
nd 2 1 tandis que réuni 2 troupeau

under and flowery grass, they sung under the shade of a
 2 *fleur* 3 *herbe* f. 1 *chanter* ind-2 à *ombre*
 tree the sweets of rural life. Your horses have
douceur f. pl. *art* *champêtre* 2 f. 1
 got fed to-day; you must have them fed. That is a
repaitre d'aujourd'hui; il faut leur faire donner à manger Ce
 man who thirsts after nothing but blood and slaughter.
*ne se repaître de 2 * que 1 pr. carnage* m.

145. BRANCH IV. *Réduire*.

Bruire, to roar; is defective, it has only the *part. pres.* *bruyant*, oftener used as an adjective, as: *des flots bruyans*; and the two third persons of the *imperf. ind.* *il bruait, ils bruyaient*.

Luire, to shine; and *reluire*, to glitter; make the *part. past.* *lui, relui*, neither the *pret. ind.* nor *imperf. subj.* are in use.

Nuire, to hurt; making *part. pres.* *nuisant, past. nui*, is regular in all its tenses.

CONFIRE, to pickle or preserve.

Part. pres. *confisant*—*Part. past.* *confit*.

ind. pres. *conf-is, —is, it, —isons, —isez, —isent*.

Imperf. *confissais*—*Pret* *confis*—*Fut.* *confirai*.

COND. *confirais*—*IMP.* *confis*—*SUBJ. pres.* *confisse*.

Imperf. *confisse*.

Its derivative *déconfire*, to discomfit, is rather obsolete.

Circoncire, to circumcise, and *suffire*, to suffice, make in the *part. past.* *circoncis* and *suffi*, the rest is as *confire*.

EXERCISE.

The thunder which roared from afar announced
tonnerre m. *bruire* ind-2 *dans* art. *lointain* m ind-2

a dreadful storm. They heard the roaring of the waves of
terrible 2 *orage* m. 1 *On* ind-2 * *inf-1* * *Not* m. pl.

an agitated sea. That street is too noisy for those who love
agité 2 *mer* f. 1 *rue* f. *bruyant*

retirement and study. I (have a glimpse of) some thing
art. retraite f. *art.* *entrevoir* *quelque chose*

that shines through those trees. A ray of hope shone upon
en travers de *rayon* m. *ind-4* 2 *

us in the midst of the misfortunes which overwhelmed us. Every
1 à *milieu* *malheur* m. pl. *accabler* ind-2

thing is well rubbed in that house: every thing shines, even to the
frotté *y reluire jusqu'à*

floor. Would he not have hurt you in that affair? Jesus
plancher m. *cond-2* 1

Christ was circumcised (a week) after his birth. Shall you
huit jours *naissance* f.

preserve these peaches with sugar, with honey, or with
confire à *art. sucre* m. *art. miel* m.

brandy? Have you pickled cucumbers,
art. eau-de-vie f. *de* *art. concombre* m. *pr-art.*

purslane, and sea-fennel? If he loses his law-suit, all his
pourpier m. *pr. art. verge-pierre* f. *biens* m.

property will not suffice.

Dis

Dis, to say.

Part. pres. disant—*Part. past.* dit.

IND pres. dis, dis, dit, disons, DITES,* disent.

Imperf. disais—*Pret.* dis—*Fut.* dirai—*COND.* dirais.

IMPER. dis, dise, disons, DITES,* disent.

SUBJ. pres. dise—*Imperf.* disse.

* *Redire*, to say again, conformably to its primitive, makes *redites*, but

contredire	to contradict	} make	{	vous contredisez
di-dire	to say			vous di-disez
interdire	to forbid			vous interdisez
médire	to slander			vous médisez
prédire	to foretell			vous prédisez

Maudire is conjugated like *punir* with the exception of the participle past which is *maudit*, *e* *maudissant*, *je maudis*, *vous maudissez*; *je maudissais*; *je maudis*; *je maudirais*; *je maudirais*; *que je maudisse*; *que je maudisse*; *maudis*.

ÉCRIRE, to write.

Part. pres. écrivant—*Part. past.* écrit.

IND. pres. écris, écris, écrit, écriv-*ons*, —*ez*, *ent*.

Imperf. écrivais—*Pret.* écrivis—*Fut.* écrirai—*COND.* écrirais

IMP. écris—*SUBJ. pres.* écrive—*Imperf.* écrivisse.

Conjugate in the same manner :

circonscrire	to circumscribe	proscrire	to proscribe
décrire	to describe	récrire	to write again
inscrire	to inscribe	souscrire	to subscribe
prescrire	to prescribe	transcrire	to transcribe

LIRE, to read.

Part. pres. lisant—*Part. past.* lu.

IND. pres. lis, lis, lit, lisons, lisez, lisent—*Imperf.* lisais.

Pret. lus—*Fut.* lirai—*COND.* lirais—*IMPER.* lis.

SUBJ. pres. lise—*Imperf.* lusse.

In the same manner are conjugated :

élire	| to elect	| relire	| to read over again
-------	----------	--------	--------------------

RIRE, to laugh.

Part. pres. riant—*Past. ri*—*IND. pres.* ris, ris, rit, rions, riez, rient.

Imperf. riait—*Pret.* ria—*Fut.* rirai—*COND.* rirais.

IMPER. ris—*SUBJ. pres.* rie—*Imperf.* risse.

Sourire, to smile ; is conjugated as *rire*.

Frîre, to fry ; besides the present of the infinitive, has only the *part. past.* frit ; *INDIC. pres.* je fris, tu fris, il frit ; *fut.* je frirai, tu, etc. ; *COND.* je frirais, tu, etc. ; *IMPER.* sing. fris. But it has all the compound tenses. The forms that are deficient are fully supplied by *faire*, prefixed to *frîre*, as : *faisant frîre*, *je faisais frîre*, etc.

EXERCISE

Always *speak* the truth, but with discretion. Never *contradict*
personne en *f.*

(any one) in public. You thought you were serving me in
personne en *passer ind-4* * * *inf-1 2 1 en*

speaking thus: well, (let it be so); you shall not be contradicted
parler ainsi eh bien soit en dédire

What! would you forbid him all communication with his friends?
*Quel! * interdire 2 1 — f.*

That woman slandered every one. You had foretold that event.
ind-2 de ind-6

Let us curse no one; let us remember that our laws forbid us
ne personne se rappeler défendre

to curse even those who persecute us. Write down every day
do persécuter art. pl.

the reflections which you make on the books which you read.

Did he not read that interesting history with (a great deal) of
ind-2 2 1

pleasure? God is an infinite being — who is circumscribed neither
2 être m. 1 ne ni

by time nor place. Shall you not describe that
art. ni pr. art. lieu m. pl.

dreadful tempest? Have those soles and whittings fried
horrible 2 f. 1 faire 1 — pron. merlan 3 inf-1 2

If you wish to form your taste, read the classics over and over.
*vouloir * lire et relire les anciens*

He was elected by a great majority of voices. We have laughed
ind-4 e — f.

heartily and have resolved to (go on). He did not answer
de bon cœur nous résolu de continuer répondre

him (any thing): but he smiled at him, as a sign of appro-
*ind-3 lui rien ind-3 2 * lui 1 en **

oation, in the kindest manner.

— *de gracieux 2 air m. 1*

Boire, to drink.

Part. pres. buvant—Past. bu.

IND. pres. bois, bois, boit, buvons, buvez, boivent.

Imperf. buvais—Pret. bus—Fut. boirai—Cond. boirais.

IMPR. bois, boive, buvons, buvez, boivent.

SUBJ. pres. boiv-e, —es, e, buvions, buviez, boivent.

Imperf. busse.

In the same manner are conjugated.

to drink again | *s'emboire to imbibe. a technical term used in painting*

Clore, to close; has only the *part. past.* clos; *ind. pres.* je clos, tu clos, il clôt; *fut.* je clorai, tu cloras, etc.; *cond.* je clorais, tu clorais, etc.; and the *IMP.* sing. clos.

Déclare, to disclose, *enclore*, to enclose, are defective in the same tenses as *close*, but *forclore*, to debar, a law term, is only used in the *inf.* and *part. past.* forclos.

Éclore, to be hatched, as birds, or to blow like a flower, has only these forms; *inf.* éclore; *part. past.* éclos; *ind. pres.* il éclôt, ils éclosent; *fut.* il éclora, ils écloront; *cond.* il éclorait, ils écloraient; and the *subj. pres.* qu'il éclore, qu'ils éclosent. But its compound tenses, which are formed with *être*, are much used.

CONCLURE, to conclude.

Part. pres. concluant—*Past.* conclu.

IND. pres. conclu, conclus, conclut, conclu-ona, —ez, —ent.

Imperf. concluais—*Pret.* conclus—*Fut.* conclurai.

COND. conclurais—*IMPER.* conclus—*SUBJ. pres.* conclue.

Imperf. conclusse.

Exclure, to exclude; is conjugated like *conclure*, except that it has two participles past, *exclu*, *e*, *exclus*, *e*.

CROIRE, to believe.

Part. pres. croyant—*Past.* cru.

IND. pres. crois, crois, croit, croyons, croyez, croient.

Imperf. croyais—*Pret.* crus—*Fut.* croirai—*COND.* croirais.

IMPER. crois, croie, croyons, croyez, croient.

Imperf. crusse.

It has no derivative but *accroire*, which is only used with *faire*, as: *faire accroire* or *en faire accroire*, to impose upon credulity; and *s'en faire accroire*, to be self-conceited.

EXERCISE.

Seated under the shade of palm-trees, they milked their
assis à art. palmier pl. traite ind-2

goats and ewes, and merrily drunk that nectar,
chèvre f. pl. pron. brebis f. pl. avec joie 2 ind-2 1 m.
 which (was renewed) every day. *Would they drink their*
se renouveler ind-2 art. pl. boire cond-1
 wine iced? This window does not close well; when you
à la glace f.
 have made some alterations (in it), it will close better. He
ind-3 2 3 réparation f. 4 y 1 silenc
 had scarcely closed his eyes, when the noise which they made
*à peine ind-6 * art. que que en ind-3*
 at his door, awoke him. *Have they not enclosed the suburbs*
à réveiller ind-3 on faubourg
within the city? Will you enclose your park with a wall,
m. pl. ville f. parc de mur m.
 or a hedge? Put the eggs of those silk-worms in the
pr. hâie f. mettes sur m. pl. ver-à-sole m. pl. à
 sun, that they may hatch. Those flowers just blown,
seul m. sub-1 nouvellement
 exhale the sweetest fragrance. When did they conclude this
répandre dous parfum m. ind-4
 treaty? His enemies managed so well, that he was unanimously
traité m. faire ind-3 ind-3 unanimement
 excluded from the company. *Do you think me capable of so*
compagnie f. croire ind-1
 black an act? He possesses some kind of knowledge; but
noir 2 trait m. 1 avoir espèce savoir
 (not so much as he thinks).
il s'en fait trop accroître.

146. BRANCH V. *Joindre.*

Poindre, to pierce, to peep, to dawn, has only besides the infinitive *il point, il poindra*.

147. GENERAL GUIDE TO THE CONJUGATION.

The following Tables, which exhibit at one view all the primitive tenses, both of the regular and irregular verbs, and most of the defective, with references to the pages, where the other tenses are to be found, will, it is presumed, prove useful to those who will consult them.

TABLE OF THE PRIMITIVE TENSES OF THE FOUR
REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

INFIN.	PARTICIPLES.		INDICATIVE.	
PRESENT.	PRESENT.	PAST.	PRESENT.	PAST.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Parler	| Parlant	| Parlé	| Je parle	| Je parlai	| 173
--------	---------	-------	----------	-----------	-----

SECOND CONJUGATION.

FIRST BRANCH. *Punir.*

Punir	| Punissant	| Puní	| Je punis	| Je punis	| 182
-------	-----------	------	----------	----------	-----

SECOND BRANCH. *Sentir.*

Sentir	| Sentant	| Sentí	| Je sens	| Je sentis	} 186
Mentir	| Mentant	| Mentí	| Je mens	| Je mentis	
Se repentir	| Se repentant	| Se repentí	| Je me repens	| Je me repen- tis	
Partir	| Partant	| Partí	| Je pars	| Je partis	
Sortir	| Sortant	| Sortí	| Je sors	| Je sortis	
Dormir	| Dormant	| Dormí	| Je dors	| Je dormis	
Servir	| Servant	| Serví	| Je sers	| Je servis	

THIRD BRANCH. *Ouvrir.*

Ouvrir	Ouvrant	Ouvert	J'ouvre	J'ouvris	} 183
Offrir	| Offrant	| Offert	| J'offre	| J'offris	
Souffrir	| Souffrant	| Souffert	| Je souffre	| Je souffris	

INFIN.	PARTICIPLES.		INDICATIVE.	
PRESENT.	PRESENT.	PAST.	PRESENT.	FUTURE.

FOURTH BRANCH. *Tenir.*

<i>Tenir</i>	<i>Tenant</i>	<i>Tenu</i>	<i>Je tiens</i>	<i>Je tiens</i>	} 183
<i>Tenir</i>	<i>Tenant</i>	<i>Tenu</i>	<i>Je tiens</i>	<i>Je tiens</i>	

FIFTH BRANCH. *Courir.*

<i>Courir</i>	<i>Courant</i>	<i>Couru</i>	<i>Je cours</i>	<i>Je cours</i>	} 184
---------------	----------------	--------------	-----------------	-----------------	-------

FOURTH BRANCH. *Recevoir.*

<i>Recevoir</i>	<i>Recevant</i>	<i>Reçu</i>	<i>Je reçois</i>	<i>Je reçois</i>	} 190
<i>Devoir</i>	<i>Devant</i>	<i>De</i>	<i>Je dois</i>	<i>Je dois</i>	

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

FIRST BRANCH. *Rendre.*

<i>Répandre</i>	<i>Répandant</i>	<i>Répandu</i>	<i>Je répands</i>	<i>Je répands</i>	} 195
<i>Rendre</i>	<i>Rendant</i>	<i>Rendu</i>	<i>Je rends</i>	<i>Je rends</i>	
<i>Fondre</i>	<i>Fondant</i>	<i>Fondu</i>	<i>Je fonde</i>	<i>Je fonde</i>	
<i>Pondre</i>	<i>Pondant</i>	<i>Pondu</i>	<i>Je ponds</i>	<i>Je ponds</i>	
<i>Répondre</i>	<i>Répondant</i>	<i>Répondu</i>	<i>Je réponds</i>	<i>Je réponds</i>	
<i>Tondre</i>	<i>Tondant</i>	<i>Tondu</i>	<i>Je tonds</i>	<i>Je tonds</i>	
<i>Perdre</i>	<i>Perdant</i>	<i>Perdu</i>	<i>Je perds</i>	<i>Je perds</i>	
<i>Mordre</i>	<i>Mordant</i>	<i>Mordu</i>	<i>Je mords</i>	<i>Je mords</i>	
<i>Tordre</i>	<i>Tordant</i>	<i>Tordu</i>	<i>Je tords</i>	<i>Je tords</i>	

SECOND BRANCH. *Plaire.*

<i>Plaire</i>	<i>Plaisant</i>	<i>Plu</i>	<i>Je plais</i>	<i>Je plais</i>	} 196
<i>Taire</i>	<i>Taisant</i>	<i>Tu</i>	<i>Je tais</i>	<i>Je tais</i>	

THIRD BRANCH. *Paraître.*

<i>Paraître</i>	<i>Paraissant</i>	<i>Paru</i>	<i>Je paraïs</i>	<i>Je paraïs</i>	} 197
<i>Croître</i>	<i>Croissant</i>	<i>Cru</i>	<i>Je crois</i>	<i>Je crois</i>	
<i>Connaître</i>	<i>Connaissant</i>	<i>Connu</i>	<i>Je connais</i>	<i>Je connais</i>	
<i>Repaitre</i>	<i>Repaisant</i>	<i>Repu</i>	<i>Je repais</i>	<i>Je repais</i>	

FOURTH BRANCH. *Réduire.*

<i>Réduire</i>	<i>Réduisant</i>	<i>Réduit</i>	<i>Je réduis</i>	<i>Je réduis</i>	} 198
<i>Instruire</i>	<i>Instruisant</i>	<i>Instruit</i>	<i>J' instruis</i>	<i>J' instruis</i>	

FIFTH BRANCH. *Craindre.*

<i>Craindre</i>	<i>Craignant</i>	<i>Craint</i>	<i>Je crains</i>	<i>Je crains</i>	} 199
<i>Peindre</i>	<i>Peignant</i>	<i>Peint</i>	<i>Je peins</i>	<i>Je peins</i>	
<i>Joindre</i>	<i>Joignant</i>	<i>Joint</i>	<i>Je joins</i>	<i>Je joins</i>	

148. PRIMITIVE TENSES OF THE IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS.

INFIN.	PARTICIPLES		INDICATIVE.	
PRESENT.	PRESENT.	PAST.	PRESENT.	PAST.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Allez	Allez	Allé	Je vais	J'irai	221
-------	-------	------	---------	--------	-----

SECOND CONJUGATION.

FIRST BRANCH. *Parler.*

Parler	Parlant	Parlé	Je parle	Je parlerai	222
Habiter	Habitant	Habité	Je habite	Je habiterai	
Châtrer	Châtrant	Châtré	Il châtré		

SECOND BRANCH. *Sentir.*

Bouillir	Bouillant	Bouilli	Je bouille	Je bouillirai	227
Ébouillir		Ébouilli			
Faillir	Faillant*	Failli	Je faulx*	Je faillirai	
Défaillir		Défailli	Nous défaillois	Je défaille	
Fuir	Fuyant	Fui	Je fuis	Je fuirai	
Mourir	Mourant	Mort	Je meurs	Je mourrai	
Acquiescer	Acquiesçant	Acquis	J'acquiesce	J'acquiescerai	
Conquiescer	Conquiesçant	Conquis	Je conquiesce	Je conquiescerai	
Ouvrir	Ouvrant*	Ouvert		J'ouvre	
Vêtir	Vêtant	Vêtu	Je vêts	Je vêtirai	
Revêtir	Revêtant	Revêtu	Je revêts	Je revêtirai	

THIRD BRANCH. *Ouvrir.*

Cueillir	Cueillant	Cueilli	Je cueille	Je cueillirai	221
Saillir	Saillant	Sailli	Il saillit	Il saillira	
Tressaillir	Tressaillant	Tressailli	Je tressaillie	Je tressaillirai	

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Recevoir.

Avoir	Ayant	Eu	J'ai	J'eus	223
Recevoir		Chu			
Choisir		Déchu	Je déchois	Je déchus	
Échoir	Échéant	Echu	Il échoit	J'échus	

N.B. The forms marked with an asterisk are rather obsolete.

INFIN.	PARTICIPLES.		INDICATIVE.	
PRESENT.	PRESENT.	PAST.	PRESENT.	PAST.
Falloir		Fallu	Il faut	Il fallut
Mouvoir	Mouvant	Mu	Je meus	Je mus
Promouvoir		Promu		Je promus*
Pleuvr	Pleuvant	Plu	Il pleut	Il plut
Pouvoir	Pouvant	Pu	Je puis	Je pus
Savoir	Sachant	Su	Je sais	Je sus
Seoir*	Seyant		Il sied	
Seoir*	Séant	Sis		
Assoir	Assoyant	Assis	J'assieds	J'assis
Sursoir		Surais	Je sursois	Je sursis
Voir	Voyant	Vu	Je vois	Je vis
Prévoir	Prévoyant	Prévu	Je prévois	Je prévis
Pourvoir	Pourvoyant	Pourvu	Je pourvois	Je pourvus
Valoir	Valant	Valu	Je vauz	Je valus
Vouloir	Voulant	Voulu	Je veux	Je voulus

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

FIRST BRANCH. *Rendre.*

Résoudre	Réolvant	Résous, résolu	Je résous	Je résolus	240
Soudre	Solvant				
Absoudre	Absolvant	Absous	J'absous		240
Dissoudre	Dissolvant	Dissous	Je dissous		
Coudre	Cousant	Cousu	Je couds	Je cousis	240
Soudre			Il soud		
Mettre	Mettant	Mis	Je mets	Je mis	240
Moudre	Moulant	Moulu	Je mouds	Je moulus	
Prendre	Prenant	Pris	Je prends	Je pris	240
Rompre	Rompant	Rompu	Je romps	Je rompis	
Suivre	Suivant	Suivi	Je suis	Je suivis	240
S'ensuivre	S'ensuivant	Ensuiwi	Il s'ensuit	Il s'ensuivit	
Valcre	Vainquant	Vaincu	Je vaincs	Je vainquis	162
Battre	Battant	Battu	Je bats	Je battis	
Etre	Etant	Êté	Je suis	Je fus	246
Vivre	Vivant	Vécu	Je vis	Je vécus	

SECOND BRANCH. *Plaire.*

Braire			Il braît		246
Faire	Faisant	Fait	Je fais	Je fis	
Traire	Trayant	Traît	Je trais		246

THIRD BRANCH. *Paraître.*

Naître	Naissant	Né	Je nais	Je naquis	246
Reparaître	Reparaissant		Je renaiss	Ja renaquis*	
Paître	Paissant	Pa	Je pais		246

INFIN.	PARTICIPLES		INDICATIVE.	
PRESENT.	PRESENT.	PAST.	PRESENT.	PRETERST.

FOURTH BRANCH. *Réduire.*

Brûtre	Brûlant	Lui	Je brûle	Je brûlais	249 h
Luire	Luisant	Nui	Je nuis	Je nuisais	
Nuire	Nuisant	Confit	Je confis	Je confisais	
Confire	Confisant	Suffi	Je suffis	Je suffisais	
Suffire	Suffisant	Circoncis	Je circoncis	Je circoncisais	
Circoncire	Circoncisant	Dit	Je dis	Je disais	
Dire	Disant	Médit	Je médie	Je médiais	
Médire	Médissant	Maudit	Je maudis	Je maudisais	
Maudire	Maudissant	Ecrit	J'écris	J'écrivais	
Ecrire	Ecrivant	Lu	Je lis	Je lisais	
Lire	Lisant	Ri	Je ris	Je risais	
Rire	Riant	Frit	Je fris		
Frire		Bu	Je bois	Je buvais	
Boire	Buvant	Clos	Je clos		
Clore, clorre		Conclu	Je conclus	Je conclusais	
Conclure	Concluant	Exclu or ex- clus	J'exclus	J'exclusais	
Exclure	Excluant	Cru	Je crois	Je crus	
Croire	Croyant				

FIFTH BRANCH. *Craindre.*

Poinche	()	Il point	()	251
---------	---	---	----------	---	---	-----

N. B. The derivatives, which are not in this Table, will be found, with the primitives, to which we have given references.

CHAPTER VI.

OF THE PREPOSITIONS.

149. *Prepositions*, so called, from their being *prefixed* to the nouns, which they govern, serve to show the relation which exists between two words. Thus, in this phrase, *le fruit de l'arbre*, the fruit of the tree, *de* expresses the relation between *fruit* and *arbre*. Likewise in this, *utile à l'homme*, useful to man; *à* shows the relation between the noun *homme* and the adjective *utile*. *De* and *à* are *prepositions*, and the word to which they are *prefixed*, is called their *regimen*.

Prepositions being invariable parts of speech, they remain the same whatever be the gender and number of the noun which they precede.

They are generally divided into classes, according to the nature of the relation they serve to express.

Some also require another preposition after them, *de* or *à*, whilst their equivalents in English do not, and *vice versa*.

These peculiarities deserve much attention and will, therefore, be noticed in order.

150. PREPOSITIONS DENOTING PLACE.

CHÉZ. *Il est chez son père*, he is at the house of his father, or at his father's. *Nous sommes chez lui*, we are in his house. *Il est chez lui*, he is at home.

DANS. *Il se promène dans le jardin ;* he is walking in the garden.

DEVANT. *Il est toujours devant mes yeux ;* he is always before my eyes.

DERRIÈRE. *Il ne regarde jamais derrière lui ;* he never looks behind him.

PARMI. *Que de fous parmi les hommes !* how many fools among men !

SOUS. *La taupe vit sous terre ;* the mole lives under ground.

SUR. *Il a le chapeau sur la tête ;* he has his hat on (his head.)

VERS. *L'aimant se tourne vers le nord ;* the loadstone points towards the north.

EXERCISE.

We find less real happiness in an elevated condition than in
 On de 2 bonheur 1 2 f. 1
 a middling state. One is never truly at peace but at home.
 moyen 2 1 véritablement tranquille que soi
 He walked before me. There was a delightful grove behind
 marcher ind-4 avoir ind-2 2 bosquet m. 1
 his house. Among (so many) different nations, there is not one
 tant de 2 1 y en avoir
 that has not a religious worship. Nature displays her riches
 qui sub-1 = 2 culte m. 1 art. déployer
 with magnificence under the torrid zone. Eternal snows
 torride 3 f. 1 de art. 3 5 f. pl. 4
 (are to be seen) on the summit of the Alps. Towards the
 on 1 voir ind-1 2 sommet Alpes f.
 north, nature presents a gloomy and wild aspect.
 art. triste 2 sauvage 3 aspect m. 1

PREPOSITIONS DENOTING ORDER.

AVANT. *La nouvelle est arrivée avant le courrier*
 news is come before the courier.

APRÈS. *Il est trop vain pour marcher après les autres*; he is too proud to walk after other people.

ENTRE. *Elle a son enfant entre les bras*; she holds her child in (for between) her arms.

DEPUIS. *Depuis la création jusqu'à nous*, from the creation to the present time.

DÈS. *Dès son enfance*; from his infancy; *dès sa source*; from its source.

SYNOPSIS.

We (were up) before day-light, (in order to) enjoy the
se lever ind-6 art. * pour jouir de
 magnificent spectacle of the rising sun. After such great
magnifique 2 —m. 1. levant 2 1 de si

faults, it only remained for us to repair them (as well as
faute f. pl. ne rester ind-2 2* 1 que à réparer 2 1 de notre
 we could). Between those two mountains is a deep hollow
mieux profond 3 et creux 2

road. Many very astonishing events (have taken place)
chemin m. 1 * de art. 2 4 3 il s'est passé 1

within these ten years. From my earliest infancy I have had an
depuis * art. tendre *

abhorrence for falsehood.

horreur de art. mensonge m.

PREPOSITIONS DENOTING UNION.

AVEC. *Il faut savoir avec qui on se lie*, we ought to know with whom we associate.

DURANT. *Durant la guerre*, during the war: *durant l'été*, during the summer.

PENDANT. *Pendant l'hiver*, in winter; *pendant la paix*, in time of peace. This preposition denotes a duration more limited than *durant*.

SUIVANT. *Je me déciderai suivant les circonstances*, I shall determine according to circumstances.

SELON. *Le sage se conduit selon les maximes de*

la raison, a wise man acts *according to* the dictates of reason.

EXERCISE.

With wit, politeness, and a little (readiness to
de art. pr. art. peu de prévenance
 oblige) one generally succeeds in the world. We are fit for
réussir en propre à
 meditation during winter. (In the course of) that siege the com-
art. f. pendant siège m.
 mandant of the city made some very successful sallies.
ind-3 de art. heureux 2 sortie f. pl. l.
Besides the exterior advantages of figure and the graces of
= 2 l art. art.
 deportment, she possesses an excellent heart, a correct judgment,
maintien m. avoir 2 l sain 2 jugement l
 and a kind heart. Always act according to the maxims
*sensible 2 l se conduire * f. pl.*
 which I have given you.
inculquer f. pl.

152. PREPOSITIONS DENOTING OPPOSITION.

CONTRE. *Je plaide contre lui*, I plead *against* him.

MALGRÉ. *Il l'a fait malgré moi*, he has done it *in spite of* me.

NONOBTANT. *Nonobstant ce qu'on lui a dit*, *notwithstanding* what has been said to him.

EXERCISE.

We cannot long act (contrary to) our own disposition
*savoir cond-1 agir contre * caractère m.*
notwithstanding all the pains we take to disguise it, it shews
que pour 2 l se mou-
 itself, and betrays us on many occasions. (In vain we
tray trahir 2 l en bien de art. avoir sans
 dissemble; *in spite of* ourselves, we are known at last.
faute en nous connaît à la longue.

153. PREPOSITIONS DENOTING PRIVATION, SEPARATION.

SANS. *Des troupes sans chefs*; troops without commanders.

EXCEPTÉ. *Excepté quelques malheureux*, except, some wretches.

HORS. *Tout est perdu hors l'honneur*, all is lost save honour.

HORMIS. *Tous sont entrés hormis mon frère*, they are all come in except my brother.

EXERCISE.

(Had it not been for) your care, I should have been ignorant all
sans pl. ! en
 my life. All the philosophers of antiquity, except a few
art. très-petit nom-
 ore have held the world to be eternal. All laid down their
croire * * mettre bas *
 arms, except two regiments, who preferred (making their way)
art. m. se faire jour
 through the enemy. Every thing is absurd and ridiculous in
au travers de pl.
 that work, except a chapter or two.

154. PREPOSITIONS DENOTING THE END

ENVERS. *Il est charitable envers les pauvres*, he is charitable to the poor.

TOUCHANT. *Il a écrit touchant cette affaire*, he has written respecting that business.

POUR. *Il travaille pour le bien public*, he works for the public good

EXERCISE.

I have written to you concerning that business, in which I take
 à laquelle
 the most lively interest; and as I know your benevolence to-
 sif 2 1 connaître bienveillance f.
 wards the unfortunate, I (make not the least doubt) that you
 ne douter nullement
 (will carefully attend) (to it) (not so much) for the satisfac-
 ne donner tous vos soins sub-1 2 y 1 moins
 tion of obliging me, as for the pleasure of justifying innocence,
 inf-1 2 1 justifier inf-1 art.
 and confounding calumny.
 pr. confondre art. f.

155. PREPOSITIONS DENOTING CAUSE, MEANS.

PAR, *Il l'a fléchi par ses prières*, he has softened him by his prayers.

MOYENNANT. *Il réussira moyennant vos avis*, he will succeed by means of your counsels.

ATTENDU. *Il ne peut partir, attendu les vents contraires*, he cannot sail on account of contrary winds.

EXERCISE.

Is there any man that has never been softened by tears
 y avoir aucun sub-1 fléchir art.
 or disarmed by submission? Through the precautions which
 ni désarmer art. que
 we took we avoided the rocks of that dangerous coast. Owing
 ind-3 ind-3 écueil m. pl. 2 côte f. 1
 to the bad state of my father's health, I shall not travel this
 2 1 voyager
 year.
 année f.

156. The prepositions *à*, *de*, *en* are so commonly used in French, that they deserve particular attention.

À is generally used to express several relations, as *destination, tendency, place, time, situation*, etc. being often a substitute for various other prepositions: *Ex.*—*destination -to: aller à Londres, to go to London.*—*Tendency -to, toward: courir à sa perte, to hasten to one's ruin.*—*Aim -to, for: aspirer à la gloire, to aspire to glory.*—*Residence -at, in: être à Rome, to be at Rome.*—*Time -at: à midi, at twelve o'clock.*—*Concern -on: à ce sujet, on this subject.*—*Manner -with: supplier à mains jointes, to intreat earnestly.*—*Means -with: peindre à l'huile, to paint in, or with oil; des bas à trois fils, three thread-stockings, that is, with three threads.*—*Situation -at, with: être à son aise, to be at ease.*—*Purpose -for: une table à manger, a dining table.*—*Suitableness -for, to: homme à réussir, a man likely to succeed:—desert, crime à ne pas pardonner, a crime not to be forgiven, etc.*

EXERCISE.

Fathers' give good counsels, and still better examples
 de encore 3 pr. meilleur 1 in. 2
 to your children. A good minister only aims at the glory of
 ne aspirer que à
 serving his country well. When we were in the country we de-
 inf-1 2 pays 3 1 ind-2 à campagne f. con-
 voked the morning to study, we walked at noon,
 s'écarter ind-2 matinée f. art. se promener ind-2 midi
 and at three or four o'clock, we went a hunting. or fishing.
 heure ind-2 à la chasse f. pr. à la pêche f.
 Michael Angelo has painted (a great deal) in fresco. It is a
 Michel Ange beaucoup art. fresque f. ce
 bed with ivory posts, and mahogany feet. That man, with his
 lit in ivoire colonne f. pr. acajou pied art.
 gloomy looks and surly behaviour, seems
 sombre 2 regard m. 1 art. brusque 2 maintien in. 1 pr. à l. ne semble
 fit only to serve as a scarecrow.
 propre que de * épouvantail.

DE is generally used to express *separation, extraction, possession, appurtenance, cause, shift, result*, etc. and supplies the place of several prepositions, as—*from*: *je viens de France*, I come *from* France; *d'un bout à l'autre*, *from* one end to the other.—(*of*: *le palais du roi*, the palace *of* the king; *les facultés de l'âme*, the faculties *of* the soul; *un homme d'esprit*, a man *of* talent. In a partitive sense—*of*: *moitié de*, *quart de*, etc. the half *of*, the fourth *of*, etc.: it is used for **PAB**—*by*: *il est aimé de tout le monde*, he is beloved *by* every body; for—*through*, or *by*, etc.: *mourir de faim*, *de soif*, to die *of* hunger, *of* thirst: *on*, *upon*, *with*: *vivre de fruits*, to live *upon* fruit.—*On account of*, or *for*: *sauter de joie*, to leap *for* joy.

EXERCISE.

I come *from* London, where I have spent a week very agreeably.
où *passé huit jours*

From one end of the horizon to the other, the sky was covered
bout m. *m.* *ciel m. ind-2*

with thick black clouds. The marble *of* Paros is not
épais 2 et noir 3 usage m. pl. 1.

finer than that which we get *from* Carrara. Montaigne, Mad. de
72 qui nous vient Carrare.

Séigné, and la Fontaine, were writers *of* truly original ge-
ind-2 de art. écrivain un 2 3 1

nus. One half *of* the terrestrial globe is covered *with* water.
moitié f. terrestre 2 globe m. 1

and above a (third part) *of* the rest is uninhabited, either through
plus de tiers m. inhabité ou par

extreme heat, or through excessive cold. In that happy
un 2 chaleur f. 1 un = 2 froid m. 1

retreat, we lived *on* the milk *of* our flocks, and the delicious
utile m. ind-2 brebis pr. 2

fruits *of* our orchards.
1 verger m. pl.

EN serves to mark the relations of time, place, situation, etc. and is variously expressed, as, *c'était*

en hiver, it was *during* winter; *être en Angleterre*, to be in England; *aller en Italie*, to go into Italy; *elle est en bonne santé*, she is in good health; *il vaut mieux être en paix, qu'en guerre*, it is better to be at peace than at war; *il l'a fait en haine de lui*, he did it out of hatred to him, etc.

EXERCISE.

He had for a (long while) lived in France; the troubles
 3 * *depuis* 1 * *long-temps* 2 *vivre* ind-2
 which agitated that fine kingdom obliged him to retire to
 ind-4 *royaume* m. ind-4 *de se retirer*
 Switzerland, whence he soon after went to Italy. We were
Suisse *d'où* 3 1 2 *se rendre* ind-4 ind-2
 at peace, and enjoyed all its blessings, when ambition
 pron. *goûter* ind-2 *en* art. *charme* m. art.
 kindled again the flames of war, and forced us to put our
rallumer ind-3 *feu* s. art. ind-3 *de mettre*
 frontiers in a state of defence. The savage is almost continually
frontière f. pl. * *presque toujours*
 at war; he cannot remain at rest. He has acted, on this
pouvoir *en repos* *dans*
 occasion, like a great man.
 — f. *en* *

CHAPTER VII.

OF THE ADVERB.

157. The *adverb* is a word which is generally placed after the verb to express *where*, *when*, and *how* the action is or was done. *Vous chantez bien*, you sing well; *il partira demain*, he will set out to-morrow, etc.

It is often also joined to an adjective, coupled with *être*; *il est vraiment digne d'amitié*, he is truly deserving of friendship.

REMARK. There are adjectives which are sometimes used as adverbs, as, *il chante juste*, he sings right; *elle chante faux*, she sings out of tune; *ils ne voient pas clair*, they do not see clear; *cette fleur sent bon*, this flower has a pleasant smell, etc. The adjectives, *juste*, *faux*, *clair* and *bon*, here supply the place of adverbs.

Adverbs are of different kinds.

The most numerous are those which express manner, and are formed from adjectives, in the following manner.

158. When the adjective ends, in the masculine, with a vowel, the adverb is formed by adding *ment*: as, *modeste-ment*, modestly; *poli-ment*, politely; *ingénu-ment*, ingenuously, etc.

EXCEPTIONS. *Impuni* makes *impunément* and *traître*, *traîtreusement*.

The following six take *é* close before *-ment*, instead of the *e* mute which is in the adjective.

aveuglement	blindly	conformément	conformably
commodément	commodiously	énormément	enormously
incommodément	incommodiously	opiniâtrément	obstinately

159. When the adjective ends with a consonant, in the masculine, the adverb is formed from the feminine termination, by adding *ment*; as, *grand*, *grandement*, greatly; *franc*, *franchement*, frankly; *naïf*, *naïvement*, artlessly, etc.

Observe that the adverbs,

follement	foolishly	bellement	angstly
mollement	effeminately	nouvellement	newly

Are to be considered as coming from the adjectives *fol*, *mol*, *bel*, *nouvel*, and accordingly belong to the foregoing rule.

EXCEPTIONS. *Gentil*, makes *gentiment*, prettily.
The following eight adverbs,

communément	commonly	importunément	importunately
confusément	confusedly	obscurément	obscurely
diffusément	diffusedly	précisément	precisely
expressément	expressly	profondément	deeply

take before *ment* the *é* close instead of the *e* mute, which is in the feminine of the adjectives from which they are derived.

REM. The six following adverbs are not derived from adjectives.

comment	how	profusément	lavishly
incessamment	presently	nuitamment	by night
notamment	especially	sciemment	knowingly

Adjectives ending in *ant*, *ent*, form their adverbs by changing them into *-mment*, as *consta-nt*, *consta-mment*, constantly; *éloque-nt*, *éloque-mment*. Except *lent* and *présent*, the only two of this class which follow the 159th rule, and make *lentement*, *présente ment*.

160. Most adverbs denoting manner, and a few others, have the three degrees of comparison, as, *profondément*, *aussi*, *plus*, or *moins profondément*, *fort*, *bien*, or *très-profondément*, and *le plus profondément*.

The following degrees of comparison are irregular.

Positive.		Comparative.		Superlative.	
bien	well	mieux	better	le mieux	the best
mal	badly	pis	worse	le pis	the worst
peu	little	moins	less	le moins	the least

EXERCISE.

Bourdalone and Masillon have both spoken very eloquently
l'un et l'autre

in evangelical truths; but the former has principally (pro-
évangélique 2 art. 1 or pro-

posed to himself) to convince the mind; the latter has *generally*
poser ind-4 *de convaincre*

had in view to touch the heart. Several of *la Bruyère's* cha-
en vue de art. 2 1

racters are as *finely* drawn as they are *delicately* expressed. Buf-
finement tracé * *

fon is one of the best writers of the last century: he thinks *deeply*,
 2 *siècle m. 1.*

describes *forcibly*, and expresses himself (with dignity). Cor-
fortement, *noblement*

neille and Racine are the two best French tragic poets; the pieces
 3 *tragique* 2 1 f.

of the former are *strongly* but *incorrectly* written; those of the lat-
 2 3 1

ter are more *regularly* beautiful, more *purely* expressed, and more
beaux

delicately conceived.
pensé

161. There are likewise various other sorts of ad-
 verbs :

III	{	Affirmation, as <i>certes</i> , certainly; <i>oui</i> , yea.
		Consent, .. <i>soit</i> , be it so; <i>volontiers</i> , willingly.
		Doubt, .. <i>peut-être que</i> , perhaps.
		Denial, .. <i>non</i> , <i>ne</i> , <i>ne-pas</i> , <i>ne-point</i> , no, not.
		Order, .. <i>premièrement</i> , first: <i>secondement</i> .
		or 2dly, etc. <i>D'abord</i> , at first; <i>ensuite</i> , <i>apres</i> , Rank. afterwards. <i>Avant</i> , <i>auparavant</i> , before.

EXERCISE.

Certainly, either I am mistaken, or the business *passed* (in
ou se tromper *se passer* ind-4

that manner). Do you think that he listens *willingly* to this pro-
ainsi *penser* *écouter* *

posal? Have you ever read in Racine the famous scene of Phœdra's
 f. *Phèdre* 2

delirium? Yes, I have read it, and I own it is one of the
 art. *délire m. 1* *lue la* *avouer que ce*

finest of the French theatre. *Perhaps* you will discover, on a so-
 2 m. 1 *dans*

second perusal of la Fontaine's fables, beauties which you
lecture f. 2 art. 1 de art. f. pl. que
 have not perceived at first. Will you have some? No. Will
*aperçues d'abord 2 1 * en 1 1*
 you not have some? The man who (is willing) to do good is
*4 1 5 * en 2 vouloir * * art. bien m.*
 not stopped by any obstacle. I will pay him what I owe, but
arrêté aucun lui ce que lui
 not all (at once).
non pas à la fois

162. Of—place, or distance.

Où, where; ici, here; là, there.

Deçà, on this side; delà, on that side; partout, every where.

Près, proche, near, nigh; loin, far, etc.

EXERCISES.

We ought first to avoid doing evil; afterwards we ought
*falloir ind-1 * de inf-1 art. **
 to do good. Read books of instruction first, and afterwards
** art. 1 art. 3 4 2*
 you may proceed to those of entertainment. If you will (go
** passer ind-7 72 agrément vouloir s'en*
 away), settle first what is to be done. The painter had
*aller régler auparavant ce que falloir * * inf-1*
 (brought together) in the same picture, several different objects:
*rassembler un * tableau 2 1*
 here, a troop of Bacchantes; there, a troop of young people; here,
Bacchante gens
 a sacrifice; there, a disputation of philosophers. Sesostris carried
dispute pousser ind-4
 his conquests farther than Alexander did afterwards. Call
conquête ne ind-4 depuis passer
 upon your cousin; he lives near here. I cannot see that, if I
rais loger 2 ici 1 savoir cond-1
 am not near it. When he knew where he was, he
*ind-1 auprès * quand savoir cond-1 ind-2*
 began to fear the consequence of his impudence. Contem-
commencer ind-3 à suite

plate (*at a distance*) lofty mountains, if you wish to behold
de loin art. *haut* f. *would* * *découvrir*
 prospects ever varied and ever new.
de art. *etc* m.

268. Some express the present, as, *maintenant*, now; *à présent*, at present; *actuellement*, this moment, etc.

— the past, as, *hier*, yesterday; *avant-hier*, the day before yesterday; *autrefois*, formerly, etc.

— the future, as, *demain*, to-morrow; *après-demain*, the day after to-morrow, etc.

— indeterminate time, as, *souvent*, often; *d'ordinaire*, generally; *quelquefois*, sometimes; *matin*, early; *tôt*, soon; *tard*, late, etc.

EXERCISE

I have finished the work you prescribed me; what do you
achever *que* *ordonner* ind-6 *que*
 wish me to do now? Formerly, education was neglected,
would *que* *je* * *subj*-1 — f. ind-2
 it is now (very much) attended to; it is (to be hoped) that
on * 4. *beaucoup* 3 *s'occuper* 2 *en* 1 *faillir* *espérer*
 new views will be adopted soon. They grieved (at it)
on *de* 3 4 *adopter* ind-7 1 2 *on* *s'affliger* ind-3 *en* 1
 yesterday; now, they laugh (at it); to-morrow, it will no
aujourd'hui *rire* 2 *en* 1 *on* 2 * *ne*
 longer (be thought) of. It is one of those accidents which
plus *penser* ind-7 2 *y* 1 *c'est*
 it is sometimes impossible to avoid. The (evening air) incommoded
de *serain* m. ind-4
 me (very much); I shall not (in future) walk so late. Rude
beaucoup *déormais* *se promener* *mal*
 and coarse criticism generally (does greater injury)
humble 2 *grossier* 3 *en* f. 1 *autre* *plus*
 to the person who indulges himself in it, than to him who is
se permettre 2 * *la* 1 *cette* 2
 the object (of it).
 ? *en* 1

164. Some express quantity ; as, *peu*, little ; *assez*, enough ; *trop*, too much ; *beaucoup*, much, very much ; *tant*, so much, etc. See rule 105.

165. Others express comparison ; as, *plus*, more ; *moins*, less ; *aussi*, so ; *autant*, as much, etc.

EXERCISE.

There are many people who have pretensions ; but very few
y avoir beaucoup de * * * à
 who have such as are well founded. To embellish a subject
en sub-1 * * * *de fondé*, f. pl. * 2 3
too much, frequently betrays a want of judgment and taste. One
1 souvent être fautive
very often experiences disgust in the midst of the most riotous
trouver art. ennuï à *bruyant* 2
 pleasures. She is a giddy and thoughtless woman, who speaks
1 or léger 2 *inconsequent* 3. 1
much and reflects little. She has so much kindness in her, that it
réfléchir *de bonté* * *
 is impossible not to love her. These stuffs are beautiful ; con-
de ne pas *étouffe f.* *assez*
 quently are dear. This book has merit ; but there are
elles coûter cher *du* *y en avoir*
 others' as good. If he has done that, I can do (as much). She
** de* *en autant*
 is six years younger than her brother. Nobody is more inte-
avoir *de moins* *ne*
 rested than you are (in the success) of the affair. You do
** à ce que 1 réussir sub-1* 3 * 2
 not offer enough for this garden ; give something more The more
offrir de *de* 1
 ignorant we are, the less we (believe ourselves so).
*4 on 2 3 ** *croire l'être*

CHAPTER VIII.

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

166. The conjunction is a word which serves to connect words or sentences, as, *Il pleure et rit en même temps*, he cries and laughs at the same time; the word *et* unites the first sentence, *il pleure*, with the second, *il rit*. Likewise in *Pierre et Paul rient*, Peter and Paul laugh; the word *et* unites these two sentences into one, *Pierre rit* and *Paul rit*.

167. There are different kinds of conjunctions, which serve to different purposes.

1st. To unite two sentences or words under the same affirmation, or under the same negation: *et* is used for the affirmation, and *ni*, neither, nor, for the negation.

2ndly. To denote an alternative, or distinction, *ou*, either, or; *soit que*, whether, or; *tantôt*, sometimes, etc.

3rdly. To restrict an idea; *si*, but, except; *quoique*, *encore que*, though, although; *à moins que*, unless, till.

EXERCISE.

Gold *and* silver are metals less useful than iron. To
 art. art. de art. art. *
 listen with joy to a slanderer, *and* to applaud him, is to cherish
 * *médiant* * *lui c'est* * *réchauffer*
 the serpent who stings, that he may sting more effectually. I
piquer afin que *plus sûrement*

like neither flatterers nor the wicked Those who have never:
ne flatteur pl.

suffered, know nothing; they know neither good nor
savoir ne connaître art. bien pl.

evil. You may choose either a happy mediocrity, or a
art mal pl. avoir à choisir de — f. de
 sphere more elevated, but exposed to many dangers. He is an
 — f. *bien de art. — m. ce*

inconsistent man; he is sometimes of one opinion, and sometimes
inconsequent 2 l tantôt avis

of another. I have (nothing more) to say to you, only that I
ne autre chose à sinon que

will have it so. I shall not yet pass to the perusal of the
*vouloir 2 * le 1 * encore lecture f*

authors of the second class, unless you advise me to it.
*ordre m. ne conseiller sub-1 **

4thly. To express conviction, *mais*, but; *cepen-*
dant, yet nevertheless; *néanmoins*, for all that, how-
 ever; *pourtant*, however, though; *toutefois*, *bien que*,
 although.

5thly. To express a condition; *si*, if; *sinon que*,
 except that; *pourvu que*, save that; *à condition que*,
 on condition that.

To express consent; *à la vérité*, indeed; *à la bonne*
heure, very well.

7thly. To explain: *savoir, c'est-à-dire*, viz. that is
 to say; *comme*, as.

EXERCISE.

The serpent bites; it is only a bite; but from this bite the
ce ne que morsure

venom communicates itself to the whole body; the slanderer
venin 2 1 3

speaks; it is but a word; but this word resounds every-
ce ne que parole f. retentir par-

where. (That is) certainly a superb picture; nevertheless, there
tout voilà tableau

is some incorrectness in the design Although Homer, according
in correction pl. desir
 to Horace, slumbers (at times), he is nevertheless the
soumettre sub-1 quelquefois il n'en est pas moins
 first of all poets. You will succeed, provided you act with
art. réussir pourvu que agir sub-1
 vigour. We have within us two faculties seldom united, viz.
en — f.
 imagination and judgment.
art. art.

8thly. To express relation, or parity; *comme*, as; *ainsi*, thus, so; *de même*, as, just as; *ainsi que*, as; *autant que*, as much as; *si que*, as, etc.

9thly. To express augmentation, *d'ailleurs*, besides, furthermore.

For diminution, *au moins*, *du moins*, *pour le moins*, at least.

10thly. To express the cause, or the reason of a thing; *car*, for; *comme*, as; *parce que*, because; *puisque*, since; *pour que*, that, in order that, etc.

EXERCISE.

The most beautiful flowers last but a moment; *les*, human
ne durer que 3
 life passes away. The (greatest part) of mankind have, *like*
art. 2 1 • plupart f. art. homme pl.
 plants, hidden qualities, which chance discovers
art. caché 2 de art. propriété f. 1 art. hasard faire découvrir
 Mad. de Sévigné's letters are models of elegance, simplicity, and taste; besides, they are replete with interesting anecdotes.
2 art. f. 1 de art. pr.
 Nothing is more entertaining than history; besides, nothing is
** de amusant art. **
 more instructive. Circumstances make us known to others,
de art. occasion pl. faire connaître
 and still more to ourselves. I shall always advise you to take
encore conseiller de

the ancients as your guide, at least, leave but seldom
pour * *ne s'écarter que rarement de*
 the way which they have traced for you. We must, at least,
route f. que *tracée* * *falloir*
 know the general principles of a language, before (we take
 2 1 *langue f.* *de* *se*
 upon ourselves) to teach it. Certain people hate grandeur,
mêler de * *enseigner* *f.* *gens* *art.*
 because it lowers and humiliates them, and makes them
les rabaisser *que elle* 2 *leur* 1
 feel the privation of the advantages which they love.
bien pl.

11thly. To draw a conclusion or inference; *or*,
 now; *donc*, then; *par conséquent*, consequently; *c'est*
pourquoi, therefore.

12thly. To express a circumstance; *quand*, *lorsque*,
 when; *pendant que*, *tandis que*, etc. whilst, while;
tant que, as long as; *depuis que*, ever since; *avant*
que, before; *dès que*, *aussitôt que*, *d'abord que*, as
 soon as; *enfin*, in fine, finally, to conclude, etc.

13thly. To express a transition; *car*, for; *en effet*,
 indeed, in effect; *au reste*, besides, otherwise; *à pro-*
pos, now I think of it; *après tout*, after all.

EXERCISE.

We ought to love what is amiable; now, virtue is amia-
 * *falloir* ind-1 * *-ce qui* *art.*
 ble, therefore we ought to love virtue. We ought to practise
 * *art.* * *falloir* *
 what the gospel commands us; now, it commands us, not only
ce que *évangile m.* 2 1 *non*
 to forgive our enemies, but also to love them. Despréaux was
de pardonner à *encore de*
 extremely particular in not coming late, when he was
de la plus grande exactitude à *inf-1 trop* *ind-2*
 invited to dinner; he said that all the faults of those who (keep
 à *ind-2* *défaut* *se*

others waiting) present themselves to those who wait for them.
faire attendre *attendre* *

The pride which possesses us, visible as it is, escapes our eyes,
posséder tout que à

while it manifests itself to the eyes of the public, and displeases
montrer méconter

every one. After we had examined that singular effect, we
art. esprit pl. ind-5 2 1

(inquired into) its causes. We had hardly done, when he came
rechercher ind-3 en art. ind-2 finir que entrer

in. None but an Englishman can (be a judge of) Shak-
** il n'y a que qui subj-1 juger de*

speare: for, what foreigner is sufficiently versed in the English
 language to discover the sublime beauties of that author?

langue f. pour 2 1

168. The conjunction *que* is always placed between two ideas, and serves to connect them, so as to form of the two one proposition, as *je crois que vous vous trompez*, I think you are deceived. The conjugation *that* is almost always understood in English, whereas *que* is not only always expressed in French, but repeated before each member of the proposition. *Je crois que vous vous trompez et que vous ne réussirez pas*, I think you are mistaken, and that you will not succeed.

The frequent use of *que*, under several forms, and the government of conjunctions in general, form an important chapter of the Syntax, No. 388, which must be read attentively.

EXERCISE.

(As long as I live), this image will be before my eyes;
tout ma vie — f. peint
 and if ever the gods permit me to reign, I shall not forget, after
*faire **
 so terrible an example, that a king (is not worthy) to govern,
3 1 2 n'est digne de commander

(nor) happy in his power (but in proportion as) he subjects
et n'est puissance f. qu'autant que soumettre
 it to reason. I am very glad to see that you do not love
art. de

flattery, and *that* one (runs no risk) in speaking to you with
art. ne hasarder rien à inf-l

sincerity.

——— *l.*

CHAPTER IX.

OF INTERJECTIONS.

169. Interjections are words which serve to express the sudden emotion of the soul. The only point to be attended to is not to place them between words which custom has made inseparable. There are interjections for every feeling, or passion, viz. :

<i>pain</i>	ahi, aïe! ouf! ah!
<i>grief</i>	hélas! mon Dieu, etc.
<i>fear</i>	ha! hé!
<i>joy</i>	ah! bon, bon! o!
<i>aversion</i>	fi! fi donc! oh, oh!
<i>disgust</i>	pouah, pouah!
<i>indignation</i>	foin de
<i>imprecation</i>	peste de, la peste de
<i>disbelief</i>	chansons, tarare
Of <i>surprise</i>	ouais
<i>astonishment</i>	oh! bon Dieu! miséricorde! peste!
<i>warning</i>	gare! hem! ho!à, ho!
<i>checking</i>	tout beau! holà.
<i>encouraging</i>	alerte! allons! ça, courage
<i>applauding</i>	bravo, vivat!
<i>encoring</i>	bis, bis
<i>calling</i>	hola! ho! hem!
<i>derision</i>	oh! eh! zest! oh! oh! oh
<i>silence</i>	chut! paix! et.

PART II.

SYNTAX,

OR

GRAMMATICAL CONSTRUCTION

OF

WORDS IN FRENCH.

CHAPTER I.

§ I.

OF THE SUBSTANTIVE OR NOUN.

The substantive has already been considered as to its individual nature, that is to say, its gender and number; its functions in a sentence are now to be considered.

The noun is either the subject of the verb, or the governing word; or it is governed by the verb, or what is called the regimen.

170. EXPLANATION OF THE TERMS REGIMEN DIRECT,
REGIMEN INDIRECT, OR CASES.

In *le père aime ses enfants*, the father loves his children; *le père* is the subject, or governing word, or nominative case; and *enfants* is the governed word, or regimen, or accusative case. *Ses enfants* is also called a direct case, because there is no preposition intervening between it and the verb *aime*.

In *les enfants obéissent au père*, the children obey to the father; *les enfants* is the subject, and *au père* is the governed noun or regimen; and the regimen is called indirect because it has a preposition (*à*) before it. It is also called the dative case.

In *le père envoie un présent à ses enfants*, the father sends a present to his children: *les enfants reçoivent une lettre de leur père*, the children receive a letter from their father, *le père*, *les enfants*, are subjects, *un présent*, *une lettre* are objects, or accusative, or direct cases, *à ses enfants*, *de leur père* are indirect cases because governed by a preposition, the former being what is called the dative, and the latter, the ablative case.

In the construction of a sentence two things are to be considered: 1st. ORDER, or arrangement. 2nd. GOVERNMENT, or cases.

OF ORDER.

171. Order is invariable, 1st. the subject, whether the verb be affirmative or interrogative.

<i>le père aime</i>	<i>le père aime-t-il ?</i>
<i>le père n'aime pas</i>	<i>le père n'aime-t-il pas ?</i>

2ndly. The verb; 3rdly, the direct case or object; 4thly, the indirect case, or dative, or genitive or ablative.

It need hardly be told that if there is not a direct case, the indirect comes next to the verb, *les enfants obéissent au père.*

A deviation from this order or arrangement is called an INVERSION. See *Inversion*, p. 497.

EXERCISE.

My mother received two letters this morning, which (have
recevoir ind-4 faire
 given) her * much pain. Did not the soldiers resist the
ind-4 2 lui 1 bien de la peine résister à ind-4
 commands of their officers? Send this game to Mr. L. Have
ordre Envoyer
 you not thought of your sisters? My uncle (has just) bought a
penser à venir de 437†
 beautiful house in Paris. Has the (nurse maid) given (any thing to
bonne à manger
 eat) to these poor children? Will not James send these
** envoyer ind-7*
 books to his cousin when he has read them?
avoir ind-7

GOVERNMENT OR CASES.

172. By government, is meant the case in which a noun is to be put after the verb, that is, whether it will be direct or accusative, indirect or dative, genitive or ablative, or, to speak more plainly, whether that noun will be preceded by *à* or *de*.

* Personal pronouns *me, te, nous, vous, lui, leur*, in the dative case, are placed before the verb, as is explained in the article *Pronouns Personal* 61. What is said here, must, in fact, be understood solely of nouns substantives.

† See Examples on Difficulties, Chapter XIX, to which this figure refers. The learner must bear in mind that the figures which he will occasionally meet with in the Exercises refer to the general series of rules.

173 DIFFERENCE BETWEEN THE TWO LANGUAGES AS TO THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

To those who are acquainted with the Latin language, this will present little or no difficulty, accustomed as they are to the proper distinction of cases; but to those who are not, and to young ladies principally, the distinction is not so obviously clear. As in learning the French language, much of the task consists in turning English into French; and also, as, when endeavouring to speak, people first think in English, and then translate, a very natural propensity leads them to translate literally, thereby expressing themselves in a way little in accordance with the peculiar construction of the French language. We cannot devise a more efficacious method to guard them from such erroneous proceeding, than by showing the different cases used in the one or the other language, after the corresponding verb.

EXAMPLES.

<i>penser à une chose</i>	<i>to think of a thing</i>
<i>obéir à la loi</i>	<i>to obey the law</i>
<i>dépendre de son père</i>	<i>to be dependent on one's father</i>
<i>mourir de peur</i>	<i>to die with fear</i>
<i>répondre à une question</i>	<i>to answer a question</i>
<i>jouir de sa fortune</i>	<i>to enjoy one's fortune</i>
<i>se réjouir d'une chose</i>	<i>to rejoice at a thing</i>
<i>plaire à ses amis</i>	<i>to please one's friends</i>
<i>se ressouvenir d'un accident</i>	<i>to remember an accident</i>
<i>jouer du violon</i>	<i>to play on the violin</i>
<i>écouter un avis</i>	<i>to listen to an advice.</i>

The list of the instances in which the two languages differ, in respect to the case of the governed words, might easily be extended to several pages, but the few examples here given, must be sufficient to awake

the attention and carefulness of the learner, and to make him sensible of the necessity of mastering this point.

A few more remarks may tend to impress still deeper in his mind the necessity of attending to it.

174. NECESSITY OF ATTENDING TO THE GOVERNMENT,
WITH REGARD TO THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Sometimes, and even frequently, verbs govern a relative pronoun representing some noun antecedently expressed, and such pronoun must be put in the proper case, according to the preposition which would be placed before the noun. For instance, to translate "such is the law *which* you have not obeyed," *telle est la loi QUE vous n'avez pas obéi*, would be wrong, it must be *à LAQUELLE*, because we have seen that *obéir* requires the dative, or the preposition *à*. Again, to say *je vous donne de bons avis AUXQUELS vous n'écoutez pas*, would be literal and wrong, because, as we have seen also, *écouter* is active in French, that is, requires no preposition.

EXERCISE.

I repent my idleness. Do you want this pen? I was
se repentir de *Avoir besoin de* *penser*
 thinking of my poor brother. He did not discharge his duty
à ind-2 *s'acquitter de ind-4* *devoir m.*
 to my satisfaction. I advise you to go and change your shoes.
 ——— *conseiller 2 1 d'aller ** *changer de **
 Have we not mistaken the road? We are very grateful for your
*se tromper de ind-4 ** *être reconnaissant de*
 kindness. You have gone too near the river. Are you not afraid
*s'approcher de ind-4 ** *craindre*
 of that cruel man? We did not expect such an answer. If you
 * 2 1 *'attendre à ind-2* 2 1 3

come to-night we will agree about terms. I am not fond of
ce soir convenir de nos conditions aimer *
 music. I do not know why, but your brother left the
art. savoir sortir de ind-3
 room very abruptly. Do not mind his threats.*
faire attention à

176. KING'S PALACE, ETC. ETC.

This form of the genitive case, or of the case marking possession, is rendered in French in an inverted manner, as if it were *the palace of the king, le palais du roi*.

176. OF COMPOUND WORDS.

SILK-STOCKINGS. DINING-ROOM, ETC. ETC.

These are a sort of compound word of which the order is likewise inverted in French. *Bas de soie, salle à manger*.

Here again also, two different prepositions are used, (*à, de*) the choice of which depends upon the nature of the expression.

De is used when *made of, composed of, coming from, of the, belonging to*, can be understood.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Silk stockings, i. e. stockings made of silk.</i>	}	Bas de soie.
<i>Burgundy wine, i. e. wine coming from Burgundy.</i>		Vin de Bourgogne.
<i>Chambermaid, i. e. maid of the chamber.</i>		Femme de chambre.
<i>Back door, i. e. the door of the back of the house.</i>		Porte de derrière.
<i>Garden seat, i. e. seat belonging to the garden.</i>		Banc du jardin.

* The same difficulty occurs with regard to the preposition used before the infinitive in French. See *Infinitive*, 284, 287.

A is used when *for the purpose of*, *by means of*, *with*, may be understood.

EXAMPLES.

moulin à vent	wind-mill i. e. mill going by wind
moulin à papier	paper-mill i. e. mill for the purpose of making paper
filles aux yeux bleus	blue eyed girl i. e. girl with blue eyes

EXERCISE.

My father's house. The mayor's authority. Shall you go to
père maison maire = aller
 Mrs. B's party? He has bought a gold box. Go out at the
soirée f. achetez or boîte f. sortir par
 front door. What is that long eared animal? Send
devant porte Qu'est-ce que c'est que longues oreilles —
 me the letter box. Where is the oil bottle? Give me a wine glass,
huile verre
 and a tea spoon. Did you observe that man with the
thé cuiller f. remarquer ind-4 le
 long cloak? My sister has given me a penknife with an ivory
*2 1 canif * ivoire*
 handle. They have lately discovered a copper mine on his estate.
manche m. on venir de découvrir cuivre — terre f.
 Where is the milk jug? Is this the hay market?
lait pot foin marché

CHAPTER II.

177. OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE, *A, AN*.

1. The article *a, an*, used in English before national and professional names, in explanatory sentences, is not rendered in French.*

EXAMPLES

I am a Frenchman	<i>je suis Français</i>
he is a grocer	<i>il est épicier</i>
his father was a barrister	<i>son père était avocat</i>
the Duke of York, a prince of the royal blood	<i>le Duc d'York, prince du sang royal</i>
we went to Caen, a large town of Normandy	<i>nous allâmes à Caen, ville considé- rable de Normandie</i>

2. But it is expressed after *c'est*, and also when an adjective is joined to the noun, or when it is followed by a relative pronoun or some other restrictive circumstance.

EXAMPLES

he is an officer	<i>c'est un officier</i>
I am a Frenchman of an illustrious family	<i>je suis un Français d'une illustre famille</i>
I am an unfortunate prince	<i>je suis un prince infortuné</i>

3. The article indefinite is also omitted in French after, *quel, quelle*, in admirative sentences, and before titles of books.

*See personal pronouns, No. 237.

EXAMPLES.

quelle beauté!	what a beauty.
histoire de France	a history of France
il dépense beaucoup d'argent,	he spends much money, a thing
chose qui déplaît à son père	which displeases his father
l'excellent homme que votre	what an excellent man your bro-
frère!	ther is!
la belle ville que Londres!	what a fine city London is!

EXERCISE.

I am a Frenchman and a merchant; after having (been at) the
négoçant *inf-1* *parcours*
most famous (trading towns) in the Levant, my commercial con-
= *échelle* f. pl. *de* — m. *les affaires de mon*
cerns have brought me here. I am an unhappy Frenchman
commerce *conduire*
who, a striking example of the vicissitudes of fortune,
* *mémorable* 2 1 ——— art.
seek an asylum where I may end my days in peace. He was a
chercher *asile* m. *puisse finir* *ce*
man of uncommon probity and of tried virtue; (as a)
un *rare* 2 — f 1 *un éprouvé* 2 1 *pour*
reward for the services he had rendered to the church
le récompenser *de* *que* *ind-2* m. pl. *église*
and state, the king has made him a bishop. Neoptolemus
pr. art. *évêque* *Néoptolème*
had hardly told me that he was a Greek, when I (cried out)
eut à peine dit *que* *s'écrier* *ind-3*
O! enchanting words, after so many years of silence and
doux *parole* f. pl. *de*
unceasing pain, O my son, what misfortune, what storm,
sans consolation 2 *pr.* 1 *malheur* m. *tempête* f.
or rather, what propitious wind has brought you hither to end
plutôt *favorable* 2 1 *conduire* *ind-4* *pour*
my woes? He replied, I am of the island of Scyros, I
mal m. pl. *répondre* *ind-3* *île*
am returning thither; (I am said) (to be) the son of Achilles.
retourner *ind-1* *y* *on dit* *que* *ind-1*
What a noise you make! What a mistake! A letter to Lord L.
We read the account of his death, an event full of interest. He
raconté

has not yet returned, a most unaccountable thing. He is modest
dire revenir fort extraordinaire 2 chose 1
 a rare quality among poets. He is a very rich man.
2 — f. 1 chez les ce

178. The English make use of *a* or *an*, before nouns of measure, weight, and purchase, as: *wheat is sold for a crown a bushel; butter sells for sixpence a pound; wine sold yesterday for forty crowns a hogs-head, it is more than a groat a bottle.* The French make use of the article *le, la*, as: *le blé se vend un écu le boisseau; le beurre se vend six sous la livre; le vin se vendit hier quarante écus le muid, c'est plus de quatre sous la bouteille.*

179. When speaking of *time*, *a* or *an* is expressed in French by the preposition *par*, as: *so much a week, tant par semaine.* A head, is also rendered *par tête*, but *a piece* is rendered by *la pièce*; a man, *par homme* or *chacun*.

EXERCISE.

Corn sells for eight shillings a bushel, veal and
*art. blé m. se vendre * boisseaux art. veau*
 mutton cost ten pence a pound. This lace is sold at half a
*art. mouton coûter livre f. se vendre * 2 1*
 guinea an ell. The best French wines are sold at ten shillings
*3 de France 2 1 se vendre **
 per bottle. I see him twice a year. How much do you give
voir 2 1 deux fois combien donner 2
 him a day? She comes twice a week. We had an excellent
lui 1 faire ind-4
 dinner at five shillings a head. What beautiful peaches, how much
pêche f.
 do they cost a piece?

OF THE ARTICLE DEFINITE.

180. The definite article is used in French, (*un-
 atted in English*) before substantives spoken of in

a general sense; that is before *names of species, virtues, passions, sciences, metals, etc., etc.*, taken in the abstract.

EXAMPLES.

l'homme se repaît trop souvent de chimères *man too often feeds on vain fancies,*
l'or est un métal précieux *gold is a precious metal*
évitons la paresse *let us avoid idleness*

Before nouns specified by an adjective or some particular and individual circumstance.

EXAMPLES.

les hommes à imagination sont toujours malheureux *men of imagination are ever unhappy*
l'homme dont vous parlez est instruit *the man of whom you speak is well informed*
voici la maison de mon père *this is my father's house*

181. It is also used before adjectives used substantively.

EXAMPLES.

le riche ne donne pas toujours j'aime le vert *rich men do not always give I am fond of green*

After *tout* when it means *every, the whole*.

EXAMPLES.

tout le monde le voit *every body sees it*
toute la ville était en l'air *the whole town was in a bustle*

EXERCISE.

1. The moment *elegance*, the most visible image of fine *taste*, appears, it is universally admired; men differ respecting the other constituent parts of * *beauty*, but they all unite without hesitation in acknowledging the power of *elegance*.

2. *Men of superior genius* 2, while 1 they * see 3 the rest of mankind painfully * struggling to comprehend obvious 2 truths 1, penetrate themselves * through * the most remote 2 consequences 1, like lightning through a track that cannot be measured.

3. *The man who lives* under an habitual 2 sense 1 of the divine 2

presence I, preserves a perpetual cheerfulness of temper, and enjoys, every moment, the satisfaction of thinking himself * in company with the dearest and best of friends.

4. Come and show me your sister's room for I cannot find it.

5. Yellow does not suit you at all.

6. When he returned, he found the whole school in an uproar.

(1.) The moment, *du moment que*; fine, *délicat*; appears, *se montrer*; is, *elle est*; respecting, *sur*; constituent, (*which constitute*); hesitation, *hésiter*, *h.*, *pour*.

(2.) While, *tandis que*; struggling, *se tourmenter*; obvious, *qui s'offrent* *Éelle-mêmes*; penetrate, *ils pénètrent en un instant*; lightning, *foudre*, *f.*; through, *traverse*; track, *espace*; that, *qu'on*; be measured, *mesurer*.

(3.) Under, *dans*; sense, *conviction*; preserves, *conserve*; perpetual, *constant*; cheerfulness, *gaîté*; temper, *caractère*; enjoys, *jouir de*; of thinking, *se croire*; in, *dans*, *art.*; with, *de*.

(4.) Come and show, *venir montrer*; I cannot, *je ne saurais*.

(5.) Yellow, *jaune*; to suit, *convenir*; at all, *du tout*.

(6.) To return, *revenir*, *Ind-3*; to find, *trouver*, *Ind-3*; in an uproar, *dans la confusion*.

182. The article is put before proper names of countries, provinces, islands, regions, rivers, winds, and mountains*.

EXAMPLES

<i>la France à les Pyrénées et la Méditerranée au sud, la Suisse et la Savoie à l'est, les Pays-Bas au nord, et l'océan à l'ouest</i>	<i>France is bounded on the south by the Pyrenees and the Mediterranean, on the east by Switzerland and Savoy, on the north by the Netherlands, and on the west by the ocean</i>
---	--

<i>le Japon, la Chine, le Mexique, la Martinique, le Mogol, l'Inde</i>	<i>Japan, China, Mexico, Martinique, Mogul, India</i>
<i>la Tamise, le Rhône, l'aquilon, les Alpes, le Cantal</i>	<i>the Thames, the Rhône, the north wind, the Alps, the Cantal</i>

* In speaking of *monts*, we say: *le Parnasse*, or *le Mont Parnasse*; *le Vésuve*, or *le Mont Vésuve*; *l'Étna*, or *le Mont Étna*; *les Pyrénées*, or *les Monts Pyrénées*. But in speaking of *Montagnes*, we say: *les Alpes*, or *les Montagnes des Alpes*, *la Castellane*, or *la Montagne de la Castellane*.

In speaking of *some rivières*, we say *la rivière de Seine*, *la rivière de Saône*, *la rivière de Rhin*, of others we say simply *la Loire*, *la Tamise*, *la Durance*, etc.

In speaking of *fleuves*, we say: *le fleuve du Rhône*, *le fleuve du Tago*, but of others simply *le Volga*, *le Danube*, etc.

Of *Mers*, we say also: *la Mer Méditerranée*, *la Mer Noire*, *la Mer Blanche*, *la Mer Rouge*, etc.

These are peculiarities which have nothing to do with grammar, but which chiefly depend upon use and custom.

EXERCISE.

1. Europe is bounded on the north by the Frozen Ocean; on the south by the Mediterranean Sea, which separates it from Africa; on the east by the continent of Asia; on the west by the Atlantic Ocean. It contains the following 2 states 1: on the north, Norway, Sweden, Denmark and Russia; in the middle, Poland, Prussia, Germany, the United Provinces, the Netherlands, France, Switzerland, Bohemia, Hungary, the British Isles; on the south, Spain, Portugal, Italy, Turkey in Europe.

2. The principal rivers in Europe are: the Wolga, the Don or Tanais, and the Boristhenes or Nieper, in Muscovy; the Danube, the Rhine, and the Elbe, in Germany; the Vistula or Wezel, in Poland; the Loire, the Seine, the Rhone, and the Garonne, in France; the Ebro, the Tagus, and the Douro, in Spain; the Po, in Italy; the Thames, and the Severn, in England; and the Shannon, in Ireland.

3. The principal mountains in Europe are the Daarne Fields, between Norway and Sweden; Mount Krapel, between Poland and Hungary; the Pyrenean Mountains, between France and Spain; the Alps, which divide France and Germany from Italy.

4. The bleak north wind never blows here, and the heat of summer is tempered by the cooling 2 sephyr 1, which come to refresh the air towards the middle of the day.

(1.) Bounded, *borné*; on, *à*; frozen ocean, *mer glaciale*, f.; south, *sud*, or *midi*; Mediterranean sea, *Méditerranée*, f.; east, *est* or *orient*; west, *ouest* or *occident*; Norway, etc. See p. 74; British Isles, *les Britanniques*, Turkey in, *Turquie de*.

(2.) Muscovy, *Moscouie*; Vistula, *Vistule*, f.; Loire, f.; Seine, f.; Rhone, m.; Garonne, f.; Ebro, *Ebre*; Tagus, *Tage*, m.; Thames, *Tamuse*, f.; Severn, *Saurne*, f.

(3.) Pyrenean Mountains, *Pyrénées*.

(4.) Bleak, *rigoureux*; north wind, *aquilon*; heat, *ardeur*; cooling, *rafraîchissant*; come, *venir*; to refresh, *adoucir*.

183. EXCEPTIONS. The article is omitted before the names of countries.

1. When these are governed by the preposition *en*, as: *il est en France*, he is in France; *il est en Espagne*, he is in Spain.

2. When those names are governed by some preceding noun, and have the meaning of an adjective, as: *roi de France*, king of France; *vins de France*, French wines; *noblesse d'Angleterre*, the English nobility.

3. When speaking of those countries as of places we come from, as: *je viens de France*, I come from

France; *j'arrive d'Italie*, I am just arrived from Italy. However, when speaking of the four parts of the world, custom requires the use of the article, as : *je viens de l'Amérique, j'arrive de l'Asie*.

4. The article is also omitted, before proper names of places, and of persons; *Naples, Venise, César*, etc.*

EXERCICES

1. *Naples* may be called a paradise, from its beauty and fertility. From this country 2 some suppose 1 Virgil took the model of the Elysian 2 Fields 1.

2. I have been a * prisoner in *Egypt*, as a * Phœnician; under that name I have long suffered, and under that name I have been set at liberty.

3. He has received French and Spanish wines, Italian silks, Provence oil, and English wool.

4. We set sail from *Holland*, to go to the Cape of Good Hope.

5. I was but just arrived from *Russia*, when I had the misfortune to lose my father.

6. I had set off from *America*, when my brother arrived there.

(1.) From, à cause de; from this country, que c'est là, où; some suppose, quelques personnes penser que.

(2.) Prisoner, captif; under that name c'est sous ce nom que, (both alike).

(4.) Set sail, partir; to go, se rendre.

(5.) I was but just, ne faire que de.

(6.) Set off, partir; there, y.

184. The definite article is not rendered in translating the following English sentences or others like them.

EXAMPLES

book the tenth, chapter the fifth

Louis the XIVth.

George the Fourth

he married Mary, the daughter of
Louis Philippe

livre dix, chapitre cinq

Louis Quatorze

George Quatre

il épousa Marie, fille de Louis
Philippe

* There are some proper names of authors, painters, and actors before which the article is used; *Le Tasse, le Dante, le Corrége, la Catalani, le Titien, la Champaigne, l'Arioste, le Poussin, le Dominiquin, le Carache, l'Albane*. There are also some names of French towns which take the definite article. *La Flèche, la Rochelle, la Ferté, le Havre, le Perche*.

<i>the more you have, the less you give</i>	<i>plus vous avez, moins vous donnez</i>
<i>the richer you are, the less generous you are</i>	<i>plus vous êtes riche, moins vous êtes généreux</i>
<i>the more knowledge a man has, the more modest he is</i>	<i>plus un homme a de connaissance, plus il est modeste</i>

The definite article is never used after *en*, but always after *dans*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>il n'est pas en France</i>	<i>he is not in France</i>
<i>ce n'est pas dans la France, que vous le trouverez</i>	<i>it is not in France, that you will find him</i>

185. The definite article is not used before the word which qualifies the substantives *espèce, genre, sorte, multitude, foule, amas, quantité*, etc.

EXAMPLES.

<i>sorte de fruit</i>	<i>a sort of fruit</i>
<i>genre d'ouvrage</i>	<i>a kind of work</i>
<i>monceau d'argent</i>	<i>a heap of money</i>
<i>bande de voleurs</i>	<i>a troop of robbers</i>
<i>pile de livres</i>	<i>a pile of books</i>
<i>meute de chiens, etc.</i>	<i>a pack of dogs</i>

186. The article is not used before substantives preceded by the pronominal adjectives *mon, ton, son, notre, votre, leur, ce, nul, aucun, chaque, tout* (used for *chaque*), *certain, plusieurs, tel, or cent, mille*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>nos mœurs mettent le prix à nos richesses</i>	<i>our manners fix the value of our riches</i>
<i>toute nation a ses lois</i>	<i>every nation has its laws</i>
<i>cent ignorans, doivent-ils l'emporter sur un homme instruit?</i>	<i>are a hundred blockheads to be preferred to one learned man?</i>

EXERCISE.

1. The roads are bordered with *laurels, pomegranates, jessamines, and other trees, which * are * ever green, and ever in bloom.*

The mountains are covered with *rocks*, which yield a fine wool, in great request among all the known 2 nations 1 (of the world. *)

2. The fleets of Solomon, under the guidance of the Phœnicians, made frequent voyages to the land of Ophir and Tharsis, (of the kingdom of Sophala, in Ethiopia), whence they returned at the end of three years, laden with *gold, silver, ivory, precious 2 stones 1*, and other kinds of *merchandise*.

3. *Costly furniture 2* is not allowed there 1, nor *magnificent attire*, nor *sumptuous feasts*, nor *gilded palaces*.

4. We contemplated with pleasure the extensive fields covered with yellow ears of corn, the * *rich gifts* of bounteous Ceres.

5. He was in a kind of *ecstasy*, when he perceived us.

6. In the most corrupt age, he lived and died a *wise man*.*.

7. Are you surprised that the worthiest 2 men, 1 are *betrayed*, and betray remains of the weakness of humanity, amid the innumerable 2 snares 1 and difficulties which * are * inseparable from royalty ?

8. *He excited our pity*, when we saw him after his disgrace.

9. Hear, then, *O nations* full of valour ! and you, *O chiefs*, so wise and so united ! hear what I have * to * offer to you.

10. Out of this cavern issued, from time to time, a black 2 thick 3 smoke 1, which made a *sort of night* at mid-day.

11. *Those imitative 2 sounds 1* are infused in all languages, and form, as it were, their * real basis.

12. *Every man* has his foibles, his moments of ill * humour, even his irregularities.

13. *Each plant* has virtues peculiar to itself, the knowledge 2 of which 1 could not but be infinitely useful.

14. *In all his instructions*, he is careful to bear in mind that grammar, logic, and rhetoric, are three sisters, that ought never to be disjoined.

(1.) Roads, *chemin*; with, *de*; pomegranates, *grenadier*; in bloom, *fleur* - yield, *fournir*; wool, *laine*, pl.; in great request, *recherché*; among, *de*.

(2.) Made, *faire*, ind-2; end, *bout*; laden, *chargé*.

(3.) Is not allowed there, *on n'y souffre ni*: furniture, *meuble*; costly, *précieux*; attire, *ornement*; feasts, *repas*.

(4.) Extensive, *vaste*; fields, *campagne*; ears, *épi*; bounteous, *fécond*.

(5.) In a kind of, *comme en*.

(6.) Age, *siècle*.

(7.) That, *de ce que*; worthy, *estimable*; but, *encore*; betray, *montrer* remains, *reste*; snares, *piège*; difficulties, *embarras*.

(8.) He excited our pity, *il nous fit pitié*.

(9.) Hear, *écouter*.

(10.) Out of, *de*; issued, *sortir*, ind-2; thick, *et épais*; smoke, *fumée*. *L.* mid-day, *milieu du jour*.

(11.) Infused, *fondus*; to, *dans*; and form as it were, *et ils en sont comme* real, *fondamentaux*.

(13.) Peculiar, *qui sont propres*; to it, *lui*; could, *cond-1*; not but, *ne pas*.

(14.) He is careful to bear in mind, *ne point perdre de vue*; ought, *en avoir* ind-1; to be disjoined, *séparer*.

187. Proper names of deities, men, animals, towns, and particular places, do not take the article.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Dieu a créé le ciel et la terre,</i>	<i>God created heaven and earth</i>
<i>Jupiter était le premier des dieux</i>	<i>Jupiter was the first of the gods</i>
<i>Bucéphale était le cheval d'Alexandre</i>	<i>Bucephalus was Alexander's horse</i>
<i>Rome est une ville d'une grande beauté</i>	<i>Rome is a city of great beauty</i>

EXCEPTIONS. Proper names, however, take the article, when used in a restrictive sense.

EXAMPLES.

<i>le Dieu des Chrétiens</i>	<i>the God of Christians</i>
<i>le Dieu de paix</i>	<i>the God of peace</i>
<i>le Jupiter d'Homère</i>	<i>Homer's Jupiter</i>
<i>le Bucéphale d'Alexandre</i>	<i>Alexander's Bucephalus.</i>
<i>l'ancienne Rome</i>	<i>ancient Rome</i>
<i>la Rome moderne</i>	<i>modern Rome</i>

EXERCISE.

1. *Jupiter*, son of *Saturn* and *Cibele* or *Ops*, after having expelled his father from the throne, divided the paternal * inheritance with his two brothers, *Neptune* and *Pluto*.

2. On a dispute, at a feast of the gods, between *Juno*, *Pallas* and *Venus*, for the pre-eminence of beauty, *Jupiter* not being able to bring them to an agreement, referred the decision to *Paris*, a shepherd of mount *Ida*, with directions that a golden apple should be given to the fairest. *Paris* assigned to *Venus* 2 the golden * prize 1.

3. *God* said: let there * be 2 light 1, and there * was 2 light 1.

4. *The Apollo del Belvidere* and *the Venus di Medicis*, are valuable 2 remains 1 of antiquity.

5. *May* and *September* are the two finest months of the year in the south of France.

6. *The God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob*, was the only true God.

(1.) Expelled, *chasser*; divided, *en partager*; inheritance, *héritage*, m.

(2.) On, *dans*; at a feast, *qu'il y eut à un festin*; being able, *pouvoir*; to bring to an agreement, *accorder*; referred, *renvoyer*; directions *ordre*; that a golden, etc. to give a golden apple to; assigned, *adjuger*.

(4.) *Del Belvidere*, *du Belvédère*; valuable, *précieux*.

(6.) Only, *seul*.

OF THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE *du*.

188. In the exercises on the verb, *avoir*, No. 102, 103, 104, 105, we have already had occasion to notice that *du*, *de la*, *des*, are used before a noun, not mentioned as if speaking of the totality of the species, but only as a part of it, and when, in English, the word *some* may be understood.

EXAMPLES.

<i>du pain et de l'eau me feraient</i>	<i>some bread and water would please</i>
<i>plaisir</i>	<i>me</i>
<i>je vis hier des savants qui ne</i>	<i>I yesterday saw some learned men,</i>
<i>pensent pas comme vous</i>	<i>who do not think as you do</i>

And also that *de* alone, without the article, is used when an adjective, an adverb of quantity or a negation precedes the noun thus spoken of in a partial sense; no regard being paid then to its gender or number.

EXAMPLES.

<i>voilà de beaux tableaux</i>	<i>there are beautiful pictures</i>
<i>j'achetai hier beaucoup de livres</i>	<i>I bought yesterday many books</i>
<i>que de livres, j'achetai hier!</i>	<i>how many books I bought yesterday!</i>
<i>il n'y eût jamais plus de lumières</i>	<i>there never was more learning</i>
<i>il y a moins d'habitants à Paris</i>	<i>there are fewer inhabitants in</i>
<i>qu'à Londres</i>	<i>Paris than in London</i>
<i>je ne manque pas d'amis*</i>	<i>I do not want for friends</i>

EXCEPTION. *Bien* is the only adverb of quantity which is followed by the article.

EXAMPLES.

<i>il a bien de l'esprit</i>	<i>he has a great deal of wit</i>
<i>elle a bien de la grâce</i>	<i>she is very graceful</i>

190. OBSERVE. These expressions: *des petits-mâtres*, *des sages-femmes*, *des petits-pâtés*, etc. are

* See rule 102, 4th.

not exceptions to the rule which requires *de* before an adjective, because, in cases of this kind, the substantives are so united with the adjectives, as to form but one and the same word. We must likewise say: *le propre des belles actions, les sentimens des anciens philosophes*, etc.; because, in expressions of this kind, the substantives are taken in a general sense.

191. It has been seen that, generally speaking, an article or some other sign precedes the noun in French, so as to point out whether we speak of a thing as to its general kind or merely as to a portion of it. There are however, many phrases in which no article or sign is required before the noun; we subjoin those which are most commonly used.

avoir faim	faire profession
— soif	— tort
— dessein	— plaisir
— honte	— peur
— coutume	— provision
— pitié	— défense
— compassion	gagner pays
— froid	— chemin
— chaud	mettre fin
— patience	— ordre
— envie	parler français
— besoin	— anglais
donner envie	— allemand
— occasion	porter envie
— leçon	— bonheur
— permission	— malheur
— parole	prendre parti
entendre raison	— plaisir
— raillerie	— leçon
— malice	— patience
	— jour

EXERCISE.

1. We could not cast our eyes on either shore, without seeing
opulent cities, country houses agreeably situated, lands every year 2
 covered 1 with a golden 2 harvest 1, meadows, abounding in flocks

and herds, husbandmen beading under the weight of the fruits, and shepherds who made 1 the echoes 5 around them 6 repeat 2 the sweet sounds 3 of their pipes and flutes 4.

2. Provence and Languedoc produce oranges, lemons, figs, olives, almonds, chestnuts, peaches, apricots, and grapes of an uncommon sweetness.

3. The man who has never seen this pure light, is as * blind as one who was born blind: he dies without having seen any thing: at most, he perceives but glimmering and false lights, vain shadows and phantoms that have nothing real.

4. Among the Romans, those who were convicted of having used illicit or unworthy means to obtain an office, were excluded from it for ever.

5. Those who govern are like the celestial 2 bodies 1, which have great splendour and no rest.

6. What beauty, sweetness, modesty, and at the same time what nobleness and greatness of mind!

7. Themistocles, in order to ruin Aristides, made use of many artifices, which would have covered him with infamy in the eyes of posterity, had 1 not 4 the eminent services 2 which he rendered his country 3 blotted out 5 that stain.

8. The consequences of great passions are blindness of mind and depravity of heart.

9. Noblemen should never forget that their high birth imposes great duties on * them.

(1.) Could, pouvoir, ind-3; our, les; either, les deux; seeing, apercevoir; every year, tous les ans; covered with, qui se couvrir de, ind-3; abounding in, remplie de; flocks and herds, troupeaux; beading, qui étaient accablés; weight, poids; shepherds, bergers; pipes, chalumeaux; the echoes, ses échos; around them, d'alentour.

(3.) Who is born blind, aveugle-nd; without having, n'avoir jamais, ind-3; any thing, rien; at most, tout au plus; perceives, apercevoir; glimmering, sombre; lights, lueur; real, de réel.

(4.) Used, employer; illicit, or unworthy means, moyen illicite, ou voie indigne. pl.; were, ind-2; from it, en.

(5.) Great, beaucoup de; splendour, éclat; no rest, (that have no rest) repos.

(6.) What, — de.

(7.) Ruin, perdre; made use of many, employer bien; artifices, ruses; covered, cond-3; with, de; infamy, opprobre; in, à; had, si; rendered, ind-2; blotted out, effacer, cond-3; stain, tache.

(8.) Of mind, art. esprit; of heart, de, art. cœur.

(9.) Noblemen gentilhommes; should, devoir, ind-1.

CHAPTER III.

OF THE ADJECTIVE.

192. CONCORD OF THE ADJECTIVE WITH THE NOUN.

It has already been said that the nature of the adjective in French is to agree in gender and number with the noun to which it is joined, thus: *un grand jardin, une grande maison, de bons livres, de bonnes plumes*, and the manner of forming the plural and the feminine of adjectives has also been explained. (No. 42.)*

An adjective referring to two or more nouns which are of the same gender, *all subject of the same verb*, must be in the plural and assume their gender.

EXAMPLES.

la clémence et la majesté peintes sur son front sont, etc.	<i>the clemency and majesty imprinted on his countenance are, etc.</i>
le travail et le courage joints ensemble font surmonter des obstacles	<i>labour and courage together united make us surmount obstacles</i>

If the substantives are of different genders, the adjective must be in the masculine.

EXAMPLES.

votre frère et votre sœur sont peu instruits	<i>your brother and sister are not well informed</i>
la beauté et le vice réunis dans un même individu ne sau- raient attacher, etc.	<i>beauty and vice united in the same individual cannot attach, etc.</i>

* See the peculiarities of *feu, nu, demi, son, court, fort, bas*, No. 43 bis.

When in speaking of *things*, (not of persons), an adjective belongs to two or more nouns which are *the object of or governed by a verb*, it is *customary* to make that adjective agree with the last noun, next to which it is placed.

EXAMPLES.

il avait la bouche et les yeux *his mouth and eyes were open*
 ouverte
 il avait les yeux et la bouche *his eyes and mouth were open*
 ouverte

We say *customary*, because it is more *grammatical* to attach an idea of numbers to the adjective, when it expresses a quality or state common to several objects and to say,

EXAMPLES.

il avait les yeux et la bouche *his eyes and mouth were open*
 ouverte
 c'est un homme d'une valeur, *he is a man of tried valour, virtue*
 d'une vertu et d'une fidélité *and fidelity*
 éprouvées*

EXERCISE.

His impetuosity and courage, long restrained, soon surmounted
 = ——— *enchaîné* 2 vaincre ind-3 1
 all obstacles. The king and the shepherd are equal after death.
 This comedian acts with delightful taste and grace. He found
acteur jouer charmant 3 1 — 2 ind-3
 the rivers and ponds frozen over. His whole life (was nothing
 2 *étang m. 1 glacé* 3 *n'être que*

* There are certain locutions on the correctness of which grammarians are not agreed: this is not the place for discussing such questions, but we will give both moderate expression, placing in the second column those which are thought preferable.

Les côtes personnelle, mobilière,
 et foncière.
 Un cours de langue Française, Ita-
 lienne, et Espagnole.
 Les langues Française et Espagnole.

La cote personnelle, la mobilière et
 la somptuaire.
 Un cours de langue française, Ita-
 lienne, et Espagnole.
 La langue Française et l'Espagnole.

but) constant labour and occupation. It was lost time and trouble.
 ind-3 3 1 2 *c'était* 3 1 *peine* 2
 Honours and riches are ever envied. Music and drawing are very
 entertaining. I teach the French and English tongues. Have you
amusement *enseigner* *langue* f.
 read the Greek and Roman histories?
 = f.

ADJECTIVES OF DIMENSION.

193. In speaking of the dimensions of an object, the French make use of a very different form from the English, thus:

EXAMPLES.

1. A tower two hundred feet high *une tour de deux cents pieds de hauteur* or *de haut*
2. This tower is two hundred feet high *cette tour a deux cents pieds de hauteur*

In the first example, *de* is used before the noun of numbers and before the adjective, to which the substantive of dimension may elegantly be substituted.

In the second, *to be* is rendered by *avoir*, and, consequently, the substantive of dimension *hauteur* can alone be used, since an adjective cannot be coupled with *avoir*.

EXERCISE.

This box, which is six feet long, is very convenient. You
coffre, m. *commode*
 will be stopped in your march by a river three hundred feet broad.
arrêlé *f.*
 This observatory is twelve hundred feet high. It is a terrace
 = *et* *terrace* f
 a hundred and eighty feet broad, and twelve hundred feet
large *deux cents* *
 long. The walls of our garden are twenty feet high and three
mur m. pl.

broad. It is one of the finest stones that was ever seen: it is
75 *on ait jamais vues*

twenty feet *long* and six *thick*. This ditch is nine feet six
longueur épaisseur fossé m.

inches *deep* and six feet *broad*.
pouce m. pl. profondeur f. largeur

194. Adjectives, used substantively, require the definite article.

EXAMPLE

les fous inventent les modes, et les sages s'y conforment *fools invent fashions, and wise men conform to them*

EXAMPLE

1. Were the *learned* of antiquity to come to life again, they would be much astonished at the extent of our knowledge.

The *ignorant* have, in a * large stock of presumption, what they want in real knowledge, and that is the reason they are admired by *fools*.

(1.) Were the, *si les*; to come again, *revenir*, ind-2; life, *monde*; at, *de*; knowledge, *connaissance*, pl.

(2.) Large stock, *forte dose*; they want, *il leur manque*; knowledge, *savoir*; the reason, *ce qui fait que*; they are, etc. the fools admire them.

When a noun is accompanied by two adjectives, expressing different qualities incompatible in the same object, the article must be repeated before each adjective.

EXAMPLES.

les vieux et les nouveaux soldats *the old and the newly raised soldiers*
sont remplis d'ardeur *are full of ardour*
il faut fréquenter la bonne compagnie *we ought to frequent good and*
et fuir la mauvaise *shun bad company*

REMARK. But if those qualities be not incompatible, the article is not repeated, as: *le sage et pieux Fénelon*; if merely expressing different ideas, it is perhaps better to repeat it, as: *le sensible et l'ingénieur Fénelon*.

EXERCISE.

1. The *antient* 1 and *modern* 3 writers 2 are not agreed upon that point.

2. The wise man preserves the same tranquillity of mind in *good* or *bad* fortune.

3. The man who is jealous of his reputation frequents *good* and shuns *bad* company.

4. *Grand* and *vigorous* thoughts were always the offspring of genius.

(1.) Writers, *auteurs*; are agreed, *s'accorder*.

(4.) Vigorous, *fort*; offspring, *fruit*.

195. The article is used before the adjective which is joined to a proper name, either to express its quality, or to distinguish the person spoken of from those who might bear the same name.

EXAMPLES.

le sublime Bossuet	<i>the sublime Bossuet</i>
Louis le gros	<i>Louis the fat</i>
le vertueux Fénelon	<i>the virtuous Fenelon</i>
Louis le Juste	<i>Louis the Just</i>
le tendre Racine	<i>the tender Racine</i>
Louis le Grand	<i>Louis the Great</i>

REMARK. If the adjective, which is joined to a proper name, precede that name, it expresses a quality which may be common to many; but if it follow, it expresses a distinguishing quality. Thus: *le savant Varron*, and *Varron le savant*, do not convey the same meaning: in the first example, *Varron* merely obtains the quality of *savant*; in the second, *Varron* is distinguished for his learning from all of the same name.

EXERCISE.

1. The *great* *Cornelle* astonishes by beauties of the first order, and by faults of the worst taste. If the *tender* *Racine* does not often rise so high, at least, he is always equal, and possesses the art of always interesting the heart.

(1.) By, *par* *des*; order, *ordre*; is always equal, *se soutenir*; possesses, *avoir*.

2. The more we read the fable of the good and artless *La Fontaine*, the more we are convinced they are a book for all ages, and the manual of the man of taste.

3. It was only under the reign of *Louis the Just* (XIII.) that good taste began to show itself in France; but it was under that of *Louis the Great* that it was carried to perfection.

(2.) The more we, *plus on*; artless, *simple*; are convinced, *on se convainc*; they are, *que c'est*; a, *le*; for, *de*; manual, *manuel*.

(3.) Only, *seulement*; carried, *porté à*.

196. When a superlative relative precedes a substantive, the article is used once only; if it follow, it must be repeated before the noun and the adjective.

EXAMPLES.

les plus habiles gens font quelquefois les plus grandes fautes or *les gens les plus habiles font quelquefois les fautes les plus grandes*
*the ablest men sometimes commit the grossest blunders**

EXERCISE

1. It has been said of the Telemachus of the virtuous Fœnelon, that it is *the most useful* 2 present 1 the muses have made to mankind; for, could the happiness of man be produced by a poem, it would be by that.

2. *The smoothest* 2 waters 1 often conceal *the most dangerous* 2 gulfs 1.

(1.) It has been said, *on a dit*; present, *don que*; have made, subj-3; could, (if the, etc. could, ind-3); be produced by, *naître de*; would be, *naître*, cond. *

(2.) Smoothest, *tranquille*; gulf, *gouffre*, m.

* OBSERVE. Cette planète est la plus éloignée du soleil. Lorsque cette planète est la plus éloignée du soleil.

There is a difference here with regard to the declinability of the article which must be understood.

If there is a comparison implied the article is declined. Thus, in the first sentence, we speak of the planets which are distant from the sun, and allude to that which is most so; but in the second, our thought bears on one planet alone, independent of all others; *le plus* is merely an adverb to the verb *être éloigné*, and consequently is undeclined as all adverbs are.

These remarks apply also to *le moins*, *le moins*, *les moins*.

REMARKS ON SOME PARTICULAR MODES OF EXPRESSING
EQUALITY.

197. The manner of expressing comparisons of equality and of superiority and inferiority will be explained, (No. 211). But there are some phrases which it is the place to notice here.

Equally with is used for *as well as* and is thus rendered.

EXAMPLES.

He blamed it equally with me	<i>il le blâme aussi bien que moi</i>
He was blamed equally with me	<i>il fut blâmé aussi bien que moi</i>

NOTHING *so pleasant, good, difficult, etc.*, is thus rendered.

EXAMPLES.

Nothing so easy as to do it	<i>rien de si facile que de le faire</i>
Nothing so pleasant as to meet with friends	<i>rien de si agréable que de ren- contrer des amis</i>

QUOI, *what ; quelque chose, something ; rien, nothing ;* before adjectives require *de*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Quoi de plus agréable que d'être au coin d'un bon feu ?</i>	what is there more pleasant than to sit by a good fire ?
<i>Il n'y a rien de doux dans sa phy- sionomie</i>	there is nothing sweet in her countenance
<i>J'ai remarqué que que chose d'ex- traordinaire</i>	I noticed something extraordi- nary

THE PLACE OF ADJECTIVES.

198. Pronominal and numerical adjectives precede their substantive, as do generally the following six

teen; *beau, bon, brave, cher, chétif, grand, gros, jeune, mauvais, méchant, meilleur, moindre, petit, saint, vieux*, and *vrai*, when taken in their literal sense.

EXAMPLES.

<i>mon père</i>	my father
<i>quel homme</i>	what man
<i>vieille femme</i>	old woman
<i>dix guinées</i>	ten guineas
<i>plusieurs officiers</i>	several officers
<i>grand homme</i>	great man
<i>six arbres</i>	six trees
<i>chétive mine</i>	mean look

EXCEPTION. The pronoun *quelconque*.

EXAMPLE.

d'une manière quelconque in whatever manner

EXAMPLES.

1. There have been ages, when a *great man* was a sort of prodigy produced by a mistake of nature.

2. In almost all nations, the *great geniuses* that have adorned them were contemporaries.

3. *Young people*, says Horace, are open to the enticements of vice, lavish, presumptuous, and equally impetuous and light in their passions; *old people*, on the contrary, are covetous, dilatory, timid, ever alarmed about the future, always complaining, hard to please, panegyrists of times past, censors of the present, and great givers of advice.

4. *What man* was ever satisfied with his condition, and dissatisfied with his abilities?

5. *Thirty chambers*, which have a communication one with another, and each of them an iron door, with six huge bolts, are the places where he shuts himself up.

(1.) Ages, *des siècles*; when, *où*; produced, *engendré*.

(2.) In, *chez*; nations, *peuples*; adorned, *illustrer*, Ind-4.

(3.) Old people, *vieilles gens*; open, *ouvert*; lavish, *prodigue*; impetuous, *éff*; all those adjectives are m. pl.; covetous, *avare*; dilatory, *lâpériséur*; about, *sur*; complaining, *plaintif*; hard, *difficile*; please, *contenter*; times, sing.

(4.) Dissatisfied, *mécontent*; abilities, *esprits*.

(5.) Have a communication, *communiquer*; each of them, *chez chacun*; huge, *gros*; bolts, *verrous*; places, *lieux*, sing.; shuts himself, *se renfermer*.

199. Adjectives of number, joined to proper names, pronouns, and substantives, are placed after the noun.

EXAMPLES.

George Trots
chapitre dix
page trente

George III
chapter 10
page the 30th

200. The adjectives mentioned 198, when connected by a conjunction with another adjective, which is to be placed after the substantive, are themselves placed after the noun.

c'est une femme grande et bien faite she is a tall well-made woman

201. In English, two, or even several adjectives may qualify a substantive, without a conjunction; but in French *et* is always placed before the last adjective, *c'est un homme aimable et poli*, he is an amiable, well-behaved man.

202. OBSERVE. All adjectives are put after the noun, *un homme riche, jeune et aimable*, except one of them is one of those which precede it, *c'est un grand homme sec*, he is a tall thin man.

They are placed after the noun, adjectives formed—from the participle present of verbs—*ouvrage divertissant*, entertaining work;—from the participle past; all those expressing form, physical qualities, etc. *figure arrondie*, round figure; *table ovale*, oval table;—colour, *maison blanche*, white house;—taste, *herbe amère*, bitter herb;—sound, *orgue harmonieux*, harmonious organ;—action, *procureur actif*, active attorney;—effect, *coutume abusive*, custom founded in abuse;—arrangement, *ordre grammatical*, grammati-

cal order;—species, *qualité occulte*, occult quality;—nation, *générosité Anglaise*, English generosity;—those ending in *-esque*, *-il*, *-ule*, *ic*, *ique*, *-in*:

style burlesque
jargon puéril
femme crédule
bien public
ris sardonique
voix enfantine

burlesque style
 childish jargon
 credulous woman
 public welfare
 sardonic grin
 childish voice

but in this, custom is the best guide.

EXERCISE.

1. An *affected* simplicity is a *refined* imposture.
2. The *smiling* images of Theocritus, Virgil, and Geasner, excite in the soul a gentle feeling.
3. In that *antique* palace are to be seen neither *wreathed* columns, nor *gilded* wainscots, nor *valuable* basso-relieues, nor ceilings curiously *painted*, nor *grotesque* figures of animals which never had existence but in the imagination of a child or a madman.
4. If *human* life is exposed to many troubles, it is also susceptible of many pleasures.
5. A *ridiculous* man is seldom so by halves.
6. *Spanish* manners have, at first sight, something harsh and uncivilized.
7. *French* urbanity has become a proverb among *foreign* nations.

- (1.) Refined, *délicat*.
 (2.) Smiling, *riant*; excite, *porter*; soft, *doux*; feeling, *sensibilité*, *f*.
 (3.) Are to be seen, *on ne voit*; wreathed, *torsé*; wainscots, *lambris*; basso-relieues, *bas-relief*; ceilings, *plafond*; curiously, *artistement*; had existence, *exister*.
 (4.) Many, *bien des* troubles, *peines*.
 (5.) So, *le*; by halves, *à demi*.
 (6.) Spanish, *Espagnol*; manners, *mœurs*; at first sight, *au premier abord*; uncivilized, *sauvage*.
 (7.) Become, *passer en*; among, *chez*.

203. Although it may seem that adjectives expressing moral qualities are placed indifferently before, or after the substantive, yet taste and a correct ear will assign them their proper situation. Nevertheless if spoken in a broken, loose style, it

may be indifferent to say *femme aimable*, or *aimable femme*; *talents sublimes*, or *sublimes talents*, etc.; but in the dignified style, the place of the adjective may, in a variety of instances, affect the beauty of a sentence.*

EXERCISE.

1. An *amiable* woman gives to every thing she says an *inexpressible* grace; the more we hear, the more we wish to hear her.

2. The *majestic* eloquence of Bozæet is like a river, which carries away every thing in its rapid course.

3. The *sublime* compositions of Rubens have made 1 an English traveller 3 say 2, that this *famous* painter was born in Flanders, through a mistake of nature.

(1.) Give to, *répandre sur*; we, *on*.

(2.) River, *fleuve*; carries away, *entraîne*; its rapid course, *la rapidité de*

(3.) Say, *dire à*; famous, *célèbre*; through, *par*; mistake *méprise*.

GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

204. Adjectives are frequently followed by another substantive than that which they qualify, thus: *un homme digne de récompense*, *un homme enclin au bien*, they are also sometimes followed by an infinitive, *capable d'aimer*, *prompt à bien faire*, etc. In such cases a preposition is used according to the case or regimen which the adjective requires. This is called the government of adjectives.

205. Adjectives which govern the preposition *DE*.

digne	comblé	fou
indigne	taxé	avide
capable	chargé	ennuyé
incapable	plein	libre
aisé	accusé	qualifié.
ravi	fatigné	vide
joyeux	las	dépendant
content	contrit	chéri
mécontent	enragé	

* Such adjectives are more expressive when placed before the noun; but taste and harmony must be consulted. None but those well versed in the French Language can *feel* the proper place of the adjective; we recommend to the learner always to place it after the noun; which is quite correct, if not else.

206. Adjectives which govern the preposition *à*.

adroit	porté	âpre
bon	enclin	lent
beau	adonné	nuisible
laid	sujet	prompt
agréable	propre	prêt
ingénieux	inexorable	utile
contraire	désagréable	inutile
opposé	agile	sensible
conforme	alerte	aisé
semblable	habile	facile
pareil	ardent	cher

207. Adjectives which require *ENVER*. *Complaisant, généreux, affable, indulgent, prévenant, cruel, bon*, and any other expressing kindness or unkindness of feeling towards individuals.

EXERCISE.

Are you pleased with your horse? Do not be so greedy
content *avide*
 after riches. I am not unworthy of his friendship. They say
indigne *on dit que*
 he is very dissatisfied with his son. We were tired with
mécontent *ind-2 fatigué*
 running after him. Are we (not at liberty) to go? My
courir *libre* *partir*
 brother is not fit for that place. Send me some gloves
propre *gent, m.*
 like those which my sister has. If you are ready to go,
pareil
 I will order the carriage. Too much exercise may be
commander ind-7 *pouvoir être*
 injurious to the health. You will not find that easy to do
nuisible *cela facile*
 Let us be kind (to one another). He was so kind to
les uns envers les autres *bon*
 our sisters.

208. **OBSERVE.** A noun may be governed by two adjectives, provided they do not require two different prepositions. Thus you may say: *cet homme est utile et cher à sa famille*, that man is useful and dear to his family; but you may not say, *il est utile et chéri à sa famille*, because *chéri*, beloved, requires the genitive, or preposition *de* before a noun. Such sentences must be turned thus, *il est utile à sa famille et en est chéri*, he is useful to his family and beloved of them.

ÊTRE WITH ADJECTIVES.

209. *Je suis bien aise, fâché, contrarié*, etc., or any other phrase expressing gladness or regret at a thing, requires the subjunctive mood, or the infinitive with *DE*, as:

<i>Je suis enchanté que vous soyez de retour</i>	<i>I am delighted that you have returned</i>
<i>Je suis enchanté d'être de retour à temps</i>	<i>I am delighted that I have returned in time</i>

In the first example, there are two different subjects *je, vous*; the verb is on that account put in the subjunctive mood.

In the second example, there is but one and the same subject, the second verb is in the infinitive.

EXERCISE.

She will be delighted to see you.	How sorry I am you
<i>enchanté</i> 2 1	<i>que</i> 2 1
were not at home last night.	Call upon him, he will be
subj-2 <i>chez vous hier au soir.</i>	<i>aller</i> 1 <i>voir</i> 3 2
glad to see you.	I cannot tell you how vexed I am
<i>bien aise</i>	<i>je ne saurais</i> <i>contrarié</i> 2 1
at my servant being so slow, and at your not receiving	
<i>être</i> subj-3	<i>ne recevoir pas</i> subj-3

my note. We are all very sorry you cannot come, for
billet m. bien fâché pouvoir subj-1
 we shall have a delightful evening.
passer 2 soir de f. 1

210. IL EST, impersonal, joined to an adjective requires *de* before the infinitive. *C'est* requires *à*.

EXAMPLES.

il est beau de mourir pour sa pa- it is noble to die for one's
trie country
c'est horrible à voir it is horrid to see.

EXERCISE.

It was amusing to see them. How pleasant it is to
il ind-2 que agréable 2 il 1
 enjoy good health! This is most painful to hear.
avoir de ce on ne peut plus pénible
 It was very disagreeable (for me) to witness all their
il 2 ind-2 3 me 1 être présent à
 quarrels. It may be pleasant to look at, but is it very
*cela voir **
 useful?

ADJECTIVES IN THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

211. The verb which follows an adjective in the comparative requires *ne* before it.

EXAMPLE:

vous êtes plus heureux que vous n'étiez you are happier than you were.

But if the first member of the sentence is negative or interrogative the *ne* is suppressed.

EXAMPLES.

vous n'êtes pas plus heureux que vous l'étiez you are not happier than you were
peut-on être plus heureux que vous l'êtes ? can any one be happier than you are ?

The *ne* is also suppressed after *quand*, *dans le temps*, or any adverb.

EXAMPLE.

**vous êtes plus heureux que quand
vous étiez en France** **you are happier than when you
were in France**

Tout autre, autrement, mieux, moins bien, plus mal, also require the *ne*, before the verb.

NEW BOOK

il est tout autre qu'il n'était he is quite different from what
he was

参考文献

He is much richer than you think. You sing better than
peu
 you did. He has been better received than he thought.
faute de ind-2 *croire* ind-2
 Sciences are now more cultivated than they were. Since
être ind-2
 the invention of gun powder battles are less bloody than they
 2 1
 were. That war was not less successful than it was just.
être ind-3 *heureuse* *être* ind-2
 (Can any one) be more amiable than she is? Is he not
peut-on
 much richer than he was? The poor are not so sick,
 pl. *moins malade*
 (for want of) food, as the rich are for taking too much.
faute de *que* pl. *en prendre*

ADJECTIVES IN THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.

212. An adjective in the superlative degree requires that the verb which follows it should be in the subjunctive mood, or that the noun should be in the genitive case, that is. have the preposition *de* before it.

EXAMPLES.

donnez-moi la meilleure plume give me the best pen you have
que vous ayez
la plus belle fleur du jardin the prettiest flower in the garden

The absolute *le seul, l'unique, le premier, le dernier, aucun*, must be considered as superlatives, and included in this rule.

EXERCISE.

You see the largest tree there is in the park. is he
grand arbre qu'il y ait
 not the richest man in the town? I gave you the only one
riche * *donner ind-4*
 I had. They say he is the cleverest boy in the school
avoir subj-2 on dit que c'est habile
 She is certainly the prettiest girl I ever saw. I am not the
c'est personne voir subj-3
 only one, I believe, who accepted his invitation. There
à ce que je crois accepter subj-3 il y
 were present some of the most celebrated men in Europe,
avait là quelques-uns
 but (no one could get a prep at them), so great was the
il était impossible d'en approcher tant 1 4 3
 crowd.
 2'

213. By, after a comparative, is rendered by *de*.

EXAMPLE

Il est plus grand d'un pouce he is taller by one inch

ADJECTIVES OF NUMBER.

214. *Unième* is used only after *vingt, trente, quarante, cinquante, soixante, quatre-vingt, cent* and *mille*. *C'est la vingt-et-unième fois*, it is the twenty first time.

Cent, in the plural takes an *s*, except when followed by another noun of number, as :

<i>ils étaient deux cents</i>	there were two hundred
<i>trois cents hommes</i>	three hundred men
<i>ils étaient deux cent dix</i>	there were two hundred and ten

Vingt in *quatre-vingt*, and *six-vingt*, also takes an *s*, when followed by a substantive, as :

<i>quatre-vingts hommes</i>	eighty men
<i>six vingts abricots</i>	six score apricots

But it takes no *s*, when followed by another term expressing number, *quatre-vingt-un arbres*, *quatre-vingt-dix hommes*.

The ordinal numbers, collective and distributive, always take the sign of the plural: *les premières douzaines*, the first dozens; *les quatre cinquièmes*, the four fifths.

For dates the French write *mil*, as: *mil sept cent quatre-vingt-dix-neuf*, one thousand seven hundred and ninety-nine, etc.

REMARK. *Cent* and *mille* are used indefinitely, as

<i>il lui fit cent caresses.</i>	he shewed him a hundred marks of kindness
<i>faites-lui mille amitiés.</i>	present him a thousand compliments

EXERCISE.

1. It was the *thirty-first* year after so glorious a peace, when the war broke out again with a fury of which history offers few examples.

2. There were only *three hundred*, and in spite of their inferiority in numbers, they attacked the enemy, beat and dispersed them.

3. He has sold his country house for *two thousand five hundred and fifty* pounds.

4. Choose out of your nursery ground *eighty* fruit trees and *ninety* dwarf-trees, divide them into dozens, and put in the two first dozens of each sort, those whose fruits are most esteemed.

5. When Louis the Fourteenth made his entry into Strasbourg, the Swiss deputies having come to pay their respects to him, Le Tellier, archbishop of Rheims, who saw among them the bishop of Basle, said to one near him: that bishop is apparently some poor beggar.—How, replied the other, he has a *hundred thousand* livres a year.—Oh! oh! said the archbishop, he is then a respectable man, and shewed him a thousand civilities.

(1.) Year, *année*; when, *quo*; broke out again, *se rallumer*, Ind-3.

(2.) Only, *se quo*, in spite of, *malgré*.

(3.) Pounds, *livre sterling*.

(4.) Out of, *dans*; nursery-ground, *pépinière*; fruit-trees, *plein d'arbres fruitier*; dwarf-trees, *arbres nains*.

(5.) Swiss, (of the Swiss); pay, *présenter*; respect, *hommage*, pl.; one near him, *son voisin*; that bishop, etc. *c'est un misérable apparemment quo cet évêque*; a year, *de rente*; shewed, *faire*, Ind-3; civilities, *carresses*.

The French say, *le onze, du onze, au onze, sur les onze heures, sur les une heure*, pronouncing the words *onze* and *une*, as if they were written with an *h* aspirated.

215. The cardinal numbers are used for the ordinal.

1. In reckoning time, that is, the *hour* of the day, the *day* of the month, the *year* of an era, as: *il est trois heures*, it is three o'clock; *le vingt de Mars*, the twentieth of March; *l'an mil sept cent dix*, etc.,

216. 2. In speaking of the order of succession of sovereigns, as: *Louis seize, George trois*, except the first two of the series, as: *Henri premier, George second*. *Quint* for *cinq* is only said of the *Empereur Charles-quint*, and the *Pape Sixte-quint*.

EXERCISE.

1. They made in the parish and in the neighbouring places a collection which produces a *hundred and twenty-one* guineas.

2. William, surnamed the Conqueror, king of England and duke of Normandy, was one of the greatest generals of the *eleventh* century: he was born at Falaise, and was the natural son of Robert, duke of Normandy, and of Arlotte, a furrier's daughter.

3. Make haste; it will soon be *ten* o'clock. We shall have a great difficulty to arrive in time.

4. The winter was so severe in *one thousand seven hundred and nine*, that there was but one olive tree that resisted it*, in a place where there had been more than ten thousand.

5. It was the *twenty-first* of January, one thousand seven hundred and ninety-three, that the unhappy Louis the *sixteenth* was led to the scaffold.

(1.) They, *on*; neighbouring places, *voisinage*, sing; collection, *guêles*.

(2.) William, *Guillaume*; furrier, *fourreur*.

(3.) Make haste, *se dépêcher*; will be, *ind-1*; great difficulty, *blen de la peine*.

(4.) Severe, *rude*; but, *ne que*; had been, *y en avoir*, *ind-2*.

CHAPTER IV.

PRONOUNS.

§ I.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

DISTINCTION BETWEEN THE SUBJECT AND THE OBJECT.

217. Personal pronouns, like the substantives which they represent, whether persons or things, are either the *subject* or *object* of a verb.

As object or regimen, they are also *direct* or *indirect*. See 170, 173.

SUBJECT.

Common to persons and things *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles*.

Also *moi, toi, lui, eux*.

OBJECT DIRECT.

Common to persons and things, *me, te, le, la, nous, vous, les*, m. f.

Also *moi, toi*.

OBJECT INDIRECT. (DATIVE.)

Of persons, *me, te, lui*, m. f. *nous, vous, leur*, m. f.

Also, *moi, toi*.

Also *à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux à elles.*

Of things, *y* of both genders and numbers.

OBJECT INDIRECT, (*genitive or ablative.*)

Of persons, *de moi, de toi, de lui, d'elle, de nous, de vous, d'eux, d'elles*; sometimes *en*.

Of things, *en* of both genders and numbers.

PRONOUNS GOVERNED BY PREPOSITIONS.

Moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, elles.

PRONOUN SUBJECT.

218. The place of the subject is before the verb, if affirmative, after it, if interrogative.

EXAMPLES

<i>je parle</i>	<i>I speak</i>
<i>il raconta son histoire</i>	<i>he related his history</i>
<i>est-il heureux?</i>	<i>is he happy?</i>

219. Sometimes there are two or more subjects to the verb, such as *you, he, and I are agreed to go*; in such cases, *moi, toi, lui, eux*, are used instead of *je, tu, il, ils*, and it is polite to place the first person last.

EXAMPLES.

vous et moi, nous irons *you and I we shall go.*

EXERCISE.

My sister and I we were walking by the last rays of the
se promener ind-2 à *rayons m. pl.*
 setting sun, and we were saying, what a soft splendour does it
couchant 2 1 *dire ind-2* *doux éclat m.* * 2
 still spread over all nature! In the long winter even-
pas 3 5 se répand 1 *art.* *de 2 soi*
 ings, my father, my brothers, and I used (to spend) two
réc f. pl. 1 *nous passer ind-2*
 hours in the library, and to read there, (in order to)
bibliothèque f. *nous lire, ind-2* *y* *pour*
 (subvert our minds) from the serious studies of the day, those
se délasser *et 2 1*

amiable poets who interest most the heart, by the charms of a
 2 1 *le plus*
 lively imagination, and make us love truth, by disguising it
vant 2 1 2 1 art. *en déguiser*
 under the mask of an ingenious fiction You and your friend
trait m. pl. = 2 f. 1
 shall accompany me to the museum, where we shall study nature
—pagner 2 1 * *musée* m. où
 in her three kingdoms.
règne m. pl.

220. *Moi, toi, lui, eux* are also used instead of *je, tu, il, ils*.

1st. After *que* in comparisons.

EXAMPLE.

vous êtes plus grand que moi you are taller than I.

2nd. After *c'est*, and in answer to a question.

EXAMPLES.

ce n'est pas moi qui l'ai fait it is not I who did it
que vous reste-t-il? Moi whom have you left? Me.

3rd. Before a relative pronoun or an infinitive, speaking emphatically and by apposition.

EXAMPLES.

<i>moi, dont il déchire la réputation</i>	<i>I, whose reputation he destroys</i>
<i>toi, qui fais le brave</i>	<i>thou who lookest so valiant</i>
<i>moi, trahir le meilleur de mes amis!</i>	<i>I, betray my best friend!</i>
<i>voudriez-vous me perdre, moi votre allié?</i>	<i>would you ruin me, who am your ally?</i>
<i>eux m'ont relevé, et lui m'a pansé</i>	<i>they picked me up, and he dressed my wounds</i>

OBSERVE. In English, it is allowed to place the adverb between the subject and the verb, *I certainly did not think he would come*. The adverb must always come last in French, *Je ne pensais certainement pas qu'il viendrait*.

EXERCISE.

You write (a great deal better) than I do. If you are not so rich
beaucoup mieux *

as he is, I think you are as happy. Who calls? I do
enc • *tout aussi heureux* •
 Is it you or he who said so? It is not I. I! stoop to the
l'avez dit *m'abaisser devant*
 man who dipped his hands in the blood of his king! Your
tremper ind-4
 brothers and mine undertake it. They find the money and he
s'en charger *fournir*
 will manage the work. It is I who have prevailed upon him to un-
conclure 2 *engagé* 3 • *le 1 à*
 dertake that journey. Can you act so towards him, he who ever
 1
 was your best friend?
ind-3)

THINGS MASCULINE OR FEMININE.

221. It is almost useless to repeat that inanimate things in French are either masculine or feminine, and consequently that the pronouns *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles*, are used accordingly in speaking of such.

Thus speaking of a rose, *rose* f. we say

EXAMPLES.

elle est belle, *it is beautiful*
ne sent-elle pas bon? *does it not smell nice?*

Of a book, *livre*, m.

EXAMPLES.

Il est bien écrit *it is well written*
vous a-t-il amusé? *has it amused you?*

EXERCISE.

(Look at) that magnificent building; it unites grace to
Regarder — *si que bâtiment m réunir art. grâce f. art.*
 beauty, and elegance to simplicity. Ignorance is jealous,
 = f. art. — f. art. = f. — f.
 presumptuous, and vain: it sees difficulties in nothing, (is
présumptueux — *ne de = f. pl. à rien ne*
 nothing, and stops at nothing. Let us gather
ne s'arrêter à *cueillon*

these roses; what a sweet fragrance *they* exhale Never judge
 quel * *parfum* — *les*.
 from appearances; *they* are often deceitful: the wise man ex-
 amines them, and does not decide upon *them*, till he has
 * *se décider d'après* f. *que lorsque*
 had time to fix his judgment.
 art. m. de fixer

AUCRI, ENCORE, PEUT-ETRE, ETC. FOLLOWED BY THE INTERROGATIVE FORM.

222. Although placing the personal pronoun *subject*, after the verb, is the sign of a question, there are some cases in which custom requires or admits, that the pronoun should be so placed, though no interrogation is meant.

1st. After *aussi*, and on that account, and for this reason, *peut-être*, may be, perchance; *encore*, and yet, besides, with all that; *toujours*, still; *en vain*, in vain, *du moins*, *au moins*, at least.

2nd. In narrations, as in English, said I, *dis-je* ;
replied I, *répondis-je*.

3rd. In the imperative mood of *pouvoir*, *devoir*.

EXAMPLES.

puissé-je le voir ! *oh that I may see him*
dussé-je mourir *were I to die*

F PRONOUNS BEING DIRECT AND INDIRECT REGIMEN.

223. It has been shown (No. 170), in speaking of the government of the substantive, that the use of the proper preposition, before the noun, or the using no preposition at all, entirely depends upon the knowledge of the regimen of the verb; and it has also been shown, by comparison, that the two languages are far from agreeing in that respect, because the French equivalent of an active English verb, may be

neuter, and vice versa; *obéir*, for instance, requires *à*, *obéir à la loi*, whereas in English *to obey* is active, *to obey the law*. Now, if instead of a noun, a pronoun is used, as the object of a verb, it must necessarily be put in the same case as the noun itself would; pains must therefore be taken to ascertain whether the governing verb requires a direct or an indirect case. *I resist him*, for example, must not be rendered by *je LE résiste*, but by *je LUI résiste*, because *to resist a man*, is, in French, *résister à un homme*. *I want them*, cannot be *je les ai besoin*, but *j'ai besoin d'eux*, because *to want a person*, is *avoir besoin d'une personne*. Again, the English make no difference between the *direct* and *indirect* case; *him*, *her*, *them*, serve for both; not so in French, *him* is rendered by *le* or *lui*, not indifferently, but according to circumstance. Thus we say, *I see him*, *je le vois*, and *I send him a book*, *je lui envoie un livre*, because *him* being the case direct or accusative of *I see*; so is *le* of *je vois*; but *him* is the indirect case or dative of *I send*, and book the direct case, consequently *lui* must be used in French, to show that difference.

Having endeavoured to point out the different manner of using personal pronouns in French and in English, we will now give rules as to the place they are to occupy in French, as direct and indirect cases of the verb.

In order to give every assistance to the learner, the proper preposition will be placed after the infinitive, in the exercises.

224. The pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *lui*, *leur*, *le*, *la*, *les*, *nous*, *vous*, *y* and *en*, are generally placed before verbs

EXAMPLES.

Il me dit	He tells me	Je lui parle	I speak to him
Je le vois	I see him	J'y songerai	I will think of it
Je les écoute	I listen to them	J'en suis ravi	I am delighted at it

EXERCISE.

(As soon as) we had explained to us the maxims of Socrates,
Dès que *expliquer ind-5 ** *Socrate*
 he said: you see that it is not without reason he (is looked
ind-3 *ce* *qu'on le regarde*
 upon) as truly wise. He was continually saying to me, yet a little
un vrai *ind-2*
 patience, and you will disarm even envy itself. You have
de *désarmer ** *art.* *être,*
 no doubt (some ground) for reproaching him with faults; is
sans doute *fondé* *à reprocher inf-1* *des fautes;*
 there (any man) on earth that is exempt (from them)? To
quelqu'un *art.* *qui subj-1* *en* *pour*
 please her, you must never flatter her. To abandon one's self to
lui *falloir* *flatter*
 metaphysical abstractions, is to plunge into an unfathomable
des métaphysiques? *—1* *ce ** *se jeter* *sans fond ?*
 abyss.
abîme m. 1

225. The pronouns *moi*, *toi*, *soi*, *nous*, *vous*, *lui*, *eux*, *elle*, and *elles*, are placed after verbs, when they are preceded by a preposition.

EXAMPLES.

<i>cela dépend de moi</i>	<i>that depends on me</i>
<i>je pense à toi</i>	<i>I think of thee</i>
<i>on s'occupe trop de soi</i>	<i>we think too much about ourselves</i>
<i>que dites-vous d'eux?</i>	<i>what do you say of them?</i>

EXERCISE.

My father loved me so tenderly, that he thought of none but
ind-2 *ne penser ind-2 à ** *que*
 me, (was wholly taken up) with me, and saw none but me in the
ne s'occuper ind-2 que de *voir ind-2 ** *que* *dans*
 universe. If you wish to obtain that favour, you must speak to him
de ** falloir*
 himself. It depended on you to excel your rivals, but you
ind-2 *de* *de l'emporter sur*

would not. Philip, father of Alexander, being advised
le voudrois ind-4 *Philippe 2* *comme on conseil-*

to expel from his dominions a man, who (had been speaking
fait à de chasser *état m. pl.* *parler ind-6*

ill of him; I shall take care not to do that, said he, he would go and
se garder bien * * * *en ind-3* *aller* *

slander me every where.
médire de

225*. In imperative phrases, when affirmative, *moi, toi, nous, vous, lui, leur, le, la, les, y,* and *en,* are placed after the verb; but, when negative, *me, te, se, nous, vous, lui, leur, le, la, les, y,* and *en,* are placed before it.

EXAMPLES.

<i>dites-moi</i>	<i>tell me</i>	<i>ne me dites pas</i>	<i>do not tell me</i>
<i>donnez-m'en</i>	<i>give me half</i>	<i>ne m'en donnez</i>	<i>do not give me</i>
<i>la moitié</i>	<i>of it</i>	<i>point</i>	<i>any</i>
<i>songez-y sé-</i>	<i>think of it se-</i>	<i>n'y songez pas</i>	<i>do not think</i>
<i>rieusement</i>	<i>riously</i>		<i>of it</i>

REMARK. If the pronouns *me, te, moi, toi,* intervene betwixt an imperative and an infinitive, *me, te,* are used when the imperative is without a regimen direct.

EXAMPLES.

<i>venez me parler,</i>	<i>come and speak to me</i>
<i>va te faire coiffer</i>	<i>go and get thy hair dressed</i>

But *moi, toi,* are used if the imperative have a regimen direct.

EXAMPLES.

<i>laissez-moi faire</i>	<i>let me do it</i>
<i>fais-toi coiffer</i>	<i>get thy hair dressed</i>

226. If *moi, toi,* when placed after the imperative, be followed by the pronoun, *en,* they are changed into *me, te.*

EXAMPLES.

donnez-m'en give me some | retourne-t en go back

227. When there are two imperatives joined together by the conjunctions *et*, *ou*, it is more elegant to repeat the pronoun before the second verb.

EXAMPLES.

polissez-le sans cesse et le repolissez polish and re-polish it continually
 gardez les, ou les renvoyez keep them or send them back

EXERCISE.

Listen to me, do not condemn me, without a hearing. *Com-
 écouler * m'entendre se*
 plain, thou hast just cause of complaint; however, do not com-
plaindre un sujet plainte
 plain too bitterly of the injustice of mankind. Give some. Do
amèrement art. homme pl.
 not give any. Think (of it). Do not think of it. Repeat to them
y
 continually, that, without honesty, one can never succeed in the
 world. Do not repeat to them continually the same things. Ac-
 knowledge him as your master, and obey him. Tread upon
reconnaître pour lui marcher
 that spider and kill it.
araignée f. écraser

228. When several pronouns accompany a verb, *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, *vous*, must precede the others: *le*, *la*, *les*, come before *lui*, *leur*; *y* comes before *en*, and *en* is always the last.

EXAMPLES.

Prêtez-moi ce livre; je vous le lend me that book; I will return
 rendrai demain; si vous me it to you to-morrow; if you
 le refusez, je saurai m'en passer refuse me, I can make shift
 without it

aurez-vous la force de <i>le leur</i>	<i>will you have resolution enough</i>
dire ?	<i>to tell it them ?</i>
il n'a pas voulu <i>vous y mener</i>	<i>he would not take you there</i>
je <i>vous y en</i> porterai	<i>I will bring you some there</i>

EXCEPTION. In an imperative sentence, when affirmative, *le, la, les*, are always placed first, as, *donnez-le-moi*, give it me, *offrez-la-lui*, offer it to him; *conduisez-les-y*, conduct them thither: and *moi* is placed after *y*, as *menez-y-moi*, carry me thither: but *nous* must precede *y*, as, *menez-nous-y* carry us thither.

EXERCISE

You wish to make a present to your sister.	(There is) a beautiful fan, you should present her with it.	(How many,)
<i>vouloir *</i>	<i>Voilà</i>	<i>eventail m. devoir cond-1 offrir lui *</i>
		<i>que de</i>
people are there without merit and without occupation, (who would		
<i>gens *</i>		<i>ne tenir</i>
be mere nothings) in society, did not gaming introduce		
<i>à rien cond-1 art.</i>	<i>si art. jeu m. introduire ind-2</i>	
them (into it). I shall speak to them (about it) and give you a		
	<i>en</i>	<i>je rendre ind-7</i>
faithful account of it. It is certain that old Geronse has re-		
<i>exact 2 compte m. 1</i>	<i>art.</i>	
fused his daughter to Valere; but because he does not give her to		
him, it does not follow. that he will give her to you.		
<i>s'en suivre</i>		

229. REMARK. The word *même* is sometimes added to the pronouns *moi, toi, soi, nous, vous, eux, lui, elle, elles*, to assist in specifying more particularly the person, or thing spoken of.

EXERCISE

ils se sont perdus eux-mêmes	<i>they have ruined themselves</i>
le monde estime bien des choses	<i>the world prizes many things</i>
qui, en elles-mêmes, sont fort méprisables	<i>which, in themselves, are worthless</i>

DIRECTIONS ON THE USE OF THE PROPER PERSONAL

PRONOUNS.

230. The direct regimen *me, te, le, la, nous, vous, les*, m. f. are used when the verb is active, i.e. when it requires no preposition before the noun which it governs, such as *donner un livre*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>je le donne</i>	<i>I give it</i>
<i>vous le donnerez</i>	<i>you will give it</i>
<i>ne le donnez pas</i>	<i>do not give it</i>

Aimer une personne.

EXAMPLES.

<i>nous l'aimons</i>	<i>we love him</i>
<i> aimez-la</i>	<i>love her</i>
<i>il ne les aime pas</i>	<i>he does not like them</i>
<i> aimez-moi</i>	<i>love me</i>

INDIRECT, (dative.)

231. The indirect *me, te, lui*, m. f. *nous, vous, leur*, m. f. are used when the preposition *à* must be placed before the noun they represent.

Thus, *donner une chose à une personne*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>nous lui donnerons un gâteau</i>	<i>we will give her a cake</i>
<i>lui avez-vous envoyé la lettre ?</i>	<i>have you sent him the letter ?</i>
<i>ne me donnez pas de vin</i>	<i>do not give me any wine</i>

À moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux, à elles, also express the dative; but in four cases only.

1st. After *penser, aller, courir, venir, boire en avoir*.

EXAMPLES.

nous penserons à lui	<i>we will think of him</i>
ils coururent à elle	<i>they ran to her</i>
en avez-vous à moi ?	<i>are you angry with me ?</i>

2nd. After reflected verbs,

adressez-vous à lui	<i>apply to him</i>
---------------------	---------------------

3rd. After *c'est*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>c'est</i> à moi à y aller	<i>it is my turn to go</i>
est-ce à vous à parler ainsi ?	<i>is it for you to speak to me in this manner ?</i>

4. When there are two datives

EXAMPLES.

je l'enverrai à vous et à elle	<i>I will send it to you and her</i>
il parlait à mon frère et à moi	<i>he was speaking to my brother and me</i>

232. *Y* is used in speaking of things in all cases, and is of both genders and numbers.* Thus, of a *lettre* f. we say :

mettez-y l'adresse	<i>put the direction to it</i>
j'y ajouterai un mot	<i>I will add a word to it</i>

Of a project, *projet* m.

EXAMPLES.

vous n'y réfléchissez pas assez	<i>you do not sufficiently think upon</i>
pensez-y un peu plus	<i>consider it a little more</i>

Of threats, *menaces*, f. pl.

EXAMPLES.

je n'y fais aucune attention	<i>I do not mind them</i>
------------------------------	---------------------------

* There are one or two exceptions mentioned in the following pages.

EXERCISE.

1. He has been speaking *to them* with such energy, as has astonished *them*.

2. Women ought to be very circumspect; for a mere appearance is sometimes more prejudicial *to them* than a real fault.

3. He comes up to me with a smiling air, and pressing my hand, says: My friend, I expect you to-morrow at my house.

4. He said *to me*: Wilt thou ever torment thyself for advantages, the enjoyment ² of which I could not render *thee* more happy? Cast thy eyes round thee: see how every thing smiles on *thee*, and seems to invite *thee* to prefer a retired and tranquil life to the tumultuous pleasures of a vain ² world ¹.

5. The ambitious man * agitates, torments, and wastes *himself* to obtain the places or the honours to which he aspires; and when he has obtained *them*, he is still dissatisfied.

6. I have known *him* since his childhood, and I always loved *him* on account of the goodness of his temper.

7. That woman is always engaged in doing good works: you see *her* constantly consoling the unhappy, relieving the poor, reconciling enemies, and promoting the happiness of every one around *her*.

8. The more you live with men, the more you will be convinced that it is necessary to know *them* well before you * form a connection with them.

9. Enjoy the pleasures of the world, I consent *to it*; but never give yourself up *to them*.

(1.) Such energy as, *une force qui*.

(2.) Mere, simple; to be more prejudicial, *faire plus de tort*.

(3.) Comes up with, *aborder de*; pressing, *serrer*; my hand, *la main*; says, *il me dit*; at my house, *chez moi*.

(4.) Incessantly *sans cesse*; advantages, *des biens*; could, *avoir*, cond-1; cast, *porter*; thy. *art*; smiles, *sourire à*.

(5.) Destroys, *consumer*; to, *pour*.

(6.) Have known, *connaître*, ind-1; loved, ind-4; on account, *cause*; the goodness of his, (*his good*); temper, *caractère*, m.

(7.) In, *à*; works, *œuvres*, f. pl.; constantly, *sans cesse*; consoling, etc. inf-1 relieving, *assister*; promoting, *faire*; every one around her, *tout ce qui l'environne*.

(8.) Live, ind-7; be convinced, *se convaincre*, ind-7; before, *avant de*; form a connection, *vous lier*.

(9.) Enjoy, *jouir de*; give yourself up, *se livrer*.

233. The regimen indirect *de moi, de toi, de lui, d'elle, de nous, de vous, d'eux, d'elles*, (the genitive and ablative cases) are used when the preposition *de* comes before the noun they represent. Thus,

Parler d'une personne, d'un homme.

EXAMPLES.

nous ne parlons pas de lui *we do not speak of him*

Dépendre de son père.

EXAMPLES.

je dépends de lui *I am dependant on him*
ils n'ont pas le droit de me parler *they have no right to speak to me*
ainsi, puisque je ne dépends *in this manner, I am not their*
pas d'eux. *dependant.*

234. *En* is used in speaking of things, and is of both genders and numbers; as *s'abstenir de vin*.

EXAMPLES.

le vin m'est contraire, je m'en *wine is bad for me I will abstain*
abstiendrais *from it*
vous devriez vous en abstenir *you should abstain from it*

EXERCISE

1. He was suddenly taken ill of the cholera and died of it
2. He is so absurd that every one laughs at him.
3. What reason has he to complain of me, what harm have I done him?
4. His fortune is very large, it is true, but he does not know how to enjoy it.
5. Those are things which make a deep impression on the mind, I will remember them as long as I live.
6. Your things are exactly as they were when you left, no one has used them.
7. If you meet my brother, have the goodness to tell him that I shall want him at 5 o'clock precisely.
8. She must not be uneasy; we will think about her, but she must have patience.

- (1.) *Avoir une attaque soudaine de*, ind-4; *mourir de*, ind-4.
- (2.) To laugh, *se moquer de*.
- (3.) *Se plaindre de*; harm, *mal*.
- (4.) It is true, *s'en convainc*; to enjoy, *jouir de*.
- (5.) Those are things, *ce sont de ces choses*; to remember, *se souvenir de*; to live, *vivre*, ind-7.
- (6.) Things, *affaires*; as they were, *dans l'état où elles étaient*; to leave, *partir*, ind-4; to use, *se servir de*, ind-4.
- (7.) To tell, *de dire*; to want, *avoir besoin de*.
- (8.) To be uneasy, *s'inquiéter*; to think about, *s'occuper de*; to have patience, *patienter*.

PARTICULAR USE OF *y* AND *en*.

235. These two pronouns are very frequently used in French, in cases when they have no equivalent in English, or at least when it is always understood; they may be then considered as relative personal pronouns.

EN.

En stands for *some of them, some of it, any of them, any*, and refers to a noun antecedently named.

EXAMPLES.

si vous n'avez pas de manteau,	<i>if you have no cloak, I will lend</i>
je vous en prêterai un	<i>you one</i>
avez-vous un canif? oui, j'en ai	<i>have you got a pen-knife? yes, I</i>
un	<i>have</i>
ces oranges sont fort bonnes,	<i>these oranges are very good, send</i>
envoyez-m'en deux douzaines	<i>me two dozen</i>
à propos de fleurs, j'en ai de	<i>talking of flowers, I have beautiful</i>
bien belles à vous montrer	<i>ones to show you</i>

Y.

236. *Y* has generally been called an adverb because it may commonly be rendered by *there, here*, always understood; but it is frequently used for *in it, into it*, when it relates to *things* as well as to *places*.

EXAMPLES.

cette affaire est fort obscure, je	<i>this is a very obscure affair, I can</i>
n'y conçois rien	<i>make nothing of it</i>
cela ne m'intéresse nullement,	<i>this does not at all concern me, I</i>
je n'y suis pour rien	<i>have nothing to do with it</i>
si vous allez au spectacle, je se-	<i>if you go to the play I shall be</i>
rai bien aise d'y aller avec	<i>glad to go with you</i>

Y is used in speaking of persons with the verb *s'en fier*, and with *penser* in reference to a dead person.

EXAMPLES.

c'est un honnête homme, vous	<i>he is an honest man, you may trust</i>
pouvez vous y fier	<i>to him</i>
il est mort, on n'y pense plus	<i>he is dead, no one thinks of him any more</i>

EXERCISE.

1. Do you want a pen? here is a very good one.
2. He was in the garden then, but I do not think he is now.
3. Since you like game, I will send you a basket.
4. As to their father, although he has not been dead six months, they think no more of him.
5. I never could play chess; I cannot imagine, what pleasure you find in it.

- (1.) To want, *falloir à*; here is, *voici*.
- (2.) *Etre*, ind-2; he is, *être*, subj-1.
- (3.) Game, *gibier*, m.
- (4.) Although, etc., *quoiqu'il y ait six mois qu'il est mort*.
- (5.) Could, *pouvoir*, ind-4; I cannot, *je ne saurais*.

USE OF *ce* INSTEAD OF *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles*, IN DESCRIPTIVE AND EXPLANATORY SENTENCES.

237. When we speak in reference to an object already named, *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles* are used according to its gender and number; but when we define objects, when we express what they are, *ce* must be used, as well of persons as of things, thus:

qu'est-ce que c'est que ce grand bâtiment, est-ce une église?	<i>what is that large building, is it a church?</i>
non, c'est la maison commune	<i>no, it is the town-hall</i>
savez-vous qui est ce monsieur?	<i>do you know who that gentleman is?</i>
oui, c'est un Allemand	<i>yes, he is a German</i>
chacun admire Cicéron et Démosthènes; ce sont les plus grands orateurs de l'antiquité	<i>every one admires Cicero and Demosthenes, they are the greatest orators of antiquity</i>

EXERCISE.

1. White negroes are degenerated blacks, but they are not a distinct species of men.

2. I will not trouble myself about them, they are ungrateful children.

3. What flowers are those? they are tulips just come from Holland; they cost me ten guineas each.

4. I do not know him, but they tell me he is a clever architect.

5. Have you noticed this box? it is a snuff-box which belonged to my grand-father.

6. She is certainly the prettiest girl in the room.

(1.) Distinct, particulière.

(2.) To trouble one's self about, s'occuper de.

(3.) What, etc., comment nommez-vous ces fleurs-là? just, fraîchement.

(4.) They tell me, on me dit que.

(5.) Noticed, remarqué; to belong, appartenir, ind-2.

(6.) Certainly, bien certainement.

CASES WHERE THE PRONOUNS *lui, eux, elle, elles*,
MAY APPLY TO THINGS.

238. The personal pronouns *lui, elle, eux, elles*, after some prepositions, apply to persons only. Thus in speaking of a woman, we must say: *je m'approchai d'elle, je m'assis près d'elle*; but in speaking of a table: *je m'en approchai, je m'assis auprès*.

However with the prepositions *avec, après, à, de, pour, en*, etc., *lui, elle, eux, elles*, may be applied to things. Thus it is correct to say of a river,

EXAMPLE.

cette rivière est si rapide quand elle déborde, qu'elle entraîne avec elle tout ce qu'elle rencontre; elle ne laisse après elle que du sable et des cailloux

that river is so rapid when it overflows, that it carries away every thing it meets with in its course; it leaves nothing behind but sand and pebbles

Of an enemy's company.

EXAMPLE.

nous marchâmes à elle

we marched up to them

Of things, reasons, truth, virtues and vices personified, etc. as :

ces choses sont bonnes d'elles-mêmes

these things are good in themselves

j'aime la vérité au point que je sacrifierais tout pour elle

I love truth to that degree, that I would sacrifice every thing for it

ces raisons sont solides en elles-mêmes

those reasons are solid in themselves

239. After the verb *être*, they are applied only to persons, and likewise when they are followed by the relatives *qui* and *que*, as : *c'est à elle, c'est d'elles que je parle, c'est elle-même qui vient.*

The same may be said of the pronoun *eux*, which is also generally applied to persons only, yet custom allows us to say,

ce chien et ces oiseaux font tout mon plaisir, je n'aime qu'eux; eux seuls sont mon amusement, je ne songe qu'à eux

this dog and these birds are all my pleasure, I love nothing but them; they alone are my diversion, I think of nothing else

240. *Lui* and *leur* are generally applied to persons, but are sometimes used in speaking of animals, plants, and even inanimate objects, with *donner*, *rendre*, *être redevable*, *devoir*, etc., as :

ces chevaux sont rendus, faites-leur donner un peu de vin

those horses are exhausted, give them a little wine

ces orangers vont périr, si on ne leur donne de l'eau

these orange-trees will die unless they have a little water

ces murs sont mal faits, on ne leur a pas donné assez de

those walls are badly built, they have not sufficient inclination

■■■■■

EXERCISE.

1. Virtue is the first of blessings; it is *from it* alone we are to expect happiness.
2. The labyrinth had been built upon the lake Mevis, and they had given *it* a prospect proportioned to its grandeur.
3. Mountains are frequented on account of the air one breathes on them: how many people are indebted *to them* for the recovery of their health?
4. War brings in its train numberless evils.
5. It is a delicate ² affair ¹ which must not be too deeply investigated, it must be lightly passed over.
6. I have had my house repaired, and have given *it* an appearance quite * new.
7. Those trees are too much loaded: strip *them* of part of their fruit.
8. This book cost me a great deal, but I am indebted *to it* for my knowledge.
9. Self-love is captious; we, however, take *it* for our * guide; *to it* are all our actions directed, and *from it* we take counsel.
10. These arguments, although very solid *in themselves*, yet made no impression upon him, so strong a tie is habit.
11. These reasons convinced me, and *by them* I formed my decision.
12. I leave you the care of that bird; do not forget to give *it* ~~water~~.

- (1.) Blessings, *bien*; are, *sont*.
- (2.) Had been built, *on bâti*, ind-6; prospect, *vue*.
- (3.) On account, *à cause*; breathes, *respire*; on them, *y*; are indebted for, *devoir*; recovery, *rétablissement*.
- (4.) Brings, *entraîner*; in its train, *avec elle*; numberless, *bien*.
- (5.) Affair, *matière*; must, ind-1; be deeply investigated, *approfondir*, inf-1; be passed, *glisser*; over, *dessus*.
- (6.) Have had, *faire*, ind-4; appearance, *air*.
- (7.) Strip, *ôter à*; of part, *une partie*.
- (8.) A great deal, *cher*; knowledge, *instruction*.
- (9.) We, (*it is it that we*); to it, (*it is to it that we direct all, etc.*); direct, *rapporter*; from it, (*and it is from it that, etc.*)
- (10.) No, *ne aucun*; so strong, etc. (*so much habit is a, etc.*) *habît*, *habitude*.
- (11.) And from, (*and it is from them that*); by, *d'après*; formed my decision, *se décider*.

DIFFICULTY RESPECTING THE SUPPLYING PRONOUN
le EXPLAINED.

241. **LE** is used in French to supply the place of an antecedent phrase, of a substantive or an adjective. In such case, its equivalent in English is *so* or *it*, which is almost always understood.

EXAMPLES.

je suis père, et vous le serez unsi na jour	<i>I am a father, and some day or other, you will be (one) also</i>
ils ne sont pas aussi riches que nous le sommes	<i>they are not so rich as we are (2, i. e. rich)</i>
je le ferai, si je le puis	<i>I will do it, if I can (do it)</i>

LE, thus used, is declined in some cases, and not in others.

When *le* supplies the place of a substantive, it then assumes the gender and number of that substantive, as: *Madame, êtes-vous la mère de cet enfant?—Oui, je la suis*; Madam, are you the mother of that child?—Yes, I am. *Mesdames, êtes-vous les parentes dont Monsieur m'a parlé?—Oui, nous les sommes*.

EXERCISES.

1. The laws of nature and decency oblige us equally to defend the honour and interest of our parents, when we can do it without injustice.

2. We ought not to condemn, after their death, those that have not been condemned during their life.

3. Is that your idea?—Can you doubt that it is?

4. Are you Mrs. Such-a-one?—Yes, I am.

5. Are those your servants?—Yes, they are.

6. Ladies, are you glad to have seen the new piece?—Yes, we are.

7. I, a * slave! I, born to command! alas! it is but too true that I

8. She was jealous of her authority, and she must be so.

9. Was there ever a girl more unhappy, and treated with more ridicule than I am?

10. You have found me amiable: why have I ceased to appear or to you?

(1.) Decency, bienséance.

(2.) We ought, *falloir*; condemned, *le*.

(3.) Idea, *pensée*; that it is, *ce être*, subj.-1.

(4.) Mrs. *madame*; such-a-one, *un tel*.

(5.) Those, *ce là*; they, *ce*.

(6.) Ladies, *mesdames*.

(7.) Slave, *esclave*; but, *ce que*.

(8.) Must, *devoir*, ind.-2.

(9.) With more ridicule, *plus ridiculement*.

11. Have we ever been so quiet as we are ?

12. Madam, are you married?—Yes, I am.

13. Madam, are you the bride?—Yes, I am.

242. When *le* supplies an antecedent, adjective or a verb, it is undeclined.

EXAMPLES.

je le ferai si je le puis (le faire) I will do it if I can

Madame, êtes-vous enrhumée?—Oui, je le suis.

Mesdames, êtes-vous contentes de ce discours?—Oui, nous le sommes.

Fut-il jamais une femme plus malheureuse que je le suis ?

REMARK. The *le* is also undeclined, when substantives are used adjectively, as :

Madame, êtes-vous mère?—Oui, je le suis.

Mesdames, êtes-vous parentes?—Oui, nous le sommes.

Elle est fille, et le sera toute sa vie.

But it is declined if the adjectives be used substantively, as :

Madame, êtes-vous la malade?—Oui, je la suis.

Therefore this question : *êtes-vous fille de M. le duc ?* is to be answered, *oui, je le suis* ; but this, *êtes-vous la fille de M. le duc ?* it is to be by *Oui, je la suis*.

REPETITION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

243. Pronouns in the first and second persons, when the subject, must be repeated before every verb, if each of them is in different tenses. It is always even preterable to repeat them, when the verbs are in the same tense

EXAMPLES.

Je soutiens et je soutiendrai toujours	<i>I maintain, and (I) will always maintain</i>
vous dites, et vous avez toujours dit	<i>you say, and, (you) have always said</i>
accablé de douleur, je m'écriai, et je dis	<i>overwhelmed with sorrow, I exclaimed and (I) said</i>
nous nous promenions sur le haut du rocher, et nous voyions sous nos pieds, etc.	<i>we were walking upon the summit of the rock, and we saw under our feet, etc.</i>

In all cases, these pronouns must be repeated, though the tenses of the verbs be the same, if the first is followed by a regimen, or accusative.

EXAMPLE.

vous aimerez le seigneur votre Dieu, et vous observerez sa loi	<i>you shall love the Lord your God, and (you shall) observe his law</i>
--	--

244. The pronouns of the third person, when the subject, are hardly ever repeated before verbs, except those verbs be in different tenses.

EXAMPLES.

la bonne grâce ne gâte rien ; elle ajoute à la beauté, relève la modestie, et y donne du lustre	<i>a graceful manner spoils nothing ; it adds to beauty, heightens modesty, and gives it lustre</i>
il n'a jamais rien valu, et ne vaudra jamais rien	<i>he never was good for any thing, and never will be</i>
il est arrivé ce matin, et il repartira ce soir	<i>he is arrived this morning, and (he) will set off again this evening</i>

EXERCISE.

1. My dear child, *I* love you, and *I* shall never cease to love you : but it is that very love that *I* have for you which obliges me to correct you for your faults, and to punish you when you deserve it.

2. *I* heard and admired these words, which comforted me a little, but my mind was not sufficiently free to make him a reply.

3. *Thou* art young, and *thou* aimest, no doubt, at the glory of surpassing thy comrades.

4. God has said : you shall love your enemies, bless those that curse you, do good to those that persecute you, and pray for those who slander you. What a difference between these morals and those of philosophers !

(1.) Correct for, *reprandre de*.

(2.) Heard, *écouter*, ind-2; words, *discours*, sing.; my mind, etc. (*I* And not *the* mind, etc.); sufficiently free, *assez libre*; to make a reply, *répondre à*.

(3.) Almost at, *aspirer à*; surpassing, *s'emporter sur*, etc.

(4.) Slander, *calomnier*, between, *de*; morals, *morale*, f.; and that, *à cet égard*.

However, perspicuity requires the repetition of the pronoun, when the second verb is preceded by a long incidental phrase, as : *il fond sur son ennemi, et, après l'avoir saisi d'une main victorieuse, il le renverse, comme le cruel aquilon abat les tendres moissons qui dorent la campagne.*

EXERCISE.

1. *He* took the strongest cities, conquered the most considerable provinces, and overturned the most powerful empires.

2. *He* takes a hatchet, completely cuts down the mast which was already broken, throws it into the sea, jumps upon it amidst the furious billows, calls me by my name, and encourages me to follow him.

3. *He* marshals the soldiers, marches at their head, advances in good order towards the enemy, attacks and routs them, and after having entirely routed them, (*he*) cuts them to pieces.

(1.) Overturned, *renverser*.

(2.) Completely cuts down, *achever - couper*; jumps upon it, *s'élançer dessus*; billows, *vagues*.

(3.) Marshals, *ranger en bataille*; routs, *renverser*; entirely routed, *achever de mettre en désordre*; cuts, *taitier*.

245. A personal pronoun, when the *subject*, must be repeated before verbs, when passing from an affirmation to a negation, and *vice versa*, or when the verbs are joined by a conjunction, except *et* and *ni*.

EXAMPLES.

Il veut, et il ne veut pas

He will and he will not

Il donne d'excellents principes,	<i>he lays down excellent principles,</i>
parce qu'il sait que les progrès ultérieurs en dépendent	<i>because he knows that upon them depends all further progress</i>
il donne et reçoit	<i>he gives and receives</i>
il ne donne ni ne reçoit	<i>he neither gives nor receives</i>

Pronouns, when the regimen or the object are repeated before every verb.

EXAMPLES.

l'idée de ses malheurs le poursuit, le tourmente et l'accable	<i>the idea of his misfortunes pursues (him), torments (him), and overwhelms him</i>
Il nous ennuie et nous obsède	<i>he wearies (us) and besets us unceasingly</i>

EXCEPTION. They are not repeated before such compound verbs as express the repetition of the same action, and when the verbs are in the same tense, as :

Je vous le dis et redis, il le fait et refait sans cesse.

REMARKS.

1. It is inconceivable how whimsical she is; from one moment to another *she* will and *she* will not.

2. The Jews are forbidden to work on the sabbath; *they* are as it were locked in slumber; *they* light no fire, and carry no water.

3. For nearly a week *she* has neither eaten nor drunk.

4. The soldier was not repressed by authority, but stopped from satiety and shame.

(1.) (*She is of a whimsical cast inconceivable*) whimsical cast, *bizarrie* f.

(2.) (*It is forbidden to*), forbidden, *défendre*; sabbath, *jour du sabbat*; locked, *enchaîné*; slumber, *repos*; light, *allumer*.

(3.) For, *depuis*; nearly, *près de*, a week, *huit jours*; has eaten....drunk, *ind-1*.

(4.) Repressed, *réprimer*; stopped, *s'arrêter*, *ind-3*; from, *par*.

RELATION OF THE PRONOUN OF THE THIRD PERSON TO A NOUN EXPRESSED BEFORE.

246. The pronouns of the third person, *il*, *ils*, *elle*, *elles*, *le*, *la*, *les*, must always relate to a noun, whether subject or regimen, taken only in a definite

sense, antecedently expressed ; but they must not be applied to a subject and regimen, at the same time.

EXAMPLES.

<i>la rose est la reine des fleurs,</i>	<i>the rose is the queen of flowers ;</i>
<i>aussi est-elle l'emblème de la</i>	<i>therefore it is the emblem of</i>
<i>beauté</i>	<i>beauty</i>
<i>j'aime l'ananas ; il est exquis</i>	<i>I like the pine-apple ; it is deli-</i>
	<i>cious</i>

EXERCISE.

1. It is taste that selects the expressions, that combines, arranges, and varies *them*, so as to produce the greatest effect.

2. Horace answered his stupid critics not so much to instruct *them*, than to shew their ignorance, and let *them* see that they did not even know what poetry was.

3. Man embellishes nature itself ; he cultivates, extends, and polishes it.

4. The Messiah is expected by the Hebrews ; *he* comes and calls the Gentiles, as had been announced by the prophecies ; the people that acknowledge *him* as come, is incorporated with the people that expected *him*, without a single moment of interruption.

- (1.) So as to, *de manière à ce qu'elles*, subj.-l.
 (2.) Stupid, *ot* ; not so much, *moins* ; to, *pour* ; show, (*to them*), *leur*, etc. ; let see, *faire entendre* ; was, *c'était que*.
 (4.) Gentiles, *Gentil* ; (the prophecies had announced it) ; acknowledges, *reconnaître* ; with, *à* ; without, *sans qu'il y ait* ; single, *seul*.

But the two following sentences would be equivocal :

<i>Racine a imité Euripide, en tout</i>	<i>Racine has imitated Euripides in</i>
<i>ce qu'il a de plus beau dans</i>	<i>all that he has most beautiful</i>
<i>sa Phèdre</i>	<i>in his Phædra</i>
<i>le légat publia une sentence</i>	<i>the legate published a sentence of</i>
<i>d'interdit ; il dura trois mois</i>	<i>interdiction ; it lasted three</i>
	<i>months</i>

because, in the first of these two sentences, *il* may relate, either to *Racine*, or to *Euripides* ; and, from the construction of the second sentence, *il*, relating to *interdit*, appears also to relate to *légat*. Again, it is not altogether correct to say :

<i>neulle pais pour l'impie ; il la</i>	<i>no peace for the wicked ; he seek</i>
<i>cherche, elle fuit</i>	<i>it, it flies</i>

Because, from the construction, the pronouns *la* and *elle* seem to relate to *nulle pair*, whereas their real antecedent is the substantive *pair*, but without the negative *nulle*.

EXERCISE.

1. Poetry embraces all sorts of subjects; *it* takes in every thing that is most brilliant in history; *it* enters the fields of philosophy; *it* soars to the skies; *it* plunges into the abyss; *it* penetrates to the dead; *it* makes the universe its domain; and if this world be not sufficient, *it* creates new ones, which *it* embellishes with enchanting abodes, which *it* peoples with a thousand various inhabitants.

2. Egypt aimed at greatness; and wished to * strike the eye at a distance, always pleasing *it* by the justness of proportion.

3. Egypt, satisfied with its own territory, where every thing was in abundance, thought not of conquests; *it* extended itself in another manner, by sending colonies to every part of the globe. and with *them* politeness and laws.

(1.) Subjects, *matière*; takes in, *se charger de*; that is, *y avoir de*; (in) the fields, soars to, *s'élancer dans*; plunges, *s'enfoncer*; to, *chez*; (its domain of the universe); be sufficient, *suffire*; ones, *mondes*; enchanting, *enchante*; abodes, *l'empire*; various, *divers*.

(2.) Greatness, *grand*; wished, *vouloir*; eye, pl.; at a distance, *dans l'éloignement*; (in) pleasing, *contenter*.

(3.) Was in abundance, *abonder*; thought of, *songer à*; in, *de*; by, *en*; to, *par*; part of the globe, *terre*.

ON THE PRONOUN *soi*.

247. *Soi* is generally accompanied by a preposition, and is used in phrases, where there is an indeterminate pronoun either expressed, or understood: *on doit rarement parler de soi*; *il est essentiel de prendre garde à soi*. In this case, it is the regimen indirect; but it may be employed without a preposition.

1. With the verb *être*, as: *en cherchant à tromper les autres, c'est souvent soi qu'on trompe* or *on est souvent trompé soi-même*, in attempting to deceive others, we frequently deceive ourselves. In this situation it is the subject.

2. After *ne que*, or by opposition, as :

n'aimer que soi, c'est n'être bon *to love only ourselves, to being*
à rien *good for very little*
penser ainsi, c'est s'avengler *to think in this manner, is to blind*
soi-même *one's-self*

It is, in these examples, the regimen ; but when *de soi* and *en soi* are used in a definite sense, in speaking of things, they mean *de sa nature* and *dans sa nature*.

EXERCISE.

1. To excuse in *one's-self* the follies which one cannot excuse in others, is to prefer being a fool *ones-self* to seeing others so.

2. To be too much dissatisfied with *ourselves* is a weakness ; but to be too much satisfied (*with ourselves*) is (*a*) folly.

3. We ought to despise no one : how often have we needed the assistance of one more insignificant than *ourselves* ?

4. If we did not attend so much to *ourselves*, there would be less selfishness in the world.

5. Vice is odious in *itself*.

6. The loadstone attracts iron (to *itself*.)

(1.) Follies, *sottises* ; others, *autrui* ; prefer, *aimer mieux* ; fool, *sot* ; to seeing, *que de voir* ; so, *tel*.

(3.) We ought, *fallot*, *ind-1*, how often, *combien de fois* ; we, *on* ; needed the assistance, *n'avoir pas besoin* ; insignificant, *petit*.

(4.) We, *on* ; attend to, *s'occuper de* ; selfishness, *égoïsme*.

(6.) Loadstone, *aimant*.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

248. Possessive pronouns, conjunctive as : *mon, ma, mes* ; relative, as : *le mien, la mienne, les miens, les miennes*, agree in gender and number with the noun to which they are joined or are related.

Its, their, (his, her,) which, in English, are used in reference to things, are rendered by *son, sa, ses*, according as the case requires ; thus, in speaking of England, we say :

son parlement est le sanctuaire *her parliament is the seat of the*
de la plus sage politique *wisest policy*

son roi n'a de pouvoir que pour faire le bien *her king possesses power only to do good*
 elle envoie ses flottes dans toutes les mers *she sends her fleet in all the seas*

249. But, sometimes by the construction of the phrase, *its* may be turned by *of it*; then, it is not rendered by a possessive pronoun, but by the personal pronoun *en*, which, if it not been explained, is placed before the verb. Thus, speaking again of England, we say:

tout enfin contribue à m'en faire aimer le séjour; j'en admire surtout l'exacte police, en même temps que les lois m'en paraissent extrêmement sages *in short every thing conspires to make me love its sojourn; I particularly admire the strictness of her police, at the same time that her laws appear to me extremely wise*
 regardez cet arbre, n'en admirez-vous pas la fraîcheur? *look at that tree, do you not admire its freshness?*

EXERCISE.

1. A new custom was a phenomenon in Egypt; for which reason, there never was a people that preserved so long *its* customs, *its* laws, and even *its* ceremonies.

2. Solomon abandons himself to the love of women: *his* understanding declines, *his* heart fails and *his* piety degenerates into idolatry.

3. That superb temple was upon the summit of a hill: *its* columns were of Parian marble, and *its* gates of gold.

4. Laocoon is one of the finest statues in France: not only the whole, but all *its* features, even the least, are admirable.

5. The Thames is a magnificent river: *its* channel is so wide and so deep, below London Bridge, that several thousands of vessels lie at their ease in it.

6. This fine country is justly admired by foreigners: *its* climate is delightful, *its* soil fruitful, *its* laws wise, and *its* government just and moderate.

7. The trees of that orchard have sun enough, yet *its* fruits are but indifferent.

8. The Seine has *its* source in Burgundy, *its* mouth is at Havre-de-Grace.

9. The pyramids of Egypt astonish, both by the enormity of *their* bulk, and the justness of *their* proportions.

10. Egypt alone could erect monuments for posterity: *its* obelisks are to this day, as well for *their* beauty as for *their* height, the principal ornaments of Rome.

11. History and geography throw mutual light on each other; a perfect knowledge of *them* ought to enter into the plan of good education.

- (1.) Phenomenon, *prodige*; for which reason, *aussi*; a, *de*; preserved, subj.-*x*.
 (2.) Understanding, *esprit*; declines, *laisser*; falls, *s'affaiblit*.
 (3.) Summit, *haut*; hill, *colline*; Parian, *de Paros*.
 (4.) In, *qu'il y ait en*; the whole, *l'ensemble*; even, *jusqu'à*.
 (5.) Magnificent, *superbe*; channel, *lit*; below, *au-dessous de*; lie at, *être à*, *their, etc.*; in it, *y*.
 (6.) Justly, *avec raison*; soil, *sol*; the verb *être* must be repeated.
 (7.) Have sun enough, *être bien exposé*; but indifferent, *avec mauvais*.
 (8.) Mouth, *embouchure*; Havre, *le Havre*.
 (9.) Both, *également et*; bulk, *masse*; and, *et par*.
 (10.) Egypt alone could, *il n'appartenait qu'à l'Egypte de*; erect, *élever*; to this day, *encore aujourd'hui*; as well for, *autant par*; height, *hauteur*.
 (11.) Throw mutual light, etc. *s'éclairer l'une par l'autre*; of them, (their).

250. *Mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs*, which, in English, are used with *to be*, in the sense of *to belong*, are expressed, in French, by *à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux, à elles*.

EXAMPLES.

ce cheval est-il à vous? is this horse yours?
 on dirait à l'entendre que le monde est à lui he talks as if the world were his

251. The forms *my father's, your uncle's, etc., etc.* are also rendered *à mon père, à votre oncle*.

EXAMPLE

la maison que nous habitons est the house we inhabit is Mr. D's
 (ou appartient) à Monsieur B.

EXERCISE.

The carriage is not theirs, it is their uncle's. If this house was mine I would sell it, for I do not like its situation. You have no right to give what is not yours. This pretty dog is my sister's, I have promised to take care of it in her absence.

No right, *le droit de*.

In, *pendant*.

252. *Les miens, les tiens, les siens, les nôtres, les vôtres*, are used to express one's family, relations, clients, etc.

EXAMPLES.

il est allé en Amérique avec tous *he has gone to America with*
 les siens *his family*
 toi et les tiens vous avez tou- *you and your whole race have always*
 jours mal parlé de moi *spoken ill of me*

253. *A friend of yours, a horse of mine, and such phrases, are turned in this manner in French, un de vos amis, un de mes chevaux.**

EXAMPLE.

c'est un de ses tours *this is a trick of his*

254. In speaking to a person of his own relations, politeness requires that we put: *monsieur, madame, mademoiselle, messieurs, mesdames, mesdemoiselles*, before the possessive pronoun.

EXAMPLES.

j'ai rencontré Monsieur votre *I met your father*
 père
 Messieurs vos frères sont-ils *are your brothers come ?*
 arrivés ?

255. Custom requires the use of the possessive pronoun before the names of relations, in addressing them.

EXAMPLES.

cœur, venez ici que je vous *sister, come here, I want to speak*
 parle *to you*
 mon oncle, quand partez-vous ? *uncle, when do you go ?*

EXCEP. *Papa, maman.*

* *This is no business of yours*, must be rendered by *ce n'est pas là votre affaire*, or *cette affaire là ne vous regarde pas*. This is applicable to any sentence which may not be turned, like the above, by *this is one of his tricks; that brother of yours must*, therefore, be turned by *your brother*.

256. Possessive pronouns are repeated before every noun of the same sentence.

EXAMPLES.

mon père et ma mère* sont venus. *my father and mother have come.*

donnez-moi mon habit et mon chapeau. *give me my coat and hat.*

257. When two adjectives qualify the same noun, the pronoun possessive is repeated, if they express opposite or incompatible qualities; it is not repeated, in the contrary case.

EXAMPLES.

Je lui ai montré mes beaux et mes vilains habits. *I showed him both my fine and ugly dresses.*

Je lui ai montré mes beaux et magnifiques habits. *I showed him my beautiful and magnificent dresses.*

EXERCISES.

1. I fear neither you nor yours.
2. He left France with all his family at the time of the revolution.
3. A friend of mine told me this morning that Parliament is to be dissolved.
4. That son of yours will give you a great deal of trouble.
5. Is your mother returned from the country?
6. Allow me to congratulate you on your brother's appointment.
7. Cousin, I am glad to see you; when did you return?
8. I believe that his father and mother are dead.

(1.) *Ne craindre ni.*

(2.) *To leave, abandonner.*

(3.) *Dire, lui-4; is to be, etc., que l'on va dissoudre le.*

(4.) *Trouble, embarras.*

(6.) *Appointment, nomination.*

(7.) *When did you, etc., depuis quand êtes-vous de retour?*

* Custom admits *mes père et mère*, my father and mother, instead of *mon père et ma mère*, it admits also, *ses père et mère*, *ses jère et mère*.

PARTS OF THE BODY, PHYSICAL AND INTELLECTUAL FACULTIES.

258. There is peculiarity of construction, with regard to these, which requires particular attention and notice. The French in speaking of them do not generally, make use of the possessive pronoun, but of the definite article.

EXAMPLES.

j'ai mal à la tête*,	<i>I have a pain in my head.</i>
j'ai reçu un coup de feu au bras droit,	<i>I received a shot in my right arm.</i>
il a perdu l'esprit,	<i>he has lost his senses.</i>
mieux vaut perdre la vie que l'honneur,	<i>better lose one's life than one's honour.</i>
la tête me fait mal,	<i>my head aches.</i>

259. When speaking of any thing done to any part of the body, or of the understanding, such as *to wash one's hands, to improve one's mind*, a pronoun, in the dative case, is placed in conjunction with the verb, in order to show *whose hands, whose understanding* are thus affected; *me laver les mains, lui former l'esprit*, to wash my hands, to form his mind.

If the thing is done *to ourselves*, and *by ourselves*, the verb is reflected.

EXAMPLES.

je me lave les mains,	<i>I wash my hands, or I wash the hands to myself.</i>
tu te coupes le doigt,	<i>you cut your finger.</i>
il se fait la barbe,	<i>he shaves his beard.</i>
nous nous rinçons la bouche,	<i>we wash our mouths.</i>
nous nous sommes lavé les mains,	<i>we have washed our hands.</i>
vous vous formez l'esprit,	<i>you improve your mind.</i>
ils s'enrichissent la mémoire,	<i>they enrich their memory.</i>

* The reason of this custom is that there cannot be any ambiguity as to whose head is aching, and, consequently, that the definite article is sufficient.

260. If the thing is done *to another*, the indirect regimen, *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur*, are used with the verb, according to the rules 224, 225, and 225*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>vous me blessez la main,</i>	<i>you hurt my hand, or you hurt the hand to me.</i>
<i>tenez-moi la tête,</i>	<i>hold my head.</i>
<i>vous lui avez cassé le bras,</i>	<i>you have broken his arm.</i>
<i>ils nous ont fendu la tête,</i>	<i>they split our head.</i>
<i>vous ai-je marché sur le pied ?</i>	<i>did I tread on your foot ?</i>
<i>on leur a arraché les yeux,</i>	<i>they tore their eyes out.</i>

EXERCISES.

1. Our carriage passed over his body, and broke two ribs.
2. Writing so long makes* my hand ache.
3. She was so shocked by the sudden death of her husband, 'hat she lost her mind.
4. Come, give me your hand, let us be friends.
5. Do not cut your nails with my penknife, you will spoil it.
6. Where did he lose his leg ?
7. You have not washed your face.
8. Who has cut your hair ?
9. Have you not cut your finger ?
10. Last year, I sprained my foot, by leaping over a ditch.
11. The wound is so bad that they say they will be obliged to amputate his leg.
12. She took my hand, and put a pretty ring on my little finger.

- (1.) To pass over, *passer sur*.
 (2.) A force d'écrire; to ache, *faire mal*.
 (3.) Shocked, *affecté*; to lose, *en perdre*, ind-3.
 (4.) Nails, *ongles*.
 (5.) To lose, *perdre*, ind-4.
 (6.) Hair, *les cheveux*.
 (7.) To sprain, *se donner une entorse à*.
 (8.) They will be obliged, *il faudra*.
 (9.) Put, *mettre*, ind-3; on. 4.

261. If however the part of the body spoken of be the subject of the verb, it is then necessary to use the possessive pronoun, otherwise there would be ambiguity.

EXAMPLES.

Je vois que ma jambe enfle, *I see my leg is swelling.*
 son esprit succomba, *his mind failed.*

In some other cases, it is also necessary to use the possessive pronoun for the sake of clearness.

EXAMPLES.

Il lui donna en main à baiser, *he gave him his hand to kiss.*
 elle a donné hardiment son bras au *she courageously presented her*
 chirurgien, *arm to the surgeon.*

EXERCISE.

1. In this interview, they made each other presents; she gave him *her* portrait, and he gave her his finest diamond.

2. A young surgeon preparing to bleed the great Condé, the prince said to him smiling, do not you tremble to bleed me? I, my lord, no, certainly; it is not I, it is you who ought to tremble. The prince, charmed with the reply, immediately gave him *his* arm.

(1.) Interview, *entrevue*; made each other, *se faire mutuellement*.

(2.) Preparing, *se disposer*; bleed, *saigner*; smiling, *d'un air riant*; it is not I, (it is not to me); it is you, (it is to you); who ought to, *do*; reply, *répondre* f.

262. Although verbs which are conjugated with two pronouns of the same person generally remove every kind of amphibology, yet custom authorizes some familiar expressions, although the possessive pronoun seems to be redundant, as:

Il se tient ferme sur ses pieds, *he stands firm upon his feet.*
 je l'ai vu, de mes propres yeux, *I have seen it with my own eyes.*

When speaking of an habitual complaint, the possessive pronoun is also properly used, as:

Sa migraine l'a repris, *his head-ache is returned*

EXERCISE.

1. Whatever he may do, he always finds himself safe.

2. Can you still doubt the truth of what I tell you? Would you

ask a stronger proof than that I give you, it is that I heard it, yes, heard it with my own ears.

3. My gout does not allow me a moment's repose.

4. It is in vain that I exhort you to work and study; your idleness, that cruel disease under which you labour, renders useless all the exhortations of friendship.

(1.) Finds himself, *se retrouver*; safe, *sûr ses jambes*.

(2.) Can, *cond-l*; doubt, *douter de*; ask, *exiger*.

(3.) Allow *laisser*.

(4.) It is in vain that I, *je avoir beau*; you labour, *qui vous travaillez*.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

For their concord with the noun, see Nos. 70, 71, 72.

263. *ÊTRE*, used in conjunction with *ce*, must be in the singular, although relating to the first and second person plural.

EXAMPLES.

<i>c'est moi qui l'ai dit,</i>	<i>it is I who said so</i>
<i>ce sera vous qui en jouirez,</i>	<i>you will be the person to enjoy it.</i>
<i>est-ce nous qui vous avons trompé?</i>	<i>is it we who deceived you?</i>
<i>ce n'est pas lui que j'ai envoyé chercher,</i>	<i>he is not the person I sent for.</i>

264. With regard to the third person plural, the verb *ÊTRE* is sometimes plural, sometimes singular; this difference does not arise from any rule or principle, but merely from custom, and, as it cannot be explained, an example of each case is given for reference.

C'EST with *eux, elles*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>ce sont eux,</i>	<i>est-ce eux?</i>
<i>ce sont elles,</i>	<i>est-ce elles?</i>
<i>ce furent eux,</i>	<i>est-ce que ce furent-eux?</i>
<i>ce seront eux,</i>	<i>sera-ce eux ou elles?</i>
<i>que ce soient eux,</i>	<i>seraient-ce eux ou elles?</i>
<i>que ce fussent eux,</i>	

265. C'EST with nouns substantives.

EXAMPLES.

ce sont les français qui,
c'étaient les gardes qui,
ce seront les anglais qui,
ce furent les allemands qui,

sont-ce les français qui,
étaient-ce les gardes ?
est-ce que ce seront les anglais ?
est-ce que ce furent les allemands ?

ce sont ses élèves, qui lui ont
fait ce présent,

his pupils have made him this present.

on dit que ce seront les grenadiers,
qui feront le service du
château,

they say the grenadiers are to be on duty at the castle.

sont-ce les honneurs que vous
cherchez ?

is it honours that you seek ?

266. CE is used before *être*, instead of the pronouns *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles*, in reference to a noun, singular or plural, antecedently named, at the beginning of the sentence which declares the nature or the actions of such a noun. Thus, having mentioned the Phenicians, we say :

ce furent eux qui inventèrent
l'écriture,

they were the inventors of writing.

lisez Homère et Virgile : ce sont
les plus grands poètes de l'antiquité.

read Homer and Virgil : they are the best poets of antiquity.

la douceur, l'affabilité et une certaine
urbanité, distinguent
l'homme qui vit dans le grand
monde ; ce sont là les marques
auxquelles on le reconnaît,

gentleness, affability, and a certain urbanity, distinguish the man that frequents polite company ; these are marks by which he may be known.

avez-vous lu Platon ? c'est un des
plus beaux génies de l'antiquité,

have you read Plato ? he is one of the greatest geniuses of antiquity.

But, when the verb *être* is followed by an adjective, or by a substantive taken adjectively, *il* or *elle*, must be used.

EXAMPLES.

lisez Démosthènes et Cicéron, <i>ils sont très-éloquents,</i>	<i>read Demosthenes and Cicero; they are very eloquent.</i>
j'ai vu l'hôpital de Greenwich; <i>il</i> <i>est magnifique et digne d'une</i> <i>grande nation,</i>	<i>I have seen Greenwich Hospital; it is superb, and worthy of a great nation.</i>
compteriez-vous sur Valère? <i>ignorez-vous qu'il est homme à</i> <i>ne jamais revenir de ses pre-</i> <i>mières idées?</i>	<i>would you rely upon Valère? do you not know that he is a man who will never abandon his first opinions?</i>

267. A distinction is made in English, as to the singular or the plural, in sentences like these, *this is my horse, these are my children*; *ce* is again used in French before both numbers.

EXAMPLES.

c'est-là mon cheval, ce sont mes enfants.

or

voici or voilà mon cheval, voici mes enfants.

EXERCISE.

1. It is *we* who have drawn that misfortune upon * us, through our thoughtlessness and imprudence.

2. *It was* the Egyptians that first observed the course of the stars, regulated the year, and invented arithmetic.

3. Peruse attentively Plato and Cicero: *they are* the two philosophers of antiquity who have given us the most sound and luminous ideas upon morality.

4. If you are intended for the pulpit, read over and over again Bourdaloue and Massillon: *they are* both very eloquent; but the aim of the former is to convince, and that of the latter to persuade.

5. Are not these the gloves you bought yesterday? This is not my house. These are not my books; mine are in another room.

(1.) Have drawn, *s'attirer*; thoughtlessness, *légèreté*.

(2.) First, *les premiers*; stars, *étoiles*.

(3.) Peruse, *lire*; sound, *sain*; morality, *morale*.

(4.) Are intended for, *se destiner à*; pulpit, *chaire*; read over and over again, *lire et relire sans cesse*; aim, *but*.

(5.) To buy, *acheter*, *ind. 4.*

268. *Ce* is much used in conjunction with *qui*, *dont*, *à quoi*, *que*, in the sense of *what*, *that which*, *that thing which*. It is used in speaking of things only, and the adjective which relates to it, is of the masculine gender singular.

EXAMPLE.

ce qui flatte est plus dangereux *what flatters is more dangerous*
que ce qui offense, *than what offends.*

Ce, joined to the relative pronouns, *qui*, *que*, *dont*, and *quoi*, has, in some instances, a construction peculiar to itself. Both *ce* and the relative pronoun that follows it, form, with the verb which they precede, the subject of another phrase, of which the verb is always *être*. Now, *être* may be followed by another verb, an adjective, or a noun.

When *être* is followed by another verb, the demonstrative *ce* must be repeated, as :

ce que j'aime le plus, c'est d'être *what I like most is to be alone.*
seul.

When followed by an adjective, the demonstrative *ce* is not repeated, as:

ce dont vous venez de me parler *what you have been mentioning*
est horrible, *to me is horrid.*

When *être* is followed by a substantive, the demonstrative may either be repeated, or not, at pleasure, except in the case of a plural, or of a personal pronoun. Thus -

ce que je dis, est la vérité, or, what I say is truth
c'est la vérité
ce qui m'indigne, ce sont les in *what provokes me, are the injuries*

justices, qu'on ne cesse de faire	which are continually commi- ted
ce qui m'arrache au sentiment qui m'accable, c'est vous	what alleviates the grief that op- presses me, is you

EXERCISE.

1. *What* is astonishing is not always *what* is pleasing.
2. *What* the miser thinks least of, is to enjoy his riches.
3. *What* pleases us in the writings of the ancients, is to see that they have taken nature as a model, and that they have painted her with noble simplicity.
4. *What* that good king has done for the happiness of his people, deserves to be handed down to the remotest posterity.
5. *What* constitutes poetry is not the exact number and regular cadence of syllables: but it is the sentiment which animates every thing, the lively fictions, bold figures, and the beauty and variety of the imagery: it is the enthusiasm, fire, impetuosity, force, a something in the words and thoughts which nature alone can impart.
6. *What* we justly admire in Shakspeare are those characters always natural and always well sustained.
7. *What* keeps me attached to life, is you, my son, whose tender age has still need of my care and advice.

- (1.) To be astonishing, *étonner*; to be pleasing, *plaire*.
 (2.) *What*, (that to which); miser, *avare*.
 (3.) As a, *pour*.
 (4.) Deserves, *être digne*; to be handed down, *être transmis*; remotest, *la plus reculée*.
 (5.) Constitutes, *faire*; exact, *fixe*; lively, *vif*; imagery, *image*, pl; a something, *un je ne sais quoi*; words, *parole*, impart, *donner*.
 (6.) We, *on*; justly, *avec justice*; natural, *dans la nature*; sustained, *soutenu*.
 (7.) Keeps attached, *attacher*; care, advice, pl.

269. *Celui, celle, ceux, celles* are frequently used in conjunction with the relatives *qui, dont, auquel, à laquelle*, and *que* in the sense of *he who, she who, they who, or whom, whichever, whoever, and that which*, etc.

EXAMPLES.

<i>celui qui ne pense qu'à lui seul,</i> <i>dispense les autres d'y penser</i>	<i>he who thinks of nobody but him- self, excuses others from think- ing of him</i>
---	---

<p>votre nouvelle est plus sûre que celle qu'on débitait hier,</p> <p>celui qui arrivera le premier l'aura,</p> <p>ce n'est pas là celui dont nous parlions,</p>	<p><i>your intelligence is more authentic than that which was circulated yesterday.</i></p> <p><i>whichever comes first shall have it.</i></p> <p><i>this is not the one we were speak- ing of. It was not this we were speaking of.</i></p>
--	--

In these two cases it is applied both to persons and things.

270. *Celui, celle, etc.* are also followed by a genitive case.

EXAMPLES.

<p>cette maison ne m'appartient pas, c'est celle de mon oncle,</p>	<p><i>this house does not belong to me, it is my uncle's.</i></p>
--	---

271. WHICH, standing for *that which, a thing which*, and having a sentence for its antecedent, is rendered by *ce qui* in French.

EXAMPLES.

<p>il a plu toute la nuit, ce qui nous a empêchés de sortir ce matin</p>	<p><i>it rained all night, which pre- vented our going out this morn- ing</i></p>
--	---

272. *This day week, this day month, this day twelve months*, are rendered thus: *d'aujourd'hui en huit, dans huit jours, dans un mois, au bout d'un an.*

273. *Celui* is sometimes omitted, and this turn gives strength and elegance to the expression, as :

<p>qui veut trop se faire craindre, se fait rarement aimer</p>	<p><i>he who wishes to make himself too much feared, seldom makes him- self beloved</i></p>
--	---

274. *Ceci* and *cela* apply only to things, and when they have not been named, and are mentioned in an indeterminate manner.

ne touchez pas à cela	do not touch that
-----------------------	-------------------

However, in the familiar style, custom authorizes us to say, in speaking of one person individually, or of many collectively; *cela est heureux ! cela croupit dans la fange ; cela est gueux et fier, etc.*

EXERCISES.

1. *Whichever of you shall be found to excel the others both in mind and body, shall be acknowledged king of the island.*
2. *These are admirable pictures: these are after the manner of Rubens, and those after the manner of Van-Huisum.*
3. *Why are the statues of the most celebrated modern sculptors, notwithstanding the perfection to which the arts have been carried, so much inferior to those of the ancients ?*
4. *He whose soul, glowing, as it were, with divine fire, shall represent to himself the whole of nature, and shall breathe into objects that spirit of life which animates them, those affecting traits which delight and ravish us, will be a man of real genius.*
5. *He that judges of others by himself, is liable to many mistakes.*
6. *He that is easily offended, discovers his weak side, and affords his enemies an opportunity of taking advantage of it.*
7. *He who loves none but himself, deserves not to be loved by others.*
8. *I have shown my flowers to you, but you have not seen my sister's yet.*
9. *I cannot lend you my horse to-day, but you may ride my brother's, he is not going out.*
10. *Come this day week, and I will pay you.*

(1) Be found to excel the other, *on l'a vu vainqueur* ; both in, *et pour* repeated.)

(2.) These are, *voilà de* ; picture, *tableau* ; are after, *être dans* ; manner, *genre*.

(3.) Are, (to be placed before *so much inferior*) ; have been carried, (active voice), with, *on* ; inferior, *au-dessous*.

(4.) Glowing with, *enflammé de* ; as it were, *pour ainsi dire* ; the whole of, *tout* ; shall breathe into, *répandre sur* ; affecting, *touchant* ; delight, *écarter* ; real, *réel*.

(5.) By, *d'après* ; liable, *exposé* ; mistake, *méprise*.

(6.) Is offended, *s'offenser* ; weak side, *faibles* ; affords, *fournir à* ; of taking advantage, *profiter*.

275. It signifying *that, that thing*, is also expressed by *cela*.

vous rentrez tard, et cela lui dé- you keep late hours, and it dis-
plait, *pleases him.*

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

276. *Qui*, when it is the subject, relates equally to persons and things, of both numbers and genders.

EXAMPLES.

<i>l'homme qui joue perd son temps,</i>	<i>the man who games loses his time.</i>
<i>le livre, qui plaît le plus, n'est,</i>	<i>the book which pleases most is not</i>
<i>pas toujours le plus utile,</i>	<i>always the most useful.</i>

But when *qui* is the regimen, that is, the object or accusative of a verb, or when it is governed by a preposition, such as *de*, *à*, *sans*, *par*, etc. it can only be used of persons, or of things personified.

EXAMPLES.

<i>quand on est délicat et sage dans</i>	<i>he who is wise and discriminate</i>
<i>ses goûts, on ne s'attache pas,</i>	<i>in his choice, does not form an</i>
<i>sans savoir qui l'on aime,</i>	<i>attachment, without knowing</i>
	<i>whom he loves</i>
<i>l'homme à qui appartient ce beau</i>	<i>the man to whom this fine garden</i>
<i>jardin est très-riche,</i>	<i>belongs, is very rich.</i>
<i>de qui parlez-vous?</i>	<i>of whom do you speak?</i>
<i>à qui en enverrez-vous?</i>	<i>to whom will you send some?</i>
<i>ne voulez-vous pas me dire</i>	<i>will you not tell me whom you</i>
<i>avec qui vous étiez?</i>	<i>were with?</i>
<i>qui inviterons-nous?</i>	<i>whom shall we invite?</i>

277. *Qui* for *whom*, is particularly used in interrogative sentences. In any other, as in the second of these examples, *auquel* may properly be substituted for it.

278. *What*, as the object or direct regimen of an interrogative verb, is rendered by *que*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>que faites-vous?</i>	<i>what are you doing?</i>
<i>que dit-il?</i>	<i>what is he saying?</i>

279. When the regimen indirect is expressed by the preposition *de*, then *dont* should be preferred to *de qui*. It is better to say: *la femme dont vous parlez*, than *de qui*; however, when the verb expresses transmission from one individual to another, *de qui* must be used, as,

celui de qui je tiens cette nouvelle, *the person from whom I had that intelligence.*

280. Relative pronouns must not be separated from their antecedent, when that antecedent is a noun.

EXAMPLES.

<i>un jeune homme qui est docile</i>	<i>a young man who is obedient</i>
<i>aux conseils qu'on lui donne,</i>	<i>the advice that is given him,</i>
<i>et qui aime à en recevoir, aura</i>	<i>and who loves to receive some,</i>
<i>infailliblement du mérite,</i>	<i>will infallibly acquire merit.</i>

REMARK. In some phrases, *qui* may be separated from the substantive by several words, when these words serve to qualify the substantive, and are so connected with it, as to give the idea of one thing only, as

Il a fallu, avant toute chose, vous faire lire dans l'écriture sainte, l'histoire du peuple de Dieu, qui fait le fondement de la religion. -

This sentence is very correct, because as *du peuple* determines the kind of history, and *de Dieu* the kind of people, the mind necessarily goes back to the substantive *histoire*, to which the incidental phrase, *du peuple de Dieu*, refers.

EXERCISE.

1. I will show you a watch which did not cost me half so much as yours, and which is a great deal better.

2. If you buy any furniture, buy that which will be durable, in preference to that which is elegant only.

3. Could I ever expect that a man for whom I made such sacrifices, and to whom I devoted so much of my time, would thus abandon me in the moment of need?

4. I cannot name the man whom I have this report from, but I can tell you he is trustworthy.

5. Whom is this letter for?

6. Pray, what have you done with the pencil case which was upon the table this morning? I cannot find it any where.

7. That man is truly happy who can be content with his lot.

(1.) Cost, *coûter*, ind-4; half so much as, *la moitié de la*; to be better, *valeir mieux*.

(2.) Any furniture, *des meubles*, m.; in, *de*; only, *seulement*.

(3.) *Pouvoir*, ind-2; to expect, *s'attendre que*; to make, *faire*, ind-4; such, *tant de*; to devote, *consacrer*, ind-4; so much of, *une si grande partie de*; would abandon, *abandonner*, subj-3; in the, *en*.

(4.) Cannot, *avoir*, cond-1; man, *personne*, f.; trust-worthy, *digne de confiance*.

(5.) Pray, *dites donc*; with, *de*; to be, *être*, ind-2; any where, *nulle part*.

(7.) To be content with, *se contenter de*.

280.* *Qui*, may likewise be separated from its antecedent, by the verb, when the antecedent is a pronoun used as the regimen direct, or object of the verb.

EXAMPLES.

Il la trouva *qui* pleurait à chaudes larmes, *he found her crying bitterly.*
je le vois *qui* joue, *I see him playing*.*

281. A whole sentence may also be the antecedent of the relative pronoun *qui*.

EXAMPLE.

ceux-là ne sont pas les plus malheureux, *those are not the most unhappy,*
qui se plaignent le plus, who complain the most.

But it is more according to grammar to say, *ceux qui se plaignent le plus ne sont pas les plus malheu-*

* See manner of rendering the English participle present, No. 298, 396.

reux. Observe also that the first manner of construing would be incorrect without the addition of the particle *là*.

EXERCISE.

1. A young man *who* loves vanity of dress, like a woman, is unworthy of wisdom and glory; glory is only due to a heart *that* knows how ^{*} to ^{*} suffer pain and trample upon pleasure.

2. Thyself, O my son, my dear son, thou ^{*} thyself *that* now enjoyest a youth so cheerful and so full of pleasure, remember that this delightful age is but a flower *which* will be 1 withered 3 almost as soon 2 as blown.

3. Men pass away like flowers, *which* open in ^{*} the morning, and at night are withered and trampled under foot.

4. You must have a man *that* loves nothing but truth and you, *that* will speak the truth in spite of you, *that* will force all your entrenchments; and that indispensable being is the very man whom you have sent into exile.

5. We perceived him waiting for us, quietly sitting under the shade of a tree.

(1.) Vanity of dress, *à se parer vainement*; trample upon, *fouler aux pieds*.

(2.) Cheerful, *gai*; full of, *secondé de*; remember, *se souvenir*; delightful, *délicieux*, withered, *échouer*; blown, *éclore*.

(3.) Open, *s'épanouir*; and (which), *et*; at night, *le soir*; withered, *flétrir*; under, *à*; foot, art. pl. *piéd*, m.

(4.) You must have, *il vous faut*; nothing but, *ne que*; will speak, will force, subj.-1; entrenchments, *retranchement*; indispensable being, *être d'utilité*; very man, *homme même*; sent into exile, *exiler*.

(5.) Waiting for, (who waited), *attendre*, ind-2. under, *à*.

282. The relative *qui* must always have reference to a noun taken in a determinate sense.

EXAMPLE.

L'homme est un animal raisonnable, qui, etc. Il me reçut avec une politesse, qui, etc.

But we cannot say, *l'homme est animal raisonnable, qui, etc. Il me reçut avec politesse, qui, etc.*

283. When the antecedent of *qui* is the subject of

a verb in the negative or the interrogative form, the following verb must be in the subjunctive mood.

EXAMPLES.

il n'a point de livre, qui ne soit de son choix, he has not a book that is not of his own selecting.
y a-t-il ville dans le royaume qui soit plus favorisée ? is there a city in the kingdom that is more favoured ?

284. *Que* relates both to persons and things. It is always the regimen direct, and always follows its antecedent.

EXAMPLES.

l'homme que je vois, the man whom I see.
les pêches que je mange, the peaches which I eat.

The antecedent of *que* may also be a noun, qualified or determined by several words, which separate it from the relative ; as

Qu'est-ce qu'une armée ?—Un corps animé d'une infinité de passions différentes, qu'un homme habile fait mouvoir pour la défense de la patrie.

EXERCISES.

1. He received us with such *goodness, civility, and grace*, as charmed us, and made us forget all we had suffered.

2. There is no *city* in the world *where* there are more riches and a greater population.

3. Is there a *man* who can say, I shall live till to-morrow ?

4. He has not a *friend* but would make for him every kind of sacrifice.

5. He is surrounded by *enemies*, who are continually watching him, and would be very glad to detect him in a fault.

6. In his retreat, he lives like a *philosopher* who knows mankind and mistrusts them.

7. The pine-apple is a *sort of fruit* which, in Europe, ripens only in hot-houses

8. That man is a sort of *pedant*, who takes words for ideas, and facts confusedly heaped up for knowledge.

- (1.) Civility, *politesse*; such, *une*; as, *qui*.
 (2.) There are, *y avoir*, subj-1.
 (3.) Man, (who); own, subj 1. to live, *vivre*.
 (4.) But, *qui ne*; would make, subj-2.
 (6.) Like a, *en*; philosopher, *sage*; mistrusts, *se défier de*.
 (7.) Pine apple, *ananas*; hot-houses, *serre chaude*.
 (8.) Heaped up, *enfasser*; knowledge, *savoir*.

285. Observe that the relatives *whom*, *which*, *that*, being the object or accusative, are almost always understood in English, but *que* is always expressed in French.

EXAMPLES.

les hommes que nous avons vus, the men we saw.
 le vin que nous avons bu, the wine we drank.

286. There are some cases in which it is customary to use *que* for *à qui*, or *dont*, as: *C'est à vous que je parle; de la façon que j'ai dit la chose.* *That* is used in the same way, in English; it is to you *that* I speak; in the way *that* I did the thing. See 295.

287. *Lequel* and *dont* relate both to persons and things. But *lequel*, *duquel*, ought never to be used either as a subject or object, except in cases when a distinction is to be made between objects of the same nature, and to avoid ambiguity; for whenever the sense is clear, *qui* or *que* must be used, thus:

la Tamise dont le lit, and not, *de laquelle*.
 le prince dont la protection, and not, *duquel*.

288. Sometimes, *duquel*, *de laquelle*,* (common to persons and things,) and *de qui*, are separated from

* It is generally allowed, in English, to place the preposition governing *which* last; *The thing you think of*, for *the thing of which you think*; but must not be the case in French, the preposition must be first, *la chose à laquelle vous pensez*.

their antecedent by another noun substantive governed by a preposition.

EXAMPLES.

la Tamise dans le lit de laquelle	<i>the Thames, in the bed of which</i>
mille poissons se jouent,	<i>myriads of fish are playing.</i>
le prince à la protection duquel	<i>the prince to whose protection I</i>
je dois ma place,	<i>owe my place.</i>

EXERCISE.

1. The God *whom* the Hebrews and Christians have always served, has nothing in common with the deities full of imperfection and even of vice worshipped by the rest of the world.

2. The Epic Poem is not the panegyric of a hero *who* is proposed as a * pattern, but the recital of great and illustrious actions, *which* are exhibited for imitation.

3. The good *which* we hope for * presents itself to us, and disappears like an empty dream, *which* vanishes when we awake: to teach us, that the very things *which* we think we hold fast in our hands, may slip away in an instant.

4. Plato says, that, in writing, we ought to hide ourselves, to disappear, to make the world forget us, that we may present nothing but the truths we wish to impress.

5. She is a woman on whose character nothing can be said.

6. The sheep, to the spoils of which men are indebted for their garments.

7. Religion, whose maxims we despise, is, however, our greatest comfort in adversity.

8. The grand principle *on which* the whole turns is, that all * the world is but one republic, *of which* God is the common father, and in *which* every nation forms, as it were, one great family.

9. Homer, *whose* genius is grand and sublime like nature, is the greatest poet, and perhaps the most profound moralist of antiquity.

10. The celebrated Zenobia, *whose* noble firmness 2 you have admired 1, preferred dying with the title of queen, rather * than accept the advantageous 2 offers 1 which Aurelian made her.

11. The Alps, on the summit *of which* the astonished eye discovers perpetual snow and ice, present, at sun-set, the most striking and most magnificent spectacle.

12. A king, *to whose* care we owe a good law, has done more for his own glory, than if he had conquered the universe.

(1.) (That the rest of the world worshipped.)

(2.) Is proposed, *on proposee*; as, *pour*; pattern, *modèle*; is exhibited, *on donne*; imitation, *exemple*.

(3.) Good, *bon*; disappears, *s'envoler*; empty, *vain*; vanished, etc. *le vent fait évanouir*; we * hold fast, *tenir le vieux*; in our hands *, *en*; slip away, *vous échapper*.

(2.) We, *on*; to make the world forget, *se faire oublier*; that we may present but, *pour ne produire que*; wish, *vouloir*; impress, *persuader*.

(8.) She is, *c'est*; character, *compte*; nothing can be said, *on ne saurait rien dire*.

(6.) Spoils, *dépouille*, f.; to be indebted, *dévoir*.

(7.) However, *pourtant*.

(8.) Turns, *rouler*; every, *chaque*; as it were, *comme*.

(9.) Preferred, *aimer mieux*; than, *que*.

(10.) Perpetual, *éternel*; snow, ice, pl.; sun-set, *soleil couchant*; striking, *imposant*.

(11.) Care, *solicitude*.

289. *Lequel, laquelle*, are used in conjunction with prepositions, in speaking of things, but *qui* is preferable, in speaking of persons.

EXAMPLES.

la place à laquelle il aspire, the situation he aims at.
les rois à qui on doit obéir, the kings to whom one must obey

EXERCISE.

1. The ambitious man * sees nothing but pleasure in the possession of the places *to which* he aspires with so much eagerness, instead of seeing the trouble that is inseparable from them.

2. Kings, *whom* religion makes it our duty to obey, are, upon earth, the true representation of the providence of God.

(1.) (To) whom; makes it our duty to, *faire un devoir de*; representation, *image*.

290. *Quot* is said of things, and when speaking in a vague or indefinite manner; that is, when the object is not specifically named. It is generally preceded by a preposition, and rendered by *what* in English.

EXAMPLES.

c'est de quoi je m'occupe sans this is what I am always thinking
about.

à quoi pensez-vous? what are you thinking of?

avec quoi fait-on l'encre? what is ink made of?

Quoi is sometimes used relatively to a thing named and of which the gender is known; but *lequel, laquelle* would be more correct.

EXAMPLES.

la chose à quoi on pense,	<i>the thing of which they are thinking.</i>
voilà les conditions sans quoi la chose ne peut se faire,	<i>these are the terms without which the thing cannot be done.</i>

REMARK

291. *Whose is, whose are*, are generally rendered by *à qui est, à qui sont*, or *à qui appartient, à qui appartiennent*, etc. etc.

EXAMPLES.

<i>whose house is this? I cannot tell you whose it is,</i>	<i>à qui est cette maison? je ne saurais vous dire à qui elle appartient.</i>
<i>whose gloves are these?</i>	<i>à qui appartiennent ces gants?</i>
<i>God, whose we are,</i>	<i>Dieu à qui nous sommes.</i>
<i>God, whose creatures we are,</i>	<i>Dieu dont nous sommes les créatures.</i>
<i>that man, on whose account I came, disappointed me,</i>	<i>cet homme pour le compte duquel, à cause de qui, pour l'affaire duquel je suis venu, m'a trompé.</i>

292. *Which* is used antecedently, as a sort of demonstrative pronoun, in *which case* it is rendered as follows:

<i>I had some business, on which account (on account of which) I came to town,</i>	<i>j'avais quelques affaires pour lesquelles, à cause desquelles, ou de quoi, je suis venu à Londres.</i>
<i>he might come to-night, in which case we had better not go out,</i>	<i>il pourrait se faire qu'il vint ce soir, dans ce cas -là nous ferons bien de ne pas sortir.</i>
<i>I had determined to go to Paris, for which purpose I saved all the money I could,</i>	<i>j'avais résolu d'aller à Paris; à ce dessein, je faisais toutes les épargnes possibles.</i>

EXERCISE.

1. Do you know whose beautiful carriage this is?
2. This dog was found this morning in the stable, and no one knows whose it is.
3. That man, whose slave you have been, despises you, and will cast you off when you are no longer useful to his purpose.
4. His poor daughter, on whose account he had undertaken a journey to Italy, died at Genoa, almost immediately on landing.
5. He wished to get up early, in which intention he had desired his servant to call him up at four o'clock.

- (1.) *Savoir*.
 (2.) To find, *trouver*; pass. voice, ind-3.; no one, *personne*.
 (3.) To cast off, *abandonner*; you are, *être*, ind-2.; no longer, *ne plus*.
 (2.) A journey to, *le voyage de*; to die, *mourir*, ind-3.; on landing, *après avoir débarqué*.
 (5.) To wish, *avoir le désir de*, ind-3.; to desire, *dire à*, ind-3.; to call up, *se réveiller*.

293. *Où, d'où, par où*, relate only to things. They are never used, but when the nouns, to which they refer, express some kind of motion, or rest, at least metaphorically; they stand for *auquel, duquel*, thus:

<i>voilà le but, où (auquel) il tend,</i>	<i>that is the end he aims at.</i>
<i>c'est une chose d'où (de laquelle)</i>	<i>it is a thing upon which the pub-</i>
<i>dépend le bonheur public,</i>	<i>lic happiness depends.</i>
<i>les lieux par où (lesquels) il a</i>	<i>the places through which he has</i>
<i>passé,</i>	<i>passed.</i>
<i>par où commencerons-nous (par</i>	<i>what shall we begin with?</i>
<i>quelle chose?)</i>	
<i>par où a-t-il passé? (par quel en-</i>	<i>which way has he passed?</i>
<i>droit, quel chemin)</i>	
<i>par où êtes-vous venu?</i>	<i>which way have you come?</i>
<i>d'où venez-vous? (de quel en-</i>	<i>whence are you coming? what</i>
<i>droit, de quelle place)</i>	<i>place are you coming from?</i>

EXERCISE.

1. *What* a young man, who begins the world, ought principally to attend to, is not to give it a high opinion of his understanding, but to gain numerous friends by the qualities of his heart.
2. A youth passed in idleness, effeminacy, and pleasure, lays up for us nothing but sorrow and disgust in old age: this, however, is *what* we little think of when we are young.

3. There is nothing *by which* we are more affected than the loss of fortune, although, being frail and perishable by its nature, it cannot contribute to our happiness.

4. A grove *in which* I defy the ardours of the dog-days, a retired valley *where* I can meditate in peace, a high hill, *whence* my eye extends over immense plains, are the places *where* I spend the happiest moments of my life.

5. No one could tell which way he had come into the room

6. This is what we are to begin with.

(1.) To what, *ce à quoi*; begin, *entrer dans*; to attend, *s'attacher*; it, *il*; opinion, *idée*; understanding, *esprit*; to gain, *se faire*; numerous, *beaucoup de*.

(2.) Idleness, *inutilité*; effeminacy, *mollasse*; pleasure, *vieillesse*; lays up, *préparer*; of, *à*; we, *on*.

(3.) By, *à*; we, *on*; affected, *sensible*; frail, *frêle*; by, *de*; cannot, *subj. l.* our, (the).

(4.) Grove, *bosquet*; defy, *braver*; dog-days, *canicule*; spend, *passer*.

(5.) Had come, *était entré*.

(6.) We are, *il faut*.

IV.

ABSOLUTE PRONOUNS.

294. *Qui* is used in interrogations, with reference to persons, in a vague and indeterminate way.

EXAMPLES.

Qui sera assez hardi pour l'attaquer ? *who will be bold enough to attack him ?*

It is likewise used in the feminine, and in the plural, as,

Qui est cette personne-là ? *who is that person ?*
Qui sont ces femmes-là ? *who are those women ?*

Que and *quoi* relate to things only, as,

Que pouvait la valeur en ce combat funeste ? *what could valour do in that fatal combat ?*
À quoi pensez-vous ? *what are you thinking of ?*

295. *Que* is sometimes used for *à quoi, de quoi, us,*

Que sert la science sans la vertu? what avails learning without virtue?
 (à quoi sert)
Que sert à l'avare d'avoir des trésors? what use is it to the miser to possess treasures?
 (de quoi sert)

Quoi, de quoi, à quoi, may be used in reference to a sentence antecedent, as a sort of pronoun *neuter*, the thing to which it refers being neither *masculine* nor *feminine*.

la vie passe comme un songe : c'est cependant *à quoi* on ne pense guères.

296. *Que* and *quoi* require the preposition *de* before the adjective or substantive that follows them, having then the force of an adverb of quantity, as :

Que dit-on de nouveau? quoi de plus agréable!
Que d'inconséquences dans sa conduite!

Quel relates both to persons and things, as :

Quel homme peut se promettre un bonheur constant?
Quelle grâce! quelle beauté! mais quelle modestie!

EXERCISE.

1. *Who* could ever persuade himself, did not daily experience convince us of it, that, out of a hundred persons, there are ninety who sacrifice, to the enjoyment of the present, all the best founded hopes of the future?

2. *Who* would not love virtue for its own sake, could he see it in all its beauty?

3. He who does not know how *to* apply himself in his youth, does not know *what* to do when arrived at maturity.

4. He was a wise legislator, who, having given to his countrymen laws calculated to make them good and happy, made them swear not to violate any of those laws during his absence : after *which*, he

went away, exiled himself from his country, and died poor in a foreign land.

5. *What* people of antiquity ever had better laws than the Egyptians? *What* other nation ever undertook to erect monuments calculated to triumph over both time and barbarism?

6. *What* is more instructing and entertaining than to read celebrated authors in their own language? *What* beauty, what delicacy and grace, which cannot be thrown into a translation, are discovered in them!

7. When Ménage had published his book on the Origin of the French Language, Christina, queen of Sweden, said: "Ménage is the most troublesome 3 man 1 in the world 2: he cannot let one word 2 go 1 without its passport: he must know *whence* it comes, *where* it has passed through, and *whither* it is going."

(1.) Did, *si*; out of, *sur*; future, *avenir*.

(2.) Its own sake, *elle-même*; could he, *si on pouvait*; ind. 2

(3.) (To) what; to do, *s'occuper*; when arrived, etc., *dans l'âge mûr*.

(4.) He, *ce*; calculated, *propre*; not to, (that they would not) went away, *partir*.

(5.) Calculated to, *fait pour*; both, *également*; over, *de*.

(6.) Language, *langue*; delicacy, *finesse*; which cannot, *qu'on ne peut*; be thrown, *faire passer*; translation, *traduction*; are, etc. *n'y découvre-t-on pas*.

(7.) When, *après que*; Christina, *Christine*; troublesome, *incommode*; the, *de*, art.; cannot, *ne saurait*; go, *passer*; must, *vouloir*.

V.

PRONOUNS INDEFINITE.

297. These pronouns have been divided into four classes in the grammar. (No. 85). The following remarks are arranged in the same order.

FIRST CLASS.

Of those which are never joined to a noun substantive.

ON

298. Examples have already been given, (No. 86) of the use of *on*, in French, with an explanation of its reasonably supposed etymology. As it is a

word which frequently occurs, and in a manner totally different from the English idiom, it has been thought necessary to devote another chapter to it, in which its use will be more fully explained.

The general meaning of *on* is: one, people, men, we.

EXAMPLES

<i>on</i> secourt plus volontiers les malheureux quand <i>on</i> l'a été soi-même,	<i>we</i> succour the unfortunate more readily when <i>we</i> have been so ourselves.
<i>on</i> ne doit pas attribuer à la religion les défauts de ses ministres,	<i>man</i> ought not to charge religion with the faults of her ministers.
<i>on</i> relit tout Racine, <i>on</i> choisit dans Voltaire,	<i>people</i> read the whole of Racine again, they chuse in Voltaire.
<i>on</i> fait du bruit dans la rue,	<i>people</i> are making a noise in the street.
<i>on</i> n'est pas toujours heureux,	<i>people</i> are not always fortunate.
<i>on</i> dit qu'il va se marier,	<i>people</i> say, they say, he is going to be married.

OBSERVE, that the adjective referring to *on* is in the masculine gender, when that pronoun is taken in a vague and indeterminate sense; but when it applies to any person in particular, as in the case stated No. 298, then the adjective agrees with the person understood. Thus, a woman would say: *on n'est pas toujours jeune et jolie*, we cannot be young and pretty for ever.

Observe also that we must not say *qu'on*, *et on*, *aussi on*, but *que l'on*, *et l'on*, *aussi l'on*. Ex: *je crois que l'on frappe*. The *l* thus prefixed is for euphony's sake. But if the word following begins with an *l*, then we say: *je crois qu'on l'appelle*, because *je crois que l'on l'appelle* would equally be disagreeable.

298. *ON*, according to the above examples, has a vague and indefinite meaning; it is indeed the subject of the verb, but not specified, not applied to any one person in particular.

There are, however, two cases in which *on* is very

significantly used in French, in a definite sense, and as applicable to one individual alone.

1. A master speaking to his servants, a father to his child, a tutor to his pupil, says *on*, instead of *vous* or *tu*, either to put greater distance between the persons, or to assume a more serious tone, or also a sort of mock gravity.

EXAMPLES.

a-t-on passé chez le Colonel *did you call at the house of Colonel*
Sainville? *Sainville?*

eh bien, a-t-on été bien sage en *well, have you been good in my*
mon absence? *absence?*

finira-t-on ce bruit-là bientôt? *will you put an end to that noise?*

2. A person, speaking of himself, says *on*, as the English sometimes say *we*; or applies it to another, also in the same manner as the English use *we* for *you*.

EXAMPLES.

on n'est pas des esclaves pour *we are not slaves (I am not a slave)*
essayer de si mauvais traite- *to bear such ill wages.*
ments,

on vous l'a dit mille fois, *I have told you so a thousand times.*
depuis quand est-on de retour? *how long have we (you) been back?*

299. *ON* is also much used in French as the subject of an active verb, when the passive voice is used in English. (See 95.)

EXAMPLES.

on me trompe, *I am deceived.*

on m'a dit ce matin que le roi *I have been told this morning that*
va en Irlande, *the king is going to Ireland.*

This form is adopted in almost every case, except when the verb expresses *love, esteem, hatred, feeling*

EXAMPLE

they are much loved, *ils sont très-aimés.*

EXERCISE.

1. If we knew how to limit our wishes, we would spare ourselves many troubles and we should be happier.

2. At the last judgment we shall not be asked what we have read, but what we have done.

3. I will not have him be teased.

4. People do not come into the world musicians.

5. When men regulate their wants on nature, they save themselves many cares and difficulties.

6. They praise him, they threaten him, they caress him; but whatever they do, they cannot conquer him.

7. They say the town has been taken.

8. My father has been robbed.

(1.) To limit, *borner*; to spare, *s'épargner*; troubles, *maux*.

(2.) To ask, *demande*.

(3.) To will, *vouloir que*; to tease, *tourmenter*.

(4.) To come into the world, *naître*.

(5.) To save one's self, *s'épargner*; difficulties, *travaux*.

(6.) Whatever they do, *quoique l'on fasse*; cannot, *savoir*, could-1.

300. *Quelqu'un* is relative, and agrees in gender with the noun to which it refers.

EXAMPLES.

nous attendons des hommes, il en viendra quelqu'un, we expect men, some of them will come.

plusieurs femmes m'ont promis de venir, il en viendra quelqu'une. several ladies have promised me to come, some one of them will come.

quelques-uns assurent, some people affirm.
entre les nouvelles qu'il a débitées, il y en a quelques-unes de vraies, among the reports he has circulated, there are some which are true.

Quelqu'un taken absolutely and substantively, is of the masculine gender.

EXAMPLES.

j'attends ici quelqu'un, I wait here for somebody.
quelqu'un en doute-t-il? does any one doubt it?

Quiconque, whoever, signifies *quelque personne que ce soit, qui que ce soit*, any person whatever; the verb which it governs is in the singular and the adjective, which refers to it, is masculine.

EXAMPLE.

ce discours s'adresse à quiconque est coupable, this speech is addressed to whoever is guilty.

Quiconque is also used for *celui qui, celle qui, celui de nous, de vous, celle de nous, de vous.*

EXAMPLE.

*quiconque (de vous) fera du bruit, whoever makes a noise, I shall
je l'en punirai, punish him.*

301. *Chacun*, each, every one, is used either distributively or collectively.

Distributively, it means *chaque personne, chaque chose*, each person or thing. It is then of both genders.

EXAMPLE.

*chacun de nous vit à sa mode, each of us lives as he pleases,
donnez à chacune sa part,* give to each his share.*

Collectively, it signifies *toute personne*, every person.

EXAMPLE.

chacun a ses défauts, every body has his faults.

EXERCISE.

Can any one (be still ignorant) that it is from the
pourrait-il 2 1 ignorer encore ce dès
earliest infancy we ought to form the mind, the heart and
*tendre enfance f. que l'on doit * former*
the taste? Will not some one of these ladies be of the party?
f. partie f.

* There is apparently some difficulty in determining whether the possessive pronoun after *chacun* is to be plural or singular; some examples will illustrate and explain the case.

*il a donné à chacun sa part, each man can have but one share.
toute la compagnie se retire chacun each to his own house,
chez soi,
ils apportent des offrandes chacun according to the devotion of each.
suivant sa dévotion,*

Ils ont apporté chacun leur offrande. *Chacun*, is here taken collectively, and may be considered as an adverb having the sense of *all, generally*.

Some people like to read (every thing new). (These are)
aimer à toutes les nouveautés. voilà de
 beautiful pictures; I would wish to buy some. *W/hoes*
*superbe tableaux m. vouloir en * acheter*
 has studied the principles of an art, knows that it (is only) (by
— pas — m. savoir ce n'est que à
 length of time) and by deep reflections, that he can succeed in
la longue de profond réflexion f. réussir à
 making it. his own. All the ladies at the ball were
*se l rendre 3 le 2 * propre à bal m. ind-2*
 very finely dressed, and each differently.
** superbement paré avait une parure différente.*
Every one should, for (the sake of) his own happiness, listen
*devrait, pour * propre m. n'écouter*
 only to the voice of reason and of truth. What is the price
*que * vois f. art. raison f. art. vérité f. prix m.*
 of each of these medals?
f. médaille f.

Autrui, others, only applies to persons, is never joined to an adjective, has no plural, and is always preceded by a preposition.

EXAMPLE.

la charité se réjouit du bonheur *charity rejoices in the happiness of*
 d'autrui, *others.*

302. *Personne*, as an indeterminate pronoun, and signifying *no one, nobody*, is always masculine. It requires *ne* before the verb.

EXAMPLES

personne n'est venu ?	<i>no one has come ?</i>
n'est-il venu personne ?	<i>has nobody come ?</i>
nous ne voyons personne,	<i>we see nobody.</i>

When it is used substantively it is feminine.

RECAPITULATION

c'est une personne active, *he is an active person.*
 ces personnes sont-elles riches? *are those people rich?*

In interrogative phrases, not negative, or in those expressing doubt, *personne* signifies *quelqu'un* any body.

EXAMPLES.

personne oserait-il nier? *would any body dare deny?*
 je doute que personne soit assez *I doubt whether any body be bold*
 hardi, *enough.*

When *personne* is placed in the second member of a comparison, it also means *any body*.

EXAMPLE.

cette place lui convient mieux *that place suits him better than any*
 qu'à personne, *body.*

303. *Rien*, nothing; which is masculine and singular, generally requires the negation, before the verb; in which case it signifies *nulle chose*, nothing.

EXAMPLE.

il ne s'attache à rien de solide, *he applies himself to nothing solid.*

When used without a negation, it means *quelque chose*, something.

EXAMPLE.

je doute que rien soit plus pro- *I doubt whether any thing be more*
 pre à faire impression que, *suited to make an impression,*
 etc. *than, etc.*

Rien is sometimes used absolutely, in answer to a question; *que vous a coûté cela? rien*, how much did you pay for it? nothing.

Rien always requires the preposition *de* before the adjective, or participle that follows it, when the verb and the negative are understood. Thus, we say, *rien de beau que le vrai*, nothing is noble but truth; as if it were, *il n'y a rien de beau que le vrai*.

304. *NI L'UN NI L'AUTRE*, require *ne* before the verb.

EXAMPLES.

ni l'un ni l'autre n'ont fait leur devoir,	<i>they have not either of them their duty.</i>
ni l'un ni l'autre ne l'aura,	<i>neither of them shall have it.</i>
ils ne sont morts ni l'un ni l'autre,	<i>they are not dead either of them.</i>
ni l'un ni l'autre n'est mort,	<i>neither of them is dead.</i>

305. *Tout* means every thing, *all*.

EXAMPLES.

il rit de tout,	<i>he laughs at every thing.</i>
il ne lui a pas tout dit, parce que tout n'est pas bon à dire,	<i>he did not tell him all, because every thing is not to be told.</i>

Tout is adverb and adjective, see No. 44.

EXERCISE.

To	most	men,	the misfortunes of others	are but
Pour la plupart de	art,	mal m.	ne	que
a dream.	Do not to	others	what you would not wish	to be
songe m.			ne vouloir pas que	cond-l on
done	to you.	No one	knows whether he deserves love or	
faire sub-3		savoir	si	être digne
hatred.	An egotist	loves nobody,	not even his own children;	
	égoïste		pas même	propre
in the whole	universe	he sees no one but himself.	He is more	
dans	* univers	ne voit	* que lui seul	
than (any body)	worthy of the confidence	with which	the king	
	digne	confiance f.		
honours him.	I doubt whether any one	ever	paints	
honorer de	que	ait jamais	peint	

nature, in its amiable simplicity, better than the feeling *Gessner*.
 — f. — f. — *sensible* —
 Has any body called on me this morning? *Nobody*. There
venir ind-4 *chez* *matin m.* *y avoir*
 was nothing (but what was great) in the designs and
ind-2 *que de grand* *dans* *dessain m. pl.* *art.*
 works of the Egyptians. I doubt whether there is
ouvrages m. pl. — *tiens* *que* * *subj-1 2*
 any thing better calculated to exalt the soul than the contemplation
1 plus propre — f.
 of the wonders of nature,
merveille f. *art.* — f.

SECOND CLASS.

OF THOSE WHICH ARE ALWAYS JOINED TO A SUBSTANTIVE.

306. *Quelque*, some, signifies, *un, une entre plusieurs*, one out of several; it is of both genders, and takes the number of the substantive, before which it is placed.

EXAMPLE.

adresses-vous à quelque autre *apply to somebody else.*
personne,

Quelque, quel que, may be considered as adjectives on account of their being declinable, see No. 44.

307. *Chaque*, each, every; which is of both genders, has no plural.

EXAMPLE.

chaque pays a ses coutumes *each country has its customs.*

308. *Aucun*, followed by *quelconque* or *que ce soit*, agrees in gender with the noun to which it is joined; it is always used with a negative phrase.

EXAMPLE.

Il ne veut se soumettre à aucune *he will submit to no authority what-*
autorité quelconque, *ever.*

309. *Quelconque*, is sometimes used as synonymous with *que ce soit*, *quel qu'il soit*, and with an affirmative phrase; it takes the sign of the plural.

EXAMPLE.

deux points quelconques étant *any two points being given*
donnés,

310. *Certain*, certain, some; in this sense is used alike of persons and things, with which it agrees in gender; but it is always placed before the substantive.

EXAMPLE.

J'ai ouï dire à certain homme, *I have heard some man, or woman*
ou, à une certaine femme, *say.*

311. *Un, une*, a or an; when used indeterminately for *quelque*, *certain*, some person, or some thing, takes the gender of the substantive with which it is joined.

EXAMPLES.

J'ai vu un homme qui courait, *I saw a man who was running.*
Je me suis promené dans une *I walked in a large and beautiful*
grande et belle prairie, *meadow.*

EXERCISE.

Some enlightened people among the Egyptians preserve
éclairés 2 esprit m. pl. 1 parmi ——— tiens conserver
the idea of a first being, whose attributes they
ind-2 idées être art. ——— but m. pl. 3 1
represented under various symbols; this (is proved)
représenter ind-2 2 différent symbole m. c'est ce que prouve
by the following inscription upon a temple, "I am all that
• • cette • ——— f. de ——— m. ce qui

has been, is and shall be; no mortal ever removed the veil that
 3 mortal 2 1 lever ind-4 voile m.

covers me." Every nation has (in its turn) shone on the
 f. à son tour 2 brillé 1

stage of the world. There is no reason whatever that can
 théâtre raison f.

bring him to it. Some figure appear monstrous and
 déterminer le 1 y 2 — f. —trous

deformed, considered separately, or too near; but, if they are
 difforme f. pl. séparément de près on les

put in their proper light and place, the true point of view
 met * jour à leur — — m. vue f.

restores them to beauty and grace. Yesterday I saw
 leur rendre * art. = f. art. — f. 2 voir

a lady remarkably beautiful.
 ind-4 1 d'une rare 2 beauté 1.

THIRD CLASS.

OF THOSE WHICH ARE SOMETIMES JOINED TO A
 SUBSTANTIVE, AND SOMETIMES NOT.

312. *Nul* and *pas un*, no, not any, not one; are used either relatively to, or with a substantive, with which they agree in gender, and require *ne* before the verb which they govern.

EXAMPLES

nul de tous ceux qui y ont été,	not one of those who went there
n'en est revenu,	has returned.
pas un ne croit cette nouvelle,	not one believes that intelligence.
je n'en ai nulle connaissance,	I have no knowledge of it.
il n'y a pas une seule personne	there is not a single person that
qui le croie,	believes it.

313. *Aucun* signifies *nul*, no, not any, when accompanied by a negation, and may be followed by the preposition *de*.

EXAMPLE.

vous n'avez aucun moyen de réussir dans cette affaire, *you have no means of succeeding in that affair*

This pronoun is seldom used in the plural, except before substantives, which, in some particular sense, are better employed in that number.

EXAMPLE.

il n'a fait aucunes dispositions, *he has made no preparations.*

REM. *Aucun* may be used without the negation in interrogative sentences, or in those which express doubt, or exclusion.

EXAMPLES.

aucun homme fut-il jamais plus heureux ? *was ever any man more successful?*

on doute qu'aucune de ces affaires réussisse, *they doubt whether any of those affairs will succeed.*

le plus beau morceau d'éloquence qu'il y ait dans aucune langue, etc. *the finest piece of eloquence that exists in any language, etc.*

EXERCISE.

No one likes (to see himself) as he is. No expression, no
 à se voir *tel que* — f.

truth of design and colouring, no strokes of genius in that great
 f. *dessain de coloris* *trait*

work. He is as learned as any one. Not one of these en-
ouvrage m. *savant*

gravings announces any great skill. None of his works will
gravure f. pl. annoncer un talent m.

descend to posterity. He is so ignorant, and at the same
passer art. = f. ——— *en * même*

time so obstinate, that he will not (be convinced) by any
*temps obstiné * se rendre ind-1 d*

reasoning. Did any man ever attain to such a
raisonnement m. *jamais 2 parvenir ind-4 l cu*

pitch of glory! I doubt whether there be in any science a
comble m. = que y avoir subj-1 — f.

more evident principle.

plus lumineux 2 — ps m. 1

314. *Autre*, other, expresses a difference between two objects, or between one and several, as: *quelle autre chose souhaitez-vous de moi?* what else do you wish of me?

REM. *Autre* is sometimes used relatively of persons, but in an indeterminate manner, as: *j'aime mieux que vous l'appreniez de tout autre que de moi*, I had rather you learn it of any other person than

ME.

315. *L'un l'autre*, is of both genders and numbers, *l'un l'autre, les uns les autres, les unes les autres*, each other, one another.

RELATIVE

il faut se secourir l'un l'autre, we ought to assist one another.

Of one another, to one another, of each other, to each other, are rendered by, *l'un de l'autre, l'un à l'autre*, the preposition being placed before *l'autre*.*

When used separately, they denote a difference.

EXAMPLE.

<i>les passions s'entendent les unes avec les autres; si l'on se laisse aller aux unes, on attire bientôt les autres,</i>	<i>our passions correspond with one another; if we abandon ourselves to the ones, the others will soon follow.</i>
---	--

REM. In the latter case *l'un* is used for the person, or thing first mentioned, and *l'autre*, for the person, or thing last spoken of.

* This is according to common rules of grammatical construction, *l'un* being the subject and *l'autre* the object. *ils médisent l'un de l'autre*, that is, *l'un médisait de l'autre*.

316. *L'un et l'autre*, both; these two words mark union; *l'une et l'autre sont bonnes*, both are good.*

EXERCISE.

Ask another. Would any other have been so
Demander à avoir cond-2 *assez*
 self-conceited as to think that his private opinion could
*d'amour-propre * pour penser que particulier 2 — f. 1 pouvoir*
 counterbalance the public sentiment? Reason and faith
 sub-3 *balancer* 2 *opinion f. 1 Raison f. foi f.*
 equally demonstrate that we were created for another life.
 2 *démontrer 1 créer ind-4 f.*
 They speak ill of one another. The happiness of the people con-
parler mal de *m*
 stitutes that of the prince; their true interests are connected with
faire — m. intérêt m. lié à
 each other. Presumption and pride easily insinuate them-
 pl. pl. art. *présomption f. art. orgueil 2 se glis-*
 selves into the heart; if we allow one admission, it is
ser 1 m. l'on y donne à 2 f. 3 entrée 1
 much to (be feared) that we shall soon (abandon ourselves) to the
*se en craindre on * bientôt 2 ne se livre 1*
 other. Both relate the same story, though neither believes
rapporter fait m. ne penser
 it to be true.
*que * soit*

317. *Le même, la même, les mêmes*, the same, the very same are used relatively to, or with a noun, and agree in gender and number with it.

* *L'un et l'autre, ni l'un ni l'autre*. In the new edition of the *Dictionnaire de l'Académie*, the following examples are given.

<i>L'un et l'autre y a manqué,</i>	each of them has failed.
<i>L'un et l'autre sont venus,</i>	both have come.
<i>ni l'un ni l'autre ne viendront,</i>	they will not come either of them.
<i>ni l'un ni l'autre ne viendra,</i>	neither of them will come.

It seems that the verb is in the plural when *L'un et l'autre, ni l'un ni l'autre*, may be transferred after the verb, as an adverb, *ils sont venus l'un et l'autre*, but when there is no distinction, but union in the action.—See *Peculiarities* No 226

EXAMPLE.

ce sont les mêmes raisons, *they are the same reasons,*
 ce poème est le même que celui *this poem is the same that I was*
 dont je vous ai parlé. *mentioning to you.*

318. *Tel, telle*, although properly adjectives, may also be used relatively in speaking of persons.

EXAMPLE.

tel fait des libéralités, qui ne *such is liberal in giving, who does*
 paie pas ses dettes, *not pay his debts.*

319. *Plusieurs*, which is always, as an adjective, joined to a noun plural, may also be used absolutely in reference to persons. The verb which it governs must be in the third person plural.

EXAMPLE.

plusieurs ont cru le monde éternel. *some or several have thought the world to be eternal.*

EXERCISE.

Does he always maintain the same principles? Yes, they are
soutenir —pe out ce
 absolutely the same. That general is the same who commanded
—ment pl. — —der ind-2
 last year. Such a conduct is inexplicable.
art. dernier 2 année f. 1 2 1 conduite f. —
 There are no such customs in this country. I never
de coutumes f. pays m. at
 heard (any thing) like it. Such a man sows who
*entendu dire rien de * tel * semer*
 often reaps nothing. I this morning received several
recueillir 1 3 matin 4 recevoir ind-4 2
 letters. Of those manuscripts, there are several much
lettre f. p. Parmi —crits y en avoir qu'on beau-
esteemed. Many by endeavouring to injure others,
comp 2 estime 1 en s'efforcer de nuire à art.
 injure themselves more than they think.
se nuire à se penser

FOURTH CLASS.

320. OF THOSE WHICH ARE FOLLOWED BY THE CONJUNCTION
 * *que*, AND WHICH REQUIRE THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

They are *qui que ce soit*, *quoi que ce soit*, *quoi que*, *quelque*, *quel que*.

Qui que, whoever, is only said of persons, and signifies *quelque personne que*, whatever person; it requires the verb following to be in the subjunctive.

EXAMPLES.

<i>qui que ce soit qui ait fait cela,</i>	<i>whoever has done that, is a man of</i>
<i>c'est un habile homme,</i>	<i>talents.</i>
<i>qui que je sois,</i>	<i>whoever I may be</i>
<i>qui que ç'aît été,</i>	<i>whoever it may have been.</i>
<i>qui que c'eût été,</i>	<i>whoever it might have been.</i>
<i>qui que je puisse être,</i>	<i>whoever it may be.</i>
<i>je n'ai vu qui que ce soit,</i>	<i>I saw nobody; I did not see any-</i>
	<i>body whatever.</i>
<i>quoi que ce soit qu'il fasse, ou</i>	<i>whatever he does or says, he is dis-</i>
<i>qu'il dise, on se défie de lui,</i>	<i>trusted.</i>
<i>quoi que vous disiez, je le ferai,</i>	<i>whatever you may say, I will do it.</i>
<i>sans application, on ne peut</i>	<i>without application, it is impossible</i>
<i>réussir en quoi que ce soit,</i>	<i>to succeed in any thing whatever.</i>

EXERCISE.

<i>Whoever</i>	has told you so, he is mistaken.	<i>Pha-</i>
<i>ce soit qui</i>	<i>le</i>	<i>se tromper ind 4 Pas-</i>
senger, <i>whoever</i> thou be,	contemplate with religious veneration,	
<i>sant</i>	<i>contempler</i>	<i>un = 2 respect m.}</i>
this monument erected by	gratitude;	it is the tomb
— m. <i>élevé</i>	art. <i>reconnaissance f.</i>	<i>ce tombeau m.</i>
of a just and benevolent man.	How can he hope to be	
2 <i>bienfaisant</i> 3 1	<i>Comment</i>	<i>espérer de</i>
beloved who has regard	for no one?	<i>Whatever he</i>
<i>lui ne d'égards</i>		
may do or	say, he (will find it) very difficult	to destroy
<i>qu'il aura</i>	<i>bien de la peine</i>	<i>à détruire</i>

prejudices so deeply rooted. A vain, presumptuous,
des préjugés m. si profondément enracinés — présomptueux
 and inconsistent mind will never succeed in any thing whatever.
sans consistance réunir
 Whatever a frivolous world may think of you, never swerve
frivole 2 monde 1 puisse à se détourner
 from the path of virtue.
chemin m. art. f.

CHAPTER V.

OF THE VERB.

321. CONCORD BETWEEN THE VERB AND THE SUBJECT.

The subject is that of which something is affirmed, and may always be known by the answer to this question, *qui est-ce qui ?* who, or what is it? as: *Pierre vit*, Peter lives; *l'oiseau vole*, the bird flies; if it be asked, *qui est-ce qui vit ?* who is it that lives? *qui est-ce qui vole ?* what is it that flies? The answers *Pierre* and *l'oiseau*, shew that *Pierre* and *l'oiseau* are the subjects of the verbs *vit* and *vole*.

There are three subjects or persons, *je, tu, il, elle, I, thou, he, she*, singular; *nous, vous, ils, elles*, plural.

The verb must be of the same number and person as its subject.

EXAMPLES.

<i>je ris</i>	<i>I laugh</i>	<i>nous parlons</i>	<i>we speak</i>
<i>tu joues</i>	<i>thou playest</i>	<i>vous plaisantez</i>	<i>you jest</i>
<i>il aime</i>	<i>he loves</i>	<i>ils sont fous</i>	<i>they are mad</i>
<i>la vertu est aimable, virtue is amiable</i>			

His is in the singular number, and the first person, because *je*, its subject, is in the singular, and the first person. *Joues* is in the singular, and the second person, as *tu* is in the singular, and the second person, etc.

EXERCISE.

The most free of men is he who can be free even in
libre art. celui même
 slavery. Are we not often blind to our defects?
*art. esclavage m. * s'aveugler ind-1 sur défaut*
 All men (are inclined) to laziness, but the savages of hot
art. tendre ind-1 art. sauvage chaud 2
 countries are the laziest of all men. Do you think of imposing
*art. pays 1 * en impose*
 long on the credulity of the public! Thou canst not deny
long-temps à =f. —m. pouvoir nier
 that he is a great man.
ce subj-1

When a verb is governed by two or more nouns, in the singular, it must be in the plural.

EXAMPLE.

mon père et ma mère m'aiment *my father and mother love me*
tendrement, tenderly.

EXERCISE.

His uprightness and honesty, make him courted by
droiture f. pron. honnêteté faire rechercher de
 every body. Strength of body and of mind meet
art. f. art. celle art. se rencontrer
 not always together. A good heart and a noble soul are
ensemble. m. beau f. de art.
 precious gifts of nature.
= 2. don m pl. 1 art. —f.

322. When a verb relates to subjects of different persons, it agrees with the first, rather than with the
 83**

other two, and with the second rather than the third. The person addressed is named *first*, and the person addressing *last*. On this occasion, the pronoun plural *nous*, is generally placed before the verb, as its principal subject, if one of the several subjects, is in the first person, and the pronoun plural *vous*, if there is no first person.

EXAMPLES.

<i>vous, votre frère et moi, nous</i>	<i>you, your brother, and I, read</i>
<i>lisons ensemble la brochure</i>	<i>together the new pamphlet.</i>
<i>nouvelle,</i>	
<i>vous et votre ami, vous viendrez</i>	<i>you and your friend will come with</i>
<i>avec moi,</i>	<i>me.</i>

REVIEW.

You, your friend, and I, have each a different opinion. In
chacun 2 *ch. 1*
 our childhood, you and I (were pleased) with playing toge-
enfance f. *se plaire ind-2* *à* *inf-1*
 ther. Neither I, nor (any one else) have been able to un-
ni ni d'autres ne pouvoir ind-4 * *com-*
 derstand (any thing) in that sentence, (Take good care), you
prendre 2 rien 1 à phrase f. se garder bien
 and your brother, not to (give way) to the impetuosity of your
 * *de s'abandonner* =
 disposition.
caractère m.

323. When a verb has the relative pronoun *qui* for its subject, it is put in the same number and person as the noun, or pronoun, which is the antecedent of that relative.

EXAMPLES.

<i>est-ce moi qui ai dit cette nou-</i>	<i>is it I who told this news?</i>
<i>velle?</i>	
<i>est-ce nous qui l'avons voulu?</i>	<i>is it we who desired it?</i>
<i>ceux qui aiment sincèrement la</i>	<i>those who sincerely love virtue are</i>
<i>vertu sont heureux,</i>	<i>happy.</i>

. EXERCISE.

He that complains most of mankind, is not always he
celui se plaint le plus art. homme pl.
 that (has most reason) to complain (of them). You that wish
être le plus sages en vouloir
 to enrich your mind with thoughts vigorously conceived and
 • *enrichir esprit de f. pl. fortement conçu f. pl.*
 nobly expressed, read the works of Homer and Plato.
noblement exprime ouvrage

§24. There are some cases in which a verb, although governed by several nouns in the singular, is not put in the third person plural. A few examples of such cases are here given, with remarks on the cause and nature of their deviation from the rule given, No. 322.

EXAMPLES.

le roi, aussi bien que son ministre, veut le bien public,	<i>the king, as well as his ministry, wishes for the public good.</i>
son honnêteté, autant que son esprit, le fait rechercher,	<i>his honesty, as much as his wit, makes him courted.</i>
l'envie, comme l'ambition, est une passion aveugle,	<i>envy, like ambition, is a blind passion.</i>
la séduction, ou la terreur, l'a entraîné dans le parti des rebelles	<i>either persuasion, or terror, has drawn him into the party of the rebels.</i>

OBSERVE. First, that: *aussi bien que son ministre, autant que son esprit, comme l'ambition*, are, as it were, adverbial phrases, which might be placed at the end of the sentence, *le roi veut le bien public, aussi bien que son ministre*, etc. and consequently that, although there are apparently two subjects, there is really but one.

Secondly, we do not affirm that *la séduction* in conjunction with *la terreur* has acted, but that either the one or the other has done so. There is consequently no unity in the action, no collective effort.

325. A verb may be in the singular, when preceded by nouns substantives in the plural.

EXAMPLES.

<i>biens, dignités, honneurs, tout</i>	<i>riches, dignities, honours, every</i>
<i>disparaît à la mort,</i>	<i>thing vanishes at death.</i>
<i>jeux, conversations, spectacles,</i>	<i>games, conversations, shows, no-</i>
<i>rien ne la distrait,</i>	<i>thing diverts her.</i>
<i>perfidies, noirceurs, incendies,</i>	<i>perfidies, enormities, conflagra-</i>
<i>massacres, ce n'est là qu'une</i>	<i>tions, massacres, all this is but</i>
<i>faible image, etc.</i>	<i>a feeble representation, etc.</i>
<i>non seulement toutes ses richesses</i>	<i>not only all his riches and honours,</i>
<i>et tous ses honneurs, mais</i>	<i>but all his virtue vanishes.</i>
<i>toute sa vertu s'évanouit,</i>	

In the three first examples, all the things enumerated *biens, dignités, honneurs, jeux, conversations, spectacles*, are summed up in the words *tout, rien, ce n'est-là*, which, being singular, must necessarily have the verb they govern in the same number

EXERCISES.

1. Fear or inability prevented them from moving.
2. The fear of death, or rather, the love of life, began to revive in his bosom.
3. Alcibiades, as well as Plato, was among the disciples of Socrates.
4. Lycurgus, like Solon, was a wise legislator.
5. Euripides, as much as Sophocles, contributed to the glory of the Athenians.
6. Riches, dignities, honours, glory, pleasure, every thing loses its charms from the moment we possess it, because none of those things can fill the heart of man.

(1.) Inability, impuissance; moving, remuer.

(2.) Began to revive, se réveiller; in, au fond de; bosom, cœur.

(3.) Among, au nombre de.

(5.) We, on; none, rien; those things, tout cela.

326. PECULIARITIES.

La gloire et la prospérité des méchants est courte.

might have been *sont courtes*; but as each sub.

ject may form a separate proposition, *la gloire des méchants est courte, la prospérité des méchants est courte*, Fénelon has put the verb in the singular as being applicable to each subject.

Racine has said :

Quelle était en secret ma honte et mes chagrins.

Quels étaient would have been more regular, but in point of elegance, and as a latinism, the verb has been made to agree with the first noun.

Ni l'un ni l'autre ne sera l'ambassadeur.

Ni la force ni la douceur n'y peuvent rien.

One alone can be the *ambassadeur*, and consequently the verb can only be applicable to one of them.

Force and *douceur* are both unavailing, consequently the verb is in the plural.

327. NOUNS OF MULTITUDE AND NOUNS COLLECTIVE

PARTITIVE.

1. The words *armée*, army; *peuple*, people; *nation*, nation; *parlement*, parliament; *flotte*, fleet; *assemblée*, assembly; or any other nouns of multitude have the verb which they govern in the singular, especially when preceded by the definite article.

EXAMPLES.

<i>l'assemblée a été tumultueuse,</i>	<i>the assembly has been tumultuous.</i>
<i>le peuple veut la paix,</i>	<i>the people wish for peace.</i>
<i>la nation aime son roi elle le</i>	<i>the nation love their king they will</i>
<i>protégera,</i>	<i>protect him.</i>
<i>un peuple de héros va naître,</i>	<i>a nation of heroes will spring up.</i>

2. Nouns collective partitive as *la plupart*, most part, *quantité*, quantity; *multitude*, multitude; *nombre*, number; *beaucoup*, much; *peu*, few; etc., etc.,

have the verb in the plural, if they are qualified by a noun in the plural, otherwise the verb is in the singular.

EXAMPLES.

la plupart du monde le croit,	<i>most people believe it,</i>
la plupart des hommes le pensent,	<i>most men think so</i>
une troupe de jeunes gens couraient après lui,	<i>a crowd of young people ran after him.</i>

Whatever be the noun which follows *la moitié, le tiers, le quart*, the verb must be in the singular.

328. The words *infinité* and *la plupart*, used by themselves, require the verb to be in the plural, as : *une infinité pensent, la plupart sont d'avis*, whenever *de personnes*, or *des hommes*, etc. are understood.

EXERCISE.

1. *Many persons* experience that human life is, every where, a state in which much is to be endured, and little to be enjoyed.

2. *Many poets* think that poetry is the art of uniting pleasure with truth, by calling imagination to the help of reason.

3. *Few persons* consider that time, like money, may be lost by unreasonable avarice.

4. *So many years* of familiarity were as^a chains of iron which linked me to those men who beset me every moment

5. *How many wise men*^a have thought that, to seclude one's self from the world, was to pull out the teeth of devouring animals, to take away from the wicked the use of his poniard, from calumny its poisons, and from envy its serpents !

6. *A company of young Phœnicians* of uncommon beauty, clad in fine linen, whiter than snow, danced a^a long while the dances of their own^a country, then those of Egypt, and lastly, those of Greece.

7. *A troop of nymphs*, crowned with flowers, whose lovely tresses flowed over the shoulders and played in the wind, swam in multitudes behind her car.

8. At the time of the invasion of Spain by the Moors, an *innumerable multitude of people* retired into the Asturias, and there proclaimed Pelagius king.

9. *A third part of the enemy* was left dead on the field of battle ; the rest surrendered at discretion.

10. *The innumerable crowd of carriages* which are to be seen in London during the winter, astonishes foreigners.

- (3.) Much is, etc. ; one has a great deal of pains, and little of real enjoyments ;
 (4.) To be lost, *se perdre* ; unreasonable, *hors de propos*.
 (5.) Familiarity, *habitude* ; linked, *lié* ; beset, *obséder*.
 (6.) How many, *que de* ; to seclude one's self, *se retirer* ; pull out of, *arracher* ; to take away from, *ôter* à.
 (7.) Company, *troupe*, clad in, *et vêtu de* ; loan, *lên*.
 (8.) Lovely, *beau* ; tresses, *cheveux* ; flowed, *pendre* ; to play, *s'offrir* ; with, *au gré de* ; swim, *nager* ; shoals, *foûle* ; car, *char*.
 (9.) Moore, *Mours* ; retired, *se retirer* ; Asturias, *Asturias* ; Pelagius, *Pélage*.
 (10.) A third part, *un tiers* ; enemy, *pl.* ; surrendered, *se rendre*.
 (11.) Crowd, *quantité* ; which are, (*active voice on*).

PLACE OF THE SUBJECT WITH REGARD TO THE VERB.

329. The subject of the verb when a noun must always precede the verb, and cannot be separated from it, except by a negation, or personal pronoun in the dative or the accusative case.

EXAMPLES.

le roi est revenu,	<i>the king has returned.</i>
le roi ne reviendra pas,	<i>the king will not return.</i>
le roi lui a parlé,	<i>the king has spoken to him.</i>
le roi le lui a donné,	<i>the king has given it to him.</i>
le roi reviendra-t-il ?	<i>will the king return ?</i>
le roi le lui a-t-il donné ?	<i>has the king given it to him ?</i>
le roi ne le lui a-t-il pas donné ?	<i>has not the king given it to him ?</i>

330. When the subject is a pronoun, it precedes the verb, in the affirmative form, and follows it in the negative.

EXAMPLES.

je parle,	<i>I speak.</i>
parle-t-il ?*	<i>does he speak ?</i>
ne lui a-t-il pas parlé ?	<i>has he not spoken to him ?</i>

EXERCISE.

1. Yousâ is full of presumption ; it expects every thing from itself : although frail, it thinks itself all-sufficient, and that it has nothing to fear.

* The use of the hyphen has been explained, No.

2. Commerce is like certain springs; if you attempt to * liver their course, you dry them up.

3. It is enough that falsehood is falsehood, to be unworthy of a man who speaks in the * presence of God, and who is to sacrifice every thing to truth.

4. The ambition and avarice of man are the sources of his unhappiness.

5. They punish, in Crete, three vices, which have remained unpunished in all other nations: ingratitude, dissimulation, and avarice.

6. Like the Numidian lion, goaded by cruel hunger, and rushing upon a flock of feeble sheep, he tears, he slays, he wallows in blood.

(1.) Full of presumption, *présomptueux*; expects, *se promettre*; itself all-sufficient, *pouvoir tout*; that it has, *avoir*.

(2.) Springs, *source*; attempt, *essayer*; dry up, *faire tarir*.

(3.) It is enough, *suffire*, falsehood, *mensonge*; is, *subj. in, en*; is to sacrifice, *doff*.

(4.) Punished, *ind-2*; have remained, *être*; in, *chez*.

(5.) Like the, *semblable à un*, Numidian, *de Numidie*; goaded by, etc. (that cruel hunger goads) *dévoiler*, rushing, (which rushes upon), *entrer dans*; tears, *déchirer*; slays, *égorger*; wallows, *nager*.

331. When an interrogation begins with *que*, *où*, *combien*, *à quoi*, the noun subject may be placed after the verb, and *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles* are suppressed.

EXAMPLES

Que dit votre ami? à quoi s'occupe votre frère? où demeure votre cousin? combien coûte cet habit?

332. Verbs of the first conjugation require the acute accent before *je*, in interrogations, *parlé-je*, *aimé-je*.

Cours-je, *dors-je*, *sens-je*, would be harsh; such questions are to be turned thus! *est-ce que je cours?* *est-ce que je dors?*

EXERCISE.

1 Have you forgotten all that Providence has done for you? how have you escaped the shafts of your enemies? how have you been preserved from the dangers which surrounded you on all sides? could you be so blind as not to acknowledge and adore the all-powerful hand that has miraculously saved you?

2. What *will posterity say* of you, if, instead of devoting to the happiness of mankind the great talents which you have received from nature, you make use of them only to deceive and corrupt them.

3. Do not *the misfortunes* which we experience often contribute to our * prosperity?

4. Why are *the works of nature* so perfect? Because each work is a whole, and because she labours upon an eternal plan, from which she never deviates. Why, on the contrary, are *the productions* of man so imperfect? It is because the human mind being unable to create any thing, and incapable of embracing the universe at a single glance, can * produce only after having been enriched by experience and meditation.

(1.) Escaped, *échapper à*; shafts, *traits*; preserved, *garantir*; on all sides, *de toutes parts*; so as, *assez pour*; saved, *conservé*.

(2.) Devoting, *consacrer*; mankind, *l'homme*, pl. *déceivre*, *égarer*.

(3.) Experience, *éprouver*; contribute to, *contribuer en*.

(4.) Because, *c'est que*; and because, *et que*; being unable, *ne pouvoir*; incapable, (*not being able*) *at, de*; glance, *vue*; enriched, *secondé*.

Replied I, said I, says he, used in narrations, are literally translated in French.

EXAMPLES.

je meurs innocent, a dit Louis XVI *I die innocent, said Louis XVI.*

je le veux bien, dit-il, *I am very willing, said he.*

The subject of impersonal verbs is placed after the verb.

EXAMPLES.

il est arrivé de grands malheurs, *great misfortunes have happened*
il vint à ma voix un bon vieillard, *at my call, there came an old man*

333. When the adverb and adjective *ainsi, tel*, begin the sentence, the subject is placed after the verb.

EXAMPLES.

tel était l'acharnement du soldat, *such was the fury of the soldier*
vue, etc. *that, etc.*

ainsi finit cette sanglante tragédie, *thus ended that bloody tragedy.*

EXERCISES.

1. True glory, *said he*, is founded on humanity; whoever prefers his own glory to the feelings of humanity, is a monster of pride, and not a man.

2. There have happened, for these * ten years, *as many events* exceeding all probability, that posterity will find it very difficult to credit them.

3. *Such was that incorruptible Phocion*, who answered the deputies of Alexander, who were telling him that this powerful monarch loved him as the only honest man; well, then 2, let him allow me 1 to be and to appear so.

4. *Thus ended*, by the humiliation of Athens, *that dreadful war* of twenty-seven years, to * which ambition gave rise, which hatred made atrocious, and which was as fatal to the Greeks, as their ancient confederation had proved advantageous to them.

(1.) Is founded, *as se fonder pas hors de*; feelings, *sentiment*.

(2.) There have happened for, *il se passer depuis*; exceeding, *hors de*; probability, *probabilités*; will find very difficult, *avoir bien de la peine*; to credit, *ajouter foi à*.

(3.) Loved, *adorer*; honest man, *homme de bien*; well, *he!* to be so, *d'être tel*; appear so, *le paraître*.

(4.) Ended, *se terminer*; gave rise, *faire naître*; made, *rendre*; had proved, *être*.

After *aussi, peut-être, aussi bien*, the verb assumes the interrogative form. *Il est riche, aussi est-il recherché*, he is rich, and therefore sought after.

334. The noun or pronoun subject comes also after the imperative of *pouvoir, devoir, and faire*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>puissent tous les peuples se convaincre de cette vérité,</i>	<i>may all nations be convinced of this truth.</i>
<i>dussé-je y périr, j'irai,</i>	<i>though I perish there, I will go.</i>
<i>fasse le ciel que....</i>	<i>heaven grant that....</i>

There are some other cases in which the subject may be placed after the verb, but only as a matter of taste and elegance. Such transpositions must be left to the experienced writer.

EXERCISE.

1. The gods grant that you may never experience such misfortunes !

2. May you, oh wise old man, enjoy the happiness you deserve.

3. Though I were to perish in this enterprise, I will not give it up.

(1.) Grant, *faire* ; experience, *éprouver de*.

(2.) To enjoy, *jouir de* ; happiness, *le bonheur que*.

(3.) To give up, *renoncer à*.

335. The distinction between the active, passive, and neuter verbs has already been explained, No. 94, 95, the regimen direct and indirect have also been explained, No. 170.

The noun, which is the object or accusative case of a verb active, as also the indirect cases, are all placed after the verb.

EXAMPLES.

une mère chérit ses enfants, a mother cherishes her children.
un père donne tous ses soins à a father gives all his attention to
sa famille, his family.
je reçois une lettre de mon frère, I receive a letter from my brother.

N.B. The place of personal pronouns has also been fully explained, No. 223 and following.

EXERCISE.

He has discovered to all other nations his ambitious
montrer art. * peuple m. pl. =2
design of enslaving them, and has left
aucun m. 1 mettre dans l'esclavage inf-1 ne laisser
us no means of defending our liberty, but by endeavouring
aucun moyen inf-1 que en tâcher int-3
to overturn his new kingdom. Homer represents Nestor as
de renverser royaume m.
the man who restrained the ungovernable wrath of Achilles,
celui modérer ind-2 bouillant courroux m.

the pride of Agamemnon, the haughtiness of Ajax, and the
fiercé f.

impetuous courage of Diomed. He dared not (lift up)
 =2 —m. 1 *Diamède* over ind-2 *lift up*

his eyes, lest they should meet those of his
 * art. *de peur de* * * *rencontrer* inf-1

friend, whose very silence condemned him. He caresses
 art. *même* 2 m. 1 ind-2

them, because he *loves* them.

336. When an interrogative sentence begins with *quel*, *de quel*, the object comes before the verb.

EXAMPLES.

quel objet voyez-vous ?	what object do you see ?
quelle science vous appliquez-vous ?	to what science do you apply yourself ?
de quelle affaire s'occupe votre frère ?	what is your brother about ?

337. Though the natural order of the ideas seems to require that the regimen direct be placed before the indirect, the perspicuity of the sentence does not allow it in all cases.

When a verb has two regimens, the shorter is generally placed first ; but if they be of equal length, the regimen direct will precede the indirect.

EXAMPLES.

les hypocrites s'étudient — à parer le vice — des dehors de la vertu.	<i>hypocrites make it their study to deck vice with the appearance of virtue.</i>
les hypocrites s'étudient à parer — des dehors de la vertu — les vices les plus honteux et les plus décriés.	<i>hypocrites make it their study to deck with the appearance of virtue the most shameful and the most odious vices.</i>
l'ambition sacrifie — le présent — à l'avenir, mais la volupté sacrifie — l'avenir — au présent.	<i>ambition sacrifices the present to the future, but pleasure sacrifices the future to the present.</i>

EXERCISE.

1. Illustrious examples teach us, that God has hurled from their thrones princes who contemned his laws: he reduced to the condition of a beast the haughty Nebuchadnezzar, who wanted to usurp divine honours.

2. Wretched is * the man who feeds his mind with chimeras.,

3. Our interest should prompt us to prefer virtue to vice, wisdom to pleasure, and modesty to vanity.

(1.) Illustrious, fameux; teach, apprendre; hurled, renverser; haughty, superbe; Nabuchodonosor; wanted, vouloir.

(2.) Feeds, repaître.

(3.) Should, devoir, ind.-l; prompt, porter; pleasure, volupté.

§38. A noun may be governed at the same time by two verbs, provided those verbs do not require different regimens.

EXAMPLES.

on doit aimer et respecter les rois, we ought to love and respect kings.
ce général attaqua et prit la ville, that general attacked and took the city.

But we must not say :

cet officier attaqua et se rendit maître de la ville, that officer attacked and made himself master of the city.

But turn the sentence thus :

cet officier attaqua la ville et s'en rendit maître, that officer attacked the city and made himself master of it.

because *attaquer* is active, and *se rendre* requires *de*.

EXERCISE.

1. Luxury is like a torrent, which carries away, and overthrows every thing it meets.

2. Nothing can * resist the operation of time; it, at length, undermines, alters, or destroys every thing.

3. Among the Spartans, public education had two objects: the first, to harden their bodies by fatigue; the second, to *excite* and *nourish*, in their minds, the love of their country, and an enthusiasm for what is great.

(1.) Carries away, *entraîner*; overthrows, *renverser*; every thing, *tout ce que*.

(2.) Operation, *action*; at length, *à la longue*; undermines, *miner*.

(3.) Among the Spartans, *à Sparte*: to, *de*; harden, *endurcir*; by, *à*; their must be rendered by the article; for what is great, *des grandes choses*.

339. PASSIVE VERBS.

Passive verbs require the prepositions *de* or *par*, generally *de* with those verbs which express a moral action, and *par* with those which express a physical one.

EXAMPLES.

Un jeune homme vertueux est	a virtuous young man is esteemed
estimé de tout le monde,	of all.
la poudre à canon fut inventée	gun powder was invented by B.
par Berthold Schwartz,	Schwartz.

In this sentence *votre ouvrage a été loué d'une manière fort délicate par un grand académicien*, *par* is used to avoid the repetition of *de*.

Puristes pretend we ought not to say *le monde a été créé par Dieu*, but *de Dieu*. This opinion has for its object to avoid an equivocation, with the oath or, rather, interjection, *pardieu*! this is being over nice, as the words *par Dieu*, in the above sentence, convey no idea of irreverence, but on the contrary of admiration to God.

REMARK

The city of Troy was taken, plundered, and destroyed by the	
<i>Troie</i>	<i>pris f. saqué détruit</i>
confederate Greeks, 1184 years before the Christian era: this	
<i>confédérés 2 1 ans avant 2 de f. 1</i>	

event has been celebrated by the two great poets of Greece
 and Italy. You will only be beloved, esteemed, and
 courted by men, (in proportion as) you join the
 qualities of the heart to those of the mind. God
 nished the Jews every time that,
 deaf to the voice of the prophets, they fell into
 idolatry and impiety

rechercher de *que* *autant que* *joindre* ind-7
qualités of the heart to those of the mind. God pu-
nished the Jews every time that,
deaf to the voice of the prophets, they fell into
idolatry and *impiety*

art. = art. =

340. NEUTER VERBS.

The nature of these verbs has been explained at full length, No. 96, 126. Their chief difficulty consists in the preposition which they require before the noun coming after them; pains must be taken to ascertain it, especially as it almost always differs from that which is used in English.

341. Some neuter verbs are used absolutely, as : *je dors*, I sleep; *je marche*, I walk.

342. Some govern the preposition, à, such as : *plaire*, *obéir*, *résister*, *applaudir*, *croire*, *penser*, etc. etc.*

EXAMPLES

vous plaisez à cette dame, you please that lady.
avez-vous pensé à mon affaire? have you thought of my affair?

343. Others govern the preposition *de*, such as : *jouir*, *se moquer*, *se servir*, *se tromper*, *se repentir*. *mourir*, *dépendre*, *avoir besoin*, etc., etc.*

* The government of verbs is the greatest difficulty the English learner has to encounter in his study of the French language, as the correct construction of the

EXAMPLES.

il jouit d'une bonne santé, he enjoys good health.
la fortune dont il jouit, the fortune which he enjoys.

OBSERVE. That many neuter verbs have the reflected form, thus: *s'arrêter*, to stop; *se plaire à*, to take pleasure in.

EXERCISE.

This sentiment has pleased the king and all the nation.
à

In his retirement, he enjoys the faculties of his
dans retraite f. jouir de tout = f. pl.

soul. To slander (any one) is to assassinate him in cold blood.
* médire de quelqu'un c'est * de 2 sang l

The honest man seldom (permits himself) to jest
rarement 2 se permettre l de * art. plaisanterie

because he knows the most innocent jests may
f. pl. parce que savoir que f. pl. * pouvoir

sometimes hurt the reputation. It is only in retirement
quelquefois nuire à f. or ne que art.

that one truly enjoys one's self. His work has
on véritablement 2 jouir l de soi. ouvrage m.

pleased every one, because it unites to real utility
à art. monde joindre un 2 = f. l

the charms of style, and the beauties of senti-
agrément m. pl. art. m. sing. art. pl

ment.

whole sentence depends upon it. Suppose, for instance, you had to translate, *you have resisted orders on the execution of which our success depended*. If you have previously ascertained that *résister* governs the dative and *dependre* the genitive, then you will say correctly, *vous avez résisté à des ordres de l'exécution desquels notre succès dépendait*. Neglect to ascertain this point, and you will translate literally thus: *vous avez résisté les ordres sur l'exécution desquels dépendait notre succès*.

The *Dictionnaire des Verbes* or *Dictionary of French Verbs*, showing their regimen, 1 vol. 12mo will it is hoped, be found a great assistance to those who wish to write correct.

The *Familiar and Conversational exercises*, containing a selection of about 150 pages of English sentences, chosen on account of their peculiarity of construction and frequent recurrence in every day's conversation, will also afford good and useful practice on this subject.

344. *Neuter verbs*, do not all take the same auxiliary ; some have *avoir*, others have *être*.

EXAMPLES.

ils sont partis,
les soldats ont couru,

They have gone.
the soldiers have run.

Some in one sense, take the auxiliary *être*, and in another, *avoir*.

EXAMPLES.

1. ils ont échappé.

2. ils sont échappés.

The first implies the *actual fact* of some people having escaped, the second implies the *state or position* of people having escaped.

These are points which require much attention, and we subjoin three lists of examples which the learner will do well to commit to memory.

345. The neuter verbs which take the verb *être* are, *aller*, *arriver*, *choir*, *convenir*, *déborder* (to overflow) *décéder*, *devenir*, *échoir*, *éclore*, *intervenir*, *mourir*, *naître*, *partir*, *parvenir*, *provenir*, *repartir* (to set off again), *résulter*, *retourner*, *revenir*, *survenir*, *tomber* and *venir*.

EXAMPLES.

les enfants <i>sont</i> allés au jardin,	<i>the children are gone to the garden.</i>
elle <i>était</i> arrivée avant moi,	<i>she had arrived before me.</i>
nous <i>sommes</i> convenus de nos torts,	<i>we have confessed our wrongs.</i>
la rivière <i>est</i> débordée,	<i>the river has overflowed.</i>
ces grands hommes <i>sont</i> tous <i>décédés</i> ,	<i>those great men are all dead.</i>
les vrais littérateurs <i>sont</i> devenus rares,	<i>true learned men have become scarce</i>

* These lists are taken from Mr. Sievrac's edition.

votre billet sera échu avant votre
 retour,
 ces œufs sont éclos,
 il est intervenu dans cette affaire,
 on dit que son père et sa mère
 sont morts,
 nos malheurs sont nés de nos
 dissensions,
 ma sœur était partie avant lui,
 elle est enfin parvenue à son but,
 les enfants qui sont provenus de
 ce mariage,
 ils sont repartis pour la cam-
 pagne,
 il en est résulté un grand incon-
 vénient,
 nous étions retournés au château,
 elles seraient revenues avec nous,
 cette agréable nouvelle est sur-
 venue ce matin,
 il a voulu courir et il est tombé,
 pourquoi sont-ils venus ici ?

*your bill will fall due before you
 return,
 those eggs are hatched.
 he has interfered in that affair.
 they say that his mother and father
 are dead.
 our misfortunes have sprung from
 our dissensions.
 my sister had set off before him.
 she has at last obtained her end.
 the children that are issued from
 that marriage.
 they are gone into the country
 again.
 a great inconvenience has been the
 result of it.
 we had all gone back to the castle.
 they would have come back with us
 this agreeable news came this
 morning.
 he would run, and he fell.
 why did they come hither ?*

346. Neuter verbs, which take the verb *avoir*, are
comparaître, contrevenir, convenir, courir, échouer,
paraître, subvenir.

EXAMPLES.

les témoins ont comparu ce ma-
 tin,
 ils ont contrevenu aux principaux
 articles du traité,
 cette maison et cet ameublement
 m'auraient bien convenu,
 les soldats ont couru vers leur
 général,
 un vaisseau américain a échoué
 devant le port,
 nous avons paru quand on nous
 a appelés,
 mon bon père a subvenu à tous
 mes besoins,

*the witnesses have appeared this
 morning.
 they have infringed the chief ar-
 ticles of the treaty.
 that house and furniture would
 have suited me much.
 the soldiers have run towards their
 general.
 an American vessel has run a-
 ground near the port.
 we appeared, when we were called
 for.
 my good father has provided for all
 my exigencies.*

347. Neuter verbs which take either of the auxi

verbs according to the idea expressed, *accoucher, accourir, accroître, apparaître, cesser, changer, commencer, croître, déchoir, demeurer, descendre, diminuer, disparaître, échapper, embellir, entrer, expirer, grandir, rajeunir, monter, passer, périr, rester, sonner* and *vieillir*.

EXAMPLES.

With AVOIR (fact).

With ÊTRE (state).

j'ai accouru sur-le-champ à son secours,
I immediately ran to his assis-

la garde est accourue sur-le-champ,
the guard ran up in all haste.

il a accru sa fortune en bien peu de temps,
he has increased his fortune in a short time.

son orgueil est accru avec ses richesses,
his pride has increased with his riches.

il dit qu'un spectre lui a apparu pendant la nuit,
he says that a ghost has appeared to him during the night.

Dieu est apparu à Moïse,
God has appeared to Moses.

la fièvre a cessé pendant une heure,
the fever has ceased for an hour.

la fièvre est cessée depuis une heure,
the fever has ceased an hour ago.

les circonstances ont changé la face des affaires,
circumstances have altered the face of affairs.

cette femme est changée à faire peur,
that woman is so altered as to frighten one.

le bal a commencé vers minuit,
the ball began towards midnight.

le bal était commencé lorsque nous entrâmes,
the ball had begun when we came in.

cet enfant a crû pendant sa maladie,
that child has grown during his illness.

cette plante est crûe prodigieusement,
that plant is prodigiously grown.

depuis ce moment il a déchu de jour en jour,
he has been on the decay ever since.

il est bien déchu de son crédit,
he has lost much of his credit.

J'ai demeuré vingt ans à Paris,
I have lived twenty years in Paris.

il est demeuré à Paris pour y étudier la médecine,
he has remained in Paris to study physic.

Ils ont descendu la montagne beaucoup plus vite qu'ils ne l'avaient montée,
they have descended the hill much quicker than they had ascended it.

ils sont descendus,
they have come down.

le prix du blé n'a pas diminué depuis six mois,
the price of wheat has not fallen for these six months.

il est enfin diminué de moitié,
it has at last fallen by half.

elle a disparu subitement,
she has disappeared all on a sudden.

elle est disparue depuis quinze jours,
it is now a fortnight since she has disappeared.

Ils ont échappé au danger,
they have escaped the danger.

ils sont échappés depuis hier,
they have made their escape since yesterday.

elle a fort embelli pendant son voyage,
she is grown handsome on her journey.

on croirait qu'elle est embellie,
one would think that she is grown handsomer.

J'en entré en ce lieu,
I have entered that place.

vous êtes entré, restez-; *you are in, stay.*

Jésus-Christ a expiré sur la croix,
Jesus-Christ expired on the cross.
ce jeune homme a grandi depuis peu de temps,
that young man has grown very lately.

la trêve est expirée,
the truce has expired.

assurément vous êtes bien grandi,
indeed you are much grown.

vous avez rajeuni dans votre voyage,
you are grown younger in your journey.

vous êtes rajeuni à mes yeux de dix ans,
you are grown younger in my eyes by ten years.

il a monté quatre fois à sa chambre pendant la journée,
he went up into his room four times in the course of the day.

il est monté dans sa chambre et il y est resté,
he is gone up into his room and has remained there.

la procession a passé sous mes
fenêtres,
*the procession has passed under
my window.*

la procession est passée,
the procession has gone by.

les malheureux ont tous péri
dans le combat,
*those unfortunate men have all
perished in the battle.*

que sont devenus ces malheureux
qu'on avait entassés dans vos
prisons? ils sont périés,
*what has become of those unfortu-
nate men who had been heaped
in your dungeons? they are
dead.*

combien de temps avez-vous
resté en Angleterre?
*what stay did you make in Eng-
land?*

cent combattants sont restés sur
la place,
*one hundred combattants have re-
mained on the field of battle.*

la pendule a sonné cinq heures,
the clock has struck five.

trois heures étaient sonnées, lora-
qu'on s'est mis à table,
*it had struck three, when we sat
down at meat.*

j'ai bien vieilli depuis deux ans,
*i am grown much older within
these two years.*

avouez que nous sommes bien
vieillis,
confess that we are grown very old.

OF THE VERB BEING REGIMEN.

348. When two verbs come together the second may be, 1st, in the infinitive; 2dly, in the indicative mood; 3dly, in the subjunctive.

OF THE VERB IN THE INFINITIVE AFTER ANOTHER.

349. The second verb is in the infinitive, when we speak of one person only, i.e. when the subject of both verbs is the same

EXAMPLES.

je veux sortir, *i wish to go out.*
nous espérons voir le roi, *we hope to see the king.*

The subject of *vouloir* and *sortir* is the same; *i*

wish *I* may go out; so of *espérer*, we hope we shall see the king.

350. But here again is a difficulty for the learner; the infinitive following is sometimes governed by the preposition *à*, sometimes by *de*, sometimes by *pour*, and sometimes there is no preposition at all.

EXAMPLES.

<i>J'aime à lire,</i>	<i>I like to read.</i>
<i>Je crains de tomber,</i>	<i>I fear to fall.</i>
<i>Je travaille pour vivre,</i>	<i>I work to get my living.</i>
<i>Je dois partir,</i>	<i>I am to go.</i>

This difference depends on the preceding verb of which the government must be ascertained.

351. *Aimer mieux, valoir mieux, aller, espérer, falloir, devoir, pouvoir, savoir, vouloir*, etc., require no preposition before the following infinitive.

EXAMPLES.

<i>J'aimerais mieux mourir,</i>	<i>I had rather die.</i>
<i>vous devriez sortir,</i>	<i>you ought to go out.</i>

352. *Achever, finir, affecter, se dépêcher, se hâter, craindre, appréhender, désirer*, etc., require the preposition *de*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Il affecte de l'aimer,</i>	<i>he affects to like it.</i>
<i>elle craignait de tomber,</i>	<i>she feared to fall.</i>

353. *Aimer, apprendre, consentir, se plaire, s'apprêter*, etc. require *à*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>J'aime à danser,</i>	<i>I like dancing.</i>
<i>consentez-vous à l'épouser?</i>	<i>do you consent to marry her?</i>

The preposition *pour* is used when *in order to*, is either expressed or understood in English.

EXAMPLE.

il va à la campagne pour chasser, *he is going in the country to shoot.*

354. Verbs generally require, before the infinitive, the same preposition which they require before the noun.

EXAMPLE.

je vous blâme de votre refus,	<i>I blame you for your refusal.</i>
je vous blâme de refuser,	<i>I blame you for refusing.</i>

355. Sometimes a verb governs two different prepositions, because it has two different acceptations.

S'efforcer de, to endeavour, is taken in the moral sense ; *s'efforcer à*, in the physical.

EXAMPLES.

il s'efforce de plaire,	<i>he tries to please.</i>
il s'efforce à parler,	<i>he exerts himself to speak.</i>

These peculiarities of the language cannot be taught by rule ; they belong to individual words which must be consulted. See *Dictionnaire des Verbes*.

EXERCISE.

1. Do you prefer living * in the country ?
2. Come, when you have done writing.
3. Are you afraid of falling ?
4. He cannot walk.
5. Does he not like travelling ?
6. She takes delight in teasing.
7. Has he not consented to pay you ?

8. They are gone to London to see if they can find a house for the

9. My sisters learn drawing.

10. I was getting ready to go out when he came.

11. They hope to arrive in time.

12. Make haste to get up and to dress.

(1.) Préférer, vivre ; *in*, à.

(3.) Craindre.

(5.) Aimer voyager.

(7.) Consentir.

(9.) Apprendre, dessiner

(11.) Espérer ; *in time*, à temps.

(2.) Finir, *ind*-8.

(4.) Pouvoir.

(6.) Se plaire, tourmenter.

(8.) Aller, voir, pouvoir.

(10.) S'apprêter, sortir, venir, *ind*-4.

(12.) Se dépêcher, se lever, s'habiller.

OF THE VERB IN THE INDICATIVE AND THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

356. When the subjects of the two verbs are different, the second verb must be in the indicative mood or in the subjunctive.

EXAMPLES.

je crois que vous avez raison, *I think you are right.*
je doute que vous ayez raison, *I doubt your being right.*

Here are two persons or subjects ; the one *thinking* or *doubting*, and the other *being or not being in the right*.

357. The indicative mood is used after all verbs expressing an act of the mind, and when speaking in an affirmative and positive manner ; among such may be enumerated *croire, imaginer, concevoir, réfléchir, considérer, observer, remarquer, compter, espérer, démontrer*, etc., etc.

EXAMPLES.

Je crois qu'il est venu, *I believe he has arrived.*
espérons que la chose ira bien, *let us hope the thing will succeed*

OBSERVE. That the conjunction *que* is never omitted in French.

358. If the same verbs are used interrogatively

or negatively, they require the subjunctive mood after them.

EXAMPLES.

je ne crois pas qu'il soit venu	<i>I do not think he is come</i>
espérez-vous que la chose aille bien ?	<i>do you expect the thing will go on well?</i>

359. There are some verbs expressive of *fear, doubt, apprehension, desire*, which always have the subjunctive mood after them, whether in the affirmative or the negative form.*

EXAMPLES.

je doute qu'il vienne	<i>I doubt his coming</i>
je crains que cela ne soit	<i>I fear its being so</i>

EXERCISE

1. She thinks you have not sufficiently attended to her interest :
2. Do you imagine it is an easy thing to convince him ?
3. They say he is going abroad.
4. Do you imagine I have done it on purpose ?
5. I wish you may succeed, but I doubt it.
6. We fear he will come in our absence, and he will be vexed not to find us at home.

- (1.) Croire, to have attended, s'être occupé de, interest, intérêt.
- (2.) S'imaginer, chose facile, convaincre.
- (3.) Abroad, à l'étranger.
- (4.) To do on purpose, faire exprès.
- (5.) Désirer, réunir, douter de.
- (6.) Craindre, venir, vexed, contrarié de.

* This is more fully explained at the article, subj. mood, No. 251.

OF THE NATURE AND USE OF MOODS AND TENSES.

OF THE INDICATIVE

360. *The indicative* is the mood which declares affirmatively or negatively. It has eight tenses which

<i>the present</i>	<i>je parle</i>
<i>the imperfect</i>	<i>je parlais</i>
<i>the preterit definite</i>	<i>je parlai</i>
<i>the preterit indefinite</i>	<i>j'ai parlé</i>
<i>the preterit anterior</i>	<i>j'eus parlé</i>
<i>the pluperfect</i>	<i>j'avais parlé</i>
<i>the future simple</i>	<i>je parlerai</i>
<i>the future anterior</i>	<i>j'aurai parlé</i>

361. *The present* marks that a thing is *now* passing, that is, either existing or doing.

EXAMPLES.

<i>j'aime,</i>	<i>I love, do love, am loving.</i>
<i>ils jouent,</i>	<i>they play, do play, are playing.</i>

361. *The present* may be used in speaking of a thing that is going to be done, or take place, as being more expressive than the future.

EXAMPLE

<i>je suis de retour dans un moment,</i>	<i>I shall be back in an instant</i>
--	--------------------------------------

It is also used, in a narrative, instead of the preterite, in order to give more force and vivacity to the description, and to make the thing, as it were, present.

EXERCISE.

le cheval blessé, se démène et secoue son maître; Cyrus tombe. *the horse being wounded, struggled, shook off his rider; Cyrus fell.*

EXERCISE.

1. *He is in his chamber, where he is relaxing his mind from the fatigue of business, by some instructive and agreeable reading.*

2. Truth, eternal by its nature, is immutable as God himself.

3. I never let a day pass without devoting an hour or two to reading the ancients.

4. It is this week that the new piece comes out.

5. The armies were in sight: nothing was heard on all sides but dreadful cries: the engagement began. Immediately a cloud of arrows darkens the air and covers the combatants; nothing is heard but doleful cries of the dying, or the clattering of the arms of those who fall in the conflict; the earth groans beneath a heap of dead bodies, and rivers of blood stream every where; there is nothing in this confused mass of men enraged against one another but slaughter, despair, revenge, and brutal fury.

(1.) Is unbending, *délaissé*; reading, *lecture*.

(2.) By, *de*; immutable, *immuable*.

(3.) Let, *devoting, consacrer*; reading, *la lecture de*.

(4.) Come out, *en donner*.

(5.) Sight, *présence*; nothing was, etc., *on ne que*, Ind. 2; the engagement began, *on en venir aux mains*, Ind. 3; cloud, *nuée*; arrows, *trait*; darkens, *obscurcit*; nothing is, etc., *on ne plus que*; doleful, *plaintif*; clattering, *bruit*; conflict, *mêlée*; groans, *gémir*; beneath, *sous*; heap, *monceau*; rivers, *ruisseau*; stream, *coulée*; there is nothing in, etc. *ce ne être dans*; mass, *amas*; enraged, *acharné*; but, *que*; slaughter, *massacre*.

362. The imperfect, *je parlais*, I was speaking, I did speak, I used to speak, I spoke; expresses a thing being done at the moment another takes place.

EXAMPLE.

J'étais au moment où vous êtes entré, *I came in at the moment you entered.*

The imperfect expresses also repetition, habit, description of things habitual and stationary.

EXAMPLES.

je recevais de ses nouvelles toutes les semaines, quand j'étais à Paris, j'allais souvent aux Champs Elysées, voilà la place où elle aimait à s'asseoir, son père était fier, le livre était sur la table; quel- qu'un l'aura pris,	<i>I heard from him every week.</i> <i>when I was in Paris I often went to the Champs Elysées.</i> <i>this is the place where she liked to sit down.</i> <i>his father was very proud.</i> <i>the book was laying upon the table, somebody must have taken it.</i>
---	--

EXERCISE.

1. When I was at Paris, I went every morning to take a walk in the *Champs Elysées*, or the *Bois de Boulogne*: afterwards I came home, where I employed myself till dinner, either in reading or writing; and, in the evening, I generally went for amusement to the French Theatre or the Opera.

2. When I was in the prime of life, like the light butterfly, I flattered from object to object, without being able to settle to any thing: eager for pleasure, I seized every thing that had its appearance: alas! how far was I then from foreseeing that I should deplore with so much bitterness the loss of that precious time.

3. For a short time after Abraham, the knowledge of the true God still appeared in Palestine and Egypt. Melchisedec, king of Salem, was the priest of the Most High God. Abimelech, king of Gerar, and his successor of the same name, feared God, swore by his name, and revered his power. But in Moses' time, the nations adored even beasts and reptiles. Every thing was God but God himself.

(1) Take a walk, *se promener*; in, *à*; came home, *rentrer chez soi*; was busy, *s'occuper*; reading, (*by the verb*); for amusement, *me délasser*; French Theatre, *Comédie Française*.

(2) Prime of life, *flour de l'âge*; butterfly, *papillon*; flattered, *volar*; being able, *pouvoir*; settle, *me fixer*; eager for, *avid de*; had its appearance, *m'en présentait l'image*; how, *que*; with so much bitterness, (*so bitterly*).

(3.) Swore, *jurer*; revered, *admirer*; the nations, *on*; even, *jusqu'à*; but, *excepté*.

363. The *preterit definite*, *je parlai*, is used in speaking of things done during a period, a year, a month or a week, entirely elapsed, and when the precise moment is specified or understood in which the action took place.

EXAMPLES

Je lui écrivis à mon arrivée à Bath, *I wrote to him on my arrival at Bath.*
 nous nous rencontrâmes l'année dernière aux eaux, *we met last year at a watering place.*

This preterit has been called the *historical tense*, on account of its serving to express things which have happened at a period distant from the present.

EXERCISE.

Amenophis conceived the design of making his son a conqueror. He *set about* it, after the manner of the Egyptians, that is, with great ideas. All the children who were born on * the same day as Sesostria, *were brought* to court by order of the king: he *had* them educated as his own children, and with the same care as Sesostria. When he *was* grown up, he made him serve his apprenticeship in a war against the Arabs: this young prince *learned* there to bear hunger and thirst, and *subdued* that nation, till then invincible. He afterwards *attacked* Lybia, and *conquered* it. After these successes, he *formed* the project of subduing the whole world. In consequence of this *, he entered Ethiopia, which he *made* tributary. He *continued* his victories in Asia. Jerusalem *was* the first to feel the force of his arms: the rash Rehoboam *could* not resist him, and Sesostria *carried away* the riches of Solomon. He *penetrated* into the Indies, farther than Hercules and Bacchus, and farther than Alexander did afterward. The Scythians *obeyed* him as far as the Tanais; Armenia and Cappadocia *were* subject to him. In a word, he *extended* his empire from the Ganges to the Danube.

Making, *faire de*; set about it, *s'y prendre*; after, *à*; ideas, *pensée*; brought, *amener*; had educated, *faire élever*; grown up, *grand*; made serve, *fit faire*. apprenticeship, *apprentissage*; in, *par*; entered, *entrer dans*; made, *rendre*; as far as, *jusqu'à*; Cappadocia, *Cappadoce*.

364. The preterit indefinite, *j'ai parlé*, is the tense which is the most used in French; it expresses things done, or which have happened in the course of the day, recently, within the week, the month or the year in which

EXAMPLE.

j'ai rencontré votre frère ce matin, *I met your brother this morning.*

The preterite indefinite is used also to express assertion of a thing having been done, without any reference to time.

EXAMPLES.

j'ai voyagé en Italie, *I travelled in Italy.*
 j'en ai parlé à votre oncle, *I have mentioned it to your uncle.*
 n'avez-vous remarqué aucune faute? *have you noticed no mistakes?*

It is also used figuratively instead of the future.

EXAMPLE.

avez-vous bientôt fini? *shall you have done soon*
 oui, j'ai fini dans un moment, *yes, I shall have done in a minute.*

EXPLANATION.

1. Enflamed with the desire of knowing mankind, I *have travelled*, not only among the most polished nations, but even among the most barbarous. I *have observed* them in the different degrees of civilization, from the state of simple nature to the most perfect state of society, and wherever I went, the result *was* the same: that is to say, I *have* every where *seen* beings occupied in drying up the different sources of happiness that nature had placed within their reach.

2. I *have travelled* this year in Italy, where I *had* an * opportunity of seeing several master-pieces of antiquity, and where I *made* a valuable collection of scarce medals. I there *admired* the perfection to which they *have brought* architecture, painting, and music; but what *pleased* me most there, was the beauty of the climate of Naples.

(1.) With, *de*; mankind, *l'homme*, pl to, *chez*; polished nations, *peuple poli*; barbarous, *nation sauvage*; from, *depuis*; simple, *pur*; to, *jusqu'à*; wherever I went, *dans tous les pays*; the result was the same, (*I had the same result*); in drying up, *à tarir*; within their reach, *à leur portée*.

(2.) Opportunity, *occasion*; master-pieces, *chef d'œuvre*; scarce, *rare*; pleased me most, *faire le plus de plaisir*; was, *ind.-l.*

365. *The two preterit anterior, j'eus parlé, j'ai eu parlé, are commonly used after an adverb of time, such as dès que, aussitôt que, quand.*

EXAMPLES.

dès que j'eus dîné je sortis, *as soon as I had dined I went out.*
 dès que j'ai eu dîné je suis sorti, *I did go out as soon as I had done dinner.*

There is the same difference between these two tenses as between the preterit definite and the preterit indefinite. The first, *j'eus parlé*, is principally used in reference to time long past; the second, *j'ai eu parlé*, is said of things recently occurred. The latter expresses also assertion of facts, as *j'ai parlé* does.

EXAMPLE.

aujourd'hui j'ai eu déjeûné en *i was not more than ten minutes*
 dix minutes, *about my breakfast to day.*

366. *The pluperfect, j'avais parlé, expresses the completion of an action, at the moment another took place.*

EXAMPLE.

j'avais soupé quand il entra, *I had done supper when he entered.*

It is generally preceded of *dès que, quand, lorsque, aussitôt que*, and, like the imperfect, serves to express habitual things, repetition, and to describe.

EXAMPLES.

j'allais à la chasse dès que j'avais *I went out shooting as soon as I*
 déjeûné, *had done breakfast.*

EXAMPLE.

1. As soon as I *had examined* this phenomenon, I tried to find out its causes.

2. As soon as we *had crossed* the river, we found ourselves in a wood where there was not a single foot-path traced.

3. As soon as the great Sesostris *had satisfied* his ambition by the conquest of so many empires, he returned into Egypt, where he devoted the whole of the day to administering strict justice to his people, and, in the evening, he recreated himself by holding conferences with the learned, or by conversing with the most upright people of his kingdom.

4. I *had only received*, like most of the grandees, an education in which I *had imbibed* nothing but sentiments of pride and insensibility; that is, they *had done* every thing in their power, to stifle in me the happy and benevolent dispositions which I *had received* from nature.

(1.) As soon as, *dès que*; tried to find out, *se rechercher*.

(2.) Crossed, *traverser*; found ourselves, *se trouver engagé*; foot-path, *sentier de*.

(3.) The whole of the day, *tout le jour*; administering, *rendre*, inf-1; strict, *sévére*; recreated, *délasser*; by holding conferences, *à s'entretenir*; upright, *honnête*; people, *gens*.

(4.) Grandee, *grand*; imbibed, *puiser*; they, *on*; in their power, *en son pouvoir*, ind-6; stifle, *étouffer*; benevolent, *bienfaisant*.

367. The *future absolute*, *je parlerai*, is that tense which expresses that an action or event will take place at a time which does not yet exist.

EXAMPLE.

j'irai demain à la campagne, I shall go to-morrow into the country.

The *future anterior* is the tense which expresses that, at a time when a thing will take place, another thing will have already taken place.

EXAMPLE.

quand j'aurai fini, je sortirai, when I have done, I shall go out.

368. It is customary in English, to put the *present tense* after *when*, it is not so in French, the

future tense must always be used, if speaking of things to come.

EXAMPLES.

I will show it to you when I have done, je vous le montrerai, quand je l'aurai fini.
when he comes, do let me know, quand il viendra, faites-le-moi savoir.

369. The future is also used after *si*, when it means *whether*, that is, when a doubt is expressed.

EXAMPLE.

Je ne sais si mon père viendra, I do not know whether my father will come.

When *si* means *if*, the future must not be used.

EXAMPLE.

nous irons à la campagne demain, we shall go into the country to-morrow if it is fine
s'il fait beau temps,

The future is used in French in rendering sentences like this, do as you please, *faites comme il vous plaira* or *comme vous voudrez*.

EXERCISES.

1. Remember that youth is but a flower, which *will wither* almost as soon as it opens. Thou *will see thyself* gradually changed. Smiling graces, sweet pleasures, strength, health, and joy, *will vanish* like a pleasing dream; nothing but the sad remembrance will be left thee.

2. I *shall* next year *take* a journey into Greece, and I am preparing myself for it by reading the travels of the young Anacharsis.

3. When you *have read* the celebrated discourse of Bossuet on Universal History, and *studied* in it the causes of the rise and fall of states, you *will be* less astonished at the revolutions, more or less sudden, that modern empires have experienced, which appeared to you in the most flourishing state.

(1.) Will wither, (will be almost as soon withered as, 47), sceler; opens,

écoule; gradually, *insensiblement*; lively, *vivant*; pleasing, *bon*; nothing will be left, *il n'en restera*.

(2.) Take, *faire*; for it, *y*; reading, *lecture de*; (*the travels, celui*.)

(3.) Have read, *ind-8*; and, *que vous, ind-8*; in it, *y*; rise, *grandeur*; fall, *chute*; sudden, *subite*; (*that have experienced the modern empires, which, etc.*) appeared, *ind-2*.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES OF *JE PARLAIS, JE PARLAI, J'AI PARLÉ*.

370. The choice of the proper tense, between *je parlais, j'ai parlé, je parlai* is so difficult for the learner, it requires such perfect understanding of the peculiar acceptation of each of them, that the following passages selected and analysed for their illustration, may prove useful in addition to the foregoing rules.

We read in Marmontel—

<i>Célicour, à l'âge de quinze ans,</i>	<i>Célicour, at the age of fifteen, had</i>
<i>avait dit dans le monde ce</i>	<i>been in the work, what is called</i>
<i>qu'on appelle un petit prodige,</i>	<i>a little prodigy.</i>

The author uses the pluperfect, because he describes what was at a period of time anterior to all those which he is going to mention.

Again,

<i>il faisait des vers les plus galants</i>	<i>he composed the most agreeable</i>
<i>du monde; il n'y avait pas</i>	<i>love-sonnets imaginable; there</i>
<i>dans le voisinage une jolie</i>	<i>was not a pretty woman in the</i>
<i>femme qu'il n'eût célébrée;</i>	<i>neighbourhood that he had not</i>
<i>c'était dommage de laisser tant</i>	<i>celebrated: it was a pity to let</i>
<i>de talents enfouis dans une pe-</i>	<i>so many talents be buried in a</i>
<i>tite ville; Paris devait en être</i>	<i>little town; Paris was the stage</i>
<i>le théâtre,</i>	<i>on which they ought to be ex-</i>
	<i>hibited.</i>

Here the author makes use of the imperfect, because he speaks of the habitual occupation of Célicour.

EX-434L.R.

*et l'on fit si bien, que son père
se résolut de l'y envoyer,*

Now, the author passes to the preterit definite, because he is no longer speaking of what was habitual or repeated, but of an action which once occurred, and long ago.

EXAMPLE.

ce père *était* un honnête homme, qui *aimait* l'esprit sans en avoir, et qui *admirait*, sans savoir pourquoi, tout ce qui venait de la capitale. Il avait même des relations littéraires, et du nombre de ses correspondants *était* un connaisseur nommé M. de Fintac,

Here again, the author resumes the form of the imperfect, as he is now speaking of the habitual state of Célécour's father, in his little town.

APPENDIX

ce fut principalement à lui que it was particularly to him that
Célicour fut recommandé Célicour was recommended

The form of the preterit definite is now resumed, because this is said of action passed at a time long elapsed.

And in Molière's *Fourberies de Scapin*, we read

comme nous sommes grande amis, il me fit aussitôt confidence de son amour, et me mena voir cette fille que je

trouvai belle, à la vérité, mais
non pas tant qu'il voulait que
je la trouvasse,

*thought pretty, but not so much
as he wished me to do.*

Here *fit*, *mena*, *trouvai* are all referring to actions past long ago, and they serve also to state facts but not to describe permanent things. *Voulait*, on the contrary, is in the imperfect, because it expresses the constant and continued desire of Leandre that his mistress should be thought pretty.

Again Scapin says :

*c'est ce que je lui ai dit. J'ai rejeté
bien loin de pareilles proposi-
tions, et je lui ai bien fait en-
tendre que vous n'étiez point
une dupe, pour vous deman-
der des cinq ou six cents pis-
toles. Enfin, après plusieurs
discours voici où s'est réduit
le résultat de notre conférence,*

*that is what I said to him ; I
would not hear of such propo-
sals, and I gave him to under-
stand that you were not a dupe
to ask you five or six hundred
pistols. Finally, after several
speeches, this is what has been
the result of our interview.*

Here the preterit indefinite, *j'ai parlé* is used, because Scapin relates what he has done since he saw Argante, consequently in the course of the day in which he is speaking. There is no description of a continued state of things, except in *étiez*, which refers to the general character of Argante.

OF THE CONDITIONAL.

371. The *conditional* is the mood which affirms a thing would be on some conditions ; it has two tenses, the *present* and the *past*.

The *present of the conditional* (*je parlerais*) is that tense which expresses that a thing would take place on certain conditions.

EXAMPLE.

je ferais votre affaire avant peu, I would settle your business be-

si elle dépendait uniquement de moi, *fore long, if it only depends upon me.*

The *past of the conditional* (*j'aurais parlé*) is that tense which expresses that a thing would have taken place at a time which no longer exists, dependant on certain conditions.

EXAMPLE.

j'aurais, ou j'eusse fait votre affaire, si vous m'en aviez, ou m'en eussiez parlé,* *I would have settled your business if you had mentioned it to me.*

372. The conditional is used to express a wish, as,

que je serais, or, que j'aurais été content si j'avais réussi ! *how glad I should be, or should have been had I succeeded !*

AND after *si*, whether, expressing a doubt, as,

demandez-lui s'il serait venu avec nous, supposé qu'il n'eût pas eu affaire ? *ask him whether he would have come with us, had he not been engaged ?*

373. It is used also before, or after the imperfect, or pluperfect of the indicative, when they are preceded by *si*, as,

nous nous épargnerions bien des peines, si nous savions modérer nos desirs, *we should spare ourselves much pain, did we know how to moderate our desires.*
vous auriez été plus heureux, si vous aviez suivi mes conseils, *you would have been more happy, if you had followed my advice.*

374. After *quand*, *quand même* ; in the sense of *though even, were I to.*

EXAMPLE.

quand l'avare posséderait tout l'or du monde, il ne serait pas encore content, *were the miser to possess all the gold in the world, he would not be satisfied.*

* Some writers, and Voltaire especially, often make use of this form, *j'eusse parlé*, for *j'aurais parlé*. It is here given as an example, but it will be well to follow the first.

And in questions like the following, in the sense of *is it possible that, could I? could you? really?*

EXAMPLES.

croiriez-vous votre fils ingrat?	<i>could you think your son ungrateful?</i>
l'auriez-vous soupçonné d'un tel vice?	<i>could you have suspected him of such a vice?</i>

which means, *croyez-vous, pouvez-vous croire. etc auriez-vous pu, etc.*

Voltaire makes a happy use of this form, in his *Mérope*.

EXAMPLES

serais-tu vraiment son fils?	<i>can it really be that you should be his son?</i>
tu n'aurais employé qu'une juste défense,	<i>really, you had only recourse to self-defence.</i>

EXERCISE.

1. If it *were* even possible for men always to act conformably to equity, as it is the multitude that must judge their conduct, the wicked would always blame and contradict them from malignity, and the good sometimes from mistake.

2. What false steps I *should have made* but for you, at my entrance into the world!

3. But for your counsels, I *should have failed* in this undertaking.

4. How satisfied I *should have been*, if you had sooner informed me of your happiness!

5. If we gave to infancy none but just and clear notions, *there would be* a much less considerable number of false wits in the world.

6. *Had Alexander conquered* the whole world, his ambition *would not have been* satisfied: he *would still have found* himself straitened in it.

7. *Could you believe* him vain enough to aspire to that high degree of honour?

8. *Could you ever have thought* him capable of deserting the good cause, to go and side with rebels?

9. *Would you renounce* being useful to the present generation because envy fastens on you?

- (1.) If even, *quand même*; were, *cond-1*; for men, (that men); to act, *subj-2*; fudge, *juger de*; would blame, *ind-7*; contradict, *croiser*, *ind-7*.
 (2.) What, *que de*; steps, *démarche*; but for, *sans*.
 (3.) But for, *sans*; failed, *échouer*.
 (4.) How, *que*.
 (5.) We, *on*; a much less considerable number, *bien moins*.
 (6.) (When Alexander would have conquered); straitened, *trop à l'étroit*.
 (8.) Deserting; *abandonner*; to go and side with, *pour se ranger sous les drapeaux de*.
 (9.) Renounce, *renoncer à*; fastens, *s'attacher*; on you, *à vos pies*.

375. Foreigners are very apt to use the conditional after *si*, when meaning *supposé que*. They say,

vous auriez vu le roi, si vous seriez venu, *you would have seen the king if you had come.*

This mistake cannot be made if attention is paid to the actual meaning of *si*, which signifies both *if* and *whether*; when it is taken in the acceptation of *whether* the conditional is used, not otherwise.

EXAMPLES.

je ne savais si nous irions ou non, *I did not know whether we should go or no.*
si nous allions à la campagne, je vous en préviendrais, *if we went into the country, I would tell you of it.*

OF THE IMPERATIVE.

376. The *imperative* is that mood which commands, exhorts, entreats, forbids or reproves.

In many verbs a compound of the imperative may be used to express an injunction to have a thing done previously to another, as, *ayez dîné avant que je revienne*, have dined before I return.

EXERCISE.

Be not fond of praise; but seek virtue, which
 sing. *passionné pour art. louange f.* art.
 procures it. Let us remember that unless virtue guide
 attirer *se souvenir* *à moins que art.* ne

us, our choice must be wrong. Let us not be deceived by
devoir ind-1 *mauvais* *se laisser prendre à*
the first appearances of things; but let us take time, to
art. *se donner art.* *de*
fix our judgment. Arbiters of the destinies of men, do good
arbitre — *de* *art.* *art. bien*
if you wish to be happy; do good, if you wish that your memory
voulait *
should be honoured; do good, if you wish that heaven should
subj-1 *art.* *sub.*
open to you its eternal gates.
1 2 *porte f. l.*

OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

377. Remarks have already been made (No. 113) on the use of the subjunctive mood in French, and some examples have been given, by way of comparison, to show that the two languages by no means agree on this point. Many verbs in English, are put in the *future*, the *conditional* and the *present tense* which, in French, must be in the *subjunctive mood*. Thus,

<i>Je ne crois pas qu'il soit si âgé,</i>	<i>I don't think he is so old.</i>
<i>je ne crois pas qu'il vienne,</i>	<i>I don't think he will come.</i>
<i>je craignais qu'il ne vînt,</i>	<i>I feared he would come.</i>
<i>elle est la plus jolie que je connaisse,</i>	<i>she is the prettiest I know.</i>

Observe that the *present* and *future* are the same in the subjunctive mood, the context alone shows of which of the two we speak.

EXAMPLES

<i>Je ne crois pas qu'il vienne,</i>	<i>I do not think he is coming.</i>
<i>je ne crois pas qu'il vienne,</i>	<i>I do not think he will come.</i>

The use of the present or of the past tenses of the

subjunctive is determined by the preceding verb, as will be seen No. 388.

378. The subjunctive mood is used in French after the following conjunctions.

à moins que*	<i>unless</i>
afin que	<i>in order that</i>
à Dieu ne plaise que	<i>God forbid that</i>
au cas que	<i>in case</i>
avant que	<i>before</i>
bien que	<i>although</i>
bien loin que	<i>far from</i>
ce n'est pas que	<i>it is not that</i>
de crainte que*	<i>for fear that, lest</i>
de manière que	<i>so that, in a manner that</i>
de peur que*	<i>for fear that</i>
Dieu veuille que	<i>God grant that</i>
encore que	<i>although</i>
excepté que	<i>except</i>
jusqu'à ce que	<i>until</i>
loin que	<i>far from</i>
malgré que	<i>although, spite of</i>
moyennant que	<i>on consideration that</i>
non pas que	<i>not that</i>
plût à Dieu que	<i>would to God that</i>
posé le cas que	<i>suppose</i>
pour que	<i>in order that, that</i>
pour peu que	<i>ever so little</i>
pourvu que	<i>provided that</i>
que	<i>(in the place of another conjunction)</i>
quelque	<i>whatever, however</i>
quoique	<i>although</i>
sans que	<i>without</i>
si ce n'est que	<i>except that</i>
si non que	<i>but that</i>
soit que	<i>whether, or</i>
supposé que	<i>suppose</i>
tant s'en faut que	<i>far from it that</i>

EXAMPLES.

entrez sans qu'il vous voie, *get in without his seeing you.*
 à dieu ne plaise qu'il en soit ainsi, *God forbid it should be so*

* *Ne* is frequently put before the verb which follows *avant que*; yet I believe it ought to be only whenever *avant que* may be rendered by *lest*, and when there is an apprehension that a thing should happen before another.

Those conjunctions which are marked * require *ne* before the verb, though not having a negative sense

EXAMPLE.

allez doucement de peur qu'il ne vous entende, *go gently lest he should hear you.*

EXERCISE.

Get up early to-morrow morning, that we may start in good time. Shall the day pass away without my seeing you? God forbid that I should wrong a man who has ever showed me so much kindness. Make haste, lest he should set off without you. I shall wait until you have done.

879. It has been observed, (No. 357) that the conjunction *que*, used before the indicative mood, coming after a verb, expressing an act of the mind in the affirmative form, is never to be omitted in French. This shows that that conjunction does not *in itself* govern the subjunctive mood, as is erroneously thought by most learners; but there are, however, several cases in which *que* requires that mood after it. They are when *que* is used instead, or in the sense, of the following conjunctions: *à moins que*, *avant que*, *sans que*, *jusqu'à ce que*, *quoi que*, *soit que*, which are themselves always followed by the subjunctive.

EXAMPLES.

j'attendrai *que* la pluie soit passée *I shall wait until the rain be over.*
(*Jusqu'à ce que*)
je ne sortirai pas *que* vous ne m'ayez payé (*avant que*) *I shall not leave the house before you pay me.*

EXERCISE.

1. Give me your letter *that* I may send it to the post-office.
2. He says he will not marry *until* he has a profession.
3. He cannot play, but he hurts himself.
4. We shall not go into the country, *unless* he consents to come with us.

- (1.) *Que* for *après que*, to send, *envoyer*.
 (2.) To marry, *se marier*, *que* for *avant que* *ne*; profession, *état m.*
 (3.) Cannot, *il ne saurait*, *que* for *sans que* *-ne*.
 (4.) *Que* for *à moins que* *-ne*; to consent, *consentir à*; to come, *y aller*.

380. When the conjunction *si* governs two verbs the second must be in the subjunctive mood.

EXAMPLE.

si votre frère vient demain, et qu'il fasse beau temps, nous le mènerons à la chasse, *if your brother comes to-morrow, and the weather is fine, we will take him hunting*

EXERCISE.

1. If men were wise and followed the lights of reason, they would save themselves many troubles.

2. If you go to Paris, and will take me with you, I shall be most happy.

- (1.) *Être*, Ind. 2, *saurez*; to save, *s'épargner*.
 (2.) To take, *mener*; to be happy, *en être enchanté*.

381. An adjective in the superlative degree, requires that the verb following be in the subjunctive.

EXAMPLE.

donnez-moi la meilleure plume que vous ayez, *give me the best pen you have.*

Obs. Among such adjectives must be included *le premier*, *le dernier*, *le seul*, *l'unique*, *personne*.

See No. 212.

382. The relative pronouns *que*, *qui*, following a negative phrase, govern the subjunctive mood.

EXAMPLE.

il n'y avait là personne que je connusse, *there was there no one that I knew.*

ne pourriez-vous m'indiquer un homme qui voulût se charger de cette affaire? *could not you recommend some man to me, who would undertake that business?*

283. *Qui, que*, require also the subjunctive when following a sentence expressing *a wish* or *a doubt*: *où*, for in which, has the same power.

EXAMPLES.

indiquez-moi un endroit où l'on puisse trouver cela, *tell me of a place where that can be found.*
choisissez une femme qui soit prudente, *choose a woman who is prudent.*

EXERCISE.

1. The largest stage there is for virtue, is conscience.
2. The motions of the planets are the most regular that we know.
3. There is no one who, in such case, would neglect so important a matter.
4. It may be said that the dog is the only animal whose faithfulness be proof.
5. This is the largest elephant that ever was seen.
6. Show me a man who calls himself perfectly happy.

- (1.) Stage, théâtre, m. there is, y avoir.
(2.) Motions, mouvement, m.
(3.) To neglect, négliger; matter, intérêt, m.
(4.) On peut dire, to be proof, soit à l'épreuve.
(5.) Turn, that one has ever seen.
(6.) To call one's self, se dire.

384. There are also a great many verbs which govern the subjunctive mood; they generally express *wish, determination, permission*, such as *désirer, souhaiter, prier, prétendre, vouloir, entendre, aimer mieux que, souffrir, s'étonner, ordonner*, etc.

EXAMPLES.

permettez que je vous dise ce qui est arrivé, *allow me to tell you what has happened.*
je veux qu'il le fasse à l'instant, *I will have him do it this moment*

Nier, douter, require the subjunctive, and, when used interrogatively or negatively, *ne* must precede the verb.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Je nie que cela soit,</i>	<i>I deny its being so</i>
<i>Je ne nie pas que cela ne soit,</i>	<i>I do not deny but that it may be so.</i>
<i>Doutez-vous qu'il ne le fasse ?</i>	<i>do you question his doing it ?</i>

Craindre, appréhender, avoir peur, empêcher, trembler, have also *ne* before the subjunctive, except when they are in the negative form.

EXAMPLES.

<i>j'ai peur que cela ne vous fasse</i>	<i>I fear that will give you pain.</i>
<i>de la peine,</i>	
<i>Je n'ai pas peur que cela vous</i>	<i>I do not fear that it will give you</i>
<i>fasse de la peine,</i>	<i>pain.</i>

EXERCISES.

1. Do you doubt his coming? No, I do not doubt but he will come after so pressing an invitation.
2. I am afraid he will see me.
3. Do not let that child ride this horse, I am afraid he will throw him down.
4. The rain prevented us from going out.
5. Can you prevent his doing what he pleases?
6. We all pray that he be soon relieved from his sufferings.
7. I do not like people to talk when I am reading.
8. Shall I read the letter aloud?

(1.) *Douter que*; to come, *venir*.

(2.) To be afraid, *craindre*.

(3.) To let, *permettre que*; to ride, *monter*; to throw down, *jeter à bas*.

(4.) To prevent, *empêcher que*; to go out, *sortir*.

(5.) What he pleases, *ce que bon lui semble*.

(6.) Relieved, *déliuré*; sufferings, *peines*.

(7.) People, *on*.

(8.) Shall I, *voulez-vous que*.

385. *Etre ravi, bien aise*, etc. etc. have been noticed, No. 209, as governing also the subjunctive.

REMARKS ON THE ENGLISH SIGNS OR AUXILIARIES
DO, DID, WILL, WOULD, SHOULD, CAN, COULD,
*MAY, MIGHT.**

386. *Do, did, will, would, should, can, could, may,* and *might*, are sometimes to be considered as being simply signs of tenses; in other cases, they are real verbs.

There can be no difficulty about *do* and *did*; these are mere expletives, denoting interrogation, negation, or merely emphasis, when they are joined to a verb.

EXAMPLES.

<i>j'aime,</i>	<i>I do love</i>
<i>j'aimais, or j'aimai,</i>	<i>I did love.</i>
<i>aime-je?</i>	<i>do I love?</i>
<i>aimais-je, or aimai-je?</i>	<i>did I love?</i>
<i>je n'aime pas,</i>	<i>I do not love.</i>
<i>je n'aimais pas, or, je n'aimai pas,</i>	<i>I did not love.</i>

In all these cases, they are not expressed in French.

But when they are followed by a noun, or a pronoun, in short, by any thing else, except the verb with which they are connected, then they are real verbs, and mean, *faire*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>faites-moi ce plaisir,</i>	<i>do me that favour.</i>
<i>il le fit,</i>	<i>he did it.</i>
<i>il fit plus qu'on n'eût pu espérer.</i>	<i>he did more than could have been expected.</i>

* See the manner of rendering *might, should, ought* No. 19, of Models or Phrases ou Difficulties, at the end.

Should is only a sign of the conditional, when it expresses a thing which may happen upon some condition, and, in fact, it is used for *would*.

EXAMPLE.

j'aimerais la vie champêtre, si mes affaires me permettaient de suivre mon goût,	<i>I should like a country life, if my affairs would permit me to in- dulge my inclination.</i>
--	---

But when it implies duty or obligation, it is a distinct verb, and must be expressed by *devoir*, as,

nous ne devrions jamais nous écarter du sentier de la vertu,	<i>we should never swerve from the path of virtue.</i>
---	--

Can, could, may, and might, are not so difficult as they appear at first sight; because, in almost every instance, there is no impropriety in rendering them by the verb *pouvoir*. In general, the first two imply a power, a possibility, a capability, etc. and the others a permission, probability, etc.

EXAMPLE.

je puis le faire,	<i>I can do it.</i>
il pourrait le faire,	<i>he could do it.</i>
elle pourrait venir,	<i>she might come.</i>
elle aurait pu venir,	<i>she might have come.</i>
puis-je vous parler?	<i>may I speak to you?</i>

Can is rendered by *savoir*, when it is used for *to know how*.

EXAMPLE.

elle sait chanter,	<i>she can sing.</i>
--------------------	----------------------

Do, did, shall, will, etc. in English, are sometimes used elliptically in answer to an interrogation, or in

an affirmation. In such cases the full sense is always given in French, that is, the verb, which is understood in English, is repeated.

See No. 20 of models of phrases, at the end.

EXAMPLE.

feriez-vous votre thème aujourd'hui?—Oui, je le ferai,	<i>shall you do your exercise to-day? yes, I shall.</i>
--	---

CONCORD BETWEEN THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

387. When the first verb is in the imperfect, the preterit, or the pluperfect, the second verb is put in the imperfect, if we speak of the present time.

EXAMPLE.

je croyais, j'ai cru, j'avais cru que vous étudiez les mathématiques,	<i>I thought, I have thought, I had thought that you were studying the mathematics.</i>
--	---

And in the pluperfect, if we speak of past time.

EXAMPLE.

il m'assura qu'il n'avait jamais tant ri,	<i>he assured me that he had never laughed so much.</i>
--	---

And in the present of the conditional, if we speak of a future time.

EXAMPLE.

on m'a dit que votre frère vien- drait à Londres l'hiver pro- chain,	<i>I was told your brother would come to town next winter.</i>
--	--

when it relates to things of common occurrence, or states a fact of general application.

EXAMPLE.

<p>je vous disais, je vous ai dit, je vous avais dit, que la santé fait la félicité du corps, et le savoir celle de l'âme,</p>	<p><i>I told you, I have told you, I had told you, that health constitutes the happiness of the body, and knowledge that of the soul.</i></p>
--	---

In phrases where the imperfect is preceded by *que*, it denotes, sometimes a thing past, sometimes a thing present. It denotes a thing past, when the verb which is joined to it by the conjunction *que*, is in the present or the future.

EXAMPLE.

<p>vous savez, ou vous saurez que le peuple Romain était aussi avide qu'ambitieux</p>	<p><i>you know or you must know that the Romans were a people as covetous as they were ambitious.</i></p>
---	---

But it denotes a thing present, when the verb, which precedes it, is in the imperfect, the preterit, or the pluperfect.

EXAMPLES.

<p>on disait, on a dit, on avait dit que Phocion était le plus grand et le plus honnête homme de son temps,</p>	<p><i>it was said, it has been said, it had been said, that Phocion was the greatest and most upright man of his age.</i></p>
<p>Dès qu'on eut appris à Athènes qu'Alcibiade était à Lacédémone, on se repentit de la précipitation avec laquelle on l'avait condamné,</p>	<p><i>as soon as it was known at Athens that Alcibiades was at Lacedæmon, the Athenians repented the precipitation with which they had condemned him.</i></p>

Nevertheless, the imperfect denotes the past, in this last instance, when it signifies an action which

was past before that, which is expressed by the first verb.

EXAMPLE.

en lisant l'histoire des temps héroïques, vous devez avoir remarqué que ces hommes, dont on a fait des demi-dieux, étaient des chefs féroces et barbares, dignes à peine du nom d'homme,

in reading the history of heroic times, you must have remarked that those men who have been made demi-gods, were ferocious and barbarous chiefs, scarcely deserving the name of men.

EXERCISE.

1. I *thought* you were not ignorant that, to teach others the principles of an art or science, one needs to have experience and skill.

2. I *have been told* that your dearest occupation was to form your taste, your heart and your understanding.

3. Darius, in his flight, being * reduced to the necessity of drinking water muddy and infected by dead bodies, *affirmed* that he never *had drunk* with so much pleasure.

4. Care *has been taken* to inculcate in me, from infancy, that I should succeed in the world, only in proportion as I should unite with the desire of pleasing, a great deal of gentleness and civility.

5. Ovid *has said*, that study *softens* the manners, and *corrects* every thing that is found in us rude and barbarous.

6. You *know* that those pretended heroes, of whom Pagan antiquity has made gods, were only barbarous and ferocious kings, who overran the earth, not so much to conquer as to ravage it, and who left every where traces of their fury and of their vices.

7. It *has been said* of Pericles, that his eloquence was like a thunderbolt, which nothing could resist.

8. As soon as Aristides *had said*, that the proposal of Themistocles was unjust, the whole people *exclaimed*, that they must not think of it any longer.

9. Had you read the history of the early ages, you *would know* that Egypt was the most enlightened country in the universe, and that whence knowledge *spread* into Greece and the neighbouring countries.

*. Were ignorant, *ignorer*; teach, *instruire* *donner*; needs, *avoir besoin*; skill, *habileté*.

(2.) I have, etc. (by the active voice) *on*.

(3.) Flight, *déroute*; muddy, *bourbeux*; affirmed, *asser*.

(4.) Care has, etc. (active voice) *on* *avait*; in me, *me*; in proportion, *sous sa* *proportion*, *habileté*.

(5.) Corrects, *corrige*; is found, *se trouve* *de*.

- (6.) *Overran, parcourir*; not so much, *moins*.
 (7.) *It, on*; thunderbolt, *foudre*, m.; (to) which.
 (8.) *Exclaimed, s'écrier*, they must, *falloir*. ind-2; of it, *y*; any longer, *plus*.
 (9.) *Agas, temps*; whence, *celui d'où*; neighbouring, *circonsais*; countries
seu.

CONCORD BETWEEN THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND THOSE OF THE INDICATIVE

388. When the verb of the principal proposition is in the present, or future, that of the subordinate proposition is put in the present of the subjunctive, to express a thing present, or future; but in the preterit, to express a thing past, we say,

- | | |
|--|--|
| <i>il faut que celui qui parle se mette
à la portée de celui qui l'écoute,</i> | <i>he that speaks should accommo-
date himself to the understand-
ing of him that listens.</i> |
| <i>il voudra que votre frère soit de
la partie,</i> | <i>he will wish your brother to be
one of the party.</i> |

But we must say,

- | | |
|--|---|
| <i>pour s'être élevé à ce point de
grandeur, il faut que Rome ait
eu une suite non interrompue
de grands hommes,</i> | <i>to have risen to that pitch of gran-
deur, Rome must have had an
uninterrupted succession of great</i> |
|--|---|

EXCEPTION. Though the first verb be in the present, or future, yet the second may be put in the imperfect, or pluperfect of the subjunctive, when some conditional expression is introduced into the sentence.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <i>il n'est point d'homme, quelque
mérite qu'il ait, qui ne fût
très-mortifié, s'il savait tout
ce qu'on pense de lui,</i> | <i>there is no man, whatever merit
he may have, that would not
feel very much mortified were
he to know all that is thought
of him.</i> |
| <i>où trouvera t'on l'homme qui</i> | <i>where will you find the man who</i> |

ne fit la même faute, s'il était
exposé aux mêmes tentations?

would not have committed the
same error, had he been exposed
to the same temptations?

Je doute que votre frère eût
réussi sans votre assistance,

I doubt whether your brother would
have succeeded, had it not been
for your assistance

EXERCISE.

1. He who wishes to teach an art, must know it thoroughly, we must give none but clear, precise and well-digested notions of it: he must instil them, one by one, into the minds of his pupils, and, above all, he must not overburthen their memory with useless, or unimportant rules.

2. He must yield to the force of truth, when they shall have suffered it to appear in its real light.

3. There is no work, however perfect people may suppose it, that would not be liable to criticism, if it were examined with severity and in every point of view.

4. I doubt whether his piece would have had the approbation of connoisseurs, if he had not determined to make in it the changes you judged necessary.

(1.) It must (that he who, etc. know it); he must (not repeated), *que*; instil, *faire entrer*; by, *à*; overburthen, *surcharger*; unimportant, *insignifiant*.

(2.) (It must, ind-7, that he; yield, *se rendre*; suffered, *permettre*; it to appear, (that it appear); real light, *voir jour*.

(3.) Would be liable, *prêter*, subj-2, with severity, *à la rigueur*; in, *sous*; point of view, *face*.

(4.) Approbation, *suffrage*; had determined, *se décider*; in it, *y*; judged, ind-4.

When the first verb is in the imperfect, the preterit, the pluperfect or the conditional, the second is put in the imperfect of the subjunctive, if we mean to express a thing present, or future; but it is put in the pluperfect, if we wish to express a thing that is past.

Je voulais, j'ai voulu, j'eus voulu, je voudrais, or j'eusse voulu qu'il finisse cette affaire.

Je ne savais pas, je n'ai pas su, etc. que vous eussiez étudié les mathématiques.

REMARK. With the preterit indefinite, the second verb is put in the present, if it expresses a thing of common occurrence.

EXAMPLES.

Dieu a entouré les yeux de tuniques fort minces, transparentes au dehors, afin qu'on puisse voir à travers, *God has surrounded the eyes with very thin tunics, transparent on the outside, that we may see through them.*

And in the preterit, if we mean to express a thing past, as,

il a fallu qu'il ait sollicité ses juges, *he must have been obliged to solicit his judges.*

EXERCISE.

1. Mr. de Turenne never *would* buy any thing on credit, of tradesmen, for fear, said he, they *should* lose a great part of their demand, if he happened to be killed. All the workmen who were employed about his house, had orders to bring in their bills, before he set out for the campaign, and they were regularly paid.

2. It *would* be better, for a man who truly loves himself, to *lose* his life, than to forfeit his honour by some base and shameful action.

3. Lycurgus, in one of his laws, *had* forbidden the lighting of those who came from a feast in the evening, that the fear of not being able to reach their houses might *prevent* them from getting intoxicated.

4. People *used* the bark of trees, or skins, to write upon,* before paper was known.

5. Go and* ask that old man : for whom are you planting? he will answer you : for the immortal gods, who *have* ordered both that I *should* profit by the labour of those that have preceded me, and that those who should come after me, *should* profit by mine.

(1.) Would, *vouloir*, ind-2; buy on credit, *prendre à crédit*; of, *des*; happened, *sur*; were employed, *travailler*; about, *pour*; bills, *mémoire*; he, *on*; set out for, *se mettre en*.

(2.) To lose, (that he *would* lose); forfeit, *perdre*.

(3.) In, *par*; the lighting of, *que on éclairer*, subj-2; that, *afin que*; reach their houses, *se rendre chez eux*; getting intoxicated, *s'enivrer*.

(4.) People, *on*; bark, *écorce*; skins, *peaux*; known, *en usage*.

(5.) Have ordered, *vouloir*; ask, *demander*; and, *et*.

The subjunctive is elegantly used in elliptical

phrases, where the principal proposition is omitted.

qu'il vive (<i>Je souhaite qu'il,</i>)	may he live!
qu'il se soit oublié jusqu'à ce point! (<i>Je suis surpris qu'il</i>)	that he should so forget himself.
qui m'aime, me suive! (<i>Je veux que celui qui</i>)	whoever loves me, let him follow me.
heureux l'homme qui peut, ne fût-ce que dans sa vieillesse, jouir de toute la force de sa raison! (<i>quand ce ne serait que</i>),	happy the man that can, were it only in his old age, enjoy the whole strength of his reason.

CONCORD BETWEEN THE TENSES OF THE DIFFERENT MOODS.

389. REMARK. Our intention is not to give the concord of all the tenses, but simply to mention some of the principal.

THE INDICATIVE.

After the imperfect may come three tenses.

EXAMPLES.

Je lisais { *quand vous écriviez.*
 quand vous avez écrit.
 quand vous écrivîtes.

The preterit anterior requires the preterit definite, as, *quand j'eus fini, vous entrâtes.*

After the pluperfect may come, the preterit definite, the preterit indefinite, the preterit anterior, and the imperfect.

EXAMPLES.

J'avais lu { *quand vous entrâtes*
 quand vous êtes entré
 quand vous fûtes entré
 quand vous entrâtes

After the preterit anterior indefinite, comes the preterit indefinite, as, *quand j'ai eu dîné, vous êtes entré.*

In conjunction with *si* for *supposé que*, the future absolute requires the present, and the future anterior, the preterit indefinite.

EXAMPLE.

*Vous partirez, si je veux
Il sera parti, si vous l'avez voulu*

CONCORD BETWEEN THE CONDITIONAL AND THE IMPERFECT AND THE CONDITIONAL.

The conditional, first and second, are used in conjunction with the imperfect, and the pluperfect governed by *si*.

EXAMPLE.

*Vous partiriez, si je le voulais.
Vous seriez parti { si je l'avais voulu
 si je l'eusse voulu*

The present of the conditional and the two past tenses of the conditional may be used in conjunction with each other.

EXAMPLE.

*Quand l'aveugle posséderait tout l'or du monde, il ne serait pas encore content.
Quand Alexandre aurait conquis tout l'univers, il n'aurait pas été content.
Vous fussiez parti, si je l'avais voulu.*

CONCORD BETWEEN THE PRESENT AND THE FUTURE
AND THE OTHER TENSES OF THE
INDICATIVE MOOD.

391. These two tenses may be joined to all the tenses of the indicative and conditional.

EXAMPLES.

On dit On dira	}	que	vous partez aujourd'hui.
			vous partirez demain
			vous serez parti, quand, etc.
			vous parties hier.
			vous parties hier.
			vous êtes parti ce matin
			vous fûtes parti hier, quand, etc.
			vous étiez parti hier, quand, etc.
			vous partirez aujourd'hui, si, etc.
			vous seriez parti hier, si, etc.
			vous fussiez parti plutôt, si, etc.

REMARK. The same concord exists when the sentence is negative; except that for the present absolute of the indicative, the present of the subjunctive is substituted. Instead of, *on ne dit pas que vous partez aujourd'hui*, the genius of the French language requires that we should say, *on ne dit pas que vous partiez aujourd'hui*.

The imperfect, the preterit definite, the preterit indefinite, and the pluperfect, are followed either by the imperfect, or the pluperfect.

EXAMPLES.

On disait	}	que	{	vous parties aujourd'hui.
On dit hier				vous étiez parti.
On a dit				
On avait dit				

The future anterior requires the preterit indefinite, as, *on aura dit que vous avez menti*.

The conditional present may be followed by the present, the imperfect, the preterit indefinite, the pluperfect, the future of the indicative, as well as by the three conditionals.

EXAMPLES.

<i>On croirait</i>	{	<i>qu'il se tromp.</i>
		<i>qu'il se trompât.</i>
		<i>qu'il s'est trompé</i>
		<i>qu'il s'était trompé</i>
		<i>qu'il se trompera</i>
		<i>qu'il se tromperait, &c., etc.</i>
		<i>qu'il se serait trompé, &c., etc.</i>
		<i>qu'il se fût trompé, &c., etc.</i>

The first conditional past may be followed by the imperfect, the pluperfect, as well as by the two other conditionals.

EXAMPLES.

<i>On aurait cru</i>	{	<i>qu'il tombait</i>
		<i>qu'il était tombé</i>
		<i>qu'il serait tombé</i>
		<i>qu'il fût tombé.</i>

The second conditional past may be joined to the same tenses.

PRINCIPAL CONCORD WITH THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

392. To the present, the future absolute, and the future anterior of the indicative is generally joined the present of the subjunctive.

EXAMPLES.

<i>il veut</i>	{	<i>que vous partiez</i>
<i>il voudra</i>		
<i>il aura voulu</i>		

To the imperfect, the preterit definite, the preterit indefinite, the pluperfect, and the preterit anterior may be joined the imperfect of the subjunctive.

EXAMPLES.

<i>je voulais</i>	}	<i>que vous partissiez.</i>
<i>je voulais</i>		
<i>j'ai voulu</i>		
<i>j'avais voulu</i>		
<i>j'eus voulu</i>		

To the future anterior the preterit of the subjunctive, as: *il aura voulu qu'il soit parti.*

The conditional present is accompanied either by the imperfect, or by the pluperfect of the subjunctive.

EXAMPLES.

<i>je voudrais que</i>	{	<i>vous partissiez</i>
<i>j'aurais voulu</i>		<i>vous fussiez parti.</i>
<i>j'eusse voulu</i>	{	<i>que vous fussiez parti.</i>

OF THE INFINITIVE.

393. The *infinitive* is that mood which conveys the abstract idea of an action unconnected with time or persons; thus, *aimer, parler*. The use of the infinitive after another verb, the prepositions *de, à, pour*, placed before it according as the case requires, etc. have been noticed No. 350, which see.

394. The participle present is used in English in many cases which require the infinitive in French. The principal, and most common, are when the English participle is governed by a preposition. See Exception, 400.

EXAMPLES.

I blame you for having refused, *je vous blâme d'avoir refusé.*
he has gone without speaking to *il est parti sans me parler.*
me,
she takes delight in teasing, *elle se plaît à tourmenter.*
I like dancing, *j'aime à danser.*

Observe that the same, or the corresponding, prepositions are not always used, because, as it cannot too often be repeated, the two languages differ essentially in this point.

REMARKS.

We only shut our eyes to truth, because we fear to
se * art. art. que parce que de
 see ourselves as we are. We were yet far from the castle,
2 nous 1 tel que ind-2 encore
 when one of our friends came to join us. I did not think I was
ind-3 * ind-2 * devoir
 to set out so soon. He promises every day that he will
* art. pl. de * *
 amend, but I do not rely upon his promises. They talk
se corriger compter promesses f. pl. on
 of a secret expedition; he hopes to be (in it). He relies upon
2 — f. 1 * en
 seeing you very soon to terminate amicably his affair
inf. 1 au premier jour pour à l'amiable
 with you. You expected to take a journey this year; but
s'attendre ind-2 faire voyage m.
 your father has changed his mind. He threatens to punish us se-
de * avis de sè-
 verely, if we (fall again) into the same error.
nèremant retomber faute

OF THE PARTICIPLE.

395. The *participle* is a part of the verb which
 33*

partakes of the properties both of a verb and an adjective; of a verb, as it signifies action and state, of an adjective, as it expresses the quality of a person, or thing.

There are two participles, the *participle present*, and the *participle past*.

OF THE PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

The *participle present* always terminates in *ant*: as, *aimant, finissant, recevant, rendant*.

396. The participle present is undeclined, that is takes neither gender nor number, when it expresses an action, and may be turned by the present or the imperfect of the indicative mood, *une montagne*, or *des montagnes dominant* (i.e. *qui dominant ou dominaient*) *sur des plaines immenses*, a mountain or mountains commanding immense plains; *un homme, des hommes, une femme, des femmes lisant, parlant, marchant*, (*qui lisent, qui parlaient, qui marchent*) a man, men, a woman, women reading, speaking, walking. But when, like an adjective, it expresses simply a quality, it takes both the gender and number of its substantive; as, *un homme obligeant*, an obliging man; *une femme obligeante*, an obliging woman; *des tableaux parlants*, speaking portraits; *la religion dominante*, the established religion; *à la nuit tombante*, at night falling. It is known to partake of the nature of the adjective when it is put before the noun in English.

What grammarians call *gerund*, is nothing but the participle present, to which the word *en* is prefixed; *on se forme l'esprit en lisant de bons livres*, we form our minds by reading good books.

EXERCISE.

That mountain being very high, and thus commanding a vast
élevé ainsi dominer sur grand

extent of country, was very well calculated for our observations.
*étendue pays ind-2 * propre à*

This woman is of a good disposition, obliging every one, when-
caractère m. tout le monde quand

ever she (has it in her power). They go cringing before the great,
*le pouvoir * ramper devant pl.*

that they may be insolent to their equals. The state of pure
*afin de * * inf-1 pl. avec égal*

nature is the savage living in the desert, but living in his family,
famille f.

knowing his children, loving them, (making use) of speech, and
connaître user art. parole

(making himself understood). An agreeable languor impercep-
se faire entendre 2 langueur f. l. insensi-

tibly (laying hold) of my senses, suspended the activity of my
blement s'emparer sens suspendre ind-3

soul, and I fell (asleep). Time is a real blunderer, placing,
s'endormir ind-3 art. vrai brouillon mettre

replacing, ordering, disordering, impressing, erasing, approaching,
remettre, ranger déranger imprimer effacer approcher

removing, and making all things good and bad: and almost always
éloigner rendre f. pl. quasi

(impossible to be known again).
reconnaissable

397. The participle present is frequently used in English as a substantive, which is not the case in French.

EXAMPLES

his ruling passion is hunting, *sa passion dominante est la chasse*

When preceded by a preposition, it is rendered in French by the infinitive. (No. 394)

EXAMPLES

prevents him from doing mischief, *empêchez-le de faire le mal.*
 there is a pleasure in silencing *il y a plaisir à fermer la bouche*
 great talkers, *aux grands parleurs.*
 39**

398. The participle present frequently takes the place of the *indicative* in English; it must not then be rendered literally, but in the following manner.

EXAMPLE.

I met them riding post,

je les ai rencontrés qui courent la poste.

399. Sometimes also it is used substantively with a possessive pronoun; then, it must be rendered in French by the indicative or the subjunctive, according as the case requires.

EXAMPLES

*the fear of his coming (lest he should come) harassed us,
I doubt his being faithful,
what do you think of his writing to me?*

*la crainte qu'il ne vint nous tourmentait.
je doute qu'il soit fidèle, etc.
que pensez-vous de cela? il m'a écrit. Savez-vous qu'il m'a écrit? qu'en pensez-vous?*

400. In No. 394, it has been said that the infinitive is used after prepositions in French, and not the participle present. The only exception to this rule is *en*.

EXAMPLES

*nous en parlerons en marchant,
on apprend en enseignant,*

*we will talk about it as we walk.
we learn by teaching others.*

401. The participle present always forming a phrase incidental and subordinate to another, must necessarily relate to the subject of the principal phrase, when it is not preceded by another noun, as in this sentence:—

je ne puis vous accompagner à *I cannot accompany you to the*

la campagne, ayant des affaires qui exigent ici ma présence,

country, having some business that requires my presence here.

The participle present *ayant* relates to the subject *je*, since the subordinate proposition, formed by *ayant*, could have no kind of relation to the principal proposition, if it could not be resolved into this, *parce que j'ai des affaires qui*, etc. But, in this sentence :

combien voyons-nous de gens, qui, connaissant le prix du temps, le perdent mal-à-propos !

how many people do we see, who, knowing the value of time, waste it improperly !

Connaissant relates to the substantive *gens*, because this is the word which it modifies, and because the relative *qui*, placed between that substantive, as the regimen, and the participle present, obviates every kind of ambiguity.

REMARKS. Two participles ought never to be used together without being united by a conjunction, as, etc,

EXAMPLE.

c'est un homme aimant et craignant Dieu,

he is a man loving and fearing God,

2. The relative *en* ought never to be put either before a participle present, or before a gerund. We cannot say,

Je vous ai remis mon fils entre les mains, en voulant faire quelque chose de bon,

because the sense would be ambiguous : for, the meaning is not :

As I wish to do something good, or, as I wish to do well, I have put my son into your hands.

But,

I have put my son into your hands, as I wish to make something of him.

We should say: *Voulant en faire, etc.*

Likewise this sentence would be improper:

Le prince tempère la rigueur du pouvoir, en en partageant les fonctions.

On account of the repetition of the word *en*, used in two different senses, viz., as a preposition and a relative. Another turn must be then adopted, as,

C'est en partageant les fonctions du pouvoir, qu'un prince en tempère la rigueur.

OF THE PARTICIPLE PAST.

The participle past has various terminations; as, *aimé, fini, reçu, ouvert, dissous, etc.*

402. The participle past is sometimes declined, sometimes not, thus,

Avez-vous mangé toutes les fraises que vous avez cueillies ce matin?

Avez-vous mangé, vous avez cueillies are two verbs in the same tense, and person, yet one participle *mangé*, is undeclined, the other, *cueillies*, is feminine plural. This difference, apparently contradictory, is grounded upon a principle which must be explained.

OF THE PARTICIPLE WITH ÊTRE.

403. The participle past, when accompanied by the auxiliary verb *être*, agrees with its subject in gender and number.

EXAMPLES.

mon frère est tombé,
mes frères sont tombés,

my brother is fallen.
my brothers are fallen.

ma sœur est tombée,
mes sœurs sont tombées,
la nuit sera bientôt passée,
les spectacles sont fréquentés,
cette fleur est fort recherchée,
ils sont fort estimés,

my sister is fallen.
my sisters are fallen.
the night will soon be over.
the theatres are frequented.
this flower is much sought after.
they are very much esteemed.

There is an exception which is explained at No. 410, *participle past of Reflective Verbs*.

REMARKS

Fire-arms were not known to the ancients. Ishmael, the
art. arme à feu f. pl. ind-4 connu de Ismaël
son of Abraham, is known among the Arabs, as (the man) from
— parmi Arabe celui
whom they sprung, and circumcision has remained (among
être sorti art. f. être demeuré l'art
them) as the mark of their origin. Heaven is that permanent
f. art. — 2
city, (into which) the just are to be received after this life.
cité f. 1 où pl. devoir * après
In Abraham's time, the threatenings of the true God were
de 2 art. 1 menace f. pl. ind-2
dreaded by Pharaoh, king of Egypt; but, in the time of Moses, all
redouté de Pharaon Moïse art.
nations were corrupted, and the world, which God has made to
f. perverti pour
manifest his power, was become a temple of idols. That dread-
pouvoir m. devenu 1. 2
ful crisis which threatened the state with instant destruc-
rible 2 crise f. 1 ind. de prochain 2 f. 1
tion, was happily soon over. She is come to bring us all
ind-3 bonheur passé *
kinds of refreshments. The sciences have always been pro-
sorte f. sing. rafraîchissement f. pro-
tected by enlightened governments.
tégé art. éclairé 2 1

PARTICIPLE PAST WITH AVOIR.

404. A participle past with *avoir*, may be the compound tense of a *neuter verb*, or of an *active verb*.

405. The participle past of a *neuter verb* is *invariable*.

EXAMPLE.

<i>elle a dormi,</i>	<i>she has slept.</i>
<i>nous avons ri,</i>	<i>we have laughed.</i>
<i>ils ont pensé,</i>	<i>they have thought.</i>

406. The participle past of an *active verb* is declined in one case, and not in the other.

Avez-vous mangé les fraises que vous avez cueillies?

1. The participles never agree with the subject or nominative of the verb, but with the accusative.

EXAMPLES.

<i>mon frère a écrit,</i>	<i>my brother has written.</i>
<i>mes frères ont écrit,</i>	<i>my brothers have written.</i>
<i>ma sœur a écrit,</i>	<i>my sister has written.</i>
<i>les Amazones ont acquis de la célé-</i>	<i>the Amazons have acquired cele-</i>
<i>brité,</i>	<i>brity.</i>
<i>j'ai contraint les soldats à mar-</i>	<i>I have forced the soldiers to</i>
<i>cher,</i>	<i>march.</i>

2. It does not, nevertheless, agree with the accusative when it precedes it. See 407.

EXAMPLES.

<i>les soldats ont attaqué la ville,</i>	<i>the soldiers have attacked the</i>
	<i>town.</i>
<i>mes filles ont dessiné ces fleurs,</i>	<i>my daughters have painted these</i>
	<i>flowers.</i>

EXERCISE.

The Romans successively triumphed over the most warlike
Romains successivement 2 ind-4 1 ds belliqueux 2
 nations. Lampridius relates that Adrian erected to Jesus
1 raconter Adrien élever ind-6

Christ some temples, which (were still to be seen) in his
de art. on encore 2 voir ind-2 l de
 time. Happy those princes who have never (made use) of their
• art. user
 power but to do good! We have spent the whole day
pouvoir que pour art. bien journée f.
 in tormenting ourselves. One has seldom seen a great stock
à inf-1 2 nous l rarement fonds m.
 of good sense in a man of imagination. The errors of Descartes
seus — = —
 proved very useful to Newton.
• beaucoup servir ind-1 —

407. The participle past of an active verb agrees with the object or accusative when it follows it; that is, it agrees with the noun substantive, which is the antecedent of *que, me, te, se, le, la, nous, vous, les*.

EXAMPLES.

les livres que j'ai lus *the books which I have read.*
la lettre que j'ai écrite, *the letter which I have written.*

lus agrees with *que* of which the antecedent is *livres*, m. pl.

Écrite agrees with *que* of which the antecedent is *lettre* f. s.

Nous avons cueilli des fraises et nous les avons mangées.

Cueilli is undeclined, because it precedes the object *fraises*: *mangées* is feminine plural, because it follows *les* antecedent *fraises*.

A woman says,

vous m'avez trompée, *you have deceived me.*

Trompée agrees with *me*, of which the antecedent *femme* is understood.

In admirative and interrogative sentences, the participle agrees with the noun following *que de, combien, quel*.

EXAMPLES.

que de soins elle a eus ! *what attentions she has met with !*
 quelle affaire avez-vous entre- *what affair have you undertaken ?*

EXERCISE.

All the letters which I have received confirm that important
 f. pl. *confirmer* 2
 news. The agitated life which I have led till now,
 a. l. *agité* 2 f. l. *mené jusqu'à* présent
 makes me sigh for retirement. The sciences which
soupirer après art. retraite f. f. pl.
 you have studied, will prove infinitely useful (to you). The
être
 persons whom you have instructed appear to me possessed of
 f. pl. *plein*
 reason and taste. Nothing can equal the ardour of the troops
pr. égaler f. pl.
 which I have seen (setting off). What measures have I not
inf-1 démarches f. pl.
 taken ? What fortunes has not this revolution ruined ? What
faire f. pl. renverser que
 tears has she not shed ; what sighs has she not heaved ?
de f. pl. verser m. pl. pousser
 I have thought her agitated by the furies. This day is one of
croire =
 those which they have consecrated to tears. The language in
m. pl. consacrer art. langue f. "
 which Cicero and Virgil have written, will live in their works
Cicéron par ouvrage
 I could have wished to avoid entering into those details, but I
** vouloir * éviter d'entrer — m.*
thought them necessary. The tribunes demanded of Clodius
croire ind-4 tribuns m. pl. ind-3 &
 the execution of the promises which the consul Valerius had
f
 given them.
faire le

408. The participle past takes neither gender nor number, either when the participle and the auxiliary verb to which it is joined are used impersonally, or when that participle is followed by the verb, which governs the noun, or pronoun preceding it.

EXAMPLES.

les chaleurs excessives qu'il a fait cet été, ont beaucoup nui à la récolte,	<i>the excessive heats, which we have had this summer, have done great injury to the corn.</i>
quelle fâcheuse aventure vous est-il arrivé ?	<i>what unpleasant adventure have you met with ?</i>
la maison que j'ai fait bâtir,	<i>the house which I have ordered to be built.</i>
imitiez les vertus que vous avez entendu louer,	<i>imitate the virtues which you have heard praised.</i>
les mathématiques que vous n'avez pas voulu que j'étudiasse,	<i>the mathematics which you would not permit me to study.</i>

To make a right application of the second part of this rule, we ought to examine whether we can put the regimen immediately after the participle. As we cannot say ; *J'ai fait la maison, vous avez entendu les vertus, vous n'avez pas voulu les mathématiques*, it follows that the regimen belongs to the second verb. Sometimes, however, the regimen may relate either to the participle, or to the following verb, according to the meaning of the speaker. Thus, *je l'ai vu peindre*, means, I saw her picture drawn ; but *je l'ai vue peindre*, signifies, I saw her painting.

Sometimes it happens likewise, that, in sentences which seem to resemble each other, the regimen in one belongs to the participle, and in the other to the verb which follows it. For instance, this question, *avez-vous entendu chanter la nouvelle actrice ?* Have you heard the new actress sing ? Should be thus answered, *oui, je l'ai entendue chanter*, yes, I have . (I have heard her when she sang) but this

question, *avez-vous entendu chanter la nouvelle ari-
ette?* have you heard the new air sung? must be
answered, *oui, je l'ai entendu chanter*, yes, I have.
(I have heard it to be sung).

409. The participle past does not agree with the
antecedent of *en*.

REMARK.

*sachant que nous aimions le gi- knowing that we were fond of
bier, il nous en a envoyé un game, he sent us a basket full.
panier,*

EXERCISE.

The great changes which (have taken place) in ad-
changement *y avoir ind-4* *art.*
ministration, have astonished many people. The heavy
bien des personnes *grand*
rains which we have had in the spring, have been
pluie f. pl. * *il* *faire ind-4*
the cause of many diseases. The scarcity which there was
maladie f. pl. *dette f.* *ind-4*
last winter, has afforded the opportunity of doing
art. dernier 2 *1* *donner* *occasion* *inf-1*
much good. What news has reached you? How many
bien *est-il venu* *qua* *de*
imprudent steps were taken on that occasion! How
faux *démarche f. pl.* *il s'est fait* *en*
many large ships have been built in England within these fifty
gros *il se construire ind-4* *depuis* *
years! The figures which you have learned to draw are of
apprendre *dessiner*
great beauty. We ought never to swerve from the
un * *falloir ind-1* * *s'éloigner*
good path which we have begun to follow. The measures
route f. *on* *mesure f. pl.*
which you advised me to adopt, have not succeeded.
conseiller ind 4 *de prendre* *réussir*
The rule, which I have begun to explain, seems to me very
règle f. *expliquer* *sembler*

easy to (be understood). You see that I have not been mistaken
saisir *se tromper* ind-4
 respecting the affairs which I had foreseen you would have
prévoir que
 in hand. I asked for some pencils, and he has sent
 * * *demandeur* ind-4 * *envoyer*
 me some very good ones.
en

PARTICIPLE PAST WITH REFLECTED VERBS.

410. It has been said, No. 121, that all active verbs may be used reflectedly.

The participle past of such verbs agrees with the subject or nominative.

EXAMPLES.

elle s'est blessée, *she has hurt herself.*
nous nous sommes ennuyés, *we have got tired.*

Here *blessée*, *ennuyés*, agree with *se*, *nous*, of which *elle*, *nous*, are the antecedents; *se*, *nous* being also besides the accusative of *blessar*, *ennuyer*.

But here,

il s'est cassé la jambe, *he has broken his leg.*
Lucrece s'est donné la mort, *Lucretia destroyed herself.*

Cassé, *donné* are undeclined, because they precede *jambe*, *mort*, which are the objects or accusatives of the verbs *casser*, *donner*. *Se*, is also in both examples an indirect case or dative. But, speaking of the *broken leg* we say,

je ne sais comment il se l'est cassée, *I don't know how he broke it.*

Because *cassée* follows *la*, of which *jambe* is the antecedent.

EXERCISE.

Our troops have fought with great courage. They have not
se battre
 sufficiently made haste. Did not your sisters stop (on the)
se dépêcher s'arrêter ex
 road. I have put my shoulder out of joint. Show me the hand
se démettre l'épaule
 which you have cut. The Amazons have made themselves
se couper se rendre
 famous by their courage. What strange fancies she has got
chimères se mettre
 into her head! I don't think you have cleaned your teeth
la se nettoyer
 this morning? Indeed I have cleaned them before I went out.
avant de sortir

CHAPTER VI.

GENERAL REMARKS ON THE USE AND MEANING OF SOME
OF THE FRENCH PREPOSITIONS.

411. The office of prepositions is to connect two nouns substantives, and show the relation which they bear to one another.

412. Those who know Latin are apt to mistake the meaning of *à* and *de*; the former never means *from*, but *to*; it is the sign of the dative case; *de* means *of*, *from*, *with*, and is the sign of what is called the genitive and ablative cases, that is, it expresses, *possessions, source, accompaniment, instrumentality*.

EXAMPLES.

approchez-vous du feu,
 éloignez-vous du feu,
 il le fait de bon cœur,
 écrivez à Jean,

come near the fire.
 go from the fire.
 he does it with readiness.
 write to John

En and *dans* have nearly the same meaning; but they differ in this, that the former is used in a more vague, the latter in a more determinate sense.

EXAMPLE.

J'étais en Angleterre, dans la province de Middlesex.

À, en, are rendered by *to* or *in* before names of countries and places, but they must not be used indifferently. *À* is used before proper names of places, *en* before names of countries, provinces.

EXAMPLES.

il est allé en France,	he is gone to France.
elle est allée à Rome,	she is gone to Rome.
ils demeurent en Normandie,	they live in Normandy.
elles résident à Rouen.	they live in or at Rouen.

From what has just been said, it follows then that *en*, on account of its indeterminate nature, ought not to be followed by the article, except in a small number of phrases sanctioned by usage.

EXAMPLES.

En la présence de Dieu; en la grand' chambre du parlement; en l'absence d'un tel; en l'année mil huit cent dix-sept, etc.

with respect to the expressions,

En l'honneur, en l'âge, it is better to say, *à l'honneur, à l'âge*.

413. *Avant* is a preposition in this phrase :

avant le jour, before day-light.

But it is an adverb in this :

n'allez pas si avant, do not go so forward.

Autour and *alentour*, must not be confounded; *autour* is a preposition, and *alentour* an adverb.

EXAMPLES.

tous les grands étaient autour du trône, *all the grandees stood round the throne.*
 le roi était sur son trône, et les grands étaient alentour, *the king was upon the throne, and the grandees stood round.*

Avant and *auparavant* are not used indifferently.
Avant is followed by a regimen.

EXAMPLE.

avant Pâques, *before Easter.*
 avant ce temps, *before that time.*

Auparavant is followed by no regimen

EXAMPLE.

si vous partez, venez me voir *if you set off, come and see me*
 auparavant, *first.*

Prêt à and *près de*, are not the same expressions.
Prêt is an adjective :

je suis prêt à faire ce que vous voudrez, *I am ready to do what you please*

But *près* is a preposition :

mon ouvrage est près d'être fini, *my work is nearly finished.*

Au travers and *à travers* differ in this : the first is followed by the preposition *de*, the second is not.

EXAMPLE.

il se fit jour au travers des ennemis, }
 il se fit jour à travers les ennemis, } *he fought his way through the enemy.*

Avant denotes priority of time and order.

EXAMPLE.

Il est arrivé avant moi, l'article se met avant le nom

Devant is used for *en présence. vis-à-vis.*

EXAMPLE.

Il a paru devant le juge ; il loge devant l'église.

Devant is likewise a preposition marking order, and is the opposite of *après.*

EXAMPLES.

<i>il a le pas devant moi,</i>	<i>he has precedence of me.</i>
<i>si vous êtes pressé, courez devant,</i>	<i>If you are in a hurry, run before.</i>

Envers and *vers*, towards, are also different as to their meaning, the former is put before names of persons, with a moral sense, the other expresses motion, and is put before names of places and persons.

EXAMPLES.

<i>comportez-vous bien envers lui,</i>	<i>behave well towards him, with regard to him.</i>
<i>ils marchaient vers la ville,</i>	<i>they were marching towards the city.</i>
<i>elle s'avança vers moi,</i>	<i>she advanced towards me.</i>

THE USE OF THE ARTICLE WITH PREPOSITIONS.

414. Some prepositions require the article before their regimen ; others do not ; and others again, sometimes admit, sometimes reject it.

The following prepositions generally require the article before the noun, which they govern.

<i>avant,</i>	<i>depuis,</i>	<i>envers,</i>	<i>nonobstant,</i>	<i>selon,</i>
<i>après,</i>	<i>devant,</i>	<i>excepté,</i>	<i>parmi,</i>	<i>suiwant,</i>
<i>chez,</i>	<i>derrière,</i>	<i>hors,</i>	<i>pendant,</i>	<i>touchant,</i>
<i>dans,</i>	<i>durant,</i>	<i>hormis,</i>	<i>pour,</i>	<i>ver</i>

avant l'aurore,	chez le prince,	envers les pauvres,
après la promenade,		

There are, however, exceptions.

EXAMPLES.

avant terme,	avant dîner,	pour lit une pailleasse,
avant midi,		

A noun governed by the preposition *en*, is not, in general, preceded by the article.

EXAMPLE.

En ville, en campagne, en extase, en songe, en pièces, etc.

L'armée est entrée en campagne, means the army has taken the field; but *M. N. est allé à la campagne*, means, Mr. N. is gone into the country.

These eleven prepositions, *à, de, avec, contre, entre, malgré, outre, par, pour, sur, sans*, sometimes admit, sometimes reject the article before their regimen.

If the article is used in these phrases :

Jouer *sur le velours*.

St. Paul veut de la subordination *entre la femme et le mari*.

Sans les passions, où serait le mérite ?

It is suppressed in,

Etre *sur pied* ; un peu de façons ne gâte rien *entre mari et femme*.
Vivre *sans passions*, c'est vivre *sans plaisirs et sans peines*.

This difference arises of course from the noun being taken in a general and definite sense, or in a partial and restricted signification.

REPETITION OF THE PREPOSITIONS.

415. The prepositions *de*, *à*, and *en*, must be repeated before all nouns which they govern.

EXAMPLES.

voyons qui l'emportera <i>de</i> vous, <i>de</i> lui, ou <i>de</i> moi,	<i>let us see which of us will excel,</i> <i>you, he, or I.</i>
elle a <i>de</i> l'honnêteté, <i>de</i> la douceur, <i>des</i> grâces, et <i>de</i> l'esprit.	<i>she has politeness, sweetness, grace,</i> <i>and abilities.</i>
la loi, que Dieu a gravée au fond de mon cœur, m'instruit de tout ce que je dois à l'auteur de mon être, <i>au</i> prochain, <i>à</i> moi-même,	<i>the law which God has deeply en-</i> <i>graven on my heart instructs</i> <i>me in every thing I owe to the</i> <i>author of my being, to my neigh-</i> <i>bour, and to myself.</i>
<i>en</i> Asie, <i>en</i> Europe, <i>en</i> Afrique, et jusqu' <i>en</i> Amérique, on trouve le même préjugé,	<i>in Asia, in Europe, in Africa,</i> <i>and even in America, we find</i> <i>the same prejudice.</i>

The other prepositions, especially those consisting of two syllables, are generally repeated — before nouns, which have meanings totally different; but seldom before nouns, that are nearly synonymous.

EXAMPLES.

rien n'est moins <i>selon</i> Dieu et <i>selon</i> le monde,	<i>nothing is less according to God</i> <i>and according to the world.</i>
cette action est contre l'honneur et contre toute espèce de principes,	<i>that action is contrary to honour</i> <i>and to every kind of principle.</i>

But we ought to say,

il perd sa jeunesse <i>dans</i> la mollesse et la volupté,	<i>he wastes his youth in effeminacy,</i> <i>and pleasure.</i>
notre loi ne condamne personne <i>sans</i> l'avoir entendu et examiné,	<i>our laws condemn nobody without</i> <i>having heard and examined him.</i>

OF THE GOVERNMENT OF PREPOSITIONS.

417. Some prepositions govern nouns without the help of another preposition.

EXAMPLES.

devant la maison,
hormis son frère,
sans son épée,

before the house.
except his brother.
without his sword, etc.

Others require the help of the preposition *de*.

EXAMPLES.

près de la maison,
à l'insu de son frère,
au-dessus du pont,

near the house.
unknown to his brother.
above the bridge, etc.

These four, *jusque*, *par rapport*, *quant* and *sauf* are followed by the preposition *à*

EXAMPLES.

jusqu'au mois prochain,
quant à moi,

till the next month.
as for me, etc.

Practice alone can teach these different regimens.

A noun may be governed by two prepositions, provided they do not require different regimens; thus we may say with propriety,

celui qui écrit selon les circonstances, pour et contre un parti, est un homme bien méprisable,

he who writes according to circumstances, both for and against a party, is a very contemptible man.

But it would be wrong to say,

Celui qui écrit en faveur et contre un parti, etc.

because *en faveur* requires the preposition *de*.

Prepositions which, with their regimen, express a circumstance, are generally placed as nearly as possible to the word to which that circumstance relates.

EXAMPLES.

on voit des personnes qui, avec <i>beaucoup d'esprit</i> , commet- tent de très-grandes fautes,	<i>we see persons who, with a great deal of wit, commit very great faults.</i>
j'ai envoyé à la poste les lettres que vous avez écrites,	<i>I have sent to the post-office the letters which you have written</i>
croyez-vous pouvoir ramener par la douceur ces esprits égarés ?	<i>do you think you can reclaim by gentleness, those mistaken peo- ple ?</i>

If we attempt to alter the place of these prepositions, we shall find that the sentences will become ambiguous.

CHAPTER VII.

OF THE ADVERBS.

PLACE OF ADVERBS.

418. In the simple tenses, the adverb is generally placed after the verb; and, in the compound tenses, between the auxiliary and the participle.

EXAMPLES.

L'homme le plus éclairé est <i>ordinairement</i> celui qui pense le plus modestement de lui- même,	<i>the man who is most learned is generally he who thinks most modestly of himself.</i>
avez-vous jamais vu un pédant plus absurde et plus vain ?	<i>have you ever seen a pedant more absurd and more vain ?</i>

Compound adverbs, or adverbial phrases are placed after the verb, and even after the participle past in a compound tense.

EXAMPLES.

c'est à la mode, *that is fashionable.*
 il eût fallu se lever plus matin, *it would have been necessary to rise earlier.*
 nous nous sommes levés à la hâte, *we got up hastily.*

EXCEPTIONS. 1.—Adverbs of order, rank, and those which express a determinate time, are placed either before, or after the verb.

EXAMPLES.

nous devons *premièrement* faire *we ought, first, to do our duty,*
 notre devoir; *secondement* *secondly, enjoy lawful pleasures.*
 chercher les plaisirs permis.
aujourd'hui, il fait beau; il *to-day, it is fine; it will rain*
 pleuvra peut-être *demain,* *perhaps to-morrow.*

2. These adverbs, *comment*, *où*, *d'où*, *par où*, *combien*, *pourquoi*, *quand*, used with, or without interrogation, are always placed before the verb which they modify.

EXAMPLES.

comment vous portez-vous? *how do you do?*
où allez-vous? *whither are you going?*
 il ne sait *comment* s'y prendre, *he does not know how to set about it.*

The adverbs *très*, *fort*, *infiniment*, etc. are always placed before the adjective which they modify.

EXAMPLE.

c'est une femme *fort* belle, *très-* *she is a woman very beautiful, of*
sensible, et infiniment sage, *great sensibility, and infinitely*
prudent.

Adverbs of quantity and comparison, and the adverbs of time, *souvent*, *toujours*, *jamais*, are placed before the other adverbs.

EXAMPLES.

<i>si poliment, fort poliment,</i>	<i>so politely, very politely.</i>
<i>très-heureusement,</i>	<i>very happily.</i>
<i>le plus adroitement,</i>	<i>the most skilfully.</i>
<i>ils ne seront jamais étroitement unis,</i>	<i>they never will be intimately united.</i>
<i>ils sont toujours ensemble,</i>	<i>they are always together.</i>
<i>c'est souvent à l'improviste qu'il arrive,</i>	<i>he often comes unexpectedly.</i>

Souvent may, however, be preceded by an adverb of quantity, or comparison, as, *si souvent, assez souvent, fort souvent, plus souvent, moins souvent trop souvent.*

When adverbs of quantity and comparison meet together in a sentence, the following is the order which custom has established.

<i>si peu,</i>	<i>bien peu,</i>	<i>beaucoup* trop,</i>	<i>tant mieux,</i>
<i>trop peu,</i>	<i>bien plus,</i>	<i>beaucoup plus,</i>	<i>tant pis, etc.</i>
<i>très-peu,</i>	<i>bien davantage,</i>	<i>beaucoup moins,</i>	

Bien before another adverb means *very much, quite.*

EXAMPLES.

<i>bien assez,</i>	<i>quite enough.</i>
<i>bien tard,</i>	<i>very late.</i>
<i>bien moins,</i>	<i>much less.</i>

When after the adverb it signifies *well.*

EXAMPLES.

<i>assez bien,</i>	<i>pretty well.</i>
<i>fort bien,</i>	<i>very well.</i>

OF THE NEGATIVE *ne.*

419. It is customary to use two negatives in French, *ne* comes before the verb; *pas* or *point*

* *Beaucoup* is not, as the English *much*, susceptible of being modified by any adverb preceding, thus, *très-beaucoup, trop beaucoup,* etc. would be barbarisms.

comes after it. The French Academy have discussed the four following questions.

1. Which is the place of the negatives?
2. When is *pas* to be used in preference to *point* and *vice versa*?
3. When may both be omitted?
4. When *ought* both to be omitted?

As this subject is of very material importance, we shall treat it upon the plan of the Academy, and agreeably to their views.

FIRST QUESTION. Where is the place of the negatives?

Ne is always prefixed to the verb; but the place of *pas* and *point* is variable.

When the verb is in the infinitive, these are placed indifferently before, or after it; for we say,

Pour ne point voir, or, pour ne voir pas.

In the other moods, except the imperative, the tenses are either simple, or compound. In the simple tenses, *pas* or *point* is placed after the verb.

EXAMPLES.

Il ne parle pas; ne parle-t-il pas?

In the compound tenses, it is placed between the auxiliary and the participle.

EXAMPLES.

Il n'a pas parlé; n'a-t-il pas parlé?

In the imperative, it is placed after the verb.

EXAMPLES.

badinez pas. Ne vous en allez pas.

SECOND QUESTION. When is *pas* to be used in preference to *point*, and *vice versa*?

Point is a stronger negative than *pas*. besides, it denotes something permanent: *il ne lit point*, means he *never* reads.

Pas denotes something accidental: *il ne lit pas*, means, he does not read *now*, or he is not reading.

Point de denotes an absolute negation. To say:

Il n'a point d'esprit, is to say, he has no wit at all.

Pas de, allows some sort of restriction. To say:

Il n'a pas d'esprit, is to say, he has nothing of what can be called wit.

Hence the Academy concludes, that *pas* is more proper.

1. Before *plus*, *moins*, *si*, *autant*, and other words denoting comparison.

EXAMPLE.

Milton n'est pas moins sublime qu'Homère, *Milton is not less sublime than Homer.*

2. Before nouns of number.

EXAMPLE.

il n'y a pas dix ans, *it is not ten years ago.*

Point is elegantly used,

1. At the end of a sentence.

EXAMPLE.

on s'amusait à ses dépens, et il ne s'en apercevait point, *they were amusing themselves at his expense, and he did not perceive it.*

2. In elliptical sentences.

EXAMPLE.

je croyais avoir à faire à un honnête homme; mais point, *I thought I had to deal with an honest man; but no.*

3. In answer to interrogative sentences.

EXAMPLE.

irez-vous ce soir au parc?— *shall you go this evening to the
point, park?—no.*

The Academy also observes, that when *pas* or *point* is introduced into interrogative sentences, it is with meanings somewhat different. We make use of *point*, when we have any doubt on our minds.

EXAMPLE.

n'avez-vous point été là? *have you not been there?*

But we use *pas*, when we are persuaded.

EXAMPLE.

n'avez-vous pas été là? *but you have been there, have not
you?*

THIRD QUESTION. When may both *pas* and *point* be omitted?

They may be suppressed,

1. After the words *cesser*, *oser*, and *pouvoir*; but this omission is only for the sake of elegance.

EXAMPLES.

je ne cesse de m'en occuper,	<i>I incessantly think about it.</i>
je n'ose vous en parler,	<i>I dare not speak to you about it.</i>
je ne puis y penser sans frémir,	<i>I cannot think of it without shuddering.</i>

We likewise say, but only in familiar conversation,

ne bougez, *do not stir,*

2. In expressions of this kind.

v a-t-il un homme dont elle ne *is there a man that she does not*
médise ? *slander ?*
avez-vous un ami qui ne soit *have you a friend but is not like-*
des miens ? *wise mine ?*

FOURTH QUESTION. When ought both *pas* and *point* to be omitted ?

They are omitted,

420. When the extent which we mean to give to the negative is sufficiently expressed either by the words which restrict it, by words which exclude all restriction, or when the verb is joined to an adverb, or pronoun having a negative sense, as, *jamais, plus, aucun, personne, rien, nul, nullement*; and also to the words *bien, goutte, mot*, which in some cases, have been through custom considered as negatives.

To exemplify the first part of this remark, we say,

EXAMPLES.

<i>je ne sors guère,</i>	<i>I go out but seldom.</i>
<i>je ne sortirai de trois jours,</i>	<i>I shall not go out for three days.</i>

To exemplify the second, we say,

EXAMPLES.

<i>je n'y vais jamais,</i>	<i>I never go there.</i>
<i>je n'y pense plus,</i>	<i>I think no more of it</i>
<i>nul ne sait s'il est digne d'a-</i>	<i>nobody knows whether he be le-</i>
<i>mour, ou de haine,</i>	<i>serving of love, or hatred.</i>
<i>n'employez aucun de ces strata-</i>	<i>use none of these stratagema</i>
<i>gèmes,</i>	
<i>il ne plaît à personne,</i>	<i>he pleases nobody.</i>
<i>rien n'est plus charmant,</i>	<i>nothing is more charming.</i>
<i>je n'y pense nullement,</i>	<i>I do not think of it at all.</i>

To exemplify the third, we say,

EXAMPLES.

<i>il n'y voit goutte,</i>	<i>he cannot see at all.</i>
<i>je n'en ai cueilli brin,</i>	<i>I did not gather a sprig.</i>
<i>il ne dit mot,</i>	<i>he speaks not a word.</i>

But if to *mot* we join an adjective of number, *pas* must be added, as

EXAMPLES.

il ne dit pas un mot qui n'inté- resse,	he speaks not a word but what is interesting.
dans ce discours, il n'y a pas trois mots à reprendre,	in that speech, there are not three words that are exceptionable.

421. The substantive which follows a negative phrase is governed by the preposition *de*.

EXAMPLES.

il n'a jamais d'argent,	he never has any money.
n'avez-vous pas de cheval?	have you got no horse?
il ne fait pas de démarche inu- tile,	he does not take any useless step.

If, after such sentences as we have just mentioned, either the conjunction *que*, or the relative pronouns *qui* or *dont*, should introduce a negative sentence, then in this last, *pas* and *point* are omitted.

EXAMPLES

je ne fais jamais d'excès que je n'en sois incommodé,	I never commit any excess, without being ill after it.
je ne vois personne qui ne vous loue,	I see nobody but what commends you.

422. When two negatives are joined by *ni*, *pas* is omitted.

EXAMPLE.

je ne l'aime ni ne l'estime,	I neither love nor esteem him.
------------------------------	--------------------------------

When the conjunction *ni* is repeated, *pas* is also left out.

EXAMPLES.

n. l'or ni la grandeur ne nous rendent heureux,	<i>neither gold nor greatness can make us happy.</i>
il n'est ni prudent ni sage,	<i>he is neither prudent nor wise.</i>
il n'a ni dettes ni procès,	<i>he has neither debts nor lawsuits.</i>

Pas is used, when *ni* is not repeated, and when it serves only to unite two members of a negative sentence.

EXAMPLE.

je n'aime pas ce vain étalage d'érudition prodiguée sans choix et sans goût, ni ce luxe de mots qui ne disent rien,	<i>I do not like that vain display of erudition lavished without choice and without taste, nor that pomp of words which have no meaning.</i>
---	--

Pas is omitted when the question used for *pourquoi* begins with *que* and after *à moins que*, *si*, instead of *pourquoi*, and with *à moins que*, or *si*, used instead of it.

EXAMPLES.

que n'êtes-vous aussi posé que votre frère ?	<i>why are you not as sedate as your brother ?</i>
je ne sortirai pas à moins que vous ne veniez me prendre,	<i>i shall not go out, unless you come to fetch me.</i>
je n'irai pas chez lui, s'il ne m'y engage,	<i>i shall not go to his house, if he do not invite me.</i>

With *ne—que* used instead of *seulement*, and in the sense of *only*, *but*, *pas* is not used.

EXAMPLE.

une jeunesse qui se livre à ses passions, ne transmet à la vieillesse qu'un corps usé,	<i>youth, which abandons itself to its passions, transmits to old age nothing but a worn-out body.</i>
--	--

Ne, before, and *que*, after the verb in the sense of *nothing but* does not require *pas*.

EXAMPLE.

il ne fait que rire, *he does nothing but laugh.*

Pas is again omitted when that conjunction may be changed into *sinon*, or *si ce n'est*.

EXAMPLES.

il ne tient qu'à vous de réussir, *the success wholly depends upon you.*
 trop de maîtres à la fois ne *too many masters at once only*
 servent qu'à embrouiller l'es- *serve to perplex the mind.*
 prit,

With a verb in the preterit, preceded by the conjunction *depuis que*, or by the verb *il y a*, denoting a certain duration of time, *pas* and *point* are omitted.

EXAMPLES.

comment vous êtes-vous porté *how have you been since I saw*
 depuis que je ne vous ai vu ? *you ?*
 il y a trois mois que je ne vous *I have not seen you for these three*
 ai vu, *months.*

But they are not omitted, when the verb is in the present.

EXAMPLES.

comment vit-il depuis que nous *how does he live now we do not see*
 ne le voyons point ? *him ?*
 il y a six mois que nous ne le *we have not seen him these six*
 voyons point, *months.*

It has been seen, No. 211, that *ne* is used in comparative sentences, but as it has not then a negative sense, *pas point* are of course omitted.

EXAMPLES.

on méprise ceux qui parlent au- *we despise those who speak diffe-*
 trement qu'ils ne pensent, *rently from what they think.*
 il écrit mieux qu'il ne parle, *he writes better than he speaks.*

c'est pire qu'on ne le disait, *it is worse than was said.*
 c'est autre chose que je ne croyais, *it is different from what I thought.*
 peu s'en faut qu'on ne m'ait trompé, *I have been very near being deceived.*

Ne is also used before the subjunctive mood after certain verbs noticed No. 384, in which case *per point*, are also omitted.

EXAMPLES.

Je ne doute pas qu'il ne vienne, *I doubt not that he will come.*
 ne désespérez pas que ce moyen ne vous réussisse, *do not despair of the success of these means.*
 Je ne nie pas, ou, Je ne disconviens pas que cela ne soit, *I do not deny but that it may be so.*
 j'empêcherai bien que vous ne soyez du nombre, *I shall prevent your being of the number.*
 prenez garde qu'on ne vous séduise, *take care that they do not corrupt you.*
 prenez garde que vous ne m'entendiez pas, *wind, you do not understand what I mean.*
 Il craint que son frère ne l'abandonne, *he is afraid his brother should forsake him.*
 je crains que mon ami ne meure, *I fear my friend will die.*

The Academy says, that after *nier, douter, disconvenir*, *ne* may be omitted.

EXAMPLES.

Je ne nie pas, ou, Je ne disconviens pas que cela soit.

When we say, *de crainte qu'il ne perde son proces*, we express a fear lest he should lose his law-suit.

When we say, *de crainte qu'il ne soit pas puni*, we express an apprehension, lest he should escape punishment.

REMARK. In these phrases,

je crains que mon ami ne meure, *I am afraid my friend will die.*
 vous empêchez qu'on ne chante, *you prevent them from singing.*

Ne has the meaning of the *ne* of the Latin language, which equally governs the subjunctive mood

428. The conditional of *savoir* is frequently used negatively, instead of *pouvoir* in which case *pas point* are omitted.

EXAMPLES

je ne saurais en venir à bout *I cannot accomplish it*

When *ne savoir* means *être incertain*, it is best to omit *pas* and *point*.

EXAMPLES

je ne sais où le prendre, *I do not know where to find him.*
il ne sait ce qu'il dit, *he does not know what he says.*

But *pas* and *point* must be used when *savoir* is taken in its true meaning, to know.

EXAMPLES

je ne sais pas le Français, *I do not know French.*

We also say, without *pas* or *point*,

ne vous déplaîsse, ne vous en dé- *by your leave, under favour, or,*
plaîsse, *let it not displease you.*

Plus and *davantage* must not be used indifferently. *Plus* is followed by the preposition *de*, or the conjunction *que*.

EXAMPLES.

il a plus de brillant que de so- *he has more brilliancy than soli-*
lide, *dity.*
il se fie plus à ses lumières qu'à *he relies more upon his own know-*
celles des autres, *ledge than upon that of others.*

Davantage is used alone and at the end of sentences.

EXAMPLES

la science est estimable, mais *learning is estimable, but virtue is*
la vertu l'est davantage, *still more so.*

Although *davantage* cannot be followed by the preposition *de*, it may be preceded by the pronoun *en*.

EXAMPLE.

je n'en dirai pas davantage, *I shall not say any more about it.*

It is incorrect to use *davantage* for *le plus*. We must say,

de toutes les fleurs d'un parterre, l'anémone est celle qui me plaît le plus, *of all the flowers of a parterre, the anemone is that which pleases me most.*

424. *Si*, *aussi*, *tant*, and *autant*, are always followed by the conjunction *que*, expressed or understood.

Si and *aussi* are joined to adjectives, adverbs, and participles; *tant* and *autant* to substantives and verbs.

EXAMPLES.

l'Angleterre n'est pas si grande que la France, *England is not so large as France*
 il est aussi estimé qu'aimé, *he is as much esteemed as he is beloved*
 elle a autant de beauté que de vertu, *she has as much beauty as virtue.*

REMARK. *Autant* may, however, be substituted for *aussi*, in comparisons of equality.

EXAMPLE.

il est modeste autant que sage, *he is as modest as wise*

It has been said, No. 47, that, in comparisons, *aussi* is used with the affirmative, and *si* with the negative; *si*, may, however, be used in an affirmative sentence, in the sense of *tellement*.

EXAMPLE.

Il est devenu si gros, qu'il a de la peine à marcher, *he is become so bulky that he can hardly walk.*

Jamais takes sometimes the preposition *à*, and *toujours* the preposition *pour*.

EXAMPLES

soyez à jamais heureux, *be for ever happy.*
c'est pour toujours, *it is for ever.*

CHAPTER VIII.

OF THE CONJUNCTIONS.

425. *QUE* is a conjunction so much used in French that, although it has been already noticed in every part of this grammar with which it might have reference, it may not be unnecessary to present here a series of examples of the various ways in which it is used.

EXAMPLES.

QUE	expressing comparison	<i>l'Asie est plus grande que l'Europe.</i>	Asia is larger than Europe.
	for rien que	<i>on ne parle que de la nouvelle victoire.</i>	they talk of nothing but the new victory.
	je souhaite que	<i>qu'il vive pour, je souhaite qu'il vive.</i>	may he live, for, I wish that he may live.
	à moins que avant que sans que	<i>cela ne finira pas qu'il ne vienne.</i>	there will be no end to it, unless he come.

QUE	(for	dès que	} qu'il fasse le moindre excès, il est malade.	} if he commits the least excess, he is ill.
	—	aussitôt que		
	—	si, or quand	} qu'il perde, ou qu'il gagne son procès, c'est un homme ruiné.	} whether he gains, or loses his lawsuit, he is a ruined man.
	—	soit que		
	—	jusqu'à ce que	} attendez qu'il vienne.	} wait till he comes.
	—	pourquoi ?		
	—	comme	} que ne se corrige-t-il ? méchant qu'il est.	} why does he not reform ? wicked as he is.
	—	combien		
			} que Dieu est grand !	} how great is the Almighty !
			} que je hais les méchants !	} how much I hate the wicked !

Another very frequent use of this conjunction is to save the repetition of *comme*, *parce que*, *puisque*, *quand*, *quoique*, *si*, etc. when, to phrases beginning with these words, others are added under the same regimen, by means of the conjunction *et*.

EXAMPLE.

si l'on aimait son pays. et qu'on en désirât sincèrement la gloire, on se conduirait de manière, etc. *if we loved our country, and sincerely wished its glory, we should act so as, etc.*

426. *Particular construction with 'que' before a noun or an infinitive.*

EXAMPLE.

c'est un homme singulier que votre frère, *your brother is a strange man.*

For *votre frère est un homme singulier.*

EXAMPLE.

c'était quelque chose que d'avoir commencé, *having begun was already so^t thing.*

For *avoir commencé était déjà quelque chose.*

EXERCISE.

We have every thing to fear from his wisdom, even more
encore
 than from his power. What men term greatness, glory,
ce que art. appeler
 power, profound policy, is in the eyes of God *only*
profond politique, f. à
 misery, weakness, and vanity. May they understand, at last,
comprendre
 that without internal peace there is no
avec soi-même 2 art 1 point
 happiness. May she be as happy as she deserves to be.
de de le
 Never write *before* you have thoroughly examined
sous toutes ses faces 2 1
 the subject which you propose to treat. Let him but hear
se proposer de traiter
 the least noise, his terrified imagination presents to him nothing
bruit effrayé 2 f. 1
 but monsters. Do not sift this question, *Nil*
ne que de art. approfondir
 I can (be your guide). Do not go out *nil* your brother
ne subj-1 vous mettez sur la voie
 comes in. Why does he not (take advantage) of his youth,
*ne rentrer * profiter*
 (in order to) acquire the knowledge he wants? This
pour connaissance pl. dont avoir besoin ?
 town is a very pretty place. My uncle was a terrible man when
 he was in a passion.

Full as he was of his prejudices, he would not own
Rempli ind-2 préjugé consentir ind-3
 (any thing). Full of self-love (as he is), except nothing
de rien pétri 1 3 2 de
 good (from him). How beautiful is that cultivated nature.
en 1 6 5 2 4

How, by the care of man, it is brilliantly and richly adorned!
par *pourparlement orné*
 Had profound philosophers presided at the formation of
et ind-6 de *à*
 languages, and had they carefully examined the elements of
art. langue *subj-4* *avec soin* *— m.*
 speech, not only in their relations (to one another), but also
art. discours non *entr'eux* *encore*
 in themselves, it is not (to be doubted) that languages
en- m. *doutens* *art.* *ne*
 would present principles more simple, and at the same time,
offrir subj-2 de art.
 more luminous.

GOVERNMENT OF CONJUNCTIONS.

427. The conjunctions which unite sentences to one another, are followed either by the *infinitive*, the *indicative*, or the *subjunctive*.

Those that are followed by an infinitive, are,

1. Such as are distinguished from prepositions, only by being followed by a verb.

EXAMPLE.

Il faut se reposer après avoir travaillé. *one ought to rest after having laboured.*

2. Those which have the preposition *de* after them.

EXAMPLE.

Il travaille afin de vous surpasser. *he works that he may surpass you.*

EXAMPLE.

They were going to spend a few days in town,
ne • ind-2 • passer • quelques • à art.
 only that they might return with more pleasure to
vue pour • • se retrouver inf-1

their charming solitude. Many persons work only *(in order to)*
ne que afin de
 acquire consideration and riches, but the honest and
de art. pr. art. 2 et
 humane man spends (so much) time in study, only
sensible 3 1 ne employer tant de à art. que
 to be useful to his fellow-creatures. I reveal to you the
semblables. dévoiler
 plot which your enemies have concerted in *in*
trame f. ourdir art. ténèbres f. pl.
 order to warn you against their artifices.
prémunir

428. Conjunctions that govern the indicative,

bien attendu que,	autant que,	puisque,	peut-être que,
à condition que,	non plus que,	lorsque,	comme,
à la charge que,	outré que,	pendant que,	comme si,
de même que,	parce que,	tandis que,	quand,
ainsi que,	attendu que,	durant que,	pourquoi,
aussi bien que,	vu que,	tant que,	comment, etc.

They are followed by the indicative, because the principal sentence, which they unite with that which is incidental, expresses the affirmation in a direct, positive and independent manner.

The use of the six following conjunctions,

si non que,	de sorte que,	tellement que,
si ce n'est que,	en sorte que,	de manière que,

varies according to the meaning expressed by the principal sentence.

EXAMPLE OF THE INDICATIVE. EXAMPLE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

Je ne lui ai répondu autre chose, si non que j'avais exécuté ses ordres, <i>I made him no other answer, but that I had executed his orders.</i>	Je ne veux autre chose, si non que vous travailliez avec plus d'ar- deur. <i>I desire nothing else, but that you would study with greater ardour</i>
--	---

The indicative is required, in the first sentence, by the verb *j'ai répondu* expressing a positive affirmation, and the subjunctive in the second, because *je veux* expresses a command, or desire.

EXERCISE.

When you have a more extensive knowledge of geometry,
 ind-7 2 1 art. f.
 and algebra, I shall give you a few lessons in astro-
 pr. art. algèbre f. * quelque de
 nomy, and optics. Form your mind, heart, and taste
 pr. optique pron. pron.
 while you are still young. Do not keep truth a prisoner,
 encore, retenir art. * captive
 though you should (draw upon you) a cloud of enemies.
 quand devoir cond-1 s'attirer nuée f.
 I will give you this fine picture upon condition that you
 tableau m. à
 keep it as a testimony of my friendship.
 conserver ind-7 témoignage m.

429. The conjunctions which govern the subjunctive are,

soit que,	{	jusqu'à ce que,	{	supposé que,	{	afin que,
sans que,		encore que,		au cas que,		de peur que,
pour que,		à moins que,		avant que,		de crainte
quoique,		pourvu que,		non pas que,		que, etc.

They require the subjunctive, because they always imply doubt, desire, ignorance. See No. 378.

EXERCISE.

You know too well the value of time, to make
 connaître prix m. art. pour que être 2
 it necessary to tell you to (make a good use of) it. Study only
 il 1 de de bien employer

great models, lest those which are but middling
 art. *de peur que* * *médiocre* &
 should spoil your taste, before it be entirely formed. 1
gâter subj-1
 (make not the least doubt) that your method will succeed,
ne douter nullement f. *ne* subj-1
 provided it be well known. Several phenomena of nature are
 f. art.
 easy (to be explained), supposing the principle of universal
 (by the active) art. 2
 gravitation to be true.
 f. 1 *

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE NINE PARTS OF
 SPEECH.

The Good Mother.

What a fine morning! said the amiable Charlotte to her
matinée f. ind-3
 brother George. Come let us go into the garden and enjoy
 sing. * inf-1
 the magnificent sight of rich and abundant nature.
de 2 *spectacle* m. 1 *une* 2 *fertile* 3 1
 We will gather the freshest and sweetest flowers. We
y cueillir *fraîs* 2 art. adv. *odorant* 3 f. pl. 1
 will make a nosegay, which we will offer to mamma. You
bouquet m. *maman* sing
 know she is fond of flowers. This attention will give her
savoir que *aimer* *faire* lui
 pleasure. Ah! brother, it will obtain us a smile, a caress,
mon f. *valoir* *sourire* m. f.
 perhaps even a kiss. Ah! sister, replied George, your
baiser m. *me* *répondre* ind-3 sing.
 proposal delights me, let us run, let us hasten, that we may
projet *enchanter* *courir* *voler* *afin de* * *

offer her, (when she gets up), this tribute of our gratitude and
lui à son lever Hommage —
 our love. Full of this idea, Charlotte and George hastened
pr. plein se hâter ind-3
 into the garden. Charlotte gathered violets *jea-*
de se rendre ind-3 de art. pr art
 jasmine, and young rose-buds which (had but just begun)
pr. de 2 bouton m.1 ne commencer que ind-2
 to open their purple cups, while George prepared
entr'ouvrir de pourpre 2 calice 1 ind-2
 green sprigs of myrtle and thyme, intended to
de art. verdoyant 2 jet m. 1 myrte pr. thym destiné
 hold up the flowers. Never had these amiable children
soutenir 1 ind-2 3
 exerted themselves with (so much) zeal and ardour. Satis-
travailler tant de zèle pr. art.
 faction and pleasure were painted in all their features, sparkled
t. art. m. ind-2 peint trait m. pétiller
 in their eyes, and added still to their beauty.

While they (were engaged) (in this manner), their mother,
s'occuper ind-2
 who had seen them in the garden, came to join them. (As
*ind-3 * joindre*
 soon as) they perceived her, they flew to her, and said: (Ah
dès que ind-3 ind-3 elle lui
 mamma, how glad we are to see you! how (impatient we
que aise 3 1 2 de il tardait à notre
 were) for this pleasure. In the pleasing expectation (of
*impatience d'avoir ce doux attente f. **
 it) we (were preparing) this nosegay for you. What satisfaction
ind-2 f.

should we have had in presenting it to you! Look at these
*ne pas à offrir voir **
 rose-buds, these violets, this jasmine, this myrtle, and this
 thyme. Well, we intended them for you. These flowers,
*R^h / fien destiner ind-2 **
 coming from us would have been dear to you. In wearing
cher En porter inf-2

them, you would have said: My children (were thinking) of me
s'occuper ind-2

while I slept. I am always as present to their minds as
dormir ind-2 *être*

to their hearts. They love me, and it is by giving me every

day new proofs of their affection, that they acknowledge
art. pl. de *preuve f.* *reconnaître*

the care I have taken of them in their childhood,
soin m. pl. que

all the marks of tenderness I am unceasingly giving them.
que *ne cesser de inf-1 leur.*

My dear children, replied the mother, embracing them,
répondre ind-3 *en embrasser*

how happy you make all my days! your gratitude, your
quel charme *répandre sur **

tenderness, your attention to me, make me forget my former
pl. *pour* *oublier* *ancien*

misfortunes, and open my heart again to the sweet impressions
malheur m. *rouvrir* *** *f.*

of pleasure. May Heaven continue to bless my
art. *Pouvoir subj-1 art.* *continuer de*

labour! May it be your guide and your support in the career
soin *Pouvoir* *=* *soutien* *carrière f.*

which (will soon be opened) to you! may it complete
aller ind-1 s'ouvrir *devant* *mettre le comble à*

its kindness by preserving you from the dangers to which
bienfait pl. en garantir inf-2 *de*

you cannot fail to be soon exposed! Alas! I
*** *ne pas tarder ind-7* ***

shudder (at them) beforehand, my dear children; the moment
frémir *en* *d'avance*

is come when you must enter the world. Your persons,
où *devoir* *dans* *figure* *sing*

your birth, and your fortune call you there, and insure you
naissance *appeler* *y* *assurer*

a distinguished rank (in it), I cannot always be your guide.
2 *m. l* *y* *ind-7*

Young and inexperienced, you will find yourselves surrounded
sans expérience *aller ind-1 inf-1* *entouré*

by every kind of temptation. (Every thing), even
sorte f. séduction tout jusque à art. m.
 vice, presents itself there under an agreeable form, and
*offrir y sous * de art. 2 pl. l*
 almost always in the shape of pleasure, which has (so many)
sous image art. tant de
 attractions for youth. They will try to mislead you, to
attrait f. art. jeunesse f. On chercher égarer
 corrupt you; they (will make use of) artifice, raillery, and
employer art. art. =
 even the mask of virtue. If you abandon yourselves
jusque à masque m. art. se laisser aller
 to first impressions, you are lost. The poison of example will
art.

insinuate itself into your hearts, will corrupt the innocence and
se glisser altérer
 purity (of them) and will substitute violent passions for
en de art. déchirant 2 f. pl. l à
 the sweet affections which have hitherto made your happiness.
doux faire

Do not imagine, my dear children. that, in placing before your
croire en mettre sous
 eyes a picture of the dangers of the world, my intention
le tableau m.
 is to prohibit you every kind of pleasure. God for-
subj.-l de interdire espèce f. à ne plaire
 bid Pleasure is necessary to man; without it, our
subj.-l art. art. lui
 existence would be dreadful; (and therefore) Providence, al-
affreux aussi art. f.
 ways attentive to our wants, has multiplied the sources of
beaux a-t-elle
 it, both in and out of ourselves. But, in tasting the pleasures
** en nous en goûter*
 of the world, never (abandon yourselves) (to them). Take care
se livrer y avoir
 they do not govern you; know how to quit them the mo-
*dominer subj. l savoir * * ne*
 ment they have acquired (too much) empire over you. It is
que prendre ind-7 trop de Ce

the only way to enjoy with delight that exquisite pleasure
moyen de volupté de délicieux 2

sure which we can only find in ourselves, and which has its
1 en

source in an upright and pure conscience. Ah! why cannot I
dans droit 2 3 f. 1 que

give all my experience? why cannot you like me read the

depths of the heart? With what astonishment would you often
admirer sing. pl.

see vexation, agitation, and trouble, disguised under the
art. —m. art. art. —m. déguisé sous

appearance of joy and tranquillity; hatred and envy
apparence pl. art. pr. art. calme art. f. art. f.

concealed under the air of confidence and friendship;
caché art. confiance f. pr. art.

indifference and selfishness, affecting the most lively interest;
art. égoïsme vif

the most dreadful and perfidious plots contrived
2 art. adv. 3 trame f. pl. 1 ourdi

deliberately in the dark; in a word, the most odious
de sang froid et ténèbres l. pl. en 2

vices endeavouring to show themselves under the features
art. 1 s'efforcer de traits

of (their opposite) virtues! In the world there is but
qui leur être oppose 2 art. 1 ne que

one (moving principle); that is self-interest. To that
seul mobile m. ce art. personnel 2 1 C'est à lui que

every action refers, every thing tends to that as to its
art. pl. se rapporter lui

end. I know very well, my dear children, that your hearts
sûr f. savoir

will not be infected by this vice. The sentiments of universal
de 2

benevolence with which I (have always) inspired you and
*bienveillance 1 * ne point cessé ind-4 de inf-1*

of which I have seen you give (so many) proofs, (remove
tant de preuve rassurer 1

already every fear) (I might have) upon that subject: but will
d'assurance 3 me 2 sur point m.

you not yield to other vices not less dangerous? Cruel idea!
de non t.
 terrible uncertainty? If this misfortune were to happen.
*affreux f. * * arriver ind-2*
 ah! my dear children, instead of being the joy and conso-
art. f.
 lation of my life, you would be the torment, the shame and the
honte f.
 disgrace (of it). You would poison my days, and you
opprobre en empoisonner
 would plunge a dagger into the very bosom which gave
porter art. mort f. même 2 scia m. 1 ind-3
 you life. But whither is my tenderness for you carrying me!
*art. où * emporter*
 No, my children, no, I have nothing to fear; you love me (too
Non
 much) to wish to grieve me so cruelly; and I shall have
*trop pour vouloir **
 the pleasure, (as long as) I live, or seeing you walk in the ways
tant que ind-7 sentier
 of honour and virtue.
art. pr. art.

CHAPTER IX.

OF GRAMMATICAL CONSTRUCTION.

430. Grammatical construction is the order which the genius of a language has assigned, in speech, to the different sorts of words into which it is distinguished. Construction is sometimes mistaken for syntax; but there is this difference: the latter consists in the rules which we are to observe, in order to express the relations of words one to another, whereas grammatical construction consists in the

various arrangements which are allowed while we observe the rules of syntax. Now this arrangement is irrevocably fixed, not only as phrases may be interrogative, imperative, or expositive, but also as each of these kinds may be affirmative, or negative.

In sentences simply interrogative, the subject is either a noun, or pronoun.

If the subject be a noun, the following is the order to be observed: first, the noun, then the verb, then the corresponding personal pronoun, the adverb, if any, and the regimen in the simple tenses: in the compound tenses, the pronoun and the adverb are placed between the auxiliary and the participle.

EXAMPLE.

les lumières sont-elles un bien	<i>are sciences an advantage to na-</i>
pour les peuples? ont-elles	<i>tions? Have they ever contri-</i>
jamaïs contribué à leur bon-	<i>buted to their happiness?</i>
heur?	

If the subject be a pronoun, the verb begins the series, and the other words follow in the order already pointed out.

EXAMPLES.

vous plairez-vous toujours à	<i>will you always take pleasure in</i>
médire?	<i>slandering?</i>
aurez-vous bientôt fini?	<i>shall you have soon done?</i>

N.B.—[When the verb is reflected, the pronoun forming the regimen begins the series, this pronoun always preserves its place before the verb, except in sentences simply imperative.]

In interrogative sentences, with a negation, the same order is observed; but *ne* is placed before the verb, and *pas* or *point*, after the verb in the simple tenses, and between the auxiliary and the participle in the compound tenses

EXAMPLES.

votre frère ne viendra-t-il pas *will not your brother come to-*
 demain ? *morrow ?*
 n'aurez-vous pas bientôt fini ? *shall you not have soon done ?*

REMARK. There are in French several other ways of interrogating.

I. With an absolute pronoun.

EXAMPLE.

qui vous a dit cela ? *or qui est- who told you that ?*
 ce qui vous a dit cela ?

2. With the demonstrative pronoun *ce*.

EXAMPLES

est-ce vous ? *is it you ?* } est-ce qu'il pleut ? *does it rain ?*

3. With an interrogative verb.

EXAMPLES.

pourquoi ne vient-il pas ? *why does he not come ?*
 comment vous trouvez-vous ? *how do you find yourself ?*

Hence we see that the absolute pronouns and the interrogative adverbs always begin the sentence : but the demonstrative pronoun *ce* always follows the verb.

In sentences, simply imperative, the verb is always placed first, in the first and second persons ; but in the third, it comes after the conjunction *que* and the noun or pronoun.

EXAMPLES.

allons-là,	<i>let us go there.</i>
venez-ici,	<i>come here.</i>
qu'ils y aillent,	<i>let them go there.</i>
que Pierre aille à Londres,	<i>let Peter go to London.</i>

With negation, *ne* and *pas* are placed as in interrogative sentences.

For the place of the pronouns, See No. 218.

Sentences are expositive, when we speak without either interrogating, or commanding. The following is the order of the words in those which are affirmative: the subject, the verb, the adverb, the participle, and the regimen.

EXAMPLES.

un bon prince mérite l'amour de ses sujets et l'estime de tous les peuples,	<i>a good prince deserves the love of his subjects, and the esteem of all nations.</i>
César eût inutilement passé le Rubicon, s'il y eût eu de son temps des Fabius,	<i>Caesar would have crossed the Rubicon to no purpose, had there been Fabii in his time.</i>

The negative sentences differ from this construction, only as *ne* is always before the verb, and *pas*, or *point*, either after the verb, or between the auxiliary and the participle.

EXAMPLES.

un homme riche ne fait pas tou- jours le bien qu'il pourrait,	<i>a rich man does not always do all the good he might.</i>
Cicéron n'eût pas peut-être été un si grand orateur, si le dé- sir de s'élever aux premières dignités n'eût enflammé son âme,	<i>Cicero would not perhaps have been so great an orator, had not the desires of rising to the first dignities inflamed his soul.</i>

Sentences are either simple, or compound. They are simple, when they contain only one subject and one attribute.

EXAMPLES.

vous lisez,	<i>you read,</i>
vous êtes jeune,	<i>you are young.</i>

They are compound, when they reunite several

subjects with one attribute, or several attributes with one subject, or several attributes with several subjects, or several subjects with several attributes.

This sentence, *Pierre et Paul sont heureux*, is compound by having two subjects; this, *cette femme est jolie, spirituelle et sensible*, is compound by having more than one attribute; and this, *Pierre et Paul sont spirituels et savants*, is composed at once of several subjects and several attributes.

A sentence may be compound in various other ways; by the subject, by the verb, or by the attribute.

By the subject, when this is restricted by an incidental proposition.

EXAMPLE.

Dieu, qui est bon.

By the verb, when it is modified by some circumstance of time, order, etc.

EXAMPLE.

Dieu, qui est bon, n'abandonne jamais.

By the attribute, when this attribute is modified by a regimen which is itself restricted.

EXAMPLE.

Dieu, qui est bon, n'abandonne jamais les hommes, qui mettent sincèrement leur confiance en lui.

These simple, or compound sentences may be joined to others by a conjunction.

EXAMPLES.

quand on aime l'étude, le temps	when we love study, time
passé sans qu'on s'en aper-	without our perceiving it.
çoive,	

The two partial phrases here form but one.

When a sentence is composed of two partial phrases, joined by a conjunction, harmony and perspicuity generally require the shortest to go first.

EXAMPLES.

quand les passions nous quittent, nous nous flattons en vain, que c'est nous qui les quittons,	<i>when our passions leave us, we in vain flatter ourselves that it is we that leave them.</i>
on n'est point à plaindre, quand, au défaut de plaisirs réels, on trouve le moyen de s'occuper de chimères,	<i>he is not to be pitied, who for want of real pleasures, finds means to amuse himself with chimeras.</i>

Periods result from the union of several partial phrases, the whole of which make a complete sense. Periods, to be clear, require the shortest phrases to be placed first. The following example of this is taken from Fléchier.

N'attendez pas, Messieurs,

1. Que j'ouvre une scène tragique ;
2. Que je représente ce grand homme étendu sur ses propres trophées ;
3. Que je découvre ce corps pâle et sanglant, auprès duquel fume encore la foudre qui l'a frappé ;
4. Que je fasse crier son sang comme celui d'Abel, et que j'expose à vos yeux les images de la religion et de la patrie éplorée.

This admirable period is composed of four members, which go on gradually increasing. It is a rule not to give more than four members to a period, and to avoid multiplying incidental sentences.

Obscurity in style is generally owing to those small phrases which divert the attention from the principal sentences, and make us lose sight of them.

The construction which we have mentioned is called direct, or regular, because the words are placed in those sentences according to the order which has been pointed out. But this order may be

altered in certain cases, and then the construction is called indirect, or irregular. Now, it may be irregular, by *inversion*, by *ellipsis*, by *pleonasm*, or by *syllipsis*; these are what are called the four figures of words.

INVERSION.

431. *Inversion* is the transposition of a word into a place, different from that which, by usage, is properly assigned to it. This ought never to be done except when it introduces more perspicuity, energy, or harmony into the language; for it is a defect in construction, whenever the connexion subsisting between words is not easily perceived.

There are two kinds of inversion: the one, by its boldness seems to be confined to poetry: the other is frequently employed even in prose.

We shall speak here of the latter kind only.

The following inversions are authorized by custom.

The subject by which a verb is governed may with propriety be placed after it.

EXAMPLE.

tout ce que lui promet l'amitié des Romains,	<i>all that the friendship of the Ro- mans promises him.</i>
---	--

REMARK. This inversion is a rule of the art of speaking and writing, whenever the subject is modified by an incidental sentence, long enough to make us lose sight of the connexion between the verb governed and the subject governing.

The noun governed by the prepositions *de* and *à* may likewise be very properly placed before the verb

EXAMPLES.

d'une voix entrecoupée de sanglots, ils s'écrièrent, *in a voice interrupted by sobs, they exclaimed.*
 à tant d'injures, qu'a-t-elle répondu ? *to so much abuse, what answer did she give ?*

The verb is likewise elegantly preceded by the prepositions *après, dans, par, sous, contre*, etc. and the nouns which they govern, as well as by the conjunctions *si, quand, parce que, puisque, quoique, lorsque*, etc.

EXAMPLES.

par la loi du corps, je tiens à *by the law of the body, I am connected*
 ce monde qui passe, *with this passing world.*
 puisqu'il le veut, qu'il le fasse, *since he wishes it, let him do it.*

OF THE ELLIPSIS.

432. *Ellipsis* is the omission of a word, or even several words, which are necessary to make the construction full and complete. An ellipsis is bad, if the mind does not easily and rapidly supply the words omitted.

EXAMPLE

'accepterais les offres de Darius, si j'étais Alexandre :— *I would accept the offers of Darius, if I were Alexander :—*
 et moi aussi, si j'étais Parménion, *and so would I, if I were Parmenio.*

Here the mind easily supplies the words *je les accepterais* in the second member.

The ellipsis is very common in answers to interrogative sentences.

EXAMPLE.

quand viendrez-vous?—demain, *when will you come?—to-morrow.*

that is, *je viendrai demain.*

In order to know whether an ellipsis be good, the words that are understood must be supplied. It is correct, whenever the construction completely expresses the sense denoted by the words which are supplied; otherwise it is not exact.

OF THE PLEONASM.

433. *Pleonasm*, in general, is a superfluity of words: in order to constitute this figure good, it must be sanctioned by custom, which never permits its use, except it give greater energy to language, or express, in a clearer manner, the internal feeling with which we are affected.

EXAMPLES.

Et que m'a fait à moi cette Troie où je cours ?

Je me meurs. S'il ne veut pas vous le dire, je vous le dirai, moi.

Je l'ai vu de mes propres yeux.

Je l'ai entendu de mes propres oreilles.

—*A moi*, in the first sentence;—*me*, in the second;—*moi*, in the third;—*de mes propres yeux*, in the fourth; and—*de mes propres oreilles*, in the fifth, are employed merely for the sake of energy, or to manifest an internal feeling; but this manner of speaking is sanctioned by custom.

REMARK. Expletives must not be mistaken for pleonasms.

EXAMPLE.

c'est une affaire, où il y va du salut de l'état, *it is an affair in which the safety of the state is concerned.*

Which is better than *c'est une affaire, où il va*, etc. that is, than omitting *y*, which is in reality useless on account of *où* : this is a mode of expression from which it is not allowed to deviate.

OF THE SYLLEPSIS.

434. The syllepsis is a figure by which a word relates more to our meaning, than to the literal expressions, as in these phrases :

Il est onze heures ; l'an mil sept cent quatre-vingt-dix-neuf.

When using them, the mind, merely intent upon precise meaning, pays no attention to either the number, or the gender of *heure* and *an*.

There is likewise a syllepsis in these sentences :

*Je crains qu'il ne vienne.
J'empêcherai qu'il ne vous nuise.
J'ai peur qu'il ne m'oublie, etc.*

Full of a wish that the event may not take place, we are willing to do all we can, that nothing should present an obstacle to that wish. This is the cause of the introduction of the negative, which, although unnecessary to complete the sense, yet must be preserved for the sake of the idiom.

There is again a very elegant syllepsis in sentences like the following from Racine :

Entre le *peuple* et vous, vous prendrez Dieu pour juge ;
 Vous souvenant, mon fils, que caché sous ce lin,
 Comme *eux* vous fûtes pauvre, et, comme *eux*, orphelin.

The poet forgets that he has been using the word *peuple* : nothing remains in his mind but *des pauvres* and *des orphelins*, and it is with that idea of which he is full that he makes the pronoun *eux* agree. For the same reason, Bossuet and Mézengui have said,

Quand le *peuple Hébreu* entra dans la terre promise, tout y célébraient *leurs* ancêtres.—BOSSUET.

Moïse eut recours au Seigneur, et lui dit : que ferai-je à ce *peuple* ? bientôt *ils* me lapideront —MÉZENGUI.

Leurs and *ils* stand for *les Hébreux*.

CHAPTER X.

OF GRAMMATICAL DISCORDANCES, AMPHIBOLOGIES, AND GALLICISMS.

435. We have chiefly to take notice of two incorrect modes of construction, which are contrary to the principles laid down in the preceding chapters—grammatical discordances, and—amphibologies.

OF DISCORDANCES.

In general, there is a discordance in language, when the words, which compose the various members of a sentence, or period, do not agree with each other, either because their construction is contrary to analogy, or because they bring together dissimilar

ideas, between which the mind perceives an opposition, or can see no manner of affinity.

The following examples will serve to illustrate this:

Notre réputation ne dépend pas des louanges qu'on nous donne, mais des actions louables que nous faisons.

This sentence is not correct, because the first member being negative, and the second affirmative, cannot come under the government of the same verb. It ought to be :

notre réputation dépend, non	<i>our reputation depends, not upon</i>
des louanges qu'on nous	<i>the praises which are bestowed</i>
donne, mais de actions, etc.	<i>on us, but upon the praiseworthy actions which we perform.</i>

But the most common discordances are those which arise from the wrong use of tenses, as in this sentence :

Il regarde votre malheur comme une punition du peu de complaisance que vous avez eue pour lui, dans le temps qu'il vous pria, etc.

Because the two preterits, definite and indefinite, cannot well agree together; it should be :

Que vous eûtes pour lui dans le temps qu'il vous pria

There is discordance in this sentence :

On en ressentit autant de joie que d'une victoire complète dans un autre temps.

Because the verb cannot be understood after the *que* which introduces the second member of the comparison, when that verb is to be a different tense; it should be :

On en ressentit autant de joie qu'on en aurait ressenti, etc.

This line of Racine,

Le flot, qui l'apporte, recule épouvanté,

is also incorrect, because the form of the present cannot associate with that of the preterit definite; it should have been: *qui l'a apporté*

OF AMPHIBOLOGIES.

436. Amphibology, in language, is when a sentence is so constructed as to be susceptible of two different interpretations: this must be carefully avoided. As we speak only to be understood, perspicuity is the first and most essential quality of language; we should always recollect that *what is not clearly expressed in any language, is no language at all.*

Amphibology are occasioned, 1. By the misuse of—moods, and—tenses. 2. Of—personal pronouns, *il, le, la*, etc. 3. Of—possessive pronouns, *son, sa, ses*, etc. 4. By giving a wrong place to nouns.

EXAMPLE

Of an Amphibology of the first Kind.

Qu'ai-je fait, pour venir accabler en ces lieux
Un héros, sur qui seul j'ai pu tourner les yeux?—RACINE.

Pour venir forms an amphibology, because we do not know whether it relates to the person who speaks, or to the person spoken to: it should have been: *pour que vous veniez*

EXAMPLE

Of an Amphibology of the second Kind.

César voulut premièrement surpasser Pompée ; les grandes richesses de Crassus lui firent croire, qu'il pourrait partager la gloire de ces deux grands hommes.

This sentence is faulty in its construction, because the pronouns *il* and *lui* seem to relate to *César*, although the sense obliges us to refer them to *Crassus*.

EXAMPLE

Of an Amphibology of the third Kind.

Valère alla chez Léandre ; il y trouva son fils.

The pronoun *son* is ambiguous, because we do not know which it relates, to *Valère*, or to *Léandre*.

EXAMPLE

Of an Amphibology of the fourth Kind.

J'ai envoyé les lettres, que j'ai écrites, à la poste.

A la poste, thus placed, is equivocal, because we do not know whether it is meant that the letters have been *written at* the post-office, or *sent to* the post-office.

OF GALLICISMS.

In the "Grammaire Philosophique et Littéraire," four sorts of gallicisms have been pointed out. Notice will be taken here of those only which have reference to construction.

The gallicisms of construction are, in general, irregularities and deviations from the customary rules of syntax: there are some, however, which are mere ellipses, and those which can only be attributed to the caprice of custom.

GENERAL PRINCIPLE. Every gallicism of construction, which renders the meaning of the sentence obscure, ought to be condemned. Those only ought to be allowed which do not impair perspicuity, by introducing irregularity of construction, and which are, at the same time, sanctioned by long practice.

According to this principle, this elliptic gallicism is now rejected:

Et qu'ainsi ne soit, meaning ce que je vous dis est si vrai que,

because it renders the sentence obscure. For instance:

J'étais dans ce jardin, et qu'ainsi ne soit, voilà une fleur que j'y ai cueillie, that is, et pour preuve de cela, voilà une fleur, etc.

Molière and La Fontaine seem to have been the last great writers that have used this expression.

One of the most common gallicisms is that in which the impersonal verb *il y a*, is used for *il est*, *il existe*. These expressions:

Il y avait une fois un roi;—il y a cent à parier contre un,

are gallicisms. There are two in the following sentence:

*il n'y a pas jusqu'aux enfants, even children will meddle with it
qui ne s'en mêlent,*

The verb *falloir* forms a sort of gallicism with the pronoun *en*, when it is conjugated like pronominal verbs with the double pronouns *il se*.

EXAMPLE.

Il s'en faut, il s'en fallait, etc.

It then means *to be wanting*, and when preceded by an adverb of quantity, the first pronoun is omitted.

EXAMPLE.

Peu s'en faut, tant s'en faut.

These several manners of using the verb *falloir* will be found in the following sentences :

EXAMPLES.

il s'en faut bien qu'il soit aussi habile qu'il croit l'être,	<i>he is far from being so clever as he thinks.</i>
peu s'en est fallu qu'il n'ait succombé dans cette entreprise,	<i>he was very near falling in that undertaking.</i>
il ne s'en est presque rien fallu qu'il n'ait été tué,	<i>he was as near as possible being killed.</i>
vous dites qu'il s'en faut vingt livres que la somme entière n'y soit, mais vous vous trompez, il ne peut pas s'en falloir tant,	<i>you say it wants twenty pounds to complete the sum, but you are mistaken, it cannot want so much.</i>
mon rhume est entièrement guéri, ou peu s'en faut,	<i>his cold is entirely cured, or very near.</i>
que s'en est-il fallu que ces deux amis ne se soient brouillés ?	<i>how near were these two friends quarrelling ?</i>
je ne suis pas content de votre application à l'étude, tant s'en faut,	<i>I am not satisfied with your application to study, far from it.</i>
tant s'en faut que cette comédie me plaise, elle me semble au contraire détestable,	<i>so far from this play pleasing me, I think it insufferable.</i>
il s'en fallait beaucoup que je vous approuvasse dans cette circonstance,	<i>I was far from approving your conduct on that occasion.</i>

The sentences :

il n'est rien moins que généreux, vous avez beau dire,	<i>he is far from being generous. you may say what you please, but,</i>
--	---

à ce qu'il me semble,	<i>by what I can see, as the matter appears to me, etc.</i>
nous voilà à nous lamenter,	<i>we began to lament, here we are lamenting, crying, etc.</i>
qu'est-ce que de nous !	<i>what wretched beings we are, etc., etc.</i>

are also gallicisms.

The use which is made of the preposition *en*, in many sentences, is likewise another source of gallicisms ; some of this kind will be found in the following expressions :

à qui en avez-vous ?	<i>whom are you angry with ?</i>
où en veut-il venir ?	<i>what does he aim at ? what would he be at ?</i>
il lui en veut,	<i>he owes him a grudge.</i>

The preposition *en* changes, also, sometimes, the signification of verbs, and then gives rise to gallicisms.

The conjunction *que* produces as great a number of gallicisms.

EXAMPLES.

c'est une terrible passion que le jeu,	<i>gaming is a terrible passion.</i>
c'est donc en vain que je travaille,	<i>it is in vain then that I work.</i>
ce n'est pas trop que cela,	<i>that is not too much.</i>
il n'est que d'avoir du courage,	<i>there is nothing like having courage.</i>

See No. 426.

Many others will be found in the use which is made of the prepositions *à, de, dans, après*, etc. but enough has been said on this subject.

Gallicisms are of very great use in the simple style : therefore La Fontaine and Mme. de Sévigné abound in them. The common style has not so many, and the solemn oratorical but few, and these

even of a peculiar nature. Only two examples of this kind, both taken from the tragedy of Iphigenia, by Racine, will be here inserted.

Avez-vous pu penser qu'au sang d'Agamemnon
Achille préférât une fille sans nom,
Qui, de tout son destin, ce qu'elle a pu comprendre,
C'est qu'elle sort d'un sang etc.

And,

*Je ne sais qui m'arrête et retient mon courroux,
Que par un prompt avis de tout ce qui se passe
Je ne coure des dieux divulguer la menace.*

In the first sentence, *qui* is the subject though without relating to any verb; and in the second, *je ne sais qui m'arrête que je ne coure*, is contrary to the rules of common construction. "But," says Vaugelas, "these extraordinary phrases, far from being faulty, possess the more beauty, as they belong to a particular kind of language."

FREE EXERCISES.

L

MADAME DE MAINTENON TO HER BROTHER.

WE can only be 1 unhappy by our own fault; this shall always be my text, and my reply to your lamentations. Recollect 2, my dear brother, the voyage to America, the misfortunes of our father, of our infancy and our youth 3; and you will bless Providence instead of murmuring against fortune. Ten years ago, we were both very far (below our present situation 4;) and our hopes were so feeble 5, that we limited our wishes to an (income of three thousand livres 6.) At present we have four times that sum 7, and our desires are not yet satisfied! we enjoy the happy mediocrity which you have so often extolled 8; let us be content. If possessions 9 come to us, let us receive them from the hand of God, but let not our views be 10 too extravagant 11. We have (every thing necessary 12) and comfortable 13; all the rest is covetousness 14; all these desires of greatness spring from 15 a restless heart. Your debts are all paid, and you may live elegantly 16, without contracting more 17. What have you to desire? must 18 schemes 19 of wealth and ambition occasion 20 the loss of your repose and your health? read the life of St. Louis; you will see how unequal 21 the greatness of this world is to the desires of the human heart; God only can satisfy them 22. I repeat it, you are only unhappy by your own fault. Your uneasiness 23 destroys your health, which you ought to preserve, if it were 24 only because I love you. Watch 25 your temper 26: if you can render it less splenetic 27 and less gloomy, (you will have gained a great

1. On ne être—que. 2. Songer à. 3. The misfortunes of our infancy and those of our, etc. 4. Du point où nous sommes aujourd'hui. 5. Si peu de chose. 6. Trois mille livres de rente. 7. That sum, en... plus. 8. Have so often extolled, vanter si fort, ind-2. 9. Possessions, biens. 10. Let us not have views. 11. Trop vaste. 12. Le nécessaire. 13. Le commode. 14. Covetousness, cupidité. 15. Spring from, partir du vide de. 16. Délicieuse-ment. 17. Contracting more, en faire de nouvelles. 18. Must, faut-il que. 19. Projet. 20. Occasion, coûter, subj-1. 21. Unequal, au-dessous de. 22. Satisfy them, le rassasier. 23. Uneasiness, inquiétude pl. 24. If I were, quand ce être, cond 1. 25. Travailler sur. 26. Humeur. 27. Bl-

advantage 28.) This is not the work of reflection only ; exercise, amusement, and a regular life, (are necessary for the purpose 29.) You cannot think well (whilst your health is affected 30 ;) when the body is debilitated 31, the mind is without vigour. Adieu ! write to me more frequently, and in a style less gloomy.

II.

THE CONVERT.

AN EASTERN TALE.

Divine mercy 1 had brought a vicious man into a society of sages, whose morals were holy and pure. He was affected by their virtues ; it was not long 2 before 3 he imitated them and lost his old habits : he became just, sober, patient, laborious and benevolent. His deeds nobody could deny, but they were attributed 4 to odious motives. They praised his good actions, without loving his person : they would always judge him by what he had been, not by what he had become. This injustice filled him with grief ; he shed tears in the bosom of an ancient sage, more just and more humane than the others. " O my son," said the old man to him, " thou art better than thy reputation ; be thankful to God for it. " Happy the man who can say : my enemies and my rivals censure " in me vices of which I am not guilty. What matters 5 it, if thou " art good, that men persecute thee as wicked ? Hast thou not, to " comfort thee, the two best witnesses of thy actions, God and thy " conscience ?" SAINT-LAMBERT.

Mr. de Montansier has written a letter to Monseigneur upon the king of Philipsbourg, which very much pleases me. " Monseigneur, I do not compliment you on the capture of Philipsbourg ; you had a good army, bombs, cannon, and Vauban : neither shall I compliment you upon your valour ; for that is an hereditary virtue in your family. But I rejoice that you are liberal, generous, humane, and that you know how to recompense the services of those who behave well : it is for this that I congratulate you."

SÉVIGNÉ.

Reux. 28. Ce être un grand point de gagné. 29. Il y faut de. 30. Tant que vous se porter mal 31. Debilitated, dans l'abattement.
1. Miséricorde. 2. Ne pas tarder. 3. A inf. 4. On donner des motifs. 5. Importer.

III.

THE GOOD MINISTER.

AN EASTERN TALE.

The great Aaron Raschid began to suspect that his vizier Giafar was not deserving of the confidence which he had reposed in him. The women of Aaron, the inhabitants of Bagdad, the courtiers, the dervises, censured the vizier with bitterness. The calif loved Giafar; he would not condemn him upon the clamours of the city and the court: he visited his empire; every where he saw the land well cultivated, the country smiling, the cottages opulent, the useful arts honoured, and youth full of gaiety. He visited his fortified cities and sea-ports: he saw numerous ships, which threatened the coasts of Africa and of Asia; he saw warriors disciplined and content; these warriors, the seamen and the peasantry, exclaimed: "O God, pour thy blessings upon the faithful, by giving them a calif like Aaron, and a vizier like Giafar." The calif, affected by these exclamations, enters a mosque, falls upon his knees, and cries out: "Great God, I return thee thanks: thou hast given me a vizier of whom my courtiers speak ill, and my people speak well."

SAINT-LAMBERT.

Providence leads us with so much goodness through the different periods of our life, that we (are not sensible of our progress 1) This loss takes place gently 2, it is imperceptible, it is the shadow of the sun-dial whose motion we do not see. If, at twenty years of age, we could see 3 in a mirror the face we shall have at three-score, we (should be shocked at the contrast 4,) and terrified at our own figure; but it is day by day that we advance: we are to-day as we were yesterday, and shall be to-morrow as we are to-day; so we go forward without perceiving it, and this is a miracle of that Providence which I adore.

SÉVIGNÉ.

IV.

THE MAGNIFICENT PROSPECT.

This beautiful house was on the declivity of a hill, from whence you beheld the sea, sometimes clear and smooth as glass, sometimes

1. Ne le sentir quasi pas
4. Tomber à la renverse.

2. Va doucement.

3. On nous faire voir.

idly 1 irritated against the rocks on which it broke, bellowing 2 and swelling its waves like mountains. On another side was seen a river, in which were islands bordered with blooming limes, and lofty poplars, which raised their proud heads to the very clouds. The several channels, which formed those islands, seemed sporting 3 in the plain. Some rolled their limpid waters with rapidity; some had a peaceful and still course; others, by long windings, ran back again, to reascend as it were, to their source, and seemed not to have power to leave these enchanting borders. At a distance were seen hills and mountains, which were lost in the clouds, and formed by their fantastic figure, as delightful a horizon (as the eye could wish to behold. 4) The neighbouring mountains were covered with verdant (vine branches, 5) hanging in festoons; the grapes brighter than purple, could not conceal themselves under the leaves, and the vine was overloaded with its fruit. The fig, the olive, the pomegranate, and all other trees, overspread the plain, and made it one large garden.

FENELON.

Long hopes wear out 7 joy, as long maladies wear out pain.

All philosophic systems are only good when one (has no use for them 8.)

SÉVIGNÉ.

V.

A GENERAL VIEW OF NATURE.

With what magnificence does nature shine 1 upon earth! pure light, extending from east to west, gilds successively the two hemispheres of this globe; an element, transparent and light, surrounds it; a gentle fecundating heat animates, gives being 2 to the seeds of life; salubrious running streams contribute to their preservation and growth; eminences diversified over the level land, arrest the vapours of the air, make these springs inexhaustible and always new; immense cavities made to receive them divide the continents. The extent of the sea is as great as that of the earth; it not a cold, barren element; it is a new empire, as rich, as populous as the first. The finger of God has marked their boundaries.

The earth, rising above the level of the sea, is secure 3 from its

1. Follement. 2. En gémir. 3. Se jouer. 4. A souhait pour le plaisir de.
5. Parapre, m. 6. Vigne, f. 7. User. 8. N'en avoir que faire.
1. Ne brûler pas. 2. Faire éclore. 3. A l'abri de.

eruptions: its surface, enamelled with flowers, adorned with ever-springing verdure, peopled with thousands and thousands of species of different animals, is a place of rest, a delightful abode, where man, placed in order to second nature, presides over all beings. The only one among them all, capable of knowing and worthy of admiring, God has made him spectator of the universe, and a witness of his wonders. The divine spark with which he is animated enables him to participate in the divine mysteries: it is by this light that he thinks and reflects; by it he sees and reads in the book of the universe, as in a copy of the Deity.

Nature is the exterior throne of the divine Majesty: the man who contemplates, who studies it, rises by degrees to the interior throne of Omnipotence. Made to adore the Creator, the vassal of heaven, sovereign of the earth, he ennobles, peoples, enriches it; he establishes among living beings order, subordination, harmony; he embellishes nature herself; he cultivates, extends, and polishes it; lops off the thistle and the briar, and multiplies the grape and the rose.

BUFFON.

VI.

ANOTHER GENERAL VIEW OF NATURE.

Trees, shrubs, and plants are the ornaments and clothing 1 of the earth. Nothing is so melancholy 2 as the prospect of a country naked and bare 3, exhibiting to the eye nothing but stones, mud, and sand. But, vivified by nature, and clad 4 in its nuptial robe, amidst the course of streams and the singing of birds, the earth presents to man, in the harmony of the three kingdoms, a spectacle full of life, of interest and charms, the only spectacle in the world of which his eyes and heart are never weary 5.

The more a (contemplative man's soul is fraught with sensibility 6), the more he yields to the extacies which this harmony produces in him. A soft and deep melancholy then takes possession of his senses, and, in an intoxication of delight, he loses himself in the immensity of that beautiful system, with which he feels himself identified. Then, every particular object escapes him, he sees and feels nothing but in the whole. Some circumstance must contract his ideas and circumscribe his imagination, before 7 he can observe by parcels that universe which he was endeavouring to embrace.

J. J. ROUSSEAU.

- | | | | | |
|---|---------------|----------------------|------------|---------------|
| 1. Vêtement. | 2. Triste. | 3. P ^{le} . | 4. Revêtu. | 5. Sa lasser. |
| 6. Contemplateur, avoir l'âme sensible. | 7. Pour qu'il | | | |

VII.

CULTIVATED NATURE.

How beautiful is cultivated nature ! And, by the labours of man, how brilliant it is, and how pompously adorned ! He himself is its chief ornament, its noblest part ; by multiplying himself, he multiplies the most precious germ ; she also seems to multiply with him ; by his art, he (brings forth to view 1) all that she concealed 2 in her bosom. How many unknown treasures ! What new riches ! Flowers, fruits, seeds brought to perfection, multiplied to infinity ; the useful species of animals transported, propagated, increased without number ; the noxious species reduced, confined, banished ; gold, and iron more necessary than gold, extracted from the bowels of the earth ; torrents confined 3, rivers directed, contracted 4 ; the sea itself subjected, explored 5, crossed, from one hemisphere to the other ; the earth accessible in every part, and every where rendered equally cheerful and fruitful : in the valleys, delightful meadows ; in the plains, rich pastures, and still richer harvests ; hills covered with vines and fruits ; their summits crowned with useful trees and young forests ; deserts changed into cities inhabited by an immense population, which, continually circulating, spreads itself from these centres to their extremities ; roads opened and frequented, communications established every where, as so many witnesses of the strength and union of society : a thousand other monuments of power and glory sufficiently demonstrate that man, possessing dominion over the earth, has changed, renewed the whole of its surface, and that, at all times, he shares the empire of it with nature.

VIII.

THE SAME SUBJECT CONTINUED.

However, man only reigns by right of conquest : he rather enjoys than possesses, and he can preserve only by means of continual labour. If this ceases every thing droops, every thing declines, every thing changes and again returns 1 under the hand of nature ; she resumes her rights, erases the work of man, covers

1. Mettre au jour. 2. Recueillir. 3. Contenir. 4. Remettre. 5. Reconstruire.
1. Retourner

with dust and moss its most pompous monuments, destroys them in time, and leaves him nothing but the regret of having lost, through his fault what his ancestors had conquered by their labours. Those times, in which man loses his dominion, those barbarous 2 ages, during which every thing is seen to perish, are always preceded by war, and accompanied by scarcity and depopulation. Man, who can do nothing but by number, who is strong only by union, who can be happy only by peace, is mad enough to arm himself for his misery, and to fight for his ruin. Impelled by an insatiable thirst of having, blinded by ambition still more insatiable, he renounces all the feelings of humanity, turns all his strength against himself, seeks mutual destruction, actually 3 destroys himself; and, after these periods of blood and carnage, when the smoke of glory has vanished, he contemplates with a sad eye, the earth wasted, the arts buried, nations scattered, the people weakened, his own happiness ruined, and his real power annihilated.

BURTON.

IX.

INVOCATION TO THE GOD OF NATURE.

Almighty God! whose presence alone supports nature, and maintains the harmony of the laws of the universe: Thou, who from the immovable throne of the empyrean, seest the celestial spheres roll under thy feet, without shock or confusion: who, from the bosom of repose, reproduced every moment their immense movements, and alone governest, in profound peace, that infinite number of heavens and worlds; restore, restore at length tranquillity to the agitated earth! let it be silent at thy voice; let discord and war cease their proud clamours! God of goodness, author of all beings, thy paternal eye takes in 1 all the objects of the creation; but man is thy chosen being; thou hast illumined 2 his soul with a ray of thy immortal light: complete the measure of thy kindness by penetrating his heart with a ray of thy love: this divine sentiment, diffusing itself every where, will reconcile opposite natures; man will no longer dread the sight of man; his hand will no longer wield the murderous steel 3; the devouring flames of war will no longer dry up 4 the sources of population: the human species, now weakened, mutilated, mowed down in the blossom, will spring anew 5 and multiply without number; nature, overwhelmed under the weight of scourges 6, will soon re-assume, with a new life, its for-

2. De barbarie.

3. En effet.

4. Embrasser.

5. Eclairer.

6. Le fer . . . armé sa main.

4. Tarir.

1. Germer ce nouveau.

6. Fléau.

mer fruitfulness; and we, beneficent God, will second it, we will cultivate it, we will contemplate it incessantly, that we may every moment offer thee a new tribute of gratitude and admiration.

BURTON.

X.

Happy they who are disgusted with 1 turbulent pleasures, and know how to be contented 2 with the sweets of an innocent life! Happy they who delight in being instructed 3, and who take a pleasure 4 in storing their minds with knowledge! Wherever adverse fortune may throw them, they always carry entertainment with them; and the disquiet which preys upon others, even in the midst of pleasures, is unknown to those who can employ themselves in reading. Happy they who love to read, and are not like me deprived of the ability. As these thoughts were passing in my mind, I went into a gloomy forest, where I immediately perceived an old man holding a book in his hand. The forehead of this sage was broad, bald, and a little wrinkled: a white beard hung down to his girdle; his stature was tall and majestic; his complexion still fresh and ruddy, his eyes lively and piercing, his voice sweet, his words plain and charming. I never saw so venerable an old man. He was a priest of Apollo, and officiated 5 in a marble temple, which the kings of Egypt had dedicated to that God in this forest. The book which he held in his hand was a collection of hymns in honour of the Gods. He accosted me in a friendly manner; and we discoursed together. He related things past so well, that they seemed present, and yet with such brevity that his account never tired me. He foresaw the future by his profound knowledge, which made him know men, and the designs of which they are capable. With all this wisdom he was cheerful and complaisant, and the sprightliest youth has not so many graces as this man had at so advanced an age. He accordingly loved young men when they were teachable 6, and had a taste for study and virtue.

FENELON.

XI.

THOUGHTS ON POETRY.

Wherever I went, I found that poetry was considered as the high-

1. Se dégoûter de.
2. S'ennuyer.

3. Se contenter de.

4. S'instruire.

5. Se plaindre.

6. Doctile.

est learning 1), and regarded with a veneration (somewhat approaching to 2) that which men would pay to angelic nature.

It yet fills me with wonder that, in almost all countries, the most ancient poets are considered as the best; whether (it be that 3) every kind of knowledge is an acquisition gradually attained, and poetry is a gift conferred at once, or that the first poetry of every nation surprised them as a novelty, and retained the credit by consent, which it received by accident at first, or whether, as the province 4 of poetry is to describe nature and passion, which are always the same, the first writers (took possession 5) of (the most striking objects for description 6), and (the most probable occurrences for fiction 7,) and left nothing to those that followed them, but transcription 8 of the same events, and new combinations 9 of the same images. Whatever be the reason, it is commonly observed, that the early writers are in possession of nature, and their followers 10 of art: that the first excel in strength and invention, and the latter in elegance and refinement.

I was desirous to add my name to this illustrious fraternity 11. I read all the poets of Persia and Arabia, and was able to repeat by memory the volumes that are suspended in the mosque of Mecca. But I soon found that no man was ever great by imitation. My desire of excellence 12 impelled 13 me to transfer 14 my attention to nature and to life 15. Nature was to be my subject, and men to be my auditors: I could never describe what I had not seen: I could not hope (to move those with delight or terror 16) whose interests and opinions I did not understand 17.

XII.

THE SAME SUBJECT CONTINUED.

Being now resolved to be a poet, I saw every thing (with a new purpose 18;) my sphere of attention was suddenly magnified: no kind of knowledge (was to be overlooked 19.) I ranged mountains and deserts for 20 images and resemblances and (pictured upon my mind 21) every tree of the forest and flower of the valley. I observed with equal care the crags of the rock and the pinnacles of the palace. Sometimes I wandered along the mazes of the rivulet

1. Partie la plus sublime de la littérature. 2. Qui tenait de. 3. Cela vient de ce que. 4. But. 5. S'emparer. 6. Objets qui fournissent les plus riches descriptions. 7. Evénements qui prêtent le plus à la fiction. 8. De copier. 9. Faire de nouvelles combinaisons. 10. Successeurs. 11. Famille. 12. Exceller. 13. Engager. 14. Reporter. 15. Tableau de la vie. 16. Réveiller le plaisir ou la terreur dans ceux. 17. Ne connaître ni. 18. Sous un nouveau jour. 19. Je ne devais négliger. 20. Pour recueillir. 21. Pénétrer mon esprit du tableau de.

and sometimes watched the changes of the summer-clouds. To a poet nothing can be useless. Whatever is beautiful, and whatever is dreadful, must be familiar to his imagination: he must (be conversant 22) with all that (is awfully vast or elegantly little 23). The plants of the garden, the animals of the wood, the minerals of the earth, and the meteors of the sky, must all concur to store his mind with inexhaustible variety; for every idea is useful for the (enforcement or decoration 24) of moral or religious truth; and he who knows most, will have most power 25 of diversifying his scenes 26, and gratifying his reader with remote allusions and unexpected instruction.

All the appearances of nature (I was, therefore, careful to study,) 27, and every country which I have surveyed has contributed something to my poetical powers.

In so wide a survey, interrupted the prince, you must surely have left much unobserved. I have lived, till now, within the circuit of these mountains, and yet cannot walk abroad without the sight of something which I had never beheld before, or never heeded 28.

XIII.

THE SAME SUBJECT CONTINUED.

The business of a poet, said Imlac, is to examine, not the individual, but the species; to remark general properties and (large appearances 29;) he does not number the streaks of the tulip, or describe the different shades in the verdure of the forest. He is to exhibit, in his portraits of nature, such prominent and striking features, as 30 recal the original to every mind; and must neglect the minuter discriminations 31, which one may have remarked, and another neglected, for those characters 32 which are alike obvious 33 to vigilance 34 and carelessness 35.

But the knowledge of nature is only half 36 the task of a poet: he must be acquainted likewise with all the modes 37 of life. His character requires that he estimate 38 the happiness and misery of every condition: observe the power of all the passions, in all their combinations, and trace the changes 39 of the human mind, as they

22. Bien connaître. 23. Étonné par sa grandeur, ou charme par son élégante petitesse. 24. Fortifier, ou embellir. 25. Ressources pour. 26. Tableau. 27. Étudier avec soin toutes les, etc. 28. Remarquer. 29. Considérer les objets en grand. 30. De ces traits saillants et frappants qui, etc. etc. 31. Ces petits détails. 32. Pour s'appliquer à caractériser, etc. etc. 33. Frapper également. 34. Œil observateur. 35. Esprit insouciant. 36. The half of. 37. Tous les différents aspects. 38. Apprécier. 39. Suivre les vicissitudes.

are modified by various institutions, and accidental influences of climate or custom; from the sprightliness of infancy to the despondence of decrepitude. He must divest himself 40 of the prejudices of his age or country; he must consider right and wrong 41 in their abstracted and invariable state 42; he must disregard present laws and opinions, and rise to general and transcendent truths, which will always be the same; he must, therefore, (content himself with the slow progress of his name 43,) to condemn the applause of his own time, and commit his claims to the justice of posterity. He must write as the interpreter of nature, and the legislator of mankind, and consider himself as presiding 44 over the thoughts and manners of future generations, as a being superior to time and place.

His labour is not yet at an end: he must know many languages and many sciences; and, that his style may be worthy of his thoughts, he must, by incessant practice, familiarize himself to every delicacy of speech and grace of harmony.

S. JOHNSON.

XIV.

First follow nature and your judgment frame
By her just standard, which is still the same:
Unerring nature, still divinely bright,
One clear, unchanged, and universal light,
Life, force, and beauty, must to all impart; 1
At once the source, and end, and test of art. 2
Art, from that fund, each just supply provides:
Works without show, and without pomp presides:
In some fair body thus th' informing soul
With spirits feeds, with vigour fills the whole,
Each motion guides, and every nerve sustains
Itself unseen, but in th' effect remains. 3
Some, to whom heav'n in wit has been profuse,
Want as much more to turn it to its use:

40. Se dépoûiller. 41. Ce qui est juste ou injuste. 42. Abstraction faite de ces divers préjugés. 43. Se résigner à voir son nom percer difficilement. 44. Influencer.

1. Light, clear, immutable, and universal nature, which never errs, and shines always with a divine splendour, must impart to all she does life, force and beauty.

2. She is at once the source, etc., etc.

3. So in a fair body, unseen itself, but always sensible by its effects, the soul continually acting, feeds the whole with spirits, fills it with vigour, guides every motion of it and sustains every nerve.

For wit and judgment often are at strife,
 Tho' meant each other's aid, like man and wife, 4
 'Tis more to guide, than spur the muse's steed;
 Restrain his fury, than provoke his speed: 5
 The winged courser, like a gen'rous horse,
 Shows most true mettle, when you check its course. 6
 POPE

4. Some to whom heaven has given wit with profusion, want as much yet to know the use they ought to make of it; for wit and judgment, though made, like man and wife, to aid each other, are often in opposition.

5. It is more difficult to guide than spur the courser of the muses, and to restrain its ardour than provoke its impetuosity.

6. The winged courser is like a generous horse; the more we strive to stop it in its rapid course, the more it shows unconquerable vigour.

437. EXAMPLES OF PHRASES ON THE PRINCIPAL DIFFICULTIES OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.

N.B.—It is strongly recommended that these examples be learnt by heart. They will also be found very useful, in point of reference, whenever the learner is at a loss on some point of grammar or construction. The better to enable him to find what he wants, the different chapters have been numbered, and will be found minutely described in the Table of Contents.

1. *Sur les Collectifs Partitifs.*

On the Collective Partitives.

La plupart des fruits verts sont d'un goût austère.

The greater part of green fruit is of a harsh taste.

La plupart des gens ne se conduisent que par intérêt.

Most people are guided only by interest.

La plupart du monde se trompe.

The greater part of mankind are in error.

Il méprise par philosophie les honneurs, que la plupart du monde recherche.

As a true philosopher he despises those honours which mankind in general court.

Il devait me fournir tant d'arbres ; mais j'en ai rejeté la moitié qui ne valait rien.

He was to furnish me so many trees, but I refused half of them which were good for nothing.

Un grand nombre de spectateurs ajoutait à la beauté du spectacle.

A considerable number of spectators added to the splendour of the scene.

Toute sorte de livres ne sont pas également bons.

Every kind of books are not equally good.

Beaucoup de personnes se sont présentées.

Many people presented themselves.

Bien des personnes se font des principes à leur fantaisie.

Many persons form principles to themselves, according to their fancy.

2. *Sur quelques Verbes qu'on ne peut conjuguer avec Avoir sans faire des barbarismes.*

Il lui est échu une succession du chef de sa femme.

Il est bien déchu de son crédit.

Ne sommes-nous pas convenus du prix ?

N'est-il pas intervenu dans cette affaire, comme il l'avait promis ?

Il est survenu à l'improviste.

La neige, qui est tombée ce matin, a adouci le temps.

Que de neige il est tombé ce matin !

Toutes les dents lui sont tombées.

Ce propos n'est pas tombé à terre.

Etes-vous allé voir votre ami ?

Ils sont arrivés à midi et sont repartis de suite.

Ces fleurs sont à peine écloses.

Il est né de parents vertueux, qui n'ont rien négligé pour son éducation.

Mademoiselle votre sœur est-elle rentrée ?

Madame votre mère n'est-elle pas encore venue ?

3. *Sur les Mots de Quantité.*

Il a beaucoup d'esprit, mais encore plus d'amour-propre.

Il a d'assez d'argent pour ses menus plaisirs.

Il y avait bien du monde à l'Opéra.

Il y avait hier au Parc je ne sais combien de gens.

2. On some verbs which cannot be conjugated with the verb *Avoir*, without making barbarous phrases.

An estate fell to him in right of his wife.

He has lost much of his credit.

Have we not agreed about the price ?

Did he not interfere in that affair as he had promised ?

He came up

The snow which fell this morning has softened the weather.

How much snow has fallen this morning !

All his teeth have fallen out.

That remark was not allowed to escape.

Have you been to see your friend ?

They arrived at noon and set out again immediately.

These flowers are scarcely blown.

He was born of virtuous parents, who bestowed on him the best education.

Is your sister returned ?

Is not your mother come yet ?

On Words of Quantity

He has a great deal of sense but still more vanity.

He has pocket-money enough for his pleasures.

There were a great many people at the Opera.

There were I do not know how many people in the park yesterday.

Il boit autant d'eau que de vin.

Il a tant d'amis qu'il ne manquera de rien.

Personne n'y a plus d'intérêt que lui.

Il n'a pas plus d'esprit qu'il n'en faut.

Trop de loisir perd souvent la jeunesse.

J'y ai bien moins d'intérêt que vous.

He drinks as much water as wine.

He has so many friends that he will want for nothing.

Nobody has more interest there than he.

He is not overburthened with leisure.

Too much leisure time is frequently the ruin of youth.

I am much less concerned in it than you.

4. Sur les Pronoms Personnels.

Sors et te retire.

Cours vite et ne t'amuse point.

Il dit aujourd'hui une chose et demain il se démentira.

Il s'est démenti lui-même.

La jeunesse est naturellement emportée ; elle a besoin de quelque entrave qui la retienne.

Il ne peut voir personne dans la prospérité sans lui porter envie.

Ce que vous me dites est une énigme pour moi.

C'est un homme extrême en tout ; il aime et il hait avec fureur.

Si vous n'y avez jamais été, je vous y mènerai.

Je l'ai connu doux et modeste ; il s'est bien gâté dans le commerce de ses nouveaux amis.

Elle n'est pas encore revenue du saisissement, que lui a causé cette nouvelle.

Il menace de l'exterminer, lui et toute sa race.

Si vous n'avez que faire de ce livre-là, prêtez-le-moi.

Je lui avais envoyé un diamant, il l'a refusé, je le lui ai renvoyé.

On the Personal Pronouns.

Go out and retire.

Go quick and do not loiter.

He advances a thing to-day, and will contradict himself to-morrow.

He has contradicted himself.

Youth is naturally hasty, it needs some curb to restrain it.

He can see the prosperity of nobody, without envying them.

What you tell me is a perfect riddle to me.

He is a man that carries every thing to excess ; he is alike violent in his love and in his hatred.

If you have never been there, I will take you.

I knew him when he was gentle and modest ; he has been much corrupted by associating with his new acquaintances.

She is not yet recovered from the consternation into which that news threw her.

He threatens to exterminate him and all his family.

If you have done with this book, lend it me.

I had sent him a diamond, and he refused it, but I sent him it back again.

Il apprend facilement et oublie de même.

Je lui pardonne facilement d'avoir voulu se faire auteur ; mais je ne saurais lui pardonner toutes les puérilités dont il a farci son livre.

Je me plains à vous de vous-même.

Si vous ne voulez pas être pour lui, au moins ne soyez pas contre.

Quand sera-ce que vous viendrez nous voir ?

5. Sur soi, lui, soi-même, et lui-même.

Quand on a pour soi le témoignage de sa conscience, on est bien fort.

L'estime de toute la terre ne sert de rien à un homme qui n'a pas le témoignage de sa conscience pour lui.

Un homme fait mille fautes, parce qu'il ne fait point de réflexions sur lui-même.

On fait mille fautes, quand on ne fait aucune réflexion sur soi.

Il aime mieux dire du mal de lui-même, que de n'en point parler.

L'égoïste aimera mieux dire du mal de soi-même, que de n'en point parler.

On a souvent besoin d'un plus petit que soi.

Un prince a souvent besoin de beaucoup de gens plus petits que lui.

C'est un bon moyen de s'élever soi-même, que d'exalter ses pareils ; et un homme adroit s'élève ainsi lui-même.

He learns easily and forgets the same.

I can easily pardon him for having attempted to turn author ; but I cannot pardon him all the absurdities with which he has stuffed his book.

I complain to you of yourself.

If you will not be for him, at least do not be against him.

When will you come to see us ?

On soi, lui, soi-même, and lui-même.

The approbation of our conscience imparts great courage.

The good opinion of the whole world is of no use to a man who has not the approbation of his own conscience.

A man commits a thousand faults, because he does not reflect on future consequences.

We commit a thousand faults, when we neglect to reflect on ourselves.

He had rather speak ill of himself than not talk of himself at all.

The selfish man prefers speaking ill of himself rather than not be the subject of his own conversation.

We frequently want the assistance of one who is below ourselves.

A prince frequently needs the assistance of many persons inferior to himself.

It is an excellent method of exalting ourselves to exalt our equals, and a man of address by this means exalts himself.

6. *Sur les Pronoms Relatifs.*

Il n'y a rien de si capable d'affaiblir le courage, que l'oisiveté et les délices.

Il faut empêcher que la division, qui est dans cette famille, n'éclate.

Il y a bien des événements que l'on suppose se passer pendant les entr'actes.

Je le trouvai qui s'habillait.

Qui le tirera de cet embarras, le tirera d'une grande misère.

Ceux-là sont véritablement heureux, qui croient l'être.

Il n'y a que la vertu, qui puisse rendre un homme heureux en cette vie.

Il n'y a règle si générale, qui n'ait son exception.

C'est un orateur qui se posséde et qui ne se trouble jamais.

Il n'y a pas dans le cœur humain de repli, que Dieu ne connaisse.

On n'a trouvé que quelques fragments du grand ouvrage qu'il avait promis.

La faute, que vous avez faite, est plus importante que vous ne pensez.

Les premières démarches qu'on fait dans le monde, ont beaucoup d'influence sur le reste de la vie.

Cette farce est une des plus risibles qu'on ait encore vues.

Amassez-vous des trésors que les vers et la rouille ne puissent point gâter, et que les voleurs ne puissent point dérober.

L'incertitude, où nous sommes de ce qui doit arriver, fait que nous ne saurions prendre des mesures justes.

On the Relative Pronouns.

Nothing is so calculated to enervate the mind as idleness and pleasure.

The dissension in that family must be prevented from becoming public.

There are many events in a piece which are supposed to happen between the acts.

I found him dressing

Whoever extricates him from this difficulty, will relieve him from much distress.

Those are really happy, who think themselves so.

Virtue alone can render a man happy in this life.

There is no rule so general but it admits of exceptions.

He is an orator who is master of himself, and who is never embarrassed.

There is no recess of the human heart but God perceives it.

Only some fragments of the great work he had promised have been found.

The error you have committed is of more consequence than you imagine.

The first steps we take on entering the world have considerable influence on the rest of our lives.

That farce is one of the most truly comic that ever was seen.

Lay up for yourselves treasures which neither moth nor rust can corrupt, and which thieves cannot steal.

Our uncertainty as to what shall happen makes us incapable of properly providing against it

Je m'étonne qu'il ne voie pas le danger où il est.

L'homme dont vous parlez n'est plus ici.

Celui de qui je tiens cette nouvelle ne vous est pas connu.

Celui à qui ce beau château appartient ne l'habite presque jamais.

Ce sont des événements auxquels il faut bien se soumettre.

C'est ce à quoi vous ne pensez guère.

7. Sur les Pronoms Démonstratifs.

Ne point reconnaître la divinité, c'est renoncer à toutes les lumières de la raison.

Mentir, c'est mépriser Dieu et craindre les hommes.

Il y a des épidémies morales, et ce sont les plus dangereuses.

Je crois que ce que vous dites, est bien éloigné de ce que vous pensez.

Les hommes n'aiment ordinairement que ceux qui les flattent.

Celui qui persuade à un autre de faire un crime n'est guère moins coupable que celui qui le commet.

Penser ainsi, c'est s'aveugler soi-même.

Ce qu'on rapporte de lui est inconcevable.

Ce qui m'afflige, c'est de voir le triomphe du crime.

Connaissez-vous la jeune Emilie? c'est une enfant dont tout le monde dit du bien.

Imitez en tout votre amie; elle est douce, appliquée, honnête et compatissante.

I am astonished he does not see the danger he is in.

The man whom you are speaking of, is not here now.

The person from whom I received the intelligence is not known to you.

The proprietor of that beautiful seat seldom resides there.

These are events to which we must submit.

It is what you seldom think of.

On the Demonstrative Pronouns.

Not to acknowledge the divinity, is totally to renounce the light of reason.

To lie is to despise God and to fear man.

There are moral contagious diseases, and they are the most dangerous.

What you advance is, I think, widely different from your sentiments.

Men in general love only those who flatter them.

He who persuades another to the commission of a crime, is hardly less guilty than he who commits it.

To think in this manner is to be wilfully blind.

The reports concerning him are hardly conceivable.

What distresses me is to see guilt triumphant.

Do you know little Emily? she is a child of whom every body speaks well.

Imitate your friend in every thing; she is gentle, assiduous, polite and compassionate.

8. Sur le Verbe avoir employé à l'Impersonnel

On the Verb *Avoir*, to have, employed impersonally.

Remarque.—Quand le verbe *avoir* s'emploie à l'impersonnel, c'est dans le sens d'être, et alors il se joint toujours avec *y*.

When the verb *avoir* is used impersonally it signifies être, to be, and in this sense it is always accompanied by the adverb *y*.

Il y a un an que je ne vous ai vu.

It is a twelvemonth since I saw you.

Y a-t-il des nouvelles?

Is there any news?

Non, il n'y en a pas, du moins que je sache.

No, there is none at least that I know.

N'y a-t-il pas cinquante-quatre milles de Londres à Brighton?

Is not it fifty-four miles from London to Brighton?

Il y avait déjà beaucoup de monde lorsque j'arrivai.

There were already a great many people when I arrived.

Il n'y avait hier presque personne au Parc.

There was hardly any body in the Park yesterday.

Y a-t-il eu de grands débats?

Were there violent debates?

N'y avait-il pas beaucoup de curieux?

Were there not many spectators?

Je l'avais vu il y avait à peine vingt-quatre heures.

I had seen him scarcely four-and-twenty hours before.

Il n'y avait pas deux jours qu'il avait dîné chez moi.

He had dined with me not two days before.

Y avait-il si long-temps que vous ne l'aviez vu?

Was it so long since you had seen him?

Il y eut hier un bal chez M. un tel.

There was yesterday a ball at Mr. A's.

Il n'y eut pas hier de spectacle.

There was no play yesterday.

Y eut-il beaucoup de confusion et de désordre?

Was there a great deal of confusion and disorder?

N'y eut-il pas un beau feu d'artifice?

Were there not beautiful fireworks?

Il y a eu aujourd'hui une foule immense à la promenade.

There was an immense crowd to-day in the public walks.

Il n'y a pas eu de bal, comme on l'avait annoncé.

There has not been any ball as had been mentioned.

Est-il vrai qu'il y a eu un duel?

Is it true that there has been a duel?

N'y a-t-il pas eu dans sa conduite un peu trop d'emportement?

Was there not rather too much hastiness in his behaviour?

Quand il y eut eu une explication, les esprits se calmèrent.

After there had been an explanation, tranquillity was restored.

N'y avait-il pas eu un plus grand nombre de spectateurs?

Was not there a greater number of spectators?

Il y aura demain un simulacre
de combat naval.

Il n'y en aura aucun de vous.

Y aura-t-il une bonne récolte
cette année ?

N'y aura-t-il pas quelqu'un de
votre famille ?

A coup sûr il y aura eu bien
du désordre ?

Sur cent personnes, il n'y en
aura pas eu dix de satisfaites.

Y aura-t-il eu un bon souper ?

N'y aura-t-il pas eu de mécon-
tents ?

Il y aurait de la malhonnêteté
dans ce procédé.

Il n'y aurait pas grand mal à
cela.

Y aurait-il quelqu'un assez
hardi pour l'attaquer ?

N'y aurait-il pas quelqu'un
assez charitable pour l'avertir de
ce qu'on dit de lui ?

Il y aurait eu de l'imprudence
à cela.

Il n'y aurait pas eu tant de
méintelligence, si l'on m'en
avait cru.

Il n'y aurait pas eu dix per-
sonnes.

Y aurait-il eu de l'inconvé-
nient.

N'y aurait-il pas eu de jaloux
pour le traverser dans ses pro-
jets ?

Je ne crois pas qu'il y ait un
spectacle plus magnifique.

Je désirerais qu'il y eût moins
de fausseté dans le commerce de
la vie.

Je n'ai pas oui-dire qu'il y ait
eu hier des nouvelles du conti-
nent.

Auriez-vous cru qu'il y eût eu
tant de personnes compromises
dans cette affaire ?

To-morrow there will be a mo-
sea-fight.

There will be none of you.

Will not there be a good har-
vest this year ?

Will not there be some of your
family ?

There must certainly have been
much disorder.

Out of a hundred persons there
will not have been ten satisfied.

Will there have been a good
supper ?

Will there not have been some
dissatisfied people ?

Such a step would have been
uncivil.

There would be no great harm
in that.

Would there be any one bold
enough to attack him ?

Would there be nobody kind
enough to acquaint him with what
is said of him ?

There would have been some
imprudence in that.

There would not have been so
great a misunderstanding had I
been believed.

There would not have been ten
persons.

Would there have been any in-
convenience ?

Would there not have been some
envious persons to thwart him in
his designs ?

I do not think there can be a
more superb spectacle.

I wish there was less duplicity
in the concerns of life.

I have not heard that there was
any news from the continent yester-
day.

Could you have thought so many
persons would have been exposed
in that affair ?

9. *Phrases Diverses.*

Sa vie, ses actions, ses paroles, son air même et sa démarche, tout prêche, tout édifie en lui.

On craignait qu'il n'arrivât quelque désordre dans l'assemblée, mais toutes choses s'y passèrent fort doucement.

La vigne et le lierre s'entortillent autour des ormes.

On ne disconvient point qu'il ne soit brave, mais il est un peu trop fanfarou.

Le cadet est riche, mais l'aîné l'est encore davantage.

Le ciel est couvert de nuages, et l'orage est prêt à fondre.

Après qu'il eut franchi les Alpes avec ses troupes, il entra en Italie.

La frugalité rend les corps plus sains et plus robustes.

Ce discours est peut-être un des plus beaux morceaux d'éloquence, qu'il y ait jamais eus.

C'est un homme qui aime la liberté; il ne se gêne pour qui que ce soit.

Il est plus haut que moi de deux doigts.

Irez-vous vous exposer à la barbarie et à l'inhospitalité de ces peuples?

A la longue, les erreurs disparaissent, et la vérité surnage.

Si vous le prenez avec moi sur ce ton de fierté, je serai aussi fier que vous.

C'est un homme rigide, qui ne pardonne rien, ni aux autres ni à lui-même.

Les uns montent, les autres descendent, ainsi va la roue de la fortune.

Promiscuous Phrases.

His life, his actions, his very look and deportment, every thing in him instructs and edifies.

It was apprehended some disorder would take place in the assembly, but every thing went off very quietly.

The vine and the ivy twist round the elms.

They do not deny that he is brave, but he boasts rather too much.

The youngest is rich, but the eldest is still more so.

The sky is covered with clouds, and the storm is preparing to burst.

After having crossed the Alps with his troops, he entered Italy.

Temperance imparts an increase of health and strength to the body.

This speech is perhaps one of the finest pieces of eloquence that were ever delivered.

He is a man fond of liberty, he will be constrained by nobody.

He is taller than I by two inches.

Will you go and expose yourself to the barbarity and inhospitality of those nations?

In time, errors vanish and truth survives.

If you treat me with that haughtiness, I can be as haughty as you.

He is a stern man, who pardons nothing either to himself or others.

Some rise, others descend; thus goes the wheel of fortune.

Je ne vois rien de solide dans tout ce que vous me proposez.

L'art n'a jamais rien produit de plus beau.

Lequel est-ce des deux qui a tort ?

On aime quelquefois la trahison, mais on hait toujours les traîtres.

10. Continuation.

L'éléphant se sert de sa trompe pour prendre et pour enlever tout ce qu'il veut.

Plus j'examine cette personne, plus je crois l'avoir vue quelque part.

La nuit vint, de façon que je fus contraint de me retirer.

Il faut vivre de façon qu'on ne fasse tort à personne.

Elle sut qu'on attaquait son mari; elle courut aussitôt tout éperdue pour le secourir.

Je trouvais ses parents tout éplorés.

Cet arbre pousse ses branches toutes droites.

J'en ai encore la mémoire toute fraîche.

Il a voulu faire voir par cet essai qu'il pouvait réussir en quelque chose de plus grand.

Il fut blessé au front et mourut de cette blessure.

Ces chevaux prirent le mors aux dents et entraînèrent le carrosse.

C'est un homme qui compose sans chaleur, ni imagination; tout ce qu'il écrit est froid et plat.

Cet bâtiment a plus de profondeur que de largeur.

Cet homme est un prodige de savoir, de science, de valeur, d'esprit et de mémoire.

I see nothing certain in all thy propose to me.

It is one of the finest productions of art.

Which of the two is in the wrong ?

We sometimes like treason, but we always hate the traitor.

Continuation.

The elephant makes use of his trunk to take and lift anything he pleases.

The more I look at that person, the more I think I have seen him somewhere.

Night came on, so that I was obliged to retire.

We must live in such a manner as to injure nobody.

She knew her husband was attacked, and in a state of distraction, ran to his assistance.

I found his relations all in tears.

The branches of that tree grow quite straight.

It is still quite fresh on my memory.

He wished to show by that attempt that he could succeed in an enterprise of more consequence.

He was wounded in the forehead, and died of his wound.

Those horses ran away with the carriage.

He is a man that writes without the least warmth or animation: all his productions are cold and insipid.

That building has more depth than it has breadth.

That man is a prodigy of knowledge, judgment, courage, sense, and memory.

Il est attaché à l'un et à l'autre, mais plus à l'un qu'à l'autre.

Ils ont bien l'air l'un de l'autre.

Si l'on ruine cet homme-là, le contre-coup retombera sur vous.

Il serait mort, si on ne l'eût assisté avec soin.

Ce poème serait parfait, si les incidents, qui le font languir, n'interrompaient la continuité de l'action.

11. Continuation.

Quand je le voudrais, je ne le pourrais pas.

Je serai toujours votre ami, quand même vous ne le voudriez pas.

Quand vous auriez réussi, que vous en serait-il revenu ?

Quand on découvrirait votre démarche, on ne pourrait la blâmer.

Quand vous auriez consulté quelqu'un sur votre mariage, vous n'auriez pas mieux réussi.

Le tonnerre et l'éclair ne sont sensibles que par la propagation du bruit et de la lumière jusqu'à l'œil et à l'oreille.

Le langage de la prose est plus simple et moins figuré que celui des vers.

Le commencement de son discours est toujours assez sage ; mais, dans la suite, à force de vouloir s'élever, il se perd dans les nues : on ne sait plus ni ce qu'on voit, ni ce qu'on entend.

C'est une faute excusable dans un autre homme, mais à un homme aussi sage que lui, elle ne se peut pardonner.

Il ne suffit pas de paraître honnête homme, il faut l'être.

He is attached to both, but to one more than the other.

They very much look like one another.

If that man is ruined, his misfortune will recoil upon you.

He would have died if he had not been kindly assisted.

That would be a perfect poem, if the incidents which give a heaviness to it, did not break the connexion of the subject.

Continuation.

If I were disposed, I could not do it.

I shall ever be your friend, even though you should not wish it.

Though you had succeeded, what were you to have derived from it ?

Should the steps you have taken be discovered they could not be blamed.

Had you consulted somebody about your marriage, you could not have succeeded better.

Thunder and lightning are only perceptible by the transmission of sound and light to the ear and eye.

Prose language is much more simple and less figurative than poetry.

The beginning of his speech is always tolerably sensible : but afterwards, by affecting the sublime, he loses himself, and we no longer understand either what we see or hear.

This fault would be excusable in another man, but in a man of his sense it is unpardonable.

It is not enough to appear to be an honest man, we must be so.

Il nous a reçus avec bonté, et nous a écoutés avec patience.

Tout y est si bien peint qu'on croit voir ce qu'il décrit.

On ne pense rien de vous, qui ne vous soit glorieux.

Les eaux de citernes ne sont que des eaux de pluie ramassées.

S'il n'est pas fort riche, du moins a-t-il de quoi vivre honnêtement.

Quel quantième du mois avons-nous ?

Il lui tarde qu'il ne soit majeur; il compte les jours et les mois.

Des qualités excellentes, jointes à de rares talents, font le parfait mérite.

Il a une mauvaise qualité, c'est qu'il ne saurait garder un secret.

He received us with kindness and heard us patiently.

Every thing in it is so well delineated you think you see what he describes.

They think nothing of you but what is to your honour.

Cistern water is generally only rain water collected.

If he is not rich at least he has enough to live upon respectably.

What day of the month is it ?

He longs to be of age and counts the days and months.

Excellent qualities joined to distinguished talents constitute perfect merit.

He has one bad quality, he cannot keep a secret.

12. *Modèles de Phrases dans lesquelles, on doit faire usage de l'Article.*

L'homme est sujet à bien des vicissitudes.

Les hommes d'un vrai génie sont rares.

Les hommes à imagination sont rarement heureux.

L'homme, dont vous parlez, est un de mes amis.

La vie est un mélange de biens et de maux.

La perfection en tout genre est le but auquel on doit tendre.

La beauté, les grâces et l'esprit sont des avantages bien précieux quand ils sont relevés par la modestie.

Voilà *des tableaux* d'une grande beauté.

Faites-vous *des principes*, dont vous ne vous écartiez jamais.

Examples of Phrases in which the Article is used.

Man is liable to a variety of changes.

Men of real genius are scarce

Men of a visionary character are seldom happy.

The man you speak of is a friend of mine.

Life is a compound of good and evil.

Perfection in every thing ought to be our object.

Beauty, gracefulness, and wit, are valuable endowments well heightened by modesty.

These are very beautiful pictures.

Establish rules for yourself, and never deviate from them.

Cet arbre porte des fruits excellents.

Ces raisons sont des conjectures bien faibles.

Servez-vous des termes établis par l'usage.

On doit éviter l'air de l'affectation.

Le Jupiter de Phidias était d'une grande beauté.

This tree bears very excellent fruit.

These reasons are very idle conjectures.

Use the expressions established by custom.

We ought to avoid the appearance of affectation.

The Jupiter of Phidias was extremely beautiful.

Continuation des même Phrases.

The same Phrases continued.

La mémoire est le trésor de l'esprit, le fruit de l'attention et de la réflexion.

J'achetai hier des gravures précieuses et rares.

La France est le plus beau pays de l'Europe.

L'intérêt de l'Allemagne était opposé à celui de la Russie.

La longueur de l'Angleterre du nord au sud est de 360 milles, et sa largeur de l'est à l'ouest est de 300.

Il arrive de la Chine, du Japon, et des Indes Orientales, etc.

Il arrive de l'Amérique, de la Barbade, de la Jamaïque, etc.

Il vient de la Flandre Française.

Il s'est établi dans la province de Middlesex.

Des petits-maîtres sont des êtres insupportables dans la société.

C'est l'opinion des nouveaux philosophes.

Elle a bien de la grâce dans tout ce qu'elle fait.

Cette étoffe se vend une guinée l'aune.

Ce vin coûte 70 livres sterling la pièce.

Memory is the treasure of the mind, the result of attention and reflection.

I yesterday bought some valuable and scarce engravings.

France is the finest country in Europe.

The German interest was contrary to the Russian.

The length of England from north to south is 360 miles, and its breadth from east to west is 300.

He comes from China, Japan, and the East Indies.

He comes from America, Barbadoes, Jamaica, etc.

He comes from French Flanders.

He has settled in the county of Middlesex.

Cosmopolites are insufferable beings in society.

It is the opinion of the new philosophers.

She does every thing most gracefully.

This stuff sells at a guinea the ell.

This wine costs seventy pounds the hogshead.

13. *Modèles de Phrases dans lesquelles on ne doit pas faire usage de l'Article.*

Nos connaissances doivent être tirées d'*principes évidents.*

Cet arbre porte d'*excellents fruits.*

Ces raisons sont de *faibles conjectures.*

Evitez tout ce qui a un air d'*affectation.*

Ces exemples peuvent servir de *modèles.*

Il a une grande *présence d'esprit.*

La *mémoire de raison et d'esprit* est plus utile que les autres sortes de *mémoire.*

Peu de *personnes* réfléchissent sur la rapidité de la *vie.*

Que d'*événements* inconcevables se sont succédés les uns aux autres !

Il y a plus d'*esprit*, mais moins de *connaissance*, dans ce siècle que dans le siècle dernier.

On ne vit jamais autant d'*effronterie.*

Je pris hier beaucoup de *peine* pour rien.

Candia est une des îles les plus agréables de la Méditerranée.

Il arrive de *Perse, d'Italie, d'Espagne, etc.*

Il est revenu de *Suisse, d'Allemagne, etc.*

Les vins de *France* seront chers cette année ; les vignes ont coulé.

L'*empire d'Allemagne* est composé de grands et de petits états.

Les chevaux d'*Angleterre* sont excellents.

Après mon départ de *Suisse* je me retirai à Rome

Examples of phrases in which the Article is omitted.

Our knowledge ought to be derived from evident principles

This tree produces excellent fruit.

These reasons are idle conjectures.

Avoid whatever bears the appearance of affectation.

These examples may serve as models.

He has great presence of mind.

The memory of reason and sense is more useful than any other kind of memory.

Few people reflect on the rapidity of life.

How many inconceivable events have followed in succession !

There's more wit but less knowledge in this age than in the last.

So much assurance never was met with.

I took a great deal of trouble yesterday about nothing.

Candia is one of the most agreeable islands in the Mediterra-

He comes from Persia, Italy, Spain, etc.

He is returned from Switzerland, Germany, etc.

French wines will be dear this year ; the vines have ran.

The German empire is composed of great and small states.

The English horses are excellent.

On my leaving Switzerland, I retired to Rome.

14. *Continuation des mêmes Phrases.*

Vous trouverez ce passage page 120, livre premier, chapitre dix.

Il s'est retiré en *Angleterre*.

Il vit dans sa retraite en vrai philosophe.

Quand il réfléchit sur sa conduite, il en eut honte.

C'est un homme qui cherche fortune.

Il entend malice à tout.

Ne portez envie à personne

Si vous promettez, tenez parole.

Dans les affaires importantes ne vous décidez jamais sans prendre conseil.

Courage, soldats, tenons fermes; la victoire est à nous.

Cette femme n'a ni grâce ni beauté.

Monseigneur le duc, etc. prince du sang, alla hier à la campagne.

Montrer tant de faiblesse, c'est n'être pas homme.

Cet homme est une espèce de misanthrope, dont les brusqueries sont quelquefois très-plaisantes.

L'ananas est une sorte de fruit très-commun aux Antilles.

C'est un genre de vie qui ne me plaît point.

15. *Continuation des mêmes Phrases.*

Cette dame plaît à tout le monde par son honnêteté et sa douceur.

Tout homme a des défauts plus ou moins sensibles.

Cette conduite augmentait chaque jour le nombre de ses

Continuation of the same Phrases.

You will find this passage in page 120, book the first, chapter the tenth.

He has retired to England.

He lives in his retreat, like a real philosopher.

When he reflected on his conduct, he was ashamed of it.

He is a man that seeks fortune, he is a fortune hunter.

He puts a malicious construction on every thing.

Envy nobody.

If you promise, keep your word.

In matters of consequence never decide without advice.

Cheer up, soldiers, let us continue firm, the day is our own.

This woman is destitute both of grace and beauty.

The duke of, etc. a prince of the blood, went yesterday into the country.

To show so much weakness is not a thing like a man.

This man is a kind of misanthrope, whose oddities are sometimes comical.

The pine-apple is a kind of fruit very common in the Antilles.

It is a kind of life that is no agreeable to me.

The same sentences continued.

This lady pleases every one for her good breeding and mildness.

Every man has defects more or less obvious.

This behaviour daily increased the number of his friends

Tous les biens nous viennent
de Dieu.

Vénus était la déesse de la
beauté, et la mère de l'amour et
des grâces.

Selon les païens, Jupiter était
le premier des dieux.

Apollon était frère jumeau de
Diane.

Rubens a été un grand peintre.

Homère et Virgile sont les deux
plus grands poètes épiques.

Londres est la plus belle ville
que je connaisse.

L'eau de rivière est douce, et
l'eau de mer est salée.

C'est un excellent poisson de
mer.

Voilà une superbe table de
marbre.

L'eau de Seine est celle qu'on
préfère à Paris.

Pauvreté n'est pas vice.

Citoyens, étrangers, grands,
peuples, se sont montrés sensi-
bles à cette perte.

16. Modèles de Phrases sur le pronom Je.

Est-ce là votre opinion?—ne
doutez point que ce ne la soit.

Sont-ce là vos domestiques?—
oui, ce les sont.

Mesdames, êtes-vous les étran-
gères qu'on m'a annoncées?—
oui, nous les sommes.

Madame, êtes-vous la malade
pour laquelle on m'a appelé?—
oui, je la suis.

Madames, êtes-vous la mère
de cet enfant?—oui, je la suis.

Mesdame, êtes-vous contentes
de cette musique?—oui, nous le
sommes.

Elle est malheureuse, et je
crains bien, qu'elle ne le soit
toute sa vie.

Every blessing comes from God.

Venus was the goddess of beauty
and the mother of love and the
graces.

According to the Heathens, Ju-
piter was the first of the gods.

Apollo was twin brother to Di-
ana.

Rubens was a great painter.

Homer and Virgil are the two
greatest epic poets.

London is the finest city that I
know.

River water is sweet, and sea
water is salt.

It is an excellent sea fish.

There is a superb marble table.

The water of the Seine is pre-
ferred at Paris.

Poverty is not a vice.

Citizens, strangers, grandees,
people, have shewn themselves sen-
sible of this loss.

Forms of Phrases upon the pro- noun Je.

Is that your opinion?—do not
question it.

Are those your servants?—yes
they are.

Ladies, are you the strangers
that have been announced to me?
yes, we are.

Madam, are you the sick per-
son, for whom I have been called?
yes, I am.

Madam, are you the mother of
this child?—yes, I am.

Ladies, are you pleased with
this music?—yes, we are.

She is unhappy, and I much
fear she will continue so for life.

Madame, êtes-vous mère ?—
ou, le *je* suis.

Madame, depuis quel temps
êtes-vous mariée ?—*Je le* suis de-
puis un an.

Y a-t-il long-temps que vous
êtes arrivée ?—*Je le* suis depuis
quinze jours.

Aristote croyait que le monde
était de tout éternité ; mais Pla-
ton ne le croyait pas.

Quoique cette femme montre
plus de fermeté que les autres,
elle n'est pas pour cela *le* moins
affligée.

Cette femme a l'art de répandre
des larmes dans le temps même
qu'elle est *le* moins affligée.

17. *Modèles de Phrases sur les
différentes règles du participe
passé.*

La nouvelle pièce a-t-elle été
applaudie ?

Vos parents y seront-ils arrivés
à temps ?

Elle s'est donnée de belles robes.

Elles nous ont apporté de su-
perbes œillets.

Cette ruse ne lui a pas réussi.

La vie tranquille que j'ai mè-
née depuis dix ans, a beaucoup
contribué à me faire oublier mes
malheurs.

Les lettres que j'ai reçues, m'ont
beaucoup affligée.

Que de peines vous vous êtes
données !

Quelle tâche vous vous êtes
imposée !

C'est une satire que j'ai retrou-
vée dans mes papiers.

Les lettres qu'a écrites Plin le
jeune, quelque agréables qu'elles
soient, se ressentent néanmoins

Madam, are you a mother ?—
yes, I am.

Madam, how long have you
been married ? I have been mar-
ried a year.

Have you long been arrived ?—
a fortnight.

Aristotle believed the world to
have been from all eternity, but
Plato did not.

Although this woman shows
more resolution than the others,
she is nevertheless not the least
distressed.

This woman had the art of shed-
ding tears, even when she is least
distressed.

Forms of Phrases upon the dif-
ferent rules of the participle
past.

Did the new piece meet with
applause ?

Will your relations arrive there
in time ?

She has given herself fine
gowns.

They have brought us beautiful
pinks.

He has not succeeded in this
stratagem.

The quiet life I have led these
ten years, has greatly contributed
to make me forget my misfor-
tunes.

The letters I have received have
greatly distressed me.

What a deal of trouble you
have given yourself !

What a task you have imposed
on yourself !

It is a satire that I have again
found within my papers.

The letters which the young
Pliny has written, however agree-
able they may be, sorrow never

un peu de la décadence du goût parmi les Romains.

Je ne serais pas entré avec vous dans tous ces détails de grammaire, si je ne les avais crus nécessaires.

L'Égypte s'était rendue célèbre par la sagesse de ses lois, longtemps avant que la Grèce sortît de la barbarie.

C'est une des plus grandes merveilles qu'on ait vues.

L'homme de lettres, dont vous m'avez parlé, a un goût exquis.

Vous avez très-bien instruit vos élèves.

Lucrece s'est donné la mort.

La sécheresse qu'il y a eu au printemps a fait périr tous les fruits.

Je n'ai point réussi, malgré les mesures que vous m'avez conseillé de prendre.

Quelle aventure vous est-il arrivée ?

Cette femme s'est proposée pour modèle à ses enfants.

Cette femme s'est proposé d'enseigner la géographie et l'histoire à ses enfants.

18. *Modèles de Phrases sur les principaux rapports des modes et des temps.*

Je l'attendais depuis long-temps quand il vint me joindre.

Il sortit au moment même que j'entraais.

Je commençais à avoir des craintes sur la réussite de votre affaire, lorsque j'ai reçu votre lettre.

Dès que j'eus fait quelques visites indispensables, je rentrai chez moi, et je ne sortis plus.

J'avais déjà tout préparé pour mon départ, lorsque des affaires

theless a little of the decline of taste among the Romans.

I would not have entered into these grammatical details with you, had I not thought them necessary.

Egypt had become celebrated for the wisdom of its laws, long before Greece had emerged from barbarism.

It is one of the greatest wonders that has ever been seen.

The man of letters you spoke to me of has an excellent taste

You have taught your pupils extremely well.

Lucretia killed herself.

The dry weather we had in the spring has destroyed all the fruit

I have not succeeded, notwithstanding the steps you advised me to take.

What adventures have you met with ?

This woman proposed herself as a model for her children.

This woman proposed to teach geography and history to her children.

Forms of Phrases upon the principal relations of moods and tenses.

I had waited a long time for him, when he came to me.

He was going out at the time I was entering.

I was beginning to be apprehensive of the success of your business when I received your letter.

As soon as I had paid some indispensable visits, I went home and did not go out afterwards.

I had already made every preparation for my departure, when

imprévues m'ont forcé à le différer de quelques jours.

Vous étiez déjà sorti, quand je me présentai chez vous.

J'avais déjà livré à l'impression mon ouvrage, lorsque vous me demandiez, si je le donnerais bientôt au public.

Lorsque j'ai eu terminé mon affaire, vous avez commencé la vôtre.

Lorsque j'eus déjeuné, je montai à cheval, et je fus à Londres.

Lorsque j'aurai lu la nouvelle pièce, je vous dirai avec franchise ce que j'en pense.

19. *Modèles de Phrases sur l'emploi des Auxiliaires aller, venir de, devoir, pouvoir.*

Je vais partir à l'instant même.

Nous allons vous expliquer cela en deux mots.

Nous allions nous mettre à table lorsqu'il est entré.

J'allais lui offrir mon bras, lorsque je m'aperçus de ma méprise.

On allait en venir aux mains, mais la nuit venant à tomber, on remit l'attaque au lendemain.

Je viens de les voir ensemble.

Elle vient de se marier avec un homme fort riche.

Leur père vient de mourir, ainsi il n'est pas probable qu'elles aillent en société.

Mon frère venait de sortir.

Nous venions de dîner.

Si vous avez quelque chose à leur dire, je m'en chargerai; je dois les voir aujourd'hui.

some unexpected business occurred, that obliged me to defer it for some days.

You were already gone out when I called upon you.

My work had been sent to be printed, when you asked me if I should soon bring it out

When I had terminated my business, you began yours.

When I had done breakfast, I got on horseback, and went to London.

When I have read the new play, I will candidly give you my opinion of it.

Examples on the use of the Auxiliaries aller, venir de, devoir, pouvoir.

I am off this very instant.

We will explain it to you in two words.

We were going to sit down to table when he entered.

I was on the point of offering my arm to her, when I saw my mistake.

They were on the moment of engaging, but night falling, they put off the attack until the next day.

I have this moment seen them together.

She has just married a very rich man.

Their father has recently died it is not likely therefore they should go into company.

My brother had just gone out.

We had not long dined.

If you have any message to send to them, I will take it, for I am to see them to-day.

Vous ne devez pas lui répondre ainsi.

Dois-je attendre ?

Elle doit avoir quinze ans au moins.

Il doit être à la maison car je ne l'ai pas vu sortir.

Je devais sortir, mais le mauvais temps m'en a empêché.

Ne deviez-vous pas vous mettre en route lundi dernier.

Ils devaient m'en prévenir.

Cela devait être le meilleur parti.

Vous devriez lui dire la vérité.

Devrais-je obéir à des ordres si injustes.

Il aurait dû revenir de suite.

Nous n'aurions pas dû dépenser follement.

Mon frère pourrait vous reconduire.

Nous pourrions lui en parler, lorsqu'il sera moins occupé.

Ne pourrions-nous pas passer par Bath ?

Il me semble qu'elle aurait pu mieux faire.

Les troupes auraient pu débarquer sur nos côtes.

You are not to answer him in this manner.

Am I to wait, or must I wait ?

She must be fifteen at least.

He must be at home, for I did not see him go out.

I intended to go out, I was to have gone out, but the bad weather prevented me.

Were you not to have set off on Monday last.

They ought to have told me of it.

That must have been the best determination.

You should speak the truth to him.

Ought I to obey such unjust orders ?

He ought to have returned directly.

We ought not to have spent extravagantly.

My brother must see you home.

We might mention it to him when he is less engaged.

Might we not return through Bath ?

It appears to me that she might have done better.

The troops might have landed on our coasts.

20. *Models to show how to render will, shall, would, should, elliptically used.*

Iriez-vous à Rome, si vous le pouviez ?—oui, j'irais.

Auriez-vous consenti à ces conditions, si on vous les avait proposées ? oui, sans doute.

Irez-vous demain à Londres, si vous le pouvez ?—oui, j'irai.

Il sera sûrement parti, si vous l'avez voulu.

Would you go to Rome if it were in your power ? yes, I would.

Would you have agreed to these terms, had they been proposed to you ? yes, I would.

Shall you go to London tomorrow, if you can ? yes, I shall.

He will certainly have set out, if you have wished it.

J'ai bien dormi, mais non pas
sui.

N'a-t-il pas une jolie terre en
Normandie? oui, Monsieur.

Nous avons été au spectacle
hier au soir. Vraiment? or ha?

Elle n'a pas de fortune. Vrai-
ment?

Mes compliments chez vous.
Je n'y manquerai pas.

Je dis qu'il y était; mais ma
sœur dit que non.

Je vous dis que oui, et moi, je
vous dis que non.

Vous eussiez laissé échapper
une occasion si favorable, si l'on
ne vous eût averti à temps.

21. Continuation des mêmes
Phrases.

On dit que vous partez aujour-
d'hui pour Paris.

Tout le monde soutient que
vous accepterez la place qu'on
vous offre.

On soupçonne que vous aviez
hier reçu cette agréable nouvelle
quand on vous rencontra.

Beaucoup de vos amis croient
que vous partîtes hier pour la
campagne.

Le bruit se répand que vous
avez fait une grosse perte.

J'apprends dans l'instant que
vous fussiez parti il y a trois
jours, si des engagements, que
vous aviez contractés depuis
long-temps, ne vous avaient re-
tenu.

N'est-il pas vrai que vous par-
tiriez aujourd'hui, si vous le
pouviez?

Est-il vrai que vous seriez par-
ti depuis long-temps pour la
campagne, si votre amour pour
les arts ne vous avait retenu à la

I have slept well, but he has

Has he not a pretty estate in
Normandy? yes, he has.

We went to the play last night
Did you?

She has no fortune of her own
Has she not?

My compliments at home. I
will

*I say he was there, but my sis-
ter says he was not.*

I tell you it is, and I tell you
it is not.

*You would have let so favour-
able an opportunity slip, had you*
not been warned in time.

The same Phrases continued.

It is said that you set off to-day
for Paris.

Every one maintains that you
*will accept the place that is of-
fered to you.*

*It is suspected that you had re-
ceived this agreeable intelligence*
when you were met yesterday.

Many of your friends believe
that you set out yesterday for the
country.

There is a report that you have
met with a considerable loss.

I have this moment learnt that
you would have set out three days
since, had not engagements which
*you had formed long ago, re-
tained you.*

Is it not true that you would
set out to-day, if you could?

Is it true that you would have
set out for the country long since,
*had not your love for the arts de-
tained you in town?*

Je ne crois pas que vous parliez, quoique tout le monde l'assure.

Je ne croyais pas qu'il fût si-tôt de retour.

Il a fallu qu'il ait eu affaire à bien des personnes.

Je doute que votre ami fût venu à bout de ses projets, s'il n'avait pas été fortement protégé.

Il n'est point d'homme, quelque mérite qu'il ait, qui ne fût très-mortifié, s'il savait tout ce qu'on pense de lui.

Vous ne vous persuadiez pas que les affaires pussent si mal tourner.

I do not imagine that you will set out, although every body asserts it.

I did not believe he had gone back so soon.

He must have had business with a great many people.

I doubt that your friend would have succeeded in his plans, had he not been strongly patronised.

There is not a man, whatever merit he may possess, that would not be very much mortified, were he to know every thing that is thought of him.

You never persuaded yourself that matters could have taken so unfortunate a turn.

22. *Modèles de Phrases sur la Négative Ne.*

Il n'y a pas beaucoup d'argent chez les gens de lettres.

Il n'y a point de ressource dans une personne qui n'a point d'esprit.

C'est à tort que vous l'accusez de jouer; je vous assure qu'il ne joue point.

Entrez dans le salon; vous pourrez lui parler; il ne joue pas.

Si pour avoir du bien, il en coûte à la probité, je n'en veux point.

Rien n'est sûr avec les capricieux: vous croyez être bien en faveur, point du tout: l'instant de la plus belle humeur est suivi de la plus fâcheuse.

Vous ne cessez de nous répéter les mêmes choses.

Je n'aurais osé vous en parler le premier.

Malgré ses protections, il n'a pu réussir dans ses projets.

Forms of Phrases upon the Negative Ne.

There is not much money to be found among men of letters.

There are no resources in a person deprived of sense.

You accuse him wrongfully of gaming; I assure you he never does.

Go into the room, you may speak to him; he is not playing.

I do not wish to make a fortune, if it can only be done at the expense of honesty.

Nothing is certain with capricious people: you think yourself in favour, by no means: the moment of the best humour is followed by that of the worst.

You are constantly repeating the same thing to us.

I should not have dared to be the first to speak to you of it.

With all his interest he has not been able to succeed in his plans.

Cet ouvrage serait fort bon, n'était la négligence du style.

Y a-t-il quelqu'un dont elle ne médise ?

J'ai pris tant de goût pour une vie retirée, que je ne sors presque jamais.

Voilà ce qui s'est passé ; n'en parlez à personne.

Mon parti est pris ; ne m'en parlez plus.

N'employez aucun de ces moyens : ils sont indignes de vous.

Rien n'est plus joli.

Je ne dis rien que je ne pense.

Je ne fais jamais d'excès que je n'en sois incommodé.

23. Continuation des mêmes Phrases.

C'est un homme pour qui je n'ai ni amour, ni estime.

Il n'est ni assez prudent ni assez éclairé.

Je vous assure que je ne le fréquente ni ne le vois.

Ne faire que parcourir les différentes branches des connaissances humaines sans s'arrêter à aucune, c'est moins chercher à s'instruire, qu'à tuer le temps.

Que n'êtes-vous toujours aussi complaisant ?

Il ne le fera pas, à moins que vous ne l'y engagiez.

Il n'ira pas, si vous ne l'en priez.

Il nous a menacés de se venger ; nous n'avons fait qu'en rire.

Trop d'insouciance ne peut que nuire.

Que devenez-vous ? il y a trois mois que nous ne vous avons vu ?

This work would be very good, were it not for the negligence of the style.

Is there any one she does not slander ?

I have acquired so great a taste for retirement, that I seldom go out.

This is what has passed ; do not mention it to any one.

My resolution is fixed ; talk to me no more of it.

Do not employ any one of these measures, they are unworthy of you.

Nothing is more beautiful.

I never speak but what I think

I never commit any excess without suffering by it.

Continuation of the same Phrases.

He is a man for whom I have neither love nor esteem.

He is neither sufficiently prudent nor enlightened.

I assure you I neither associate with him nor see him.

To go through the different branches of human knowledge only, without fixing upon any one of them, is not to seek for instruction, but to kill time.

Why are you not at all times equally obliging ?

He will not do it, unless you persuade him to it.

He will not go, if you do not request it of him.

He has threatened us with vengeance ; we only laughed at him.

Too great supineness cannot but be hurtful.

What has become you ? we have not seen you these three months.

Comment vous êtes-vous porté depuis que nous ne vous avons vu ?

C'est bien pire qu'on ne le disait.

Peu s'en faut que je n'aie donné tête baissée dans le piège.

Dites la vérité en toute occasion ; on méprise toujours ceux qui parlent autrement qu'ils ne pensent.

Ne désespérez pas que la vérité ne se fasse jour à la longue.

Je ne disconviens pas que la chose ne soit ainsi.

Prenez garde qu'on ne vous entraîne dans quelque fausse démarche.

J'empêcherai bien qu'on ne vous nuise dans cette affaire.

Il craint qu'on ne le soupçonne d'avoir trempé dans ce complot.

On lui a donné d'excellents conseils, de crainte qu'il ne manquât l'occasion de faire connaître ce qu'il est en état de faire.

J'y ai long-temps travaillé ; je ne saurais en venir à bout.

Vous feriez mieux de vous taire ; vous ne savez ce que vous dites.

Vous ne sauriez me faire un plus grand plaisir.

How have you been since we saw you ?

It is much worse than was said.

I was near running headlong into the snare.

Tell the truth on all occasions : those who speak what they do not think are always despised.

Do not despair that truth will appear in time.

I do not deny but the thing may have been so.

Take care that you are not led into some false step.

I shall prevent them from doing you any harm in this business.

He is apprehensive that he is suspected of being concerned in this plot.

They have given him excellent advice, lest he should lose the opportunity of showing what he was capable of doing.

I have been long employed about it ; I cannot accomplish it.

You had better be silent, you do not know what you are saying.

You cannot do me a greater favour.

24. Phrases sur quelques Déniceties de la Langue Française.

Irez-vous ce soir à l'opéra ? — oui, j'irai.

Iriez-vous avec plaisir à Rome ? — oui, j'irais.

La justice qui nous est quelquefois refusée par nos contemporains, la postérité sait nous la rendre.

Cette grandeur qui vous étonne

Phrases on some Niceties of the French Language.

Shall you go to the opera this evening ? — yes, I shall.

Would you cheerfully go to Rome ? — yes, I would.

Posterity knows how to do us that justice which is sometimes refused us by our contemporaries.

That greatness which so much

si fort, il la doit à votre nonchalance.

Il périt, ce héros, si cher à son pays.

Je l'avais bien prévu que ce haut degré de grandeur serait la cause de sa ruine.

Citoyens, étrangers, ennemis, peuples, rois, empereurs, le plaignent et le révèrent.

L'assemblée finie, chacun se retira chez soi.

Heureux le peuple qu'un sage roi gouverne.

Il refusa les plus grands honneurs, content de les mériter.

Prières, remontrances, commandements, tout est inutile.

Le vent renverse tours, cabanes, palais, églises.

Notre réputation ne dépend pas du caprice des hommes; mais elle dépend des actions louables que nous faisons.

Il y a beaucoup de choses qu'il n'importe point du tout de savoir.

La vue de l'esprit a plus d'étendue que la vue du corps.

Ce qui sert à la vanité, n'est que vanité.

Tout ce qui n'a que le monde pour fondement, se dissipe et s'évanouit avec le monde.

C'est le privilège des grands hommes de vaincre l'envie; le mérite la fait naître, le mérite la fait mourir.

L'amour-propre est plus habile que le plus habile homme du monde.

En quittant le monde, on ne quitte le plus souvent ni les erreurs, ni les folles passions du monde.

astonishes you he owes to your indifference.

That hero, so dear to his country perished.

I foresaw that the greatness of his elevation would be his ruin.

Citizens, strangers, enemies, nations, kings, emperors, pity and respect him.

The assembly being over, each returned home.

Happy are the people who are governed by a wise king.

He refused the greatest honors, satisfied with having deserved them.

Entreaties, remonstrances, injunctions, all are useless.

The wind overturns towers, cottages, palaces, churches.

Our reputation does not depend on the caprice of men, but on the commendable actions we perform.

There are many things which it is of no consequence at all to know.

The eye of the mind reaches much farther than the bodily eye.

What promotes vanity is only vanity.

All that is confined to this lower world disperses and vanishes with the world.

It is the prerogative of great men to conquer envy: merit gives it birth, and merit destroys it.

Self-love is more ingenious than the most ingenious man in the world.

In renouncing the world we generally renounce neither the errors nor foolish passions of the world.

x

x

•

